

Durham E-Theses

Interaction of international environment and developmental instruments: the case of nature based tourism

Soleiman-Pour, Hadi

How to cite:

Soleiman-Pour, Hadi (2003) *Interaction of international environment and developmental instruments: the case of nature based tourism*, Durham theses, Durham University. Available at Durham E-Theses Online: <http://etheses.dur.ac.uk/3148/>

Use policy

The full-text may be used and/or reproduced, and given to third parties in any format or medium, without prior permission or charge, for personal research or study, educational, or not-for-profit purposes provided that:

- a full bibliographic reference is made to the original source
- a [link](#) is made to the metadata record in Durham E-Theses
- the full-text is not changed in any way

The full-text must not be sold in any format or medium without the formal permission of the copyright holders.

Please consult the [full Durham E-Theses policy](#) for further details.

v3

INTERACTION OF INTERNATIONAL
ENVIRONMENTAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL
INSTRUMENTS:
THE CASE OF NATURE BASED TOURISM.

APPENDICES

Appendix VIII

Literature Review A copyright of this thesis rests with the author. No quotation from it should be published without his prior written consent and information derived from it should be acknowledged.

Submitted by:
Hadi Soleiman-Pour

For the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

University of Durham

June 2003



12 DEC 2003

Table of Contents

Titles	Page
Appendix VIII: Literature Review	624
Part I: Survey on International Developmental Instruments vis-à-vis Sustainable Nature-Based Tourism	624
Introduction	624
Ecotourism in the Context of Small Island States	626
Barbados Declaration and Programme of Action (POA)	627
Fiftieths UN General Assembly (GA 50) and CSD3	631
Fifthly First UN General Assembly (GA 51) and CSD4	637
Fifty Second UN General Assembly (GA 52) and CSD5	649
Fifty Third UN General Assembly (GA 53) and CSD6	652
CSD7 as a preparatory body for the special session of the GA on SIDS	653
Twenty Second special session of the UN General Assembly on SIDS	660
Fifty Fourth UN General Assembly	660
Fifty Fifth UN General Assembly (GA55)	661
Fifty Sixth UN General Assembly (GA56)	662
Sustainable Tourism on the Agenda of CSD	664
Sustainable tourism in Rio+5	664
International year of ecotourism	665
CSD7 and tourism segment	666
Report of SG on Tourism and Sustainable Development and its three Addenda	667
Multi-stakeholder dialogue segment on sustainable tourism	690
Inter-sessional ad-hoc working group on consumption and production patterns and on tourism	670
CSD decision 7/3 a key decision on tourism and sustainable development	708
Sustainable Tourism in World Summit on Sustainable Development	613
Part II: Survey on International Environmental Instruments vis-à-vis Sustainable Nature Based-Tourism/Ecotourism	
Introduction	722
UNEP and Sustainable Nature Based Tourism	724
Tourism Impacts and UNEP Concerns	725
UNEP assessment on the environmental impacts of tourism	725

UNEP assessments on socio-cultural impact of tourism	730
UNEP assessment on economic impacts from tourism	732
UNEP Principles on the Implementation of Sustainable Tourism	733
Voluntary Initiatives	740
Industry report including tourism to the WSSD	740
Tour Operators' Initiative	763
TOI strategic objectives and associated actions	764
TOI statement of commitment	765
Management of Tourism Destinations and Local Agenda 21	769
UNEP and Environmental Code of Conduct for Tourism	770
UNEP and Ecolabels in the Tourism Industry	777
UNEP code of conduct on 'Ecolabels in the tourism industry'	777
Business Incubators	783
Tourism in Sensitive Areas	784
Tourism and Protected Areas management	785
Project Linking Conservation and Tourism at Six World Heritage Sites	787
Guidelines: Development of National Parks and Protected Areas for Tourism	787
The summary of UNEP research on 'sustainable tourism in protected areas, Guidelines for planning and management'	788
Tourism Impacts on Coral Reefs	833
Coastal Zone Management	841
UNEP and Sustainable Tourism of Islands in the context of Sensitive area	847
UNEP and Mountain Tourism	847
UNEP and International Activities	850
International Year of Ecotourism	850
UNEP Contribution to the CSD7	850
UNEP Contributions to WSSD on Sustainable Tourism	854

Part III: WTO/OMT and Sustainable/Nature based Tourism

Introduction	858
Backgrounds and Chronology of World Tourism Organisation	863
Codes and Guidelines	866
Agenda 21 for the travel and tourism industry	867
Global code of ethics for tourism	867
National and regional tourism planning	875
Indicators of sustainable tourism	880
Voluntary initiatives for sustainable tourism	881

Compilation of good practices in sustainable development of tourism	882
Handbook on natural disaster reduction in tourist areas	884
An explanatory bibliography on sustainable tourism	884
Sustainable tourism development at specific destinations	884
WTO and Tackling Social, Cultural, Environmental and Economical Impact of Tourism	886
Task force to protect children from sexual exploitation in tourism	886
The global code of ethic for tourism	890
Silk Road as a link between the East and the West	890
Sustainable Tourism and Poverty Alleviation	891
International Year of Ecotourism	893
WTO and the Implementation of Agenda 21	895
General activities during Rio and Rio+10 Summits	895
WTO and CSD7	896
WTO and WSSD	900
International Year of Ecotourism (IYE) and Quebec World Summit	905
WTO/UNEP concept paper for IYE	906
UNEP/WTO supporting conferences	907
Summary report of the regional preparatory process presented in the Quebec Summit	925
The thematic working groups in the Quebec Summit	932
The Quebec Declaration on Ecotourism	943

Part IV: Survey on the International specialised Organisations and Regional Agreements vis-à-vis Nature Based Tourism

Convention on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Nature Based Tourism	950
Fourth session of Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice	961
Fifth Session of the Conference of the Parties (COP5)	963
Decision V/25 'biological diversity and tourism' as a key development	963
Decision V/24	966
Santo Domingo Workshop on Biological Diversity and Tourism	967
Draft International Guidelines on Sustainable Tourism Development in Vulnerable Areas	969
Sustainable Tourism in UNCTAD	987
Sustainable Tourism in the Context of LDCs	987
E-tourism in the Com. on Enterprise, Business Facilitation and Development of UNCTAD	995
Developing Countries' Tourism in the Commission on Trade in Goods and Services, and Commodities of UNCTAD	1000
Council of Europe Recommendation for Sustainable nature based tourism	1008

Appendix VII
Part I
Survey on International Developmental Instruments
vis-à-vis Sustainable Nature-Based Tourism

Introduction

The tourism industry, one of the fastest growing economic sectors in the global economy, has important economic, social, cultural and environmental impacts. Its continuing growth has important implications for the achievement of sustainable development. According to estimates of the World Tourism Organisation (WTO), the number of tourists can be expected to grow by 300 per cent (mean annual growth of 4.3 per cent) and international tourism earnings can be expected to grow by 500 per cent (mean annual growth of 6.7 per cent) by 2020 (E/CN.17/1999/6/Add.11). The tourism industry encompasses a large number of different travel-related activities, including, *inter alia*, hospitality enterprises, souvenir and craft businesses, travel agencies, transport enterprises, tour operators and tourist guides. The demand for new forms of tourism is growing in many countries, and presents new challenges for the tourism industry, national Governments and the international community.

In recent decades, tourism in the global economy has grown rapidly, consistently outstripping annual growth rates for world gross national product (GNP), world merchandise exports and world trade in services. As a result, the share of international tourism in global economic activity has risen steadily. In 1997, global tourism activities accounted for about 1.5 per cent of world GNP, 8 per cent of world merchandise exports by value and 35 per cent of the value of world exports of services. One of the major economic impacts of this rapid expansion in international tourism has been significant employment creation. The hotel accommodation sector alone provided around 11.3 million jobs worldwide in 1995. International tourism is expected to continue to grow just as fast in coming decades. Forecasts indicate that the number of people traveling internationally will increase from 612 million in 1997 to about 1.6 billion by 2020, and that earnings from international tourism will rise from \$443 billion in 1997 to more than \$2 trillion by 2020. (Tourism Highlights 1997, WTO, 1998)

The expansion of international tourism has made an important contribution to the development of several developing countries which have selected the sector as a priority. Tourism services can stimulate development in terms of income, employment, foreign exchange earnings, taxation and multiplier and spill over effects. Several developing countries have chosen the sector as a major driving force for development because: (i) the multiplier and spill over effects on the rest of the economy are felt sooner than those of other sectors; (ii) the sector is a large (or even the largest) generator of jobs (including for an unskilled or semi-skilled workforce); (iii) in some countries, tourism is the only development alternative available in the short to medium term. The

development impact of tourism has been largest in smaller economies, particularly small islands. In other cases, tourism has grown together with other sectors. In many other cases, particularly in larger and more diversified developing economies, tourism has not been regarded as a priority, with the result that relatively fewer public and private resources have been invested in it and, consequently, the sector has made a smaller contribution to development. (UNCTAD, TD/B/COM.1/EM.6/2)

How ever tourism is the only major sector in the international trade in services in which developing countries have consistently had surpluses compared with the rest of the world. Between 1980 and 1996 their positive balance in the travel account rose from \$4.6 billion to \$65.9 billion, driven by the growth of inbound tourism to countries in Asia and the Pacific and in Africa. Despite the impressive overall expansion of their tourism receipts, developing countries accounted for less than 30 per cent of world tourism receipts in 1996. [United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, "International trade in tourism-related services: issues and options for developing countries" (TD/B/COM.1/EM.6/2)].

Tourism, like other sectors, uses resources, generates wastes and creates environmental, cultural and social costs and benefits in the process. This chapter is due to review the international developmental negotiations and agreements on Ecotourism. The concept of ecotourism is relatively new in the international developmental documents.

After Stockholm 1974, the major international event in last decade was United Nations Conference on Environment and Development, held in Rio de Janeiro in June 1992. The principal outputs of the Rio Summit were the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), the Statement of Forest Principles, and Agenda 21- the 40-chapter programme of action for sustainable development.

Among other things, Agenda 21 called for the creation of a Commission on Sustainable Development to: ensure effective follow-up of UNCED; enhance international cooperation and rationalise the intergovernmental decision-making capacity; and examine progress in the implementation of Agenda 21 at the local, national, regional and international levels. In 1992, the 47th session of the UN General Assembly set out, in resolution 47/191, the terms of reference for the Commission, its composition, guidelines for the participation of NGOs, the organisation of work, its relationship with other UN bodies and Secretariat arrangements. The CSD held its first meeting in June 1993 and has since met annually. At its 47th session in 1992, the General Assembly adopted resolution 47/190, which called for a special session of the General Assembly to review and appraise Agenda 21 implementation five years after UNCED. The 19th Special Session of the UN General Assembly for the Overall Review and

Appraisal of Agenda 21, which was held at UN headquarters in New York from 23-27 June 1997, adopted a "Programme for the Further Implementation of Agenda 21." The document assessed

progress made since UNCED, examined implementation in areas requiring urgent action and means of implementation, and established the CSD's work programme for the period 1998-2002.

Ecotourism in the context of Small Island States

Sustainable and nature-based tourism were, for the first time, noted under the Item of Sustainable Development for Small Island Developing States (SIDS). During the process of Rio summit (UNCED), the idea of the importance of sustainability in SIDS were raised and positively considered by international community. Participants at the third meeting of the UNCED Preparatory Committee expressed considerable interest in the problems facing SIDS and requested the Secretary-General to add a programme area on islands to the oceans chapter (17) of Agenda 21. When Programme Area G, "Sustainable Development of Small Islands" was first presented at PrepCom IV in New York in March 1992, the delegates accepted it with comparatively little debate. The objective of the programme area was to adopt and implement sustainable development plans for islands, including the utilisation of marine and coastal resources, the maintenance of biodiversity and the improvement in the quality of life for islands peoples. The same content, therefore, reflected on chapter 17 of Agenda 21 and thereafter sustainable development of SIDS considered as an international sustainable development subject. Paragraph 17.131 of the final text of Agenda 21 stated that: "Small Island Developing States, with the support, as appropriate, of international organisation, whether sub regional, regional or global, should develop and strengthen inter-island, regional and interregional cooperation and information exchange, including periodic regional and global meetings on sustainable development of Small Island Developing States with the first global conference on the sustainable development of Small Island Developing States to be held in 1993."

The UN Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States was held in Bridgetown, Barbados, on 25 April- 6 May 1994, as proposed in Chapter 17 of Agenda 21. UN General Assembly resolution 47/189, which, based on Para 17.131 of Agenda 21, established the Conference, set the following objectives: review current trends in the socio-economic development of Small Island Developing States (SIDS); define a number of specific vulnerabilities of SIDS; define a number of specific actions and policies relating to environmental and development planning to be undertaken by these States, with help from the international community; identify elements that these States need to include in medium- and long-term sustainable development plans, recommend measures for enhancing indigenous capacity of these States; and review whether further institutional arrangements at the international level enable these States to give effect to the relevant provisions of Agenda 21. Prior to the global conference in Barbados, an organisational session was held at UN headquarters in New York on 15-16 April 1993, and two regional technical meetings were then held in Vanuatu for the Indian and Pacific Oceans from 31 May- 4 June 1993, and in Trinidad and Tobago for the Atlantic/Caribbean/Mediterranean from 28 June - 2 July 1993. These were followed by the first meeting of the PrepCom, which was

held in New York from 30 August – 10 September 1993, and discussed *inter alia* tourism. The PrepCom considered a draft programme of action for the sustainable development of SIDS. The programme of action was drafted by the members of the Alliance [Association] of Small Island States (AOSIS), and was submitted to the PrepCom by the Group of 77. This draft became the focus of discussion and negotiation. Section VIII of the report of PrepCom is on tourism resources and reads as; “Tourism is perceived as both an opportunity for SIDS development and an activity that must be integrated with environmental and cultural concerns. Competition for land resources is acute and tourism development should be neither disruptive nor detrimental to other valuable sectors. Integrated planning and policies are to be developed to ensure sustainable development through Environment Impact Assessments (EIAs), guidelines and standards. It is important to ensure that tourism and each island's environment and culture are mutually supportive” (report of first PrepCom of Barbados conference)

The resumed Preparatory Committee (PrepCom) for the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of SIDS met in a resumed session from 7-11 March 1994 at UN Headquarters in New York to complete preparations for the Conference. The resumed PrepCom endorsed previous endeavour of PrepCom on tourism and recommended it to the coming Barbados conference.

Barbados Declaration and Programme of Action (POA)

The Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States, held in 1994, adopted the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS to promote concrete action at the national, regional and international levels in 15 priority areas, with provisions for an initial review in 1996. The POA indicates specific actions that are necessary to address the special challenges faced by SIDS. Priority areas requiring action as identified by the POA include: climate change and sea level rise; natural and environmental disasters; management of wastes; coastal and marine resources; freshwater resources; land resources; energy resources; tourism resources; biodiversity resources; national institutions and administrative capacity; regional institutions and technical cooperation; transport and communication; science and technology; human resource development; and implementation, monitoring and review. In fulfilling those actions, the POA identified several cross-sectoral areas that required attention, including: capacity building, including human resource development; institutional development at the national, regional and international levels; cooperation in the transfer of environmentally sound technologies; trade and economic diversification; and finance.

The second document emanating from the Conference was the Barbados Declaration, which was intended as a statement of political will that underpins the precise agreements contained in the POA.

The Tourism Resources part of plan of action which reflected in part VIII Para 39 and 40 of Annex II of the Report of the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States (A/CONF.167/9), is almost first decision in its kind on United Nations major

conferences on development which proposed a 'basis for action' on tourism. Paragraph 39 highlighted the importance of tourism and its planning for small island states and stated "Tourism has contributed much to the development of Small Island Developing States and, as one of only a few development options for those small States, will continue to be very important for their future growth. It could also stimulate the development of other sectors. However, if not properly planned and managed, tourism could significantly degrade the environment on which it is so dependent. The fragility and interdependence of coastal zones and the unspoilt areas on which eco-tourism depend calls for careful management. One of the special tourist attractions of Small Island Developing States is the distinctiveness of their cultures. The diversity and fragility of their environments are reflected in the diversity and fragility of their cultures. The protection of the former is an important condition for the protection of the latter."

Paragraph 40 discussed the linkage between tourism and other developmental activities in small islands as well as the interaction of tourism with environmental and cultural values and pointed out that Ecotourism may create the opportunities for environmentally sustained of tourism development. It is also included that "Capital investment in tourism, particularly for the necessary infrastructure, is costly. There is usually great competition for land resources among tourism, agriculture and other land uses. Large increases in tourism and the over-development of tourism in particular areas or in whole islands could be environmentally and culturally disruptive and detrimental to other valuable sectors, such as agriculture. It is imperative, therefore, that the development of tourism be carefully planned, particularly in relation to compatible land uses, water management, coastal zone management and the development of parks and protected areas. Tourism, like all forms of development in the coastal zone, needs to be carefully integrated within the existing cultural and environmental constraints and opportunities present within Small Island Developing States. Eco-tourism, linking areas of high ecological value to low-impact tourism, may present important and environmentally sustainable opportunities for tourism development in Small Island Developing States". It continues with various kind of action at national, regional and international levels. The proper management and protection of Ecotourism attractions as well as involvement of local communities in identification and management of Ecotourism sits was proposed at national level. Setting regional harmonised standard and regulation for mutually supportiveness of tourism and environment and joint regional packaging and marketing was suggested for the region and finally international comprehensive understanding on both the values of tourism and fragile environment of small islands was envisaged. This part of POA reads as follows:

"-National action, policies and measures

- (i) Ensure that tourism development and environmental management are mutually supportive.
- (ii) Adopt integrated planning and policies to ensure sustainable tourism development, with particular attention to land-use planning and coastal zone management, requiring environmental impact assessments for all tourism projects; the continuous monitoring of the environmental impact

of all tourism activities; and the development of guidelines and standards for design and construction taking into account energy and water consumption, the generation and disposal of wastes and land degradation, the proper management and protection of eco-tourism attractions, and the carrying capacity of areas for tourism.

(iii) Identify and develop facilities to meet specific niche markets, particularly in eco-tourism, nature and cultural tourism, and involve local populations in the identification and management of natural protected areas set aside for eco-tourism.

(iv) Adopt measures to protect the cultural integrity of Small Island Developing States.

- Regional action

(i) Ensure that tourism and the environment are mutually supportive in cooperation schemes at the regional level including, where appropriate, through harmonising standards and regulations.

(ii) Encourage the assessment and development of potential complementarities among Small Island Developing States, including the development of packaged options covering several islands and joint marketing and training programmes.

(iii) Establish or strengthen regional mechanisms for the exchange of information on the development of a safe and sustainable tourism sector, using, as appropriate, the capacities of regional tourism organisation.

- International action

(i) Promote the recognition by the international community of both the value of tourism in Small Island Developing States and the fragility of the resources on which it depends, and of the resulting need for international support to encourage its sustainable development.

(ii) Facilitate efforts, at the national and regional levels, to assess the overall impact of the economic, social and ecological aspects of tourism, plan sustainable tourism and to develop eco- and cultural tourism.”

After the conclusion of the conference, the 49th session of General Assembly holds the debate on ‘the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of SIDS’ on its Agenda Item 89(e). The Plenary had before it the following documents: the report of the Conference, which took place from 25 April - 6 May 1994 (document A/CONF.167/9); the report of the Secretary-General on action taken to implement the programme of action (A/49/425 and Add.1); and studies by UNDP on the feasibility of developing SIDS/TAP, a technical assistance programme for SIDS to promote inter- and intra-regional cooperation for sustainable development (A/49/459), and on the feasibility of developing SIDS/NET, an information network for SIDS (A/49/414).

In his report (A/49/425 of 23 September 1994), the SG highlighted different activities of UN bodies and organs in various aspects of development of SIDS including Tourism. In part I section A subsection 3(h) ‘Tourism resources’ Para 41, UNEP reported that “ the operational activities of

Habitat comprise a number of national projects in the Caribbean, where tourism development is a component of national spatial development plans”.

In the same part section c ‘Specialised agencies’ subsection 3(g) ‘Tourism resources’ Para 98 World Health Organisation reported “ in cooperation with UNEP, WHO is developing guidelines on the health and environment aspects of tourism. The guidelines will address the special problems of Small Island developing States in this area. WHO is in the process of implementing a sub regional plan of action for environmental health and sustainable tourism development, which was formulated in 1993 by the Regional Office for the Americas in collaboration with the Organisation of American States, several sub regional institutions and the Governments of the Caribbean”.

In subsection 10(e) ‘Tourism resources’ Para 125, World Meteorological Organisation reported “WMO is working closely with the World Tourism Organisation (WTO) in the development of environmental indicators and guidelines to support sustainable tourism, with attention being paid to the case of Small Island Developing States. One aspect of this development relates to the mitigation of the impact of natural disasters in tourism areas and, together with WTO, WMO is currently finalizing a handbook on natural disaster reduction in tourist areas”.

In the Activities of Regional Commission’s part of the report, subsection 1(c) ‘Tourism resources’ Para 166, ESCAP reported “Special efforts are being made to assist Pacific island countries in strengthening national capabilities to create a favourable investment climate in the tourism sector. These include studies on sustainable tourism development in Pacific island countries and on tourism investment (Samoa and Vanuatu), as well as a feasibility study on the Arona Valley tourism development projects (Papua New Guinea). A workshop on integrated tourism planning in Pacific island countries is planned to be held at Port Vila in early 1995. A project proposal is under preparation for bilateral extra budgetary funding in 1995 to carry out a study on land tenure issues related to tourism development in Pacific island countries. At the request of the Government, the secretariat rendered, in June 1994, advisory services on resort lease agreements to the Maldives”.

In subsection 2(c) of the same part para183, the Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean reported: “ECLAC and several regional institutions have developed a Caribbean strategy on environmental health and sustainable tourism. An ECLAC proposal for a code of conduct and environmental rating scheme for Caribbean hotels has been accepted by the Caribbean Hotel Association and is currently being implemented. ECLAC is also preparing a textbook on sustainable tourism in small island countries”.

The General Assembly, therefore, at its forty-ninth session, considered the Conference and related documents and reports, under agenda item 89 (e) and in its resolution 49/122 endorsed the outcomes of the Conference, including the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States. The General Assembly also requested the CSD to carry out, in

1996, an initial review of the progress achieved and steps taken to implement the programme of action for sustainable development of Small Island. Para 11 of RES/49/122 is as follows;

“Requests the Commission on Sustainable Development:

(a) To make arrangements for monitoring and reviewing, in a distinct and identifiable manner, and in the context of its multi-year thematic programme and its annual consideration of cross-sectoral issues, the implementation of the provisions agreed upon in the Programme of Action;

(b) To carry out, in 1996, an initial review of the progress achieved and steps taken to implement the Programme of Action;

(c) To recommend, in the context of the overall review of Agenda 21 in 1997, specific modalities for a full review of the Programme of Action in 1999, including the question of convening a second global conference, in accordance with chapter 17, section G, of Agenda 21”. The Assembly in the same resolution, requested the Secretary-General, among other things, to report to it at its fiftieth session on action taken by the organs, organisation and bodies of the United Nations system to implement the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States. It also wished, in that regard, to invite those organs, organisation and bodies of the United Nations system that had not already done so to consider the establishment of focal points and other similar mechanisms to enable them to respond effectively in the implementation of the Programme of Action.

The GA also adopted resolution 49/100 ‘Specific measures in favour of island developing countries’ in relation to other development and within, recalled its resolutions 45/202 and 47/186, recognised developmental problems facing SIDS, welcomed adoption the POA and the Declaration of Barbados, noted the SG on a development strategy for island developing countries, Called upon the international community to implement all the commitments achieved and the recommendations made at the Barbados Conference, requested the SG to report to the GA at its fifty-first session on the implementation of the present resolution, Invited the CSD to convene, during its session in 1996, a high-level panel to discuss the challenges faced by island developing countries, particularly in the area of external trade, and to assist the Commission in its review of the implementation of the POA agreed at the Barbados Conference, and also invites the UNCTAD to organise that panel in cooperation with the Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development; requested the SG to continue to monitor and review in a coordinated manner, inter alia, within the Inter-Agency Committee on Sustainable Development and the secretariats of the CSD and UNCTAD, the concerns and needs of island developing countries.

Fiftieths UN General Assembly (GA 50) and CSD3

In response to GA resolution 49/122, and during its fiftieth session, the General Assembly (GA) considered the implementation of the outcome of Barbados conference on sustainable development in small islands at its provisional agenda Item 98 (e) to evaluate the Report of the Secretary-General (SG) on the action taken by the organs, organisation and bodies of the UN

system to implement the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS (A/50/422 on 21 September 1995).

The report has been prepared in response to paragraph 128 of the Programme of Action, and represents an incremental update. It does not repeat any information that is already contained in the previous report of Secretary General in 49th session of General Assembly (A/49/425 and Add.1).

The report contains three main parts:

Part I – Plans and Programme, Part II – Institutional Arrangements and Part III-Concluding Observations.

In Parts I and II, the Secretary General called UN and UN-bodies, including funds and programmes, implementing agencies, and other organs as well as specialised agencies, to report their programmes for implementation of the Barbados declaration and action plan in due term. Part III details his conclusions. In the first part, section A 'United Nations' subsection 3, Para 20-24, the United Nations Environment Programme reported that:“(UNEP) has incorporated many of the special needs and vulnerabilities of Small Island Developing States into its 1996-1997 work programme, which was adopted at the eighteenth session of the UNEP Governing Council, in May 1995.

More specifically, in its decision 18/34 on Small Island Developing States, the Council welcomed the action already taken by the Executive Director, including the establishment of a focal point and task force within UNEP to co-ordinate UNEP activities relevant to the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States. It also urged the Executive Director to ensure that, in implementing the work programme agreed by the Council, appropriate attention be given to the needs and vulnerabilities of Small Island Developing States. In addition, it encouraged an integrated approach within UNEP to addressing issues of relevance to Small Island Developing States through the effective use and involvement of the Task Force in both programme and policy development.

The 1996-1997 UNEP work programmes gives priority to translating the Programme of Action into mechanisms that can help Small Island Developing States put in place policies and strategies to achieve sustainable economic and human development. While still undergoing further development and review, the work programme has identified the following programme elements in which special consideration will be given to Small Island Developing States: (a) caring for freshwater, coastal and marine environments, and (b) caring for biological resources.

UNEP recognises that the development challenges being faced by SIDS can only be tackled through an integrated approach to the management of human activities and their supporting resource base. UNEP and the United Nations Centre for Human Settlements (Habitat) will continue to make a joint effort to promote integrated island management in SIDS, while developing closer ties with the programmes of other United Nations bodies that have similar goals.

Current and planned UNEP activities and programmes are set out below within each of the priority areas of the Programme of Action. In this subsection, under the topic of Tourism Resources in Para(g)34, UNEP reported that "New activities that are presently being considered within the context of the 1996-1997 UNEP work programme include: (a) training workshops on environmental management of hotels, and (b) training workshops on environmentally sound forms of tourism development. These would be based on existing programmes that will be modified to meet the special needs and vulnerabilities of Small Island Developing States. Other activities related to tourism are included under Coastal and marine resource and Freshwater resource".

The United Nations Centre for Human Settlements included, in subsection 4. (f) 47 'Tourism resources', the same part of the report: "The dramatic increase of tourism in Small Island Developing States is rapidly changing traditional development patterns and is exerting additional pressure on their resource base and the environment. Habitat operational activities support the formulation of land-use and settlement development plans in Caribbean small island States, giving special attention to the effect of tourism on land use, settlement planning and infrastructure requirements".

In section C of the same part, under 'Specialised Agencies' in subsection 1(d) 89 'Tourism resources', FAO reported: "within the context of sustainable agriculture and rural development, the diversification of primary production and income generation are high on the agenda. The vital link between tourism and agriculture is being explored for promoting a regional response from the sector to meet the standards of quality, quantity and regularity of supplies of agricultural commodities to the tourism sector".

In the second subsection, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation reported: "UNESCO aims to assist member States in introducing integrated coastal zone planning and management so as to resolve conflicts in the utilisation of natural resources and to mitigate the physical and social vulnerability of small islands. In this connection, the project builds on co-operative activities among international and intergovernmental UNESCO programmes in the environmental and social sciences, namely, IOC programmes, the Man and Biosphere Programme, the International Hydrological Programme, the International Geological Correlation Programme and the Programme on Management of Social Transformations. In the framework of the Caribbean Coastal Marine Productivity network, research is being carried out on the status of the coastal ecosystems in the region, for example concerning the relation between over fishing and the degradation of coral reefs. The Coast and Beach Stability Project for the Lesser Antilles continued its support for the establishment and supervision of coastal monitoring programmes for several small islands" subsection 2 (c) 98 and 99 'coastal and marine resources'.

In subsection 4 Para 112, the World Bank reported " Since the adoption of the Programme of Action in 1994, the World Bank has provided financing in the amount of \$186.3 million to 21 Small Island Developing States through both World Bank and GEF projects. The focus of these projects is consonant with provisions in the Programme of Action related to climate change,

energy efficiency, including renewable energy sources and related technologies, waste and watershed management, biodiversity protection, regional institutional cooperation, human resource development, technical assistance and monitoring. In addition, the Bank is actively involved in major international initiatives for coral reef protection and management and the adoption of a strategic approach to marine biodiversity conservation within the framework of protected area management. Information provided by the World Bank on project-related activities is contained in an addendum (A/50/422/Add.1)''.

In subsection 9, plus normal and routing programme of the International Maritime Organisation, IMO reported "Other measures of direct relevance to Small Island Developing States are the establishment of regional pollution combating centres, direct assistance in the event of serious spills involving polluting substances, and the conduct of seminars, workshops and courses on various subjects relating to maritime safety and the protection of the marine environment. Work is under way to develop a liability insurance scheme in cases where damage is suffered through hazardous and noxious substances carried by ships. Efforts are continuing to establish regional maritime coordination networks in eastern and southern Africa and the South Pacific. Such networks, if established, would benefit a number of small island developing countries'' Para 122.

In section D of part I of the report, the UN regional commissions described their programmes. In subsection 1 (b) Para. 141 'Tourism resources', ESCAP reported: " Special efforts are being made to assist Pacific island countries in strengthening national capabilities in integrated tourism planning. A workshop on integrated tourism planning in Pacific island countries was held at Port Vila, Vanuatu, in June 1995. Guidelines on integrated tourism planning in Pacific island countries will be completed in 1995. Efforts continue to assist Pacific island countries in strengthening national capabilities to create a favourable investment climate in the tourism sector. A study entitled "Investment and economic cooperation in the tourism sector in Pacific island countries", as well as studies on foreign investment in the tourism sector in Samoa and Vanuatu, was published in 1995. A project to undertake a study on land-tenure issues related to tourism development in Pacific island countries has been prepared and is awaiting funding''.

Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean ECLAC in Para (c) 153 'Tourism resources' reported "work in this area continues as reported previously (A/49/425 and Add.1). Additional work in sustainable tourism includes the preparation of chapters of a textbook and research on economic instruments for tourism development''.

The Economic Commission for Africa reported, in subsection 3 para162, on its joint programme with UNDP on programme of action on the "ongoing ECA framework agenda for building and utilising critical capacities in Africa. The focus will be on capacity building in (a) environmental economics and resource accounting; (b) impact assessment; (c) development of the relevant legislative frameworks; (d) vulnerability assessment; and (e) resource mobilisation. Consultations are also ongoing between ECA and UNDP for a joint regional workshop on unmet priorities within the Programme of Action in Africa. A regional workshop will be held during 1995 to

examine the report on unmet priority assessment being prepared by UNDP and a framework for an African regional programme of action”.

In the II part of report “Institutional Arrangements” section A subsection I, UN Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development, in Para 165 – 166 reported: “ The responsibilities related to the implementation of the Programme of Action and follow-up to the Global Conference are being carried out by the Division for Sustainable Development of the Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development.

In accordance with General Assembly resolution 49/122, a Small Island Developing States Unit has been established within the Division for Sustainable Development. Essentially, the Unit is responsible for four broad functions: (a) to provide substantive secretariat support to intergovernmental and inter-agency processes related to the monitoring, review and coordination of the implementation of the Programme of Action; (b) to act as a liaison or focal point for Governments and organs, programmes and agencies of the United Nations system on matters related to the follow-up to the Global Conference and the implementation of the Programme of Action; (c) to prepare reports for the Commission on Sustainable Development and other relevant bodies on the implementation of the Programme of Action; and (d) to provide support, as appropriate, to other activities emanating from the Programme of Action.... The Department is coordinating the implementation of the Programme of Action through the Inter-agency Committee on Sustainable Development which, at its 6th meeting (Geneva, 12-14 July 1995), took decisions on the modalities of system- wide coordination on the recommendations of the Department”.

UNEP in subsection 3 para168 reported “No new institutional arrangements have been put in place since those previously reported (see A/49/425 and Add.1). UNEP designated a focal point with respect to the Global Conference and its follow-up activities, including implementation of the Programme of Action, in 1993, and immediately following the Global Conference a joint UNEP/Habitat task force was established. It is anticipated that the task force will oversee the development of a programmematic approach to the implementation of Small Island Developing States activities within the 1996-1997 work programme of UNEP”.

In Part III, ‘Concluding observations’, the Secretary General reported as follows;

“192. The responses summarised above indicate that the relevant organisation and bodies of the United Nations system are committed to the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States. They have incorporated the elements of the Programme of Action that fall within their respective mandates into their work programmes, and have begun to implement projects to meet the priorities identified in the Programme of Action. The scope of activities undertaken varies among the different organisation and bodies depending on the extent to which the priority areas of the Programme of Action are covered by their respective mandates.

193. The information contained in the present report and an addendum (A/50/422/Add.1) on the plans and programmes of the United Nations system, which is additional to that contained in the

previous report (A/49/425 and Add.1), shows that several organisation and bodies of the United Nations system have reformulated their work programmes in direct response to the provisions of the Programme of Action. It also shows that several of them have expanded their plans and programmes since their submissions for the preparation of the previous report. The present report contains information on the activities of several organisation - UPU, ITC, IDNDR/Department of Humanitarian Affairs, IFAD, UNU and INSTRAW - for the first time; many of those activities represent new initiatives under the Programme of Action.

194. The ongoing and planned activities of the organisation and bodies of the United Nations system, taken together, cover all the programme areas - sectoral and cross-sectoral - of the Programme of Action. In multi-sectoral areas, such as tourism, while the activities of no single organisation or body cover all dimensions, their cumulative activities - if sustained and adequately funded - will go a long way towards meeting the provisions of the Programme of Action.

195. In the area of regional coordination of the implementation of the Programme of Action, four regional bodies - ECE, ESCAP, ECLAC and ECA - have reported that they have taken initiatives to fulfil their mandates. ESCAP and ECLAC have held regional meetings to identify immediate regional priorities, and have established coordination mechanisms in collaboration with regional intergovernmental organisation. ECA has reported that it is in consultation with UNDP at the country level regarding possible joint activities to identify, through national workshops in the five African Small Island Developing States, ways to build human and institutional capacities, as well as a possible joint regional workshop on current priorities under the Programme of Action. Regarding coordination at the international level, the Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development has established mechanisms for system-wide coordination through IACSD.

196. As to specific responsibilities under the Programme of Action, UNDP has reported that it is actively pursuing the refinement and operationalisation of SIDS/NET and SIDS/TAP in consultation with Small Island Developing States and other interested parties, and the Department has taken the initiative, in collaboration with UNCTAD, to organise an in-session panel discussion on trade-related issues affecting Small Island Developing States and to explore approaches to the development of a vulnerability index.

197. It is expected that the organisation and bodies of the United Nations system will further sharpen the focus of their activities under the Programme of Action on the basis of decisions taken by the Commission on Sustainable Development at its fourth session, in 1996.

198. Of the organisation and bodies included in the present report, nine have reported that they will implement the Programme of Action through existing institutional arrangements. UNCTAD and ECA have indicated that they need additional resources to establish appropriate new institutional mechanisms. All the others have established new mechanisms, which vary among the different organisation and bodies, to oversee and co-ordinate the implementation of the Programme of Action''.

The GA50 considered the report of SG and endorsed it in its resolution (A/RES/50/116).

The GA50 in its 96th plenary meeting on 20 December 1995 adapted resolution A/RES/50/116, 'Implementation of the Global Conference on Sustainable Development of SIDS'. In the aforementioned resolution, the GA recalled its previous resolutions 49/122 and 49/100 of 19 December 1994 and took note with appreciation of the SG report (A/50/422), and welcomed the action has taken by department for policy coordination and sustainable development of UN to support the system-wide implementation of programme of action, took note of administrative and institutional activities to implement the programme of action (POA) such as establishment of SIDS Unit in the Coordination and Sustainable Development Department, enabling regional commissions, interim measures to strengthen the capacity of UNCTAD to enable it to implement POA, welcomed the progress made by UNDP and invited CSD4 to consider SIDS in its debate on coastal zone management, welcomed the progress made by UNCTAD to implement POA both in Technical assistance Programme (SIDSTAP) and information Network (SIDSNET) for SIDS, included in the provisional agenda of its fifty-first session, under the Item 'environment and sustainable development' the sub-Item entitled 'Implementation of the outcome of the global conference on the sustainable development of SIDS', requested that, SG submit at GA53 a progress report on the plans, programmes and projects for sustainable development of SIDS including envisage five year programme, decided to include the SIDS in its addenda of GA51 and requested SG to submit a report on action taken to implement the resolution 50/116 at GA51. Based on A/RES/49/122 paragraph 11, CSD3 put the progress in the implementation of Programme of Action (POA) of SIDS in the provisional agenda of CSD4. Para 11 of resolution 49/122 is mandate reference for CSD to deal with the full implementation of Barbados POA and declaration in SIDS. Hereby CSD was involved, for the first time to address Para 17.131 of agenda 21 and indirectly to deal with sustainable and nature based tourism.

CSD3 therefore recommended that ECOSOC approve the provisional agenda for its fourth session (CSD4) including progress in implementation of the programme of action for sustainable development of SIDS (chapter I section f para7 of E/CN.17/1995/36).

Fifthly First UN General Assembly (GA 51) and CSD4

To meet the request of GA resolution 49/122 of 19 December 1994, the Inter-Agency Committee of Sustainable Development, at its meeting in July 1995, decided that a separate report should be prepared on some of issues identified in the Programme of Action, such as, *inter alia*, tourism resources. This report, "Sustainable Tourism Development in SIDS" (E/CN.17/1996/20/Add.3), was annexed to the report of Secretary General on "Progress in the implementation of the Programme of Action for sustainable development of Small Island Developing States" (E/CN.17/1996/20) in February 1996. The main report was prepared to meet the request of GA in paragraph 18 of its resolution 49/122.

The main report of Secretary General (CN/17/1996/20) pulls together the seven themes including sustainable tourism, and is reflected on the basis for action agreed upon in the programme of action. In each area, including tourism, task managers from various UN bodies serve to enhance the substance of report.

Section II of the report considers sustainable tourism as the second theme. This section contains two parts. Part A presents the major additional findings and the analysis provided by the task managers in the area of tourism. Part B of report contains a menu of recommendations that would enhance sustainable development in the tourism area.

Part A 'Major additional findings' Para 10-11 of sustainable tourism section of report (CN.17/1996/20) is as follows:

"10. Looking to the future, there are indications that the development of tourism in SIDS will be subject to two current global trends. First, global travel and tourism output is expected to grow more rapidly in coming years, outpacing the growth of world economic output. This trend is expected to reinforce current trends in SIDS. Secondly, tourism development in SIDS will be shaped by the growing interest in, and demand for, specialty tourism, particularly nature tourism propelled by growing environmental awareness.

11. From the point of view of the future course of action, the following findings on the economic, social and environmental aspects of tourism in SIDS are worthy of note: (a) Economic aspects: (i) Generally, the leakages through imports out of direct tourist expenditures to meet the needs of the tourism sector itself are extremely high in SIDS; (ii) the daily expenditures per visitor vary from country to country but are generally low; (iii) excessive reliance on tourism carries many risks, including excessive exposure to international economic shocks, and weakening of inter-sectoral linkages which, inter alia, reduces the potential benefits from tourism; (b) Social aspects: Rapid development of tourism, particularly mass tourism, can have significant adverse social impacts on small islands. The following are of particular significance: (i) persistent inflationary pressures pose the danger of significantly lowering the standard of living of high proportions of island populations; (ii) the social carrying capacity of small islands quickly reaches its limits of tolerance as the ratio of visitors to the local population rises; (iii) prolonged growth of mass tourism is accompanied by increased incidence of crime, and spread of drugs and diseases, including the human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS), both of which can devastate the small populations of small islands; (c) Environmental aspects: Intensive tourism development and tourism activities, particularly if not properly planned and managed, can very quickly cause environmental damages in SIDS. The most notable impacts are observable in (i) land degradation and loss of terrestrial and marine biodiversity; (ii) increased levels of pollution from dumping of solid and liquid wastes generated by tourism activities on land and in the sea; (iii) coastal zone degradation through intensive sand mining, removal of mangrove forests and destruction of coral reefs, soil erosion and destruction of landscape owing to tourism facilities and

associated infrastructures; (iv) excessive groundwater pumping and consequent lowering of water tables to meet the demand of the water-intensive tourism industry for freshwater.”

Part B “Recommendations for action” of the same section at the national level had three topics. First topic, ‘Policies and measures for enhancing economic benefits’ contain policy and information sections.

On Policy (Para 12), the report recommended, “Enhance the economic benefits from tourism by:

(i) diversifying the tourism product, enhancing its quality and increasingly targeting the upper segment of the tourist market; (ii) strengthening linkages of other economic sectors with tourism so that domestic production can viably provide for the consumer needs of tourists to the maximum extent possible; (iii) increasing the participation of nationals in the tourism sector by encouraging domestic investments and, as necessary, joint ventures with foreign investors so as to minimise the proportion of profits generated by the tourism sector that are repatriated by foreign investors; (iv) encouraging the maximum use of local materials in resort construction so as to reduce the imports of construction materials; (v) increasing investments in the training of local people for the tourist industry in order to reduce dependence on foreign entities, particularly in the area of overseas promotion and marketing, ground handling and domestic operation of tourism services; and (vi) minimising financial incentives granted to foreign investors, by reducing national risks.”

On Information (para13), the report recommended “Invest adequately in the collection of data on all relevant indicators of benefits and costs necessary for costs-benefits analysis in order to be able to carry out systematic evaluations of the contribution of the tourism sector to the domestic economy in relation to other sectors and in relation to social and environmental costs.”

The second topic ‘Measures for coping with the adverse social and cultural impacts of tourism’ contains policy, public education and security parts. On policy (para14), the report recommended “Make efforts to keep the ratio of the visitor population to the local population at an acceptable level through appropriate diversification of the tourism product and the tourist market, particularly if mass tourism has been promoted for a long time in the past”

On public education (para15), the report recommended “Develop and put in place effective educational programmes to raise the awareness of the local population about the good and bad aspects of tourism. Such programmes need to emphasise tourism as cultural exchange, counter undesirable demonstration effects of tourists’ lifestyles on the local culture and consumer habits and emphasise the pernicious consequences of the spread of drugs and diseases, particularly HIV/AIDS.”

On security (para16), the report recommended “Strengthen security measures country-wide against crime and drugs, particularly in areas most frequented by tourists.”

The third topic ‘Measures for coping with environmental impacts’ contains project appraisal, economic instruments, and sustainable marketing.

On Project Appraisal, the report suggested: “Develop a multidisciplinary approach for rigorous vetting of tourism development proposals, taking into account prospective cumulative impacts of

tourism development, and establish environmental standards for approval of projects.” On economic instruments report has three suggestions “(i) Review and revise, as appropriate, existing taxes and subsidies to ensure that they are in fact conducive to sustainable development, and develop additional economic instruments to better internalise environmental costs, for example, fiscal incentives or grants or loans for creating or improving the necessary environmental infrastructure, such as sanitation plants, existing facilities and deposit-refund systems for containers of beverages and other canned goods to discourage littering; (ii) develop and impose appropriate user fees for the use of national terrestrial and marine parks and reserves, and earmark the accrued receipts for purposes of improvement and management of sensitive areas; (iii) require the tourism industry, through appropriate user charges, to meet the full cost of freshwater it uses, and to contribute adequately to solid waste management and cleaning of beaches.”

On sustainable marketing (para19), the report recommended “Define and implement a sustainable marketing strategy in cooperation with all partners involved in the tourism industry.” At the regional level, the report takes sustainable marketing and financial measures in to account. On sustainable marketing (Para 20), the report recommended “Define and implement a sustainable marketing strategy at the regional level.”

On financial incentives to foreign investors (para21), the report recommended “Adopt uniform incentives at the regional level to reduce competition among SIDS to attract foreign capital.”

At the international level, two areas were discussed, financial and technical assistance and code of conduct for tourism.

On financial and technical assistance (para22), the report recommended “(a) Provide international assistance for the development of basic physical infrastructures such as airports and harbours, roads, telecommunications systems and freshwater systems to SIDS, especially the least developed among them; (b) provide assistance to regional tourism organisation in order to increase their effectiveness.”

On code of conduct (para23), the report recommended “Formulate, ratify and enforce a universal or at least a regional code of conduct for the tourism sector at the intergovernmental level.”

The Addendum III to the report of SG on progress in implementation of the programme of action for the sustainable development of SIDS (E/CN.17/1996/20/Add.3) addressed the sustainable tourism development in SIDS and could be considered as a unique development in its kind. For the first time SG presented an addendum report on sustainable tourism to the CSD. Considering the nature of tourism in SIDS, this report should be observed as a report on nature based tourism.

The Addendum report has an introductory and six parts. The first part of the report presents an analysis of the main social, economic and environmental impacts of tourism development on Small Island States, along with a discussion of the emerging trends and principal risks involved in over-reliance on the sector. The rest of the report highlights country experiences, the role of major groups, including the private sector, some key policy issues in sustainable tourism development,

and experiences and activities in international cooperation in promoting the goals and objectives of sustainable tourism development in SIDS. It concludes with a brief summary of major findings whilst recommendations for the future course of tourism development in SIDS are contained in the report of the Secretary-General (E/CN.17/1996/20).

In section A, 'Economic impact' of first part in Para 3 to 26 the SG highlighted importance and linkages of nature based tourism with the other economic sector of SIDS and its contribution to the growth of all tourism-related sectors, if properly integrated to the national development plans. The main objectives and direct effects of tourism as a growth sector are to accelerate the growth of national incomes, gainful employment, foreign exchange earnings and government tax revenues as report pointed out. Tourism is likely play significant role in growth and development of SIDS. In some 29 SIDS, the gross direct receipts from tourism as a percentage of GDP ranged from a meagre 1 per cent to 88 percent on the average during the period 1989-1993, (annex table 1 of Add. report). In these countries, tourism and tourism-related activities has become the mainstay of the economy. In 1989, average daily expenditures per visitor for 23 SIDS ranged from \$37 to \$226. The figures are even more divers and higher in 1992 (annex table 3 of Add report). Most of SIDS examined a fast pace of growth of gross tourism receipts. During the period 1989-1993, in 24 out of 34, the growth of gross receipts from tourism ranged from 2 per cent to 61 per cent per annum on the average (the same annex table). In the report, tourism considered as an increasingly important source of foreign exchange earnings. During the period 1980-1992, from a sample of 26 SIDS, the percentage increase in the ratio of foreign exchange earnings from tourism to total export earnings ranged from 2 per cent to 453 per cent (annex table 3 of Add report). But the Leakages of foreign exchange earnings in SIDS are also too high to contribute a significant net earning to national income. Leakage is varied from %59 to %11 in 17 countries in 1992. the primary leakages in SIDS were imports of materials and equipment for construction, imports of consumer goods, particularly food and drink, repatriation of profits earned by foreign investors, overseas promotional expenditures and amortization of external debt incurred in the development of hotels and resorts.

The relative share of tourism in employment has risen and the impact of tourism on employment in SIDS, where tourism makes an important contribution to national income, is considerable. Tourism generated 27,500 jobs in direct employment in 1991 in the 10 South Pacific countries. Overall employment in Cyprus exhibited an upward trend during the period 1980-1992, with the fastest growth occurring in tourism and related services. Employment in these occupations doubled from 33,000 jobs in 1980 to 64,000 in 1992. In 1993, contribution of tourism to employment in Malta was about 17 per cent of the labour force. In Mauritius and Seychelles during the period 1990-1994, the share of direct employment in tourism in total employment rose from 3.4 per cent to 4.8 per cent in Mauritius and remained stable at about 18 per cent in Seychelles. In the report the low level of wages in tourism and its effects on related sectors was discussed. The role of tourism in up-market tourism, like agriculture and fishery, for adequately

meet tourism demand for consumer goods from domestic sources and its effects to obtain a slower rate of growth but higher-spending tourists was mentioned. It should be noted that the investment in tourism produces a higher and faster increase in employment than equal investment in other activities. Tourism creates employment directly in the tourism industry as well as in industries providing goods and services to the tourism industry. In 15 Caribbean SIDS there were equivalents of 1.15 jobs per hotel room in 1994.

At the regional level, the development of the tourism industry is more advanced in the Mediterranean and Caribbean SIDS than in those located in the Asia-Pacific and African regions. The first two have an advantageous location in the vicinity of high-income European and North American countries. Most of them experienced brisk expansion of tourism in the past and benefited from a considerable amount of foreign investments as well as stability of general economic developments. Income from tourism features considerably in their GNPs, and foreign exchange earning is high in most of them. The level of development of tourism and its contribution to economic development is more uneven and generally low in SIDS of the Asia-Pacific region. Development of tourism in this region has been slow because of low levels of development of physical infrastructures and human resources in most of them, isolation from the major sources of tourists, problems of communal landownership, extremely weak aviation and communication links, and heavy reliance on foreign investment, with foreign investors concentrating on the most profitable destinations. In the African region, considerable progress has been achieved in tourism development in the Seychelles and Mauritius. In the others, tourism development is in an incipient stage, because of the slow pace of general economic development, and of the development of social and physical infrastructures and human resources in particular, as well as the inadequate importance attached to tourism as a growth sector in the past.

In new and emerging trends, the report predicted that the future development of tourism in SIDS will be affected by two principals. One of them is the growing interest in, and demand for, specialty tourism and diversification of tourism packaging in order to remain competitive by emphasising other nature assets than the beach and the sea. The other principal is growth of travel and tourism in 1995-2005. It was predicted that the rates of 5.5 per cent in real terms create 12.5 million new jobs per year.

The average rate of annual growth in 1995-2005, 3.6 per cent for the Caribbean and 8 per cent for Asia-Pacific SIDS was predicted in the report. For sustaining Caribbean tourism, the following areas had been identified: maintenance of product quality, including the integrity of the natural environment; enhancement of profitability; provision of air access at competitive rates from major tourist markets; provision of a secure environment for the industry by combating crime and drugs; strengthening inter-sectoral linkages and creation of a regional competitive force through regional collaboration, particularly in the area of overseas marketing and promotion; and creation of social acceptability of the further expansion of tourism by the local population. The requirements of the growth of tourism in Asia and Pacific SIDS are included; shortages of trained staff; inadequacy

and infrequency of air transportation; low level and quality of supporting infrastructure - airport facilities, tour operation, restaurants; low budgets for marketing and promotion; lack of investment capital; and restriction on landownership. By far the greatest challenge for the expansion of tourism in the South Pacific Small Island Developing States will be their ability to achieve international competitiveness.

In Malta, Cyprus, the Seychelles and Mauritius, the main policy is to achieve a slower rate of visitors with the emphasis on higher-spending tourists in order to deal with health and environmental and other adverse impacts of previous rapid expansion and opted for up-market tourism.

Over-reliance on mass tourism is risky because of adverse impacts of possible economic recession in industrialized countries and the impact of natural disasters like tropical storms and cyclones on the tourism market of SIDS. Fast growth of tourism income could affect monetary policy of SIDS and destabilize the market. If not properly dealt, it may have adverse consequences on international competitiveness and future investment. On a local scale, this also may affect the price of the real estate with a quick rise beyond the reach of local population.

In section B, 'Social and cultural impacts' of the first part in Para 27 to 30, the SG reported that the consequences of sudden and rapid development of tourism on the local communities by upward pressure of land prices and foodstuffs and household items in the long-run can cause the reduction of living standards and social disruptions. The lack of access to the natural resources because of exclusive rights granted to developers, over-ratio of tourists on local population, local problems cause by local concentrations of tourists (like increased incidents of drugs and crimes and spread of diseases together with other overcrowding problems) may exceed social tolerance limits, and cause social rejection of the growth of tourism. Sun, sea and sand tourism in particular is sometimes believed to exert a negative socio-cultural influence on SIDS. Tourism can assist in preserving customs and cultures by providing incentives to invest in and promote them, if properly managed and promoted. An important factor in sustainable tourism development in SIDS is the tourist-carrying capacity of these societies, in both environmental and social terms.

In section C, 'Environmental Impacts' of the first part in Para 31 to 37, the SG reported that intensive tourism development and tourism activities often have very quick and severe impacts on SIDS' environments, because of fragile ecosystems and the limited scope for action in development activities as well as the development of tourism infrastructures and facilities, and the impacts of tourists' activities. Urban development of agricultural lands, deforestation and intensified or unsuitable use of land cause erosion, as well as loss of biological diversity, are among other impacts. In many SIDS, ecosystems are threatened as a result of the development of tourism. Treatment and disposal of liquid and solid wastes caused by tourists as well as ships constitute a major problem. Pollution of scarce inland freshwater resources and the loss of valuable marine life, the destruction of coral reefs and the silting and erosion of coastal beaches, are damages of mismanagements of waste in SIDS. In many of SIDS, the previously unchecked

construction of tourism facilities along their coastlines, beach destruction caused by intensive sand mining for tourism-related construction, the destruction of coral reefs by sewage and other types of pollution, beach destruction and coastal degradation caused by building activities close to the costs, removal of valuable mangrove forests, indiscriminate diving ,fishing and boating activities associated with tourism contributed to adverse or irreversible impacts on the environments of SIDS. The impacts of freshwater resources and climate change and sea level rise on tourism were elaborated in Para 36 and 37.

In Part II of the report, 'Matters related to policies, finance, capacity building, technology and infrastructure' section A 'at the national level' the following issues are addressed:

1 - Development policy framework;

- Establishing tourism master plan with links to national development plans
- Creation of national sustainable development commission or national sustainable tourism commission
- Tourism development plans and policies
- Evolving long term national policy for sustainable tourism development with emphasis on environmental conservation
- Matters requiring focus are '(a) creating and improving conditions for attracting foreign investment in tourism; (b) marketing and promotion of tourism to achieve maximum growth in arrivals; and (c) designing the type of legislative framework that would further those objectives'.

2 – Legislative framework;

- Requirement of effective legislation framework for encouraging sustainable tourism
- Improving standards for land use in tourism development, tourism facilities and investment in tourism.
- Enactment effectiveness of environmental legislation, if in existence
- Lack of standardisation of legislation and the obscurity of regulations
- Needs of regulations for coastal zone management and the creation of protected areas

3 – Investment

- SIDS balance efforts on the tax breaks, tax holidays, building concessions and other incentives to foreign investors to attract them
- Imposing environmental sustainability conditions on foreign investors
- A need for SIDS to jointly adopt uniform incentive and environmental policies, at least at the regional level
- Intensifying the efforts at encouraging local investment and participation in the sector
- The encouragement of joint ventures of foreign and local investment
- A need for increased investments in the training of nationals for greater participation in tourism
- Developing greater NGO's/government partnerships in tourism development

4 - Human and institutional capacity

- Immediate attention to implement, an integrated approach to tourism planning and environmental conservation, coupled with training at all levels, especially in government agencies
- Capacity building on monitoring system
- Building up on institutional capacity
- The shortcomings of capacity could be better addressed through greater regional collaboration

5 – Infrastructure

- The main physical infrastructural requirements for tourism development include the following: effective transportation facilities, including airports and air and/or sea carrier links; reasonably good road networks; telecommunication links; reliable energy supply systems; freshwater supply systems; accommodation facilities; restaurants and entertainment sites
- build new airport facilities as an initial step to fuller participation in tourism
- Air links to long haul markets
- Shortages of freshwater supply
- Requirement of facilities to handle liquid, solid and cruise lines waste

6 – Technology

- Some technological needs of SIDS are: (a) solar technology for cooling of hotels and for water heating; (b) environmentally sound technologies for the treatment, recycling and disposal of solid wastes generated by tourism facilities and those brought to port by cruise ships; (c) telecommunications technologies for the fuller integration of Small Island Developing States into global telecommunications networks to enhance their marketing and promotion operations; and (d) electronic information technologies to enhance day-to-day tourism operations, such as reservations

The section B 'At the regional level' of part II of the report in Para 50-57 the Secretary General addressed regional matters related to sustainable development. Some of the main topics of this section are as follows;

- The need for greater collaboration among SIDS on issues of sustainable tourism development is well recognised as a tool for long-term benefits for the environment and the economies of SIDS
- Regional harmonisation of standards and regulations governed tourism
- Joint integrated tourism development planning, marketing and promotion can increase both effectiveness and efficiency
- Consolidate efforts in sustainable tourism development by forging common regional approaches for the sector
- Strengthening (in Africa) or improving (in Caribbean and pacific) the existing regional institutional frameworks like Tourism Council of the South Pacific and Caribbean Tourism Organisation

- The inadequacy of political wills to cooperate meaningfully is a major impediment to effective regional tourism cooperation, increased support for regional tourism organisation promote regional cooperation
- A need to begin efforts in Africa for a common approach to sustainable tourism development through an integrated sub regional policy
- Regional capacity building would be immensely beneficial to all
- Training on information technologies at the regional level for the monitoring of environmental impacts of tourism, and for the establishment and operation of central reservation systems
- A major area for regional cooperation is air transportation because of the need for independency from foreign carrier and lack of country air line viability in each SIDS

Regional initiatives pursued in plan of action that SG recalled them are (a) the harmonisation of standards and regulations to ensure that tourism and the environment are mutually supportive; (b) the promotion of cooperation in developing potential complementarities in the tourism sector; and (c) the establishment of mechanisms for information exchange and sharing of experiences

The SG quoted some of ideas raised by ESCAP like (a) integrating tourism development planning, including concerted market development and promotion; (b) strengthening and expanding the roles of national and regional tourism institutions and organs; and (c) promoting joint training and manpower development in tourism

The rest of the report in part III 'country experiences' and part IV 'experiences of major groups and NGO, s' is mostly observed as field experiences.

In part V 'activities and experiences in international cooperation in sustainable tourism development' the SG reported various activities of UN organs as follows; UNEP addresses issues relating to sustainable tourism development within the overall national environmental plans of the countries concerned. (ECLAC) and ESCAP have planned or recently implemented specific activities in tourism. ECLAC has reported that proposals for environmental codes of conduct for the tourism sector, which it recently developed, are now being carried out by the Caribbean Tourism Organisation. ESCAP has reported that in 1995, it convened a workshop on integrated tourism planning in Pacific island countries and published a set of studies on foreign investment in the tourism sector in Samoa and Vanuatu. The United Nations University is currently undertaking a study to examine indicators of sustainability for the tourism sector in small islands, along with a project on eco-tourism.

In 1992-1993, the World Heritage Convention, sponsored by UNESCO, in collaboration with UNEP, carried out surveys on tourism management in natural and mixed heritage sites and subsequently convened an international seminar which helped formulate a set of general principles for tourism development in natural heritage sites. UNESCO has also planned a pilot project on water supply problems and community attitudes in the South Pacific islands, as well as studies with reference to the Caribbean on the interrelationships between tourism, population

pressures, pollution and natural hazards. In 1993, World Health Organisation collaborated with a number of regional organisations to launch the Environmental Health and Sustainable Tourism Development Initiative. UNEP is making efforts to promote integrated coastal zone management in SIDS through its regional seas' programme. The Mediterranean Action Plan and the Caribbean Action Plan have addressed tourism issues in particular. The Industry and Environment Office of UNEP has developed fruitful partnerships with industry associations at the international level to inform about and disseminate examples of good environmental practices, in particular on codes of conduct and environmental management of hotels.

In its final part of his report, the Secretary General listed some of his 'main findings'. In Para 75, findings on economic, social, and environmental aspects of tourism in SIDS are pointed out, and it is worthy of note that'' (a) Economic aspects. (i) Generally, the leakages through imports out of direct tourist expenditures to meet the needs of the tourism sector itself are extremely high in these countries; (ii) the daily expenditures per visitor vary from country to country but are generally low; (iii) excessive reliance on tourism carries many risks, including excessive exposure to international economic shocks and weakening of inter-sectoral linkages which, inter alia, reduce the potential benefits from tourism; (b) Social aspects. Rapid development of tourism, particularly mass tourism, can have significant adverse social impacts in small islands. The following are of particular significance: (i) persistent inflationary pressures pose the danger of significantly worsening the household distribution of income; (ii) the social carrying capacity of small islands quickly reaches its limits of tolerance as the ratio of visitors to the local population rises, causing overcrowding of beaches, noise pollution and exacerbating traffic congestion; (iii) prolonged growth of mass tourism may be accompanied by increased incidence of crime, and spread of drugs and diseases, including HIV/AIDS; (c) Environmental aspects. Intensive tourism development and tourism activities, particularly if not properly planned and managed, can very quickly causes environmental damages in Small Island Developing States. The most notable impacts are observable in (i) land degradation and loss of terrestrial and marine biodiversity; (ii) increased levels of pollution from dumping of solid and liquid wastes generated by tourism activities on land and in the sea; (iii) coastal zone degradation through intensive sand mining, removal of mangrove forests and destruction of coral reefs, erosion and destruction of landscape owing to tourism facilities and associated infrastructures; (iv) freshwater shortages aggravated by the demand from the water-intensive tourism industry, excessive groundwater pumping and consequent lowering of water tables''.

As CSD3 suggested and the GA in its resolution RES/50/166 adapted, the progress in the implementation of the programme of action for the sustainable development of SIDS were addressed on CSD4, as reflected in chapter VII of the report on the fourth session of CSD (E/CN.17/1996/38 of 27 June 1996). The Commission, amongst others, considers the report of the SG on sustainable development of coastal areas, tourism, energy resources, air transport, maritime transport, telecommunications, and management of natural and environmental disasters in SIDS

(E/CN.17/1996/20); as well as the report of the SG on sustainable tourism development in SIDS (E/CN.17/1996/20/Add.3). The Commission, after hearing various statements made by concerned parties, adapted decision 4/16 on 3 May 1996.

CSD4, in its decision 4/16 entitled "Review of the implementation of the programme of action for the sustainable development of SIDS" (chapter I of report E/CN.17/1996/38), tried to make complementary recommendations to those contained in the Programme of Action for further consideration of the special session of the General Assembly. This was convened in 1997, to review the overall implementation of Agenda 21, and the full review of the Programme of Action in 1999.

The decision noted the support of international community to implement the programme of action, the importance of SIDSTAP and SIDSNET implemented by UNDP, the importance of coordination in the area of strategy and policy formulation by regional organisation like ESCAP, expressing concern at the declining levels of flows of official development assistance, noted that the trade liberalisation and globalisation brings new challenges as well as possible opportunities, the importance of private sector role and the coordination role of the Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development.

The decision has a variety of recommendation on the priority areas of the plan of action.

In tourism resources area (section f) the decision pointed out:

"25. The Commission recognises the continued importance of tourism as one of only a few development options for many SIDS, both as a dynamic sector and as one that can stimulate growth in others.

26. The Commission encourages SIDS to pursue policies of sustainable tourism development by:

(a) Diversifying the tourism product, enhancing its quality and increasingly targeting the upper segment of the tourist market;

(b) Strengthening linkages of other economic sectors with tourism so that domestic production can viably provide for the consumer needs of tourists to the maximum extent possible;

(c) Investing adequately in the collection of data on all relevant indicators of benefits and costs necessary for cost-benefit analysis in order to be able to carry out systematic evaluations of the contribution of the tourism sector to the domestic economy in relation to other sectors and in relation to social and environmental costs;

(d) Developing a multidisciplinary approach for the rigorous vetting of tourism development proposals, taking into account prospective cumulative impacts of tourism development, and establishing environmental standards for the approval of projects.

27. The Commission calls upon the international community to provide appropriate assistance for the improvement and development of basic physical infrastructures in SIDS, such as airports and harbours, roads, telecommunications systems and freshwater systems.

28. The Commission notes the importance of regional cooperation in tourism and proposes that consideration be given to the development of common policy guidelines and standards at the regional level for the mutual benefit of SIDS.

The Commission calls upon the international community to support the efforts of regional tourism organisation to improve their effectiveness''.

The GA, in its 51st session on 16 December 1996 in the preamble of resolution A/RES/51/183, reaffirmed CSD decision 4/16, and stressed the need of greater attention to priority areas of PA, including tourism resources. In Para 1, it takes note of the report of SG (E/CN.17/1996/20). Para 8 requests that, in the context of the special session of GA in 1997, specific modalities be recommended for examining all outstanding chapters of POA as an integrated part of the preparation for special session of GA in 1999. preparing a SG report on vulnerability index for 1997 was requested. It also requested closer collaboration and greater transparency between DPCSD and UNCTAD in its Para 12. The natural disaster, climate change and sea level rise, energy efficiency and renewable energy, maritime transport and infrastructure development in air transport, harbours, roads, and telecommunication were addressed in Para 14-17 request SG to submit a progress report at 52nd GA. The content of other paragraphs are in the same line as previous resolution (A/RES/50/116).

Fifty Second UN General Assembly (GA 52) and CSD5

Based on Para 21 of resolution A/RES/51/183, The SG presented a report (E/CN.17/1997/14) to CSD.

CSD5, during its ad hoc intercessional working group meeting on 17 January 1997, considered the report of the Secretary-General on the Implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States (E/CN.17/1997/14). In Para 8 of part A of the first section of his report, 'Main achievements and unfulfilled expectations', tourism was touched upon, and he pointed out that "In recent years, the tourism sector of Small Island Developing States has grown perceptibly, but efforts to promote sustainable tourism have only just begun. Some countries with mature tourism sectors have experienced severe environmental stress as a result of unregulated developments in the past. Several of those countries have taken initiatives to affect greater controls, particularly in spatial planning and development, in order to cope with problems of pollution, waste and coastal area management. Some have also explored the possibility of promoting eco-tourism. However, despite improvements in legislative and institutional frameworks, and the institution of mandatory requirements for environmental impact assessments for new tourism investments in some, Small Island Developing States continue to face considerable difficulties in dealing with problems of waste management and pollution due to poor infrastructural, technological and human resource capacity. Inadequate port reception facilities for handling ship-generated waste from cruise ships, and oil spills by oil tankers and pollution from both land-based and marine sources remain areas of great concern. A total of 15 Small Island Developing States are parties to the Protocol of 1978 relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships. They thus have obligations under the Convention to establish port reception facilities for the collection of waste, but are hampered by

lack of resources for establishing such facilities''. As is understood from the report, ecotourism, if well explored and properly promoted, could contribute a constrictive role on the development of islands, and assist in controlling environmentally harmful factors through income generation of island states.

CSD5, in its Resolution 5/1 under the title of "Modalities for the full and comprehensive review of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS", in April 1997, examined the report E/CN.17/1997/14, and decided to review of all the outstanding chapters and issues of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS at its sixth session, in 1998 and conduct a full review of the Programme of Action within its approved programme of work at its seventh session, in 1999 and recommended that the General Assembly convene a two-day special session immediately preceding its fifty-fourth session for an in-depth assessment and appraisal of the implementation of the Programme of Action. Operational part of resolution 5/1 is as follows;

"1. Recognises the need to review outstanding chapters of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States prior to its full review in 1999;

2. Urges the task managers within the Inter-Agency Committee on Sustainable Development of the Commission on Sustainable Development and the Small Island Developing States Unit of the Department for Policy Coordination and Sustainable Development of the United Nations Secretariat to prepare reports on the outstanding chapters of the Programme of Action for consideration by the Commission's Ad Hoc Inter-sessional Working Group at its meeting scheduled for 1998;

3. Decides that it will undertake the review of all the outstanding chapters and issues of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States at its sixth session, in 1998;

4. Encourages Governments and participants at the high-level meeting of the Commission at its sixth session to address, inter alia, matters related to the sustainable development of Small Island Developing States;

5. Urges all Governments, regional intergovernmental bodies or similar arrangements, relevant United Nations organisation, bodies and agencies of the United Nations system and major groups identified in Agenda 21, to commence preparations for the full review and comprehensive assessment of progress made in the implementation of the Programme of Action since its adoption at Bridgetown, Barbados, in 1994 by the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States;

6. Recommends that the General Assembly convene a two-day special session immediately preceding its fifty-fourth session for an in-depth assessment and appraisal of the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States;

7. Decides that the Commission on Sustainable Development will carry out the full review of the Programme of Action within its approved programme of work at its seventh session. That review will be considered as the preparatory process for the special session of the General Assembly recommended in paragraph 6 above;

8. Decides that the preparatory process for its seventh session, within its agreed format and programme, shall assist the Commission in carrying out the review and appraisal of the PA."

The content of CSD5 resolution reaffirmed by nineteenth special session of General Assembly in its resolution S/19-2, annex, Para. 71.

Sustainable development in SIDS had its place in UNGASS. In the annex to the resolution A/S-19/2, the GA (in its 19th special session) considered matters related to the SIDS under section III 'implementation of Agenda 21 in the area requesting urgent action', and stated "The international community reaffirms its commitment to the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS. The Commission on Sustainable Development carried out a mid-term review of selected programme areas of the Programme of Action at its fourth session, in 1996. At its sixth session, in 1998, the Commission will undertake a review of all the outstanding chapters and issues of the Programme of Action. A full and comprehensive review of the Programme of Action, consistent with the review of other United Nations global conferences, is scheduled for 1999. The Commission, at its fifth session, adopted a resolution on modalities for the full and comprehensive review of the Programme of Action, in which it recommended that the General Assembly hold a two-day special session immediately preceding its fifty-fourth session for an in-depth assessment and appraisal of the implementation of the Programme of Action. The full implementation of the decision would represent a significant contribution to achieving the objectives of the Global Conference for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States.

Considerable efforts are being made at the national and regional levels to implement the Programme of Action. These efforts need to be supplemented by effective financial support from the international community. External assistance for building the requisite infrastructure and for national capacity building, including human and institutional capacity, and for facilitating access to information on sustainable development practices and the transfer of environmentally sound technologies, in accordance with paragraph 34.14 (b) of Agenda 21, is crucial for Small Island Developing States to effectively attain the goals of the Programme of Action. To assist national capacity building, the Small Island Developing States information network and Small Island Developing States technical assistance programme should be made operational as soon as possible, with support for existing regional and sub regional institutions". (Para 71-72 part B of section III of A/RES/S-19/2)

Resolution 52/202, adopted on 18 December 1997, also reaffirmed the decision taken by 19th special session to convene a two-day special session, and confirmed resolution 5/1 adopted by the Commission on Sustainable Development at its fifth session, held from 7 to 25 April 1997, took note of the report of the Secretary-General, welcomed restructuring of SIDS Unit, welcomes the multi-year programme of work for the CSD 1998-2002, took note of modalities that had instituted by DESA and UNDP to mobilise resources, supported the GEF initiatives, invited the CSD, UNEP and other relevant United Nations bodies, funds and programmes, and the World Tourism Organisation, to develop urgently strategies with existing national, regional and sub regional tourism organisation in SIDS to further facilitate sustainable tourism development as an essential element towards an action-oriented international programme of work on sustainable tourism; and finally Requested the Secretary-General to submit to the General Assembly at its fifty-third session a report on actions taken to implement this resolution and paragraph 10 of Assembly resolution 50/116 of 20 December 1995.

Fifty Third UN General Assembly (GA 53) and CSD6

The secretariat of the CSD, with the assistance of the Inter-Agency Committee on Sustainable Development (IACSD) task managers, in response to CSD5 decision 5/1, prepared the SG reports on all the outstanding chapters of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS for consideration of CSD6 in 1998. The report (E/CN.17/1998/7) summarizes the major findings and recommendations contained in its nine addenda. The report and its nine addenda addressed following issues; Climate change and sea level rise, Management of wastes, Freshwater resources, Land resources, Biodiversity resources, National institutions and administrative capacity, Regional institutions and technical cooperation, Science and technology, Human resource development. Tourism was not addressed in due process, but considered in its high level segment debates. The topics of debate were reflected by the chairman's summary of high-level segment of the sixth session of the CSD on 1 May 1998. Chairman in section C 'challenges for the future' part 2 Para.40 and 41 of his report on tourism matter reported;

“40 Participants noted that tourism was a large and growing economic sector, with important economic, social and environmental effects. In some Small Island Developing States, tourism represented over half of GNP. Tourism, when carefully managed, could contribute to sustainable development, but large numbers of tourists could also cause severe environmental stress as a result of water consumption and pollution, waste generation and construction activities, particularly in environmentally fragile areas such as coastal zones and mountains.

1. 41. It was noted that a number of voluntary initiatives for environmental protection had been undertaken in the tourism sector. It was suggested that, at the seventh session, the Commission consider the effectiveness of those initiatives. It was also suggested that the Commission undertake the development of a strategy for sustainable tourism, taking into account related work under the Convention on Biological Diversity. It was suggested that a multi-stakeholder dialogue on tourism be organised during the seventh session”. (E/CN.17/1998/20-E/1998/29 chapter III section c Para 40-41)

2. As during the last few years in CSD6, tourism was discussed under small islands' sustainable development. CSD6 adapted decision 6/6 'Matters related to the inter-sessional work of the Commission' that is reflected in the Report on the Sixth Session of CSD (22 December 1997 and 20 April to 1 May 1998) E/CN.17/1998/20 and E/1998/29 and partly covered tourism.

3. Decision 6/6 Para one;

4. “The Commission on Sustainable Development decides, pursuant to Economic and Social Council resolution 1997/63 of 25 July 1997, on the programme of work of the Commission for the period 1998 2002 and future methods of work of the Commission, that in order to assist the Commission in its deliberations at its seventh session, the 1999 sessions of its inter-sessional ad hoc working groups will be devoted to the following issues:

(a) Oceans and seas, and comprehensive review of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States;

(b) Consumption and production patterns, including recommendations for sustainable consumption for inclusion in the United Nations guidelines for consumer protection, as requested by the Economic and Social Council in its resolution 1997/53 of 23 July 1997 entitled "Consumer protection", and tourism".

CSD7 as a preparatory body for the special session of the GA on SIDS

CSD7, acting as the preparatory body for the 22nd special session of the GA for the review and appraisal of the implementation of the POA for the sustainable development of SIDS, reviewed progress in the implementation of POA in April 1999 in considering the request of 19th special session of GA. The CSD based its discussions on a Chair's text forwarded by an ad hoc working group that met during CSD-7 inter-sessionals held from 22 February-5 March 1999. The Chair's text was titled "State of Progress and Initiatives for the Future Implementation of the POA."

The co-chair of the Ad Hoc inter-sessional working group compiled the text that contained the contribution of CSD7 to the 22nd special session of GA, and presented it to CSD7 High Level dialogue. The first meeting of High Level dialogue of CSD7 was held on 23 April, and considered the co-chair text as well as addressing the substance of the preparation of the special session. CSD's High-Level Segment discussed the POA's implementation, difficulties met and lessons learned, and suggested elements for the Special Session's outcome. The first meeting also recognised that SIDS are the custodians of large areas of the world's oceans and significant biodiversity resources, and participants reaffirmed the Programme of Action as the blueprint for the sustainable development of SIDS. Attention was drawn to the progress made by SIDS in implementing sustainable development strategies through action at the national and the regional level. Attention was drawn to the vulnerability of SIDS, in relation to their ability to withstand external economic shocks, for example, as a result of fluctuating commodity prices and susceptibility to natural disasters. Participants placed particular emphasis on the early development of a vulnerability index to supplement existing gross domestic product (GDP)-based criteria in the assessment of eligibility of SIDS for concessional finance. Concern was expressed at constraints still faced by SIDS in fully implementing sustainable development strategies because of insufficient resources, due particularly to declining levels of official development assistance (ODA). Concern was further expressed that the decline in financial resources might reflect a lessening of commitment made at the Barbados Global Conference. It was recognised that the special session of the General Assembly would provide an opportunity for all countries to reaffirm commitments that had been made at the time the Programme of Action was adopted. In this regard, the recent SIDS/Donors' meeting was acknowledged as a positive step. Participants emphasised the need for improved donor coordination and the importance of partnerships at all levels, including with the private sector, in order to further assist SIDS in their efforts to achieve sustainable development. There were expressions of concern at the adverse effects on SIDS of globalisation and trade liberalisation. It was emphasised that the special circumstances of SIDS

should be taken into account in the next phase of negotiations under the World Trade Organisation. Participants also expressed concern at the risks to SIDS of trans-shipment of hazardous wastes and materials through their jurisdictions. In this regard, there was a proposal to have the Caribbean Sea recognised as a special area in the context of sustainable development, bearing in mind the sub-region's high degree of vulnerability as a result of the large number of ships with hazardous cargo traversing the Caribbean. The second meeting of High Level dialogue, held on 30 April 1999, approved major procedures of 22nd special session and considered preparations for the comprehensive review of the POA. The CSD approved and recommended the draft provisional agenda and organisational matters for adoption by the Special Session of the GA, and adopted an oral decision recommending that the GA authorize it to hold a resumed session for two days in September in order to complete its work. The Commission, acting as preparatory body for the special session, met in its resumed session on 9 and 10 September 1999 at the United Nations Headquarters. It held three meetings and a number of informal meetings. At its first meeting, on 9 September, the Commission, acting as preparatory body for the special session, had before it an informal paper containing the texts entitled "Draft declaration" and "State of progress and initiatives for the future implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States". The paper reflected the results of informal consultations held on the texts as contained in document A/S-22/2 following the first session of the Commission acting as the preparatory body. The Commission continued its work on the "Draft declaration" and the "review document" at its second and third meetings, and at its third meeting, held on 10 September 1999, and adopted the draft report on its resumed session.

The report of CSD7 to the 22nd special session on SIDS contains five parts (A/S-22/2/Add1). Part I, II, III, and IV are about introduction, organisation of the session, comprehensive review of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS, and the adoption of report of CSD acting as a preparatory body of 22nd UNGASS. Part V is on the decision adopted by the commission as a preparatory body on UNGASS and contains draft decision and State of progress and initiatives for the future implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of SIDS.

In the second section of part V subsection F of the report, tourism is underlined as follows;

"The development and promotion of sustainable tourism will require efforts undertaken by Small Island Developing States at the national and regional levels. In this regard, there is a need for continued international support and cooperation. Particular attention will be required to coordinate eco-tourism ventures at the regional level, and to facilitate the sharing of information and experiences and the integration of the private sector within official development assistance supported eco-tourism projects. Specific actions have been identified in the report of the United Nations Environment Programme/World Tourism Organisation on sustainable tourism development for Small Island Developing States. In this regard, the special session noted the

decision of the Commission on Sustainable Development at its seventh session on sustainable tourism, and called for its application, as appropriate, to Small Island Developing States.

In the context of actions being undertaken to address these issues and on the basis of a strong and committed partnership between Small Island Developing states and the international community, the international community and Small Island Developing States should pursue and support the following goals, objectives, and activities, including through specific modalities, to assist in the continued implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States: (a) Establishment of regional and national environmental assessment programmes to address the carrying capacity of natural resources, including the social, economic and cultural implications of tourism development; (b) Strengthening of institutional capacity building in the tourism sector, and promoting environmental protection and the preservation of cultural heritage through local community awareness and participation; (c) Encouragement of the use of modern technologies and communications systems that effectively maximise the use of global, regional and national information in support of sustainable tourism development; (d) Improvement of the collection and use of tourism data as a means to facilitate the development of sustainable tourism; (e) Establishment of partnerships for sustainable tourism to effectively conserve and utilise limited resources, based on consumer and market demand and the development of community-based initiatives. Destination marketing should preserve local culture and a healthy environment; (f) Building of institutional capacity, further development of human resources at all levels of the tourism industry, with particular emphasis on small and medium-sized enterprises and improve the capacity to utilise modern technologies.

In the context of actions being undertaken to address these issues, and on the basis of a strong and committed partnership between Small Island Developing States and the international community, the international community and Small Island Developing States should pursue and support the following goals, objectives, and activities, including through specific modalities, to assist in the continued implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States: (a) Enhancement of sustainable tourism and sustainably managed tourism operations through the adoption of appropriate regulations, a voluntary code of conduct, criteria for best practices, and other innovative measures; (b) Mobilisation of adequate resources from all sources to assist Small Island Developing States in strengthening institutional capacity, human resources and environmental protection; (c) Improvement of Small Island Developing States capacity to implement treaty requirements of the International Civil Aviation Organisation and the International Maritime Organisation.

The linkages between sustainable tourism, energy and transport are of considerable importance to developing countries, in particular the least developed countries and Small Island Developing States amongst them. This should be borne in mind in the preparation for the agenda item on energy and transport at the ninth session of the Commission''.

SG provided the CSD7 with reports on the Progress in the implementation of the Programme of Action on the Sustainable Development SIDS. The main report "Progress in the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States" mainly addressed the global achievements on Barbados Plan of Action. Sectoral and cross-sectoral issues are addressed in separate addendum reports. Sustainable tourism was evaluated in 11th addendum to the SG report on Barbados Plan of Action (E/CN.17/1999/6/Add.11) on 25 January 1999.

Part I of Addendum report, 'progress achieved in the implementation of sustainable tourism development in SIDS', discusses the importance of tourism for SIDS economies, its effects on the tourism-related activities and major economic indicators, regional or individual approaches to planning and further strategy, and the lack of reliable data in many areas of tourism for further elaboration. Other important points of the mentioned report are as follows;

- In spite of the constraints encountered, many Small Island Developing States have established initiatives to balance tourism activities with broader economic, social and environmental objectives at the regional, national and local levels. In particular, major efforts have led to (a) the strengthening of regional cooperation on strategies, standards and capacity building for tourism, with the assistance of international institutions, the private sector and non-governmental organisation in the area of human and institutional capacity building; (b) increased use of user charges, particularly for environmental protection; (c) formulation of integrated national action plans, strategies and policies which include tourism, in particular its environmental aspects; (d) the establishment of frameworks that allow local communities to participate and have greater control over tourism development in their localities.

In part II 'Constraints encountered to sustainable development of tourism' the main issues are as follows;

- A necessary requirement for the pursuit of sustainable tourism development is an effective legislative framework. Despite progress in the enactment of environmental legislation, its effectiveness continues to be impaired by weaknesses in the institutional frameworks for enforcing legislation, lack of standardisation of legislation and the obscurity of regulations.
- Some of SIDS is still reliant on imports to meet the material demands of the tourism sector.
- Most Small Island States face the persistent problem of inadequate supply of trained manpower, particularly in government authorities
- The majority of SIDS suffers from a lack of local capital for bulky investments, and the absence of a significant local entrepreneurial class.
- Efforts to attract foreign capital through the provision of tax concessions, tax holidays, building concessions and other incentives to foreign investors reduced the tourism incomes accruing to SIDS.
- Lack of main physical infrastructure, including effective transportation facilities, airports and air and/or sea carrier links; reasonably good road networks; telecommunication links; reliable

energy supply systems; freshwater supply systems; accommodation facilities; restaurants and entertainment sites is an obstacle to the development of the sector.

Part III of the report 'Emerging trends, problems and adverse impacts' pointed out;

- Regional projections indicate that Small Island Developing States will also benefit from the global growth in tourism. A second discernible trend that will shape tourism development in SIDS in coming years is the growing interest in, and demand for, specialty tourism.
- Rapid development of tourism can cause significant social disruptions in Small Island States. Potential long-term effects could be a reduction in the living standards of high proportions of island populations and negative impact on certain traditional activities.
- If tourism is not adapted to local characteristics, or if it exceeds carrying capacity, it may generate a number of adverse impacts: polarization of islands' economic systems, with the risk of overemphasis on that single sector to the detriment of other strategically important economic activities; demographic imbalances and cultural tensions induced by disproportionate tourist-to-resident ratios and external labour migrations; and deterioration of the environment due to increased human pressure on the natural environment, local resources, and terrestrial and marine biodiversity.
- The fragile ecosystems of SIDS make concerns for the environmental impact of tourism very acute. The environmental impacts of tourism are attributable to the development of tourism infrastructures and facilities and to the impacts of tourists' activities. Deforestation and intensified or unsustainable use of land cause erosion and loss of biological diversity.
- The loss of valuable marine life, the destruction of coral reefs and the silting and erosion of coastal beaches and pollution of inland freshwater resources caused by disposal of untreated effluents are major environmental concerns. Waste management and waste-water treatment are becoming critical issues since wastes are produced in increased quantities and there is not sufficient land to locate adequate treatment facilities.
- Tourism as a mainly coastal development has already had a number of adverse impacts on SIDS because of unchecked construction of tourism facilities along their coastlines.
- Another serious problem is the inadequacy of water supply. This is most severe in the low-lying atolls that have little opportunity for surface-water catchments and storage and growth of demands.

Part IV of the report 'looking to the future: priorities and policy needs' included;

- Experience has shown that integrating international tourism development with sustainable island development requires the ability to bring into play the following factors, among others, over the short and medium terms: (a) a social climate and natural and cultural tourism resources attractive to international tourists; (b) international/regional accessibility in terms of distance, time, price and adequate means of transport for the targeted tourism sector; (c) the capacity of infrastructure, services and accommodation quality to underpin suitable expansion of tourism activities in traditional or newly established tourism centres; (d)

availability of investment capital for island tourism development; (e) human resources (businessmen, professionals, labour); and (f) political and operational preparedness to support tourism on the part of the island Government.

- Integrated and environmentally and culturally conscious tourism planning can make tourism compatible with the conservation of the main ecosystems and with the preservation of historical-cultural heritage. Increasing community participation in decision-making is critical to achieving social and environmental objectives.
- In order to orient tourism and island development towards sustainability, new criteria, instruments and lines of action must be created and implemented, taking into account tourism carrying capacity.
- Delaying the introduction of policies to promote sustainable tourism until the emergence of economic problems and cultural or environmental degradation can make it very difficult to take corrective actions.
- Specific policies and measures for enhancing economic benefits from tourism include (a) diversifying the tourism product, enhancing its quality and increasingly targeting the upper segment of the tourist market; (b) strengthening linkages of other economic sectors with tourism so that domestic production can viably provide for the consumer needs of tourists to the maximum extent possible; (c) increasing the participation of nationals in the tourism sector by encouraging domestic investments, and, as necessary, joint ventures with foreign investors, so as to minimise the proportion of profits generated by the tourism sector that are repatriated by foreign investors; (d) encouraging the maximum use of local materials in resort construction so as to reduce the imports of construction materials; (e) increasing investments in the training of local people for the tourist industry in order to reduce dependence on foreign entities, particularly in the area of overseas promotion and marketing, ground handling and domestic operation of tourism services; (f) minimising financial incentives granted to foreign investors, by reducing national risks.
- Measures for coping with the adverse social and cultural impacts of tourism include (a) efforts to keep the ratio of the visitor population to the local population at an acceptable level through appropriate diversification of the tourism product and the tourist market, particularly if mass tourism has been promoted for a long time in the past; (b) effective educational programmes to raise the awareness of the local population about the good and bad aspects of tourism; (c) effective countrywide security measures against crime and drugs, particularly in areas most frequented by tourists.
- Measures for coping with environmental impacts include (a) development of a multidisciplinary approach for rigorous vetting of tourism development proposals, taking into account prospective cumulative impacts of tourism development, and establishment of environmental standards for approval of projects; (b) appropriate review and revision of existing taxes and subsidies to ensure that they are in fact conducive to sustainable

development, and development of additional economic instruments to better internalise environmental costs; (c) imposition of appropriate user fees for the use of national terrestrial land marine parks and reserves, and earmarking the accrued receipts for purposes of improvement and management of sensitive areas; (d) inducing the tourism industry, through appropriate user charges, to meet the full cost of freshwater that it uses, and to contribute adequately to solid waste management and cleaning of beaches; (e) implementing a sustainable marketing strategy in cooperation with all partners involved in the tourism industry; and (f) encouraging voluntary initiatives and adherence to codes of conduct by the business community.

- The foregoing national measures need to be supplemented by measures at the regional level, including (a) the implementation of a sustainable marketing strategy at the regional level, and (b) the adoption of uniform incentives at the regional level to reduce competition among Small Island Developing States to attract foreign capital.
- National and regional measures need to be supplemented by international measures, including (a) provision of international assistance for the development of basic physical infrastructures, such as airports and harbours, roads, telecommunications systems and freshwater systems to Small Island Developing States, especially the least developed among them; (b) provision of assistance to regional tourism organisation in order to increase their effectiveness; and (c) formulation, ratification and enforcement of a universal or at least a regional code of conduct for the tourism sector at the intergovernmental level.

CSD7 took the report of SG into account and adopted decision 7/10 on progress on the implementation of POA for sustainable development of SIDS.

The text of decision 7/10 read as follows;

“ At its 14th meeting on 30 April 1999, the Commission on Sustainable Development took note of the report of the Secretary-General on progress on the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States”.

The fifty third session of the GA (12 February 1999) adopted resolution A/RES/53/189 ‘Implementation of the outcome of the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of SIDS’. GA Recalled its resolutions 51/183 and 52/202 and reconfirmed the outcome of 19th special session as well as CSD5 and CSD6 relevant decisions and noted the importance of two days special session of GA in September 1999 for a full review of POA in SIDS, took note of SG report A/53/358 on plans and projects for sustainable development of SIDS implemented, under implementation or envisage for the period of 1999-2003 as well as SG report A/53/65-E/1998/5 on development of vulnerable index for SIDS, encouraged SIDS and donors to participate in the donors conference, urged effective involvement of all into the preparatory meeting of CSD as well as special session itself, requested the SG to submit a report on the donors conference to CSD7 and 22nd special session as well as a report on action taken to implement of RES/53/189 to be submitted at fifty fifth session of General Assembly.

Twenty Second special session of the UN General Assembly on SIDS

The UN General Assembly convened its 22nd special session on 27 and 28 September 1999 in New York to review and appraise the implementation of the Barbados Programme of Action (POA). The outcome of 22nd special session reflected on the Declaration and the state of progress and initiatives for future implementation of POA. The Declaration calls on the international community to provide effective means, including financial resources, to support the sustainable development efforts of SIDS. It also calls on the Secretary-General to improve the existing institutional arrangements in the UN so that the UN system may become more proactive in promoting and assisting sustainable development in SIDS. The Declaration, *inter alia*, reaffirms the principles and commitments of the Rio Declaration, Agenda 21 and the POA; recognises that SIDS share a common aspiration for economic development and improved living standards; recalls that SIDS are a special case for both environment and development issues because they are ecologically fragile and vulnerable; recognises that considerable efforts have been made at all levels to implement the POA; encourages the efforts of all Parties to foster an enabling environment to assist SIDS in achieving sustainable development; calls on the international community to provide effective means, including adequate, predictable, new and additional financial resources, in accordance with Chapter 33 of Agenda 21; calls on the international community to provide support for capacity and institutional building programmes and projects; calls for increased efforts to assist SIDS in obtaining the transfer of environmentally sound technologies; calls on the Secretary-General to improve institutional arrangements to support SIDS; and endorses the series of broad initiatives for the further implementation of the POA as outlined in the CSD's recommendations. The review document on the "State of Progress and Initiatives for the Future Implementation of the POA" was divided into an introduction, sectoral areas requiring urgent action, means of implementation, and international cooperation and partnership. The document identified sectoral areas requiring urgent action which include: climate change; natural disasters and climate variability; freshwater resources; coastal and marine resources; energy; and tourism and The section on means of implementation includes sub-sections on: sustainable development strategies; capacity building; resource mobilisation and finance; globalisation and trade liberalisation; transfer of environmentally sound technology; a vulnerability index; information management; and international cooperation and management

The tourism part of the document remained unchanged, and was the same as CSD proposed in its report (A/S-22/2/Add.1)

Fifty Fourth UN General Assembly (GA 54)

The GA considered the sub-item of SIDS under its item entitled "Environment and sustainable development" and adopted resolution 54/224. The main points of A/RES/54/224 of 11 February 2000 of GA is as follows;

The GA recalled its resolution 49/122, 51/183,52/202,53/189 and Declaration and review document adopted in 22nd special session as well as over 300 proposed projects to donors and SIDS conference in 1999 for financing and request SG to transmit the declaration and review document to various UN organs for appropriate action, call upon international community, UN system, Governments, stockholders to take necessary action for further implementation of POA, finalizing vulnerable index, call upon consideration of UNCTAD, invite CSD to consider in its work programme matter related to further implementation of POA and outcome of 22nd special session, include the matter in the agenda of its 55th session and request SG to submit to 55th session of the GA a report on the implementation of resolution 54/224.

Fifty fifth UN General Assembly (GA 55)

SG submitted the report (A/55/185) entitled 'Implementation of the outcome of the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States; and promoting an integrated management approach to the Caribbean Sea area in the context of sustainable development: action taken at the international, regional and national levels' to 55th session of GA in response of resolution 54/224 Para 3, 6, 8 and 11. The report includes information on activities undertaken at the international and regional level by UN, non-United Nations intergovernmental regional bodies and by a number of Governments at the national level.

Tourism was discussed in Part II of the report 'Implementation of the outcome of the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States', section A. 'International level' sub-section 8. This part of report is as follows:

"UNEP convened a regional seminar on sustainable tourism and competitiveness in the small islands of the Mediterranean (Capri Island, Italy, 17-20 May 2000), in cooperation with the World Tourism Organisation, as a follow-up to the Global Conference on Sustainable Tourism in Small Island States (Lanzarote, October 1998). UNEP is promoting practical tools and voluntary codes to enhance the environmental performance and operations of tourism facilities in Small Island Developing States. UNEP is also collaborating with WTO and UNESCO for the promotion of voluntary initiatives and partnerships among stakeholders in sustainable tourism development via the recently launched Tour Operators' Initiative for Sustainable Tourism Development (Berlin, March 2000)".

Other parts of the report had not any direct connection on tourism but it is worthy to quote the final part of report 'part IV. Conclusions and recommendations' Para 62-64, as below;

"62. Despite the fact that a large number of regional organisation and national Governments were approached in the preparation of the present report, very little feedback was provided. Yet the organisation of the United Nations system have continued to implement a number of initiatives in the context of the Barbados Programme of Action. It is clear from the information received that the focus has usually been directed at strengthening institutions and human resource capacity. Considerable effort has been made to develop a vulnerability index for Small Island Developing

States. Since the report of the ad hoc expert group meeting on vulnerability indices in Small Island Developing States (A/53/65, annex), there has been a proliferation of work in this area. Recent exercises differ with respect to country coverage, number and types of variables used, methods of scaling and weighting, and other methodological aspects. The Economic and Social Council might wish to consider the report of the Committee for Development Policy at its July 2000 session and provide further guidance on the subject, as appropriate.

63. It is clear that there is scope for improving coordination among the United Nations agencies, the regional organisation and national Governments on tasks that are planned as well as ongoing. Many activities covered in the present report were shared with the Small Island Developing States Unit of the

Department of Economic and Social Affairs only after they had taken place and after the information had been specifically requested. It is envisaged that the next phase of SIDSNet will assist the process of information-sharing, especially on programmes that may be of interest to the Small Island Developing States.

64. Very few contributions were received with regard to resolution 54/225. So far, most efforts have been directed at developing a common methodology for environmental assessment reporting and at promoting a coordinated approach to preparedness and responses. Further consideration may need to be given to means of implementing the agenda item, including information-gathering and sharing of responsibility''.

The GA, in its resolution A/RES/55/202, recalled its previous resolution and decisions and recognised environmental and economic vulnerability of SIDS, considered the report of SG(A/55/185) and UNCTAD10 (TD/390), noting the efforts to implement POA as well as capacity buildings, noted the contributions of some donors towards further implementation of POA, noted the work of committee for development policy on vulnerability index, invited UN Agencies in preparation of WSSD to identify measures that would ensure the effective implementation of POA, called upon international community to assist SIDS with adequate technical and financial resources in the context of declaration and review document as well as enhancement of SIDS capacities to mitigate the implication of globalisation, invited stakeholders, NGO's and private sector to participate in the implementation of POA, welcomed the recent strengthening of SIDS unit, decided to include the matter in the agenda of its 56th session and request SG to submit to GA an implementing report.

Fifty sixth UN General Assembly (GA56)

SG submitted the report (A/56/170) entitled "Further implementation of the outcome of the Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States" to 56th session of GA in response of resolution 55/202 Paras 3, 4, 5, 8, and 12. The report was prepared with the assistance of UN system, intergovernmental and regional organisation as well as some concerned governments. The report contains seven parts, Introduction, Globalisation and trade

liberalisation, Information and communication technologies, vulnerability index, further measures for the implementation of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States, Towards the World Summit on Sustainable Development, Conclusions. Part V section (I), tourism resources, is evaluated as follows; ‘In the area of tourism, IFAD is currently funding a Saint Lucia-based NGO for a training programme in natural resources and eco-tourism in the islands of Dominica, Grenada, Saint Lucia, and Saint Vincent and the Grenadines. Initiated in 2000, the project’s objectives are to identify forms of community-based tourism development that contribute to rural development and to identify processes for a meaningful participation of communities in the development and management of tourism ventures in support of rural development. A regional training workshop on community-based tourism and a regional seminar on policy requirements for integrating tourism into rural development policies are among the activities undertaken in conjunction with the project. UNEP, among other activities, co-sponsored with the World Tourism Organisation the International Conference on Sustainable Tourism in the islands of the Asia-Pacific Region, held in Sanya, China, in December 2000. The Conference emphasised the need for integrating planning for tourism with national development and resource management plans; the role of the various stakeholders and the need for cooperation among them; tourism planning and management in sensitive natural and cultural sites; the responsible use of natural resources in tourism; and the importance of professional training, capacity building and research programmes.

In the framework of the International Year of Ecotourism, 2002, designated by the United Nations, the World Tourism Organisation is organising a series of regional preparatory conferences. Within this context, a conference specially designated to examine the sustainable development and management of ecotourism in Small Island Developing States and other islands will be held in Seychelles in December 2001. Two other regional ecotourism conferences are planned in the Asia-Pacific region and will be held in the Maldives and Fiji, respectively. In addition, the World Tourism Organisation organised a seminar on sustainable tourism and competitiveness in the islands of the Mediterranean in Capri, Italy, in 2000. The seminar concluded, *inter alia*, that opting for a sustainable approach to tourism in Mediterranean islands entails institutional leadership, coordination with private sector, social involvement and skilled technical backing, and that to enhance competitiveness among islands in the region it is essential to focus the tourism strategy on the assets, peculiarities and capacities of each island and integrating a diversified supply of tourism attractions and services.

The GA considered the sub-item of SIDS under its item entitled ‘‘Environment and sustainable development’’ and adopted resolution 56/198. The GA, in its resolution A/RES/56/198, of 15 February 2002, recalled its previous resolutions and decisions including 1994 Barbados Declaration and POA and 22nd special session declaration and review document and recognising SIDS challenges of development, noting the reports of workshops of AOSIS on Bio safety, climate change and preparation for CSD9, welcoming preparatory activities of SIDS for

WSSD such as Singapore meeting in January 2002 take note of SG report(A/56/170), invites the relevant organs of UN, donors, stakeholders to reflect measures and participate and support the implementation of POA, welcome the strengthen of SIDS Unit and request SG to further strengthen the Unit, inter alia, by establishing the Small Island Developing States Information Network with in the Unit and by assisting SIDS with, inter alia, project implementation advice and assistance in the identification of short- and long-term capacity needs through coordination with regional and international institutions, and to make proposals in that regard; call upon the SG to consider further cost-effective ways and means of increasing and improving the United Nations system-wide coordination, include the matter in the agenda of its 57th GA and request SG to submit an implementation report of A/RES/56/198 to GA.

Sustainable Tourism on the Agenda of CSD

Sustainable tourism in Rio+5

Despite the absence of sustainable tourism as an environmental-developmental-related issue in the Earth Summit Declaration and Agenda 21 in Rio-1992, UNGASS considered it during the 19th Special Session of the General Assembly to review the first five years implementation of Agenda 21 in 1997. In this special session, the Resolution (A/S.19-2, of 28 June 1997) was adopted by the General Assembly for the Programme for the Further Implementation of Agenda 21. The relevant part of Resolution A/S.19-2 considered that the development and marketing of Ecotourism is of importance for all countries and deserve the assistance of international financial institution in this regard. Para 69 of the annex to resolution requested the commission to develop an action-oriented international programme of sustainable tourism and hereby, sustainable tourism considered under agenda of CSD. The GA also in the appendix of A/S.19-2 on multi-year work for CSD proposed that the sustainable tourism be considered as a programme of work of the Economic sector/major group in CSD7. The 'sustainable tourism' part of mentioned Resolution is as follows:

“Tourism is now one of the world’s largest industries and one of its fastest growing economic sectors. The expected growth in the tourism sector and the increasing reliance of many developing countries, including SIDS on this sector as a major employer and contributor to local, national, sub regional and regional economies highlights the need to pay special attention to the relationship between environmental conservation and protection and sustainable tourism. In this regard, the efforts of developing countries to broaden the traditional concept of tourism to include cultural and eco-tourism merit special consideration as well as the assistance of the international community, including the international financial institutions.

“There is a need to consider further the importance of tourism in the context of Agenda 21. Tourism, like other sectors, uses resources, generates wastes and creates environmental, cultural and social costs and benefits in the process. For sustainable patterns of consumption and production in

the tourism sector, it is essential to strengthen national policy development and enhance capacity in the areas of physical planning, impact assessment, and the use of economic and regulatory instruments, as well as in the areas of information, education and marketing. A particular concern is the degradation of biodiversity and fragile ecosystems, such as coral reefs, mountains, coastal areas and wetlands.

“Policy development and implementation should take place in cooperation with all interested parties, especially the private sector and local and indigenous communities. The Commission should develop an action-oriented international programme of work on sustainable tourism, to be defined in cooperation with the World Tourism Organisation, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, the United Nations Environment Programme, the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity and other relevant bodies.

“The sustainable development of tourism is of importance for all countries, in particular for Small Island Developing States. International cooperation is needed to facilitate tourism development in developing countries – including the development and marketing of eco-tourism, bearing in mind the importance of the conservation policies required to secure long-term benefits from development in this sector, in particular in SIDS, in the context of the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States”.

On the 18th December 1997, the GA, in its Resolution A/RES/52/202, reaffirmed the Programme for the Further Implementation of Agenda 21 adopted by the General Assembly at its nineteenth special session held from 23 to 28 June 1997.

International year of ecotourism

In its resolution A/S.19-2 (1997 special session), the GA affirmed that there is a need to consider further the importance of tourism in the context of Agenda 21. The General Assembly, therefore, in 1998, proclaimed 2002 as the international year for Ecotourism (A/RES/53/200), reaffirming Economic and Social Council resolution 1998/40, of 30 July 1998. The resolution says “Reaffirming Economic and Social Council resolution 1998/40 of 30 July 1998, Proclaims 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism”

A part of the preamble of ECOSOC Resolution 1998/40 is as follows “Stressing that the implementation of Agenda 21 requires the full integration of sustainable development in the tourism industry in order to ensure, *inter alia*, that travel and tourism provide a source of income for many people; that travel and tourism contribute to the conservation, protection and restoration of the Earth’s ecosystem; that international trade in travel and tourism services takes place on a sustainable basis; and that environmental protection is an integral part of tourism development,

Stressing also the need to promote the implementation of international conventions on environment and development, including those on biodiversity and climate change,

Bearing in mind the need for international cooperation in promoting tourism within the framework of sustainable development so as to meet the needs of present tourists and host countries and regions while protecting and enhancing opportunities for the future, managing resources to fulfil economic, social and aesthetic needs, and maintaining cultural integrity, essential ecological processes, biological diversity and life-support systems,

Recognising the support of the World Tourism Organisation for the importance of ecotourism, and particularly of the designation of the year 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism, in fostering better understanding among peoples everywhere, in leading to greater awareness of the rich heritage of various civilizations and in bringing about a better appreciation of the inherent values of different cultures, thereby contributing to the strengthening of world peace,

Considering that the designation of the year 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism will encourage the intensification of cooperative efforts by Governments and international and regional organisation, as well as non- governmental organisation, to achieve the aims of Agenda 21 in promoting development and the protection of the environment''.

In the operational part of its resolution, after its recommendation to General Assembly for declaring year 2002 as the international year of Ecotourism, and the invitation of international community to exert all possible efforts on behalf of the success of the year, ''requests the Secretary-General, in cooperation with all relevant entities of the United Nations system, including the United Nations Environment Programme as well as the World Tourism Organisation and the World Travel and Tourism Council, to submit to the General Assembly at its fifty-eighth session a report containing:

- (a) Programmes and activities undertaken by Governments and interested organisation during the Year;
- (b) An assessment of the results achieved in realizing the aims and objectives of the Year, particularly in terms of encouraging ecotourism in developing countries;
- (c) Recommendations to further advance the promotion of ecotourism within the framework of sustainable development.''

This Resolution was endorsed by General Assembly resolution (A/RES/53/200) on 22nd February 1999.

CSD7 and tourism segment

Nineteen special session of GA in part IV section C of its resolution A/RES/S-19/2 'further role and programme of work of the CSD' Para 130-132 presented adequate approaches to fulfill its mandate. Based on these procedures, the multi-year programme of work for CSD during 1998-2003 was adopted and enclosed as Appendix to the same resolution. The programme includes overriding issues for each session and three major topics for sectoral theme, cross-sectoral theme and economic sector/major group issue. The multi-year programme of work allocated tourism as

the economic sector/ major group issue for its session in 1999(CSD7) and devoted consumption and production patterns and tourism as its cross-sectoral theme for the same session.

The Economic and Social Council, in its resolution 1997/63, approved the multi-year programme of work for the Commission on Sustainable Development, 1998-2002, as recommended by the General Assembly at its nineteenth special session (Para 1 of 1997/63), as well as the provisional agenda of CSD6 on such a basis. CSD6, in chapter X of E/CN.17/1998/20 - E/1998/29, approved the provisional agenda for its seventh session as it was suggested in the Appendix of RES/S-19/2. The Economic and Social Council at its 40th plenary meeting on 23 July 1998 approved the provisional agenda for the seventh session of commission, including tourism as Economic/Major group as well as consumption and production patterns and tourism as a cross-sectoral theme. (ECOSOC Decision 1998/217)

CDS7 held a session from 19-30 April 1999 in New York, and considered the tourism in its economic sector, oceans and seas as the sectoral theme and consumption and production patterns as cross-sectoral theme. It was acting as the preparatory body for the 22nd special session of the GA for the review and appraisal of the implementation of the POA for the sustainable development of SIDS SG based on provided CSD7 with a report (E/CN.17/1999.5) and its three addenda on tourism and sustainable development on 15 January 1999.

Report of SG on Tourism and Sustainable Development and its three Addenda E/CN.17/1999.5

The main report contains four sections: Introduction and tourism and economic development are the first two parts. Tourism and social development as well as tourism and environmental development are parts III and IV respectively.

The SG in Para 3 of the report indicated that his report discusses the interrelated economic, social and environmental issues associated with tourism to arrive at policy options that may be dealt with in an integrated policy framework for the development of sustainable tourism.

In section II of report 'Tourism and economic development' SG highlighted:

- The importance of tourism industry and its effects on the global economy as well as developing and dynamic emerging economies like income generation and job creation in East Asia and East Europe during 1995-1997
- Declining air travel costs facilitate the tourism access to Long-haul markets
- The role of international tourism in national tourism development strategy because of foreign exchange earning, although %80 of tourists are local
- In many developing countries, particularly those lacking adequate resources with unskilled and semi skilled job seekers, tourism may be the only development alternative available in the short to medium term. It is because of its large potential multiplier and spillover effects of the rest of the economy

- If tourism is properly placed in national development plans in developing countries, the contribution of tourism to GNP, employment and export receipts has outstripped traditional economic activities. This replacement may highlight the development of inter-sectoral linkages to encourage the growth of tourism-related activities in the major economic sector, including agriculture, fishing, industry, services and transportation
- Leakage of foreign exchange earning diminished the contribution of tourism to GNPs
- Negative impacts of over-reliance on tourism, and the effect of possible global recession or local natural disaster to local tourism industry
- Crucial role of private tourism sector in tourism: they should be ensured of their long term development in the investment, employment, operational and other business decisions
- Attention to human resources development and training of local workers and the utilisation of a network of domestic suppliers by foreign tourism businesses
- Small and medium enterprises require proper planning and market research to redefine and adjust marketing strategies for selling their products
- Priority should be attached to tourism in development planning by governments in order to integrate and coordinate tourism policies with the policies of other government agencies so that tourism develops in harmony with overall economic, social and environmental goals
- Governments should consult widely with host communities and concerned major groups to ensure that as broad a range of views as possible is incorporated into the planning process of tourism development
- Governments should ensure that their immigration regulations facilitate the inflow of tourists
- Market liberalisation and the promotion of tourist interests, such as safety and facilitation of travel and the easing of foreign currency regulations, should be considered by Governments
- Governments should review the fiscal treatment of the tourism sector and undertake necessary fiscal reform to foster its growth and development
- Governments should apply effective competition policy in the tourism and related sectors by, *inter alia*, prohibiting anti-competitive clauses such as exclusive dealing, import requirements in franchising contracts and the abuse of dominance in air travel
- Governments have to ensure that they cater not only to the needs of the tourism sector, but also to the needs of other industries in the area, as well as to the local community as a whole
- Governments should provide tax incentives and implement deregulation to promote the development and competitiveness of small and medium enterprises in the tourism industry and promote their possibility to have access to finance
- To encourage tourism businesses to employ local people and to limit the employment of expatriate labor for distributing economic benefits of tourism among host population
- To identify ways in which tourism activity can be spread more evenly throughout the year for example by developing alternative forms of tourism

- Further liberalisation commitments on trade in tourism should be negotiated under the General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS), and an annex on tourism services may be required, comprising, *inter alia*, regulatory issues such as definitions, competitive safeguards, access to information, fair and transparent use of global distribution systems, linkages between tourism and air transport and security conditions for service contracts
- The relevant provisions of GATS should be fully implemented, or, if necessary, new provisions should be developed, to prevent unfair competition arising from discriminatory practices in the issuance of visas to tourists that favor certain tour operators and travel agents
- International organisation and donor countries should also increase their efforts in training and capacity building in the field of tourism in developing countries
- International funds should give high priority to appropriate strategies for the environmentally and financially sustainable development of tourism and related sectors
- National tourism agencies and the statistical offices of all countries should adopt the definitions on tourism statistics as approved by the United Nations Statistical Commission in 1993
- Implementation of a uniform system of tourism accounting measures, a possibility is the outcome of World Conference on the Measurement of the Economic Impact of Tourism
- The importance of foreign direct investment for tourism development
- The impact of an adequate tourism infrastructure to tourism development
- The impact of poorly developed and managed costal areas in the past to decline of tourism demand
- Considering various options of financing infrastructure by governments
- Redaction or removal of tariff-like barriers to international travel
- Specific research on the issues of the interest of the developing countries by international community such as leakages of foreign exchange earnings from the tourism sector, the impact of all-inclusive tours on the financial sustainability of the tourism sector in developing countries and the development of a model strategy for integrating local communities into the formulation, implementation and management of tourism projects

In section III of the report 'Tourism and social development', the SG highlighted:

- Tourism development has positive impacts, such as employment creation, income redistribution and poverty alleviation, increasing the level of welfare and health as well as negative effects like shift work, drug abuse, child labour and prostitution, and tourism behaviours on local lifestyles
- Host communities suffer the effects of overcrowding, pressure on resources and challenges to established culture, including negative changes in the patterns of religious observance, dress, behavioural norms and traditions from interaction with non-indigenous cultures
- Social costs and pressures may resent and possibly turn hostile towards tourists

- A high level of tourism activity could encourage over-commercialization, which can cheapen or even destroy local customs and traditions culture, dances, music, festivals or more serious, disappearance of unprotected historic sites and buildings
- To mitigate these social and cultural costs, an important consideration in sustainable tourism development is the tourist carrying capacity of host destinations in both environmental and social terms should be considered
- Increasing visitor numbers can induce long-term problems that diminish the sustainability of tourist destinations
- Tourism development can help host communities to reclaim their cultural patrimony by providing them with the necessary funds and proper management
- The tourism industry has to contribute to social development objectives through greater compliance with core labour standards, attention to worker welfare and human resource development and more corporate social initiatives and share to address health and safety at work, health insurance and pensions, minimum wages and employment of women and young people
- The tourism industry needs to address how working conditions can be improved to provide greater job security and improved human resource development
- Tourism enterprises should take steps to put an immediate stop to intolerable forms of child labour. One way to do this is to develop codes of conduct among enterprises in order to prevent child labour and promote compliance with national legislation on child labour
- The newer forms of tourism, such as nature or ecotourism, the private sector needs to invite and nurture host community participation in the tourism development process
- Tourism enterprises could play a useful role in the promotion of education to both tourists and the host community to improve cultural awareness in order to minimise the social impact of tourism
- The tourism industry possessed codes of conduct that provide guidelines for tourism enterprises and host communities, which should be more widely adopted and applied
- Governments have to direct their policies towards development of human resources, alleviation of poverty, improvement of social security, correction of gender and income disparities and promotion of core labour standards
- A coordinated policy approach involving Governments, the private sector, non-governmental organisation, trade unions, host communities and international agencies is necessary to guarantee the achievement of social development objectives through tourism development
- Governments should ensure that their policy and regulatory environments support small and medium enterprises by improving their access to markets, sources of information, training and credit

- The creation of alternative employment opportunities during the low season by the Government, and the disbursement of tourism activities to outlying areas
- Governments have to work in partnership with the tourism industry and civil society to strengthen secondary, vocational and advanced education, so as to have indigenous senior managers and skilled workers in tourism industry
- Tourism development planning must preserve the legacy, heritage and integrity of tourism destinations and respect the social and cultural norms of society
- There is a need to control the rate of growth of the tourism sector where it may jeopardise local communities and social values
- there should be support for greater involvement of communities in the planning, implementation, monitoring and evaluation processes of tourism policies, programmes and projects
- community participation has to be linked to community benefits through the creation of jobs, entrepreneurial opportunities and social benefit
- Governments should encourage the wider use of voluntary initiatives on the part of industry in both the formal and informal sectors
- International cooperation to advance social development objectives in the tourism sector should be built on the foundations established at the World Summit for Social Development and countries' commitments expressed in the Copenhagen Declaration on Social Development
- The international efforts to encourage the observance of working conditions core standards should go hand in hand with appropriate international technical and financial assistance
- The international community can enhance and strengthen international coordination and monitoring systems through liaison and networking among Governments, the Manila Declaration on Social Aspects of Tourism, issued in 1997, can provide the basis for international action and cooperation
- The international community should further mobilise international support to prevent and control tourism-related abuse and exploitation of people, particularly women and children and other disadvantaged groups

The fourth section of the report is about 'Tourism and environmental protection'. Some of the main topics of this section are as follows;

- Tourism industry produces adverse environmental impacts through its consumption of resources, the pollution and waste generated by the development of tourism infrastructure and facilities, transportation and tourist activities.
- Indiscriminate tourism development can encourage intensive or inappropriate use of land, which can cause deforestation, soil erosion and loss of biological diversity

- Ecotourism if not properly planned and managed, can threaten the world's most ecologically fragile areas, including parks and natural world heritage sites
- The unchecked construction of tourism facilities can despoil the pristine beauty of coastal areas
- The treatment and disposal of liquid and solid wastes generated by the tourism industry is serious problem
- Disposing untreated effluents waste into land and sea, resulted pollution of scarce inland freshwater resources, the loss of valuable marine life, the destruction of coral reefs and the silting and erosion of coastal beaches
- Fresh water remains a pressing concern, as the tourism industry expands globally, the problem of freshwater supply is likely worsen. Meanwhile tourism industry is one of the major water pollutant in tourisms destination
- The tourism industry can protect and rehabilitate its natural assets, by its financial contributions, provision of environmental infrastructure and improved environmental management
- The central challenge for the tourism industry is to transform itself, in all its forms, into a sustainable activity by reorienting corporate philosophy, practice and ethics to promote sustainable development through, *inter alia*, better environmental management and practices and close partnerships with Government and civil society
- It is vital that the tourism industry involve all stakeholders in decision-making
- Tourism enterprises, should integrate environmental management systems and procedures into all aspects of corporate activity in order to reorient their management at all levels towards sustainable development
- tourism enterprises should take all appropriate measures to minimise all forms of waste, conserve energy and freshwater resources and control harmful emissions to the environment
- marketing is an important tool in the tourism industry to enhance the industry's initiatives for promoting sustainable development by, *inter alia*, raising awareness among their clients
- businesses in the tourism sector have a vested interest in maintaining the environmental and socio-cultural resources of destination areas that represent their core business assets
- sustainability of tourism is a challenge to all tourism enterprises, regardless of their size or market orientation, and is not limited to certain niche markets such as ecotourism
- An important way to achieve tourism sustainability is self-regulation and voluntary initiatives. In this regard, the environmental guidelines developed by the World Travel and Tourism Council (WTTC) is especially relevant for the attainment of sustainability in the tourism industry

- WTTC's Green Globe, launched in 1994: this programme aspires to raise the level of environmental awareness and to provide a low-cost practical means for companies within the industry to undertake improvements in environmental practice
- International Hotel Environment Initiative (IHEI), established in 1992 to promote environmental management in the hotel industry, the business benefits of environmental management within the international hotel community, develops hotel-specific environmental training materials, publishes a quarterly magazine, *Green Hotelier*, dedicated to environmental issues and promotes greater awareness of IHEI "best practice" programmes
- The Blue Flag programme is an incentive to protect and improve the quality of beaches and coasts, as well as assessing environmental standards in European beaches by measuring compliance with acceptable concentrations of a range of pollutants on beaches and in marinas to ensure clean bathing water
- The need to monitor, assess and report of the implementation of industry initiatives on the environmental protection
- An appropriate balance needs to be established between the goals of sustainable tourism development and environmental protection
- Policy makers should also address the need for capacity building as well as environmental monitoring and data collection to support the efforts of the tourism industry and civil society to improve environmental protection
- Governments have to develop national strategies or master plans for tourism to provide focus and direction to all stakeholders as well as Governments should ensure that all environmental regulations and environmental policy measures are applied to all businesses in the tourism sector
- Ratification and implementation of international and regional environmental conventions, particularly those relating to tourism activities
- In protected areas, tourism should be permitted only when it meets the requirements of nature protection and biological diversity conservation
- Governments should fully implement the principles of integrated coastal area management
- Environmental impact studies are an important tool for sustainable development and should be undertaken in the preoperative stage
- Governments should pay special attention to negative environmental impacts of road and air traffic, and take steps to ensure that tourism development incorporates environmentally friendly modes of transport
- The full costing and pricing of energy and water can promote eco-efficiency in the tourism industry as well as provide additional revenue

- banks and insurance companies can promote sustainable tourism by advocating policies that incorporate environmental and social criteria into assessment procedures for loans, investments and insurance
- Governments can play an important role by encouraging, supporting and facilitating the involvement and commitment of all stakeholders, especially indigenous and local communities, in the planning, development and management of tourism
- It is important that protection of the environment is fully integrated into courses at all levels of education, in order to develop environmental awareness and the skills required to promote sustainable tourism
- it is necessary for Governments to work in partnership with the tourism industry to develop training programmes and networks to exchange training materials dealing with environmental protection
- the need of capacity building among local government authorities, because of highly localised tourism activities in tourism destinations
- The Government should encourage the tourism industry to use participatory approaches involving all stakeholders to develop the monitoring and public reporting of its activities
- governments should enhance their capacity to monitor the performance of the tourism industry and to develop suitable indicators that can be used in their decision-making
- Governments should fully support and promote the voluntary initiatives of the tourism industry and encourage the dissemination of best practices within the business and local community.
- the major challenges facing the international community are to deal with the negative transboundary and global impacts of tourism on the environment and to support the efforts of countries, to improve the environmental sustainability of their tourism industries at the national level
- policy coordination and cooperation at the international level is needed to address the global environmental impacts of tourism, as well as issues of biological diversity, coastal area management and ecotourism
- Of particular importance to the environmental sustainability of tourism are the Convention on Biological Diversity, the Berlin Declaration on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism, the Malé Declaration on Sustainable Tourism Development, the Declaration of San José, the Charter for Sustainable Tourism, the World Heritage Convention and Agenda 21 for the Travel and Tourism Industry
- the international community has an important role to play in developing a set of internationally recognised reporting standards as well as external monitoring and accreditation systems for assessing the sustainability of tourism services

- The international community also has an important role in assisting developing countries, through the provision of financial and technical assistance to governments at all levels, to develop a range of meaningful and effective planning guidelines, codes of good practice, regulatory frameworks and policy provisions aimed at achieving sustainable tourism
- International assistance is crucial for the development of integrated national tourism policies and master plans, capacity building, development of tourism infrastructure and the promotion of sustainable planning and management of tourism
- The international community should support the development of inventories of tourism activities and attractions that take into account the impact of tourism on ecosystems and biological diversity. In this regard, technical and scientific cooperation should be established through the clearing-house mechanism of the Convention on Biodiversity
- Tourism activities that employ environmentally sound technologies to save water and energy, prevent pollution, treat waste water, minimise solid waste production and encourage recycling and use of public and non-motorized transport should be promoted to the fullest extent by international community
- International financial support and measures to accelerate the transfer of environmentally sound technology
- Steps should be taken to facilitate the international exchange of information, experience and technical skills, especially between the developed and developing countries.
- Regional cooperation is an important modality for promoting the development of sustainable tourism and should be supported because it opens up opportunities for regional collaboration

In the final part of report, the SG highlighted the International Year of Ecotourism, and reported “ with regard to the International Year of Ecotourism in 2002, the Commission on Sustainable Development has been requested to recommend to the General Assembly, through the Economic and Social Council, supportive measures and activities that will contribute to a successful year (Council resolution 1998/40, Para. 3). In order to fulfil this request, it will be necessary for the Commission to initiate and facilitate consultations to discuss the measures and activities that may be undertaken in 2002. The international community and all major groups should fully support and participate in this process to ensure that the event will achieve all its objectives. Furthermore, in view of the fact that the General Assembly, in its resolution 53/24 of 10 November 1998, has also proclaimed the year 2002 as the International Year of Mountains, the Commission for Sustainable Development may wish to consider possibilities for linking some of the activities of the two years”. Para 85 of report E/CN.7/1999/5

SG Addendum report on tourism and economic development (E/CN.1999/5/Add.1)

The First Addendum to the report of the Secretary General on ‘Tourism and sustainable development is about tourism and economic development’ E/CN/1999/5/Add.1. It contains four

parts. In the 'introduction', the history of economical impact of tourism on global development and growth was discussed.

The summary of first part 'Measurement and linkages between tourism and other sectors' of the report is as follows;

- In a number of developing countries, tourism represents a leading economic activity, having already overtaken cash crop agriculture or mineral extraction as their major source of national income, employment and export earnings.
- Tourism activity in almost all countries is concentrated within certain regions, typically where there are large cities or extensive coastal areas.
- Measurement of the economic impact of tourism is difficult because first, they measure the gross impact of tourism, while it is usually the incremental impact of tourism development that is important, and second, national tourism statistics are subject to a number of measurement defects which can seriously limit their value in making international comparisons of the economic role of tourism.
- The capacity of tourism to generate economic development is best seen by examining the impacts of additional tourist spending in a destination area, which in turn serves to generate incomes, employment and a range of other benefits for the host economy.
- The conceptual basis of the tourism income multiplier is the assumption that a direct injection of cash into a destination economy will result in increased incomes for suppliers of tourism services a proportion of direct income and additional income which redistributed to tourism employees known as 'indirect incomes'.
- A proportion of these incomes will in turn be saved while the remainder will be re-spent on consumer goods and services, generating "induced income".
- Common formulations of tourism income multiplier are *Keynesian* and *ratio* multiplier. In Keynesian income multiplier an additional \$ 1 million of tourism expenditure (direct, indirect and induce) will generate an additional \$1.25 million of final income. In ratio income multiplier an additional \$1 million direct income will generate a further \$0.50 million of indirect and induce income.
- The tourism employment multiplier operates on a similar basis, summarizing either the direct, indirect and induced employment generated by an additional sum of tourism expenditure in the destination economy.
- Countries with fledgling tourism sectors, where few economic linkages exist between tourism and other sectors of the economy, usually experience lower income and employment multipliers. This is largely because of the leakages of foreign exchange earning to import tourism needs.

In the second part of the report, "Economic policy challenges for the tourism industry", the main challenges of the private sector are to;

- Recognise that sustainability is not an intrinsic attribute of certain niche markets (such as ecotourism) but a challenge to all tourism enterprises, regardless of their size or market orientation;
- Integrate environmental management systems and procedures into all aspects of corporate activity, including the use of environmental and social audits, life cycle assessments, and the training of staff in the principles and practices of sustainable management;
- Apply appropriate measures at the operational level to minimise all forms of waste, conserve energy and freshwater resources, and control harmful emissions into all environmental media;
- Plan and manage their operations so as to minimise potential environmental, social and cultural impacts, using local materials wherever possible and employing technologies appropriate to the local conditions;
- Involve all stakeholders in decision-making, including customers, staff, trading partners and the host community;
- Develop partnerships with the host community, Governments and their agencies, other private sector companies and international organisation, in order to enhance the prospects for bringing about the sustainable development of tourism.

The main highlights of the third part of the addendum report are as follows;

- Governments must assume overall responsibility for ensuring that tourism is properly planned and managed in ways that will minimise its adverse impacts on the environmental and social fabric of the destination
- An important challenge, both for national and for regional planning authorities, is therefore to ensure that tourism is given proper attention and priority in their development plans. This will require planning authorities to:

(a) Identify and monitor tourism activities in the destination area, particularly informal tourism which, although less visible, may represent a significant component of tourism activity in the area;

(b) Measure and evaluate the impact of tourism activity on the infrastructures and resources of the destination area, including the development of suitable indicators for assessing the sustainability of tourism;

(c) Integrate tourism fully into both regional and national development plans, so that tourism develops in harmony with other forms of social and economic development in the destination area;

(d) Consult widely with the host community to ensure that as broad a range of views as possible are incorporated into the development planning process

- Unsustainable practices in related economic sectors will limit the potential for tourism to become more sustainable
- Sustainability in tourism must not be achieved at the expense of sustainability in other sectors of the economy. This will require Governments to:

(a) Ensure that all environmental regulations and environmental policy measures are applied throughout the tourism sector, regardless of the size of the business or the type of tourism activity concerned;

(b) Manage tourism in protected areas, such as national parks, paying due regard to their limited capacity to accommodate tourism without becoming damaged or degraded;

(c) Plan the development of other economic activities (such as agriculture or mineral extraction) to ensure that they do not deplete or degrade resources important to the tourism sector;

(d) Make sure that the development of major infrastructures, such as road networks or water supply systems, caters for the needs not only of the tourism sector, but also of other industries in the area, as well as for the needs of local community as a whole;

(e) Take steps to reduce the seasonal pattern of tourism activity by developing out-of-season employment opportunities in destinations that are heavily dependent on tourism;

(f) Develop a strategy for taxing tourism activity that is efficient, fair and conducive to the sustainable development of tourism;

(g) Ensure that the economic benefits of tourism are distributed widely among the host population, so that local people have a strong incentive to protect tourism's environmental and cultural resource base

- Governments must be to develop policy frameworks that will enable and encourage these changes to achieve sustainable tourism. This will require Governments to:

(a) Ensure that sustainability, rather than be the preserve merely of niche market segments such as ecotourism, is adopted as the primary objective of all sectors of the tourism industry, large and small, private and public;

(b) Encourage responsible practices, through the promotion of voluntary codes of conduct and environmental management schemes;

(c) Apply a range of environmental regulations and management measures appropriate to the context in which particular tourism activities take place, and to monitor those regulations and measures, and ensure that their importance is widely appreciated;

(d) Supplement these regulations and measures with appropriate financial incentive mechanisms such as user fees and tourist taxes: this will help to ensure that tourism operators and their customers are presented with the true costs of their activities;

(e) Apply the "polluter pays" principle to ensure that the burden of regulation is shared as equitably as possible;

(f) Adopt a precautionary approach to the development of policies aimed at fostering the sustainable development of tourism: this means taking positive action even before conclusive proof of cause and effect has been established

- Employment in the tourism sector tends to be dominated by low-skilled, part-time, casual and seasonal work. The nature of work in the tourism sector may act as an impediment to the pursuit of sustainable tourism

- The challenge for national Governments and their agencies in capacity building area is to:
 - (a) Ensure that sustainability issues are fully integrated into tourism courses offered by schools, colleges of further education and establishments of higher education;
 - (b) Work with companies to develop training schemes and to establish networks for the exchange of training materials dealing with sustainability issues in the tourism sector;
 - (c) Coordinate the efforts across the range of government departments and agencies involved in tourism to reduce the precariousness of employment in the tourism sector;
 - (d) Encourage tourism businesses to employ local people, so that the host community receives more of the economic benefits of tourism; this in turn will help to reinforce the bond between the host community and the cultural and environmental assets used by the tourism sector;
 - (e) Encourage tourism businesses to train and promote local personnel, so that local perspectives can be better integrated into the management ethos and practices of the company
- Available data shows 90 per cent of tourism originated in developed countries and because of recreational time and facilities, as well as community allocated budgets, tourism demand in the developed countries is now reaching a "ceiling" and its maximum levels
- It is important to find ways to reduce or even remove tariff-like barriers and non-tariff barriers to international level
- Coastal tourism destinations need to be singled out for special attention because of their attractions, fragile ecosystem, vulnerability, over usage, poorly planned in the past and their role in employment and income generation
- The challenge for national Governments on tourism seasonality is to:
 - (a) Identify ways in which tourism activity can be spread more evenly throughout the year, thereby reducing the seasonality of tourism in coastal areas;
 - (b) Encourage the development of economic activities that can complement and help to support tourism in coastal areas, especially those that can be pursued during periods other than the main tourist season;
 - (c) Assist tourism organisation of all kinds in assessing and responding to the changing nature of the international demand for tourism, for example by developing alternative forms of tourism
- The main challenges for SIDS in economic role of tourism
 - (a) Identifying ways in which the tourism sector can continue to remain competitive and grow without imposing significant further damage on the environmental and cultural fabric of destination areas;
 - (b) Balancing the heightened demands placed on local resources by tourism in island locations with the demands put upon them by other economic activities and by host communities;
 - (c) Plugging expenditure leakage, including the fostering of backward linkages from tourism into the rest of the destination economy and the development of forms of tourism that enable local communities to receive a greater share of the benefits;

(d) Managing carefully the extent of foreign involvement in the tourism sector, including not only the involvement of transnational corporations in tourism, but also the employment by the tourism economy of expatriate labour;

(e) Diversifying the national economy in order to reduce dependency on tourism as a source of income, employment and foreign exchange earnings.

- The international community has an important role to play in widening the sustainability agenda, providing the necessary funding for the development of sustainable tourism infrastructure projects, informing national tourism policies and encouraging good practices in the sustainable planning and management of tourism.

The challenge for the international community must be to assist host governments, to enable their tourism industries to become more competitive. This will involve:

(a) Helping to develop workable techniques and frameworks for assessing the environmental and social impacts of tourism at the national, regional and local levels;

(b) Providing practical advice to the tourism industry on how to implement sustainable tourism through the use of integrated environmental management and social responsibility programmes;

(c) Working with Governments at all levels to develop a range of meaningful and effective planning guidelines, codes of good practice, regulatory frameworks and policy provisions aimed at achieving sustainable tourism;

(d) Promoting internationally recognised quality assurance schemes for tourism and helping to adapt existing schemes, through modification, to the tourism management context;

(e) Facilitating the international exchange of information, experiences and technical skills, especially between the developed and the developing countries;

(f) Establishing networks that raise awareness of the need for sustainability in all aspects of tourism and provide training on sustainability issues for those working in the tourism industry, especially in the developing country context;

(g) Encouraging wider community participation in the planning, operation and consumption of tourism.

- Assistance of WTO and UNEP has been provided in the form of specific country or sub-regional projects, technical seminars, workshops, conferences, training courses for government officials and local authorities, and numerous publications and manuals. The World Tourism Organisation is in a position to multiply its technical support activities in cooperation with other agencies and donors.
- The international community plays an important role in tourism development by providing funding for tourism-related infrastructure projects. World Bank affiliates UNDP, GEF, and the development assistance departments of many countries are among them. The World Tourism Organisation is often involved as executing agencies for the provision of technical assistance.

International funds should be monitored by international institution to be used in the line of sustainable tourism development. This includes;

(a) Making use of environmental and social impact assessment methods when appraising funding proposals for investment in tourism-related infrastructures;

(b) Adopting social cost-benefit analysis and non-market environmental valuation techniques in appraising tourism infrastructure projects;

(c) Encouraging a wider use of environmental and social impact techniques, social cost-benefit analysis and non-market environmental valuation techniques by national Governments and local planning authorities;

(d) Developing integrated infrastructure development plans that take account not only of the needs of the tourism sector but also of those of other economic activities and of the local community as a whole;

(e) Ensuring that funding, rather than concentrate solely on the development of new, alternative forms of tourism, is available to assist in making mass tourism more sustainable.

- The international community can help national Governments to redress the growing imbalance between market and its powerful trans-national corporations and nation state by:

(a) Working with national Governments to determine the best combination of regulations, incentives-based measures and voluntary compliance schemes for ensuring that the investment practices of trans-national corporations are fully compliant with the principles of sustainable tourism;

(b) Encouraging environmental and social assessment of the impacts of foreign direct investment, advising on good practice and exposing poor practice;

(c) Insisting that trans-national corporations transfer appropriate technologies, technical skills, training and environmental education to their host countries;

(d) Encouraging trans-national corporations to employ local staff, particularly at management levels, and to develop effective mechanisms for the participation of both the workforce and the wider host community in corporate decision-making.

- The role of the international community to extend and availability of tourism facilities to all of the world's population is to:

(a) Work to remove artificial barriers to tourism trade, under the provisions of the General Agreement on Trade in Services;³

(b) Facilitate further multilateral tourism trade liberalisation on the basis of the General Agreement on Trade in Services;

(c) Support and encourage the development of domestic and interregional tourism, which can have a relatively greater economic impact on the host destination because of the lower expenditure leakage rates associated with such activities.

- Further growth in world travel and tourism must take place, only on a sustainable basis.

- Achieving sustainable tourism will require change on the part of all those involved in the tourism industry and international community can play role by;

(a) Promoting the wider use of debt-for-nature swaps, which involve non-governmental organisation' buying developing country's debt at a discount from creditor banks in return for the debtor country's agreeing to invest a similar sum of local currency in environmental protection projects;

(b) Including environmental and social accounts in the development of "tourism satellite accounts", which cover only the economic costs and benefits of tourism

SG addendum report on tourism and social development (E/CN.17/1999/5/Add.2)

The second addendum to the report of Secretary General on Tourism and sustainable development is about tourism and social development E/CN/1999/5/Add.2. It contains four parts. In the first, "social aspects of tourism" the addendum report recalled the general social impact of tourism and then highlighted following points;

- The difficulty in analysing tourism's social impact concerns the socio-cultural resilience of the host community, the type and rate of tourism growth, the ratio of visitors to members of the resident community, seasonal trends and the differing characteristics of visitors.
- Among the most common and prevalent social impacts of tourism that have caused concern involve the image of the destination, the exploitation of vulnerable persons, capacity considerations, localised benefits and costs, and health.
- Marketing both in public and private sector needs international links. International cooperation provides both an opportunity and a danger. The opportunity is to share costs and allow a wider market penetration and coverage as a consequence of a partnership arrangement. The danger is that, without careful monitoring by the government or NTA (or both), tourism publicity may develop an undesirable image for a country.
- Commercial motivation should never be the excuse for projecting a socially damaging and unacceptable image.
- International wealthy tourists expose different culture and lifestyles to less wealthy host country community, which can cause economic, social and political impacts
- The apparent affluence of tourists attracts the providers of undesirable services, particularly drug suppliers and prostitutes. It will attract undesired category of tourism, destroy host country's images and creates the sense of exploitation in unengaged part of community in such services
- The exploitation of the most vulnerable in society increases antagonism towards tourists and tourism and may well undermine the long-term sustainability of the tourism sector in a place
- If community participation in tourism development is weak a sense of exploitation could become apparent
- The growth of tourism put pressure on existing resources like water and land

- Where tourism development is based on an *enclave* model, and where there is limited contact between visitor and hosts, the feeling of estrangement and of being underprivileged is intensified
- As overcrowding occurs, the host community may find itself under greater pressure from visitors, a pressure which may change the rhythm of a community's lifestyle
- The overcrowding, the pressure on resources, the challenges to establish culture and the related demands that tourism makes on communities, may be disproportionate costs and benefits of tourism and cause possible hostility towards tourists. Unless more economic benefits of local tourism activities remain in the community.
- As international tourism increases, there are growing concerns about the transmission of diseases and the availability of appropriate levels of health care. Medical advice and services provided by origin country and in-house services by hotels in destinations could be useful.
- As far as the cultural well-being of the destinations are concerned, tourism can have both negative dimensions, such as cultural deterioration and conflict due to cultural differences, and positive ones, such as cultural exchange, and the revival of traditional crafts and ceremonies.
- The major negative dimension is the deterioration of valuable cultural assets. For example, imitating what foreign visitors do, wear and eat. The employment of women in tourism is generally seen as a liberating factor; it may however, be viewed alternatively as a means of undermining traditional family structures and values.
- A more serious form of cultural deterioration is disappearance of unprotected historic sites and buildings as well as traditional environment
- There is a significant role for the local community in protecting a culture — in deciding what it is prepared to offer, how its cultural patrimony is to be presented and which, if any, aspects of the culture are to be off-limits to visitors.
- Mutual misunderstanding may remove or reduce by tourism awareness campaigns as well as economic benefits
- presentations of traditional dance, music and folklore accompanied by a meal featuring indigenous cuisine as a "cultural evening"
- cross-cultural contacts are also a potential cause of social discontent specially when the number of visitors are high and local culture is fragile
- the ability of a local community to absorb tourists without submerging the local culture should be evaluated
- The cultural exchange can benefit both parties and generates economic and financial advantages to the host community
- Tourism has contributed significantly to the revival of traditional crafts and ceremonies. The traditional handicraft industries retain much of the product value-added within communities

and provide employment opportunities for women. In countries where tourism is mainly based on wildlife and ecotourism, rural community development has benefited

- One of the major social challenges for the private sector is to overcome narrow sectional interests in the interest of furthering tourism development and increasing levels of benefits like umbrella organisation to provide a representative voice to government and a forum to discuss general issues important to the sector
- The tourism sector has been characterised as offering generally poor conditions of work — low wages, irregular working hours, and part-time and seasonal work. These characteristics are reflected in high rates of labour turnover, low skills and poor service standards. The ILO Convention concerning the hospitality sector (Convention No. 172 concerning Working Conditions in Hotels, Restaurants and Similar Establishments (1991)) calls for policies to improve the working conditions in tourism areas
- As technology continues to facilitate the development and operation of tourism, it should be monitored to evaluate impacts on jobs and conditions of work. Equitable distribution of productivity benefits; new management styles; changes in skill requirements; training and retraining needs; high turnover rates; promotion of the development of small enterprises; and labour-management relations in view of the changes taking place, are all areas of concern. new technology in tourism sector had discussed in ILO in 1997.
- Governments can legislate on matters relating to health and safety at work, health insurance and pensions, minimum wages, and employment of women and young people. But for effective implementation tripartite social dialogue can facilitate it.
- Collective agreements may be necessary to cover flexible working arrangements and other issues such as the repercussions of the introduction of new technologies on employment, skills, wages, job security and workers' rights.
- The financing of training activities is recognised to be an important challenge for the tripartite dialogue among Governments and workers' and employers' organisation.
- Government can initiate policy interventions in areas such as the sustainability of tourism development, indigenization of the tourism sector, promotion of entrepreneurial initiative, community participation in tourism development planning and community tourism awareness campaigns, safeguarding of local cultures, human resource development, participation of women and children, and a legal framework for tourism.
- It is common practice even in developed countries to charge entrance fees to museums and recreational amenities to contribute to their upkeep.
- One way to encourage indigenization is to "reserve" some areas of tourism development for local investors. On the other hand, lifting unnecessary restriction on foreign investment
- If more indigenous business ownership could be developed, the perception of tourism as a foreign-dominated sector would be reduced.

- Community tourism awareness campaigns try to inform communities about why tourism is being developed, the potential benefits that can be realised and the opportunities for participation in the sector to avoid common antagonism towards tourists. Informing the community should be a continuing process and should be a responsibility of the national tourism administration, private sector associations and community representatives.
- Communities should be allowed to comment on development proposals and perhaps be involved in the implementation of the proposals.
- Community participation has to be linked to community benefits.
- Governments should work closely with communities and the private sector to ensure that available funding is used effectively and efficiently
- Growth and developments in tourism have to be of an appropriate scale and in a location to meet the social carrying capacity of a community. It is for governments intervention and management
- One of the social problems related to tourism in the developing countries is the lack of indigenous senior managers
- Governments, NGO's and international agencies have to focus on the sexual abuse and condition of the work of vulnerable workers group like women, children and young people
- Governments should ensure that there is an appropriate legal framework available to manage and control the tourism sector to prevent exploitation of resources and people, and to stop sex tourism and the abuse of children

Part IV of report is mostly about the recent international meeting concerning social development.

SG Addendum report on tourism and environmental protection (E/CN.17/1999/5/Add.3)

Third addendum to the report of Secretary General on Tourism and sustainable development is about tourism and environmental protection E/CN/1999/5/Add.3. The addendum report contains five parts. In the first part "Tourism and environmental protection" the following point raised;

- The main adverse impacts of tourism on the environment are connected to pressure on natural resources, harm to wildlife and habitats (with associated loss of biological diversity), the generation of pollution and wastes, and social and cultural pressures related to the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity
- The main natural resources at threat are as follows:
 - (a) Freshwater. There is overuse of critical water resources by the tourism industry for hotels, swimming pools and golf courses.
 - (b) Land and landscape. Tourism development can lead to sand mining, beach and sand dune erosion, soil erosion and urbanization. Road and airport construction can lead to land degradation, loss of wildlife habitats and deterioration of scenery;
 - (c) Marine resources. Tourism and recreational activities (scuba diving, snorkelling, port fishing), can lead to damage to coral reefs and subsequent impacts on coastal protection and fisheries;

(d) Atmosphere. Threats to the atmosphere are related to the high levels of energy use in tourism facilities and for tourism-related transportation;

(e) Local resources. Tourism can create pressure on local resources, such as energy, food, water and other raw materials which may be in short supply

- The main harm to wildlife and habitats occur where tourism activities disrupt biological resources or operate in ecologically fragile areas, as follows:

(a) Biological resources. Tourism can lead to the disruption of wildlife habitats, clearance of vegetation for tourism developments, increased pressure on endangered species due to trade and hunting, increased demand for fuel wood, and forest fires;

(b) Ecologically fragile areas, such as rain forests, wetlands, mangroves, coral reefs and sea grass beds. If nature tourism is not properly planned and managed it can threaten the world's most ecologically fragile areas, including parks and natural world heritage sites

- Pollution and wastes generated by the tourism industry can lead to the following forms of contamination:

(a) Land contamination from solid wastes and litter

(b) Freshwater contamination from pollution by sewage;

(c) Contamination of marine waters and coastal areas from sediment run-off, pollution from land-based hotels and marinas, and waste and litter linked with marine sports and cruises.

(d) Air contamination from air pollution from tourist transportation at the local level, and at the global level,

(e) Noise, from ground as well as air transportation

- Tourism can create social and cultural pressures related to the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity it can adversely affect traditional practices that contribute to the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. Tourism can introduce resource use conflicts; there is potential competition with traditional land uses, between tourism industry and local community

- The viability of the tourism industry can be threatened by environmental degradation:

(a) Global warming can threaten tourism in coastal areas from rises in sea level. In ski resorts, snow conditions can become less reliable.

(b) Loss of biological diversity linked to human activities and loss of landscape attractiveness affect a number of tourist destinations.

(c) Water pollution can cause damage to tourism sites in many regions, as well as contaminating the freshwater supply.

(d) Local air pollution linked to urban congestion can discourage tourists from visiting some destinations

- Tourism can significantly contribute to environmental protection, the conservation of biological diversity and the sustainable use of natural resources. At the same time, it can also

provide much needed resources and raise awareness of the value of environmental and cultural assets

- Parks, protected areas and cultural and natural sites, are vital assets for the development of tourism, and the tourism industry can contribute to their conservation through financial contributions, provision of environmental infrastructure and improved environmental management
- The involvement of local communities in tourism development and operation appears to be an important condition for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity
- For sustainable tourism, there is a need to better understand not only the benefits but also the costs of tourism. It is necessary to develop both a more systematic analysis of direct and indirect costs and benefits from tourism, and “green” accounting approaches

In part II “environmental policy challenges for the tourism industry” the Add report pointed out the following;

- The tourism industry has developed a number of voluntary initiatives for addressing environmental issues:

(a) Environmental management of tourism facilities, especially hotels, is being widely promoted, and progress is being made, particularly for larger hotels, in waste reduction handling, management and disposal, and energy and water consumption.

(b) A number of environmental codes of conduct have also been developed by the tourism sector, as well as action plans

(c) The tourism industry is also increasingly interested in ecolabels as a means of promoting their facilities and destinations

- The key remaining challenges facing the tourism industry are to:

(a) Promote wider implementation of environmental management, and spread initiatives to all sectors of the tourism industry;

(b) Use more widely environmentally sound technologies

(c) Address the key issues of siting and more eco-efficient design of tourism facilities;

(d) Raise the awareness of tourism clients of the environment and social implications of their holidays, and of opportunities for their responsible behaviour;

(e) Develop a better dialogue with the local communities in travel destinations, and promote the involvement of local stakeholders in tourism ventures;

(f) Work with Governments and other stakeholders to improve the overall environmental quality of destinations;

(g) Report publicly on environmental performance

- A number of initiatives have been taken by many Governments, to:

(a) Develop national strategies or master plans for sustainable development of tourism;

(b) Develop appropriate regulatory mechanisms and tools, such as environmental assessment and the development of building regulations and environmental standards for tourism;

- (c) Create terrestrial and marine protected areas;
- (d) Support voluntary initiatives by the tourism industry
- Governments need to further develop and implement the legislative and policy frameworks for sustainable development. In particular, they need to:
 - (a) Ratify and effective implementation of, international and regional environmental conventions;
 - (b) Integrate more fully tourism development into the overall plans for sustainable development and develop participatory approaches;
 - (c) Develop more widely land use planning, and protect the coastline through building restrictions
 - (d) Identify and adopt the most appropriate mix of regulation and economic instruments to address environmental issues;
 - (e) Work towards the effective enforcement of regulations and standards
- Governments need to raise awareness, build capacity and promote effective action for sustainable tourism. This requires that they strive to:
 - (a) Improve the understanding of the benefits and burdens of tourism in environmental, social and economic terms, for the areas under their jurisdiction;
 - (b) Strengthen capacity for the management and control of tourism in their sphere of responsibility, and establish and maintain procedures for cooperation and coordination with neighbouring authorities, and with relevant State authorities;
 - (c) Provide support through pilot projects and capacity development programmes, including capacity development at the local government level;
 - (d) Ensure the participation of all stakeholders affected by or involved in tourism and its development, especially indigenous and local communities;
 - (e) Ensure that tourism makes a positive contribution to economic development, and that the economic benefits of tourism are equitably shared;
 - (f) Encourage and dynamics industry initiatives for sustainable tourism across all sectors of tourism, including accommodation, land, air and sea transportation, tour operators, travel agents, attractions sectors etc.;
 - (g) Promote changes in consumer behaviour in both tourist-originating countries and destinations towards more sustainable forms of tourism
- Governments will also need to develop monitoring of progress towards sustainable tourism
- Main key environmental policy challenges facing NGO's in part IV "environmental policy challenges for NGO's " are;
 - (a) More specifically voice their views in tourism policies and strategies;
 - (b) Contribute to the development and implementation of environmental standards for tourism;

(c) Develop or participate in raising awareness and education activities for sensitising tourists towards improving guest consumption patterns;

(d) Assist in monitoring tourism activities and development and progress towards more sustainable tourism

In part V “ environmental policy challenges for the international community”, some of the activities of international organisation is reported. The key challenges they facing are to;

(a) Assist and support Governments in the development of national strategies or master plans for the sustainable development of tourism, and of environmental land use and building regulations and standards for tourism;

(b) Raise awareness and build capacity of all stakeholders by providing information on best practices for sustainable tourism;

(c) Encourage the private sector to develop and apply codes and guidelines, and environmental management systems, and promote the development of the use of environmental reporting by companies in the various branches of the tourism sector;

(d) Assist in assessing the environmental effectiveness of existing voluntary initiatives in the various branches of the tourism sector, and make recommendations accordingly;

(e) Promote the transfer of environmentally sound technologies (ESTs), practices and management tools adapted for the tourism sector, and disseminate information on ESTs to Governments and the tourism industry;

(f) Work with other stakeholders to establish and disseminate lessons from best practices projects on sustainable tourism;

(g) Provide support through provision of information and capacity development programmes, particularly on the costs and benefits of tourism development, the use of economic incentives to promote sustainable tourism, and on destination management;

(h) Assist in the establishment of monitoring of progress towards sustainable tourism

- There are several important emerging issues with regard to tourism and environmental protection. These include:

(a) Developing partnership. For sustainable tourism, the involvement and commitment of all stakeholders are essential including public, private and academic sector partnerships

(b) Involvement of the banking and insurance sectors. Banks and insurance companies could greatly expedite the progress of sustainable tourism by incorporating environmental and social criteria into assessment procedures for loans, investments, and insurance. They could help to finance ESTs and provide incentives for sustainable tourism

(c) Use of economic instruments. The tourism industry consumes increasingly scarce natural resources. The costing of energy and water in particular could expedite eco-efficiency greatly in the tourism industry and raise revenue for the improved management of those resources. Governments should consider the development and widespread use of economic instruments for sustainable tourism;

(d) Involvement of tourism boards. There is a need to better involve tourism boards and marketing strategies in sustainable tourism efforts;

(e) Capacity building of local government. Capacity building programmes should be implemented to help local governments understand their responsibilities, develop integrated and participatory approaches, and define and implement policies for sustainable tourism;

(f) Greater focus on transport. There is a continued development of long-haul travel. Economic, technological and management approaches should be developed to reduce emissions, waste and pollution resulting from tourism transportation. Changing consumption patterns should also be considered;

(g) Emerging types of tourism. Tourism is rapidly diversifying. Emerging forms of tourism should also develop according to sustainability criteria

(h) Improve monitoring. Careful monitoring of impacts and results, as well as the adoption of corrective measures, are conditions for sustainable tourism. Monitoring should thus be developed by all stakeholders at all levels. Local and central governments should develop monitoring tools, such as indicators, and should incorporate the results into their decision-making process. Monitoring is currently uncommon and that should be made a priority.

Multi-stakeholder dialogue segment on sustainable tourism

The General Assembly based on Res.A/S.19-2 of its 19th special session, therefore, placed sustainable tourism on the agenda of the Commission at its seventh session. The Commission at its seventh session in 1999 considered tourism as an economic sector and held a multi-stakeholder dialogue on the topic. As usual, CSD included a multi-stakeholder dialogue as part of its official proceedings. This mechanism traditionally enables the CSD to work out in detail the common approaches for and exchange of experiences between governments and major groups, including representatives of business and industry, workers and trade unions, local authorities and non-governmental organisation as well as vulnerable groups, in specific economic sector. CSD7 organised the tourism segment in the same format, and held the session from 19 to 21 April 1999. The relationship between tourism and sustainable development were debated at CSD7's multi-stakeholders dialogue segment. The mandate of segment was preparing and proposing a specific outcome for CSD-7 on sustainable tourism, including an agreement work programme. Lead organisation invited by CSD secretariat to assist in the preparation for tourism segment included the World Travel and Tourism Council, International Hotel and Restaurant Association, International Confederation of Free Trade Unions/Trade Union Advisory Committee to the OECD, International Council for Local Environmental Initiatives, and the CSD NGO Steering Committee. A major part of that discussion centred on thematic multi-stakeholder dialogues that focus on the impact and contribution of tourism to sustainable development. The Tourism Segment included two full days of dialogue among actors from industry, workers, communities and local authorities.

The Segment focused on the following themes: Industry initiatives for sustainable tourism, Influencing consumer behaviour to promote sustainable tourism, Promoting broad-based sustainable development through Tourism while safeguarding the integrity of local cultures and protecting the environment, Coastal impact of tourism.

In the first theme "Industry Initiatives for Sustainable Tourism", the chairman of the segment summarised the debate and reported that "Participants recognised the global economic significance of tourism. It is a growth industry, accounting for more than ten per cent of the global GDP, and offers significant employment opportunities. Industry forecasts suggest there will continue to be rapid development in this sector. It was noted, however, that many people are not able to participate in tourism due to poverty and inadequate wages. It was also recognised that tourism has significant social, cultural and environmental impacts. Discussions and presentations demonstrated the various voluntary initiatives launched by industry to promote sustainable tourism, including certification programmes and codes of conduct, at the national and international levels. Participants supported these existing initiatives to encourage sustainable tourism and the commitment of industry to do more. Agenda 21 for Travel and Tourism was highlighted as a policy framework developed by industry. The willingness of industry to further develop this framework through multi-stakeholder processes was welcomed.

The existing voluntary initiatives were identified as being complementary to national and local regulatory compliance efforts, as these initiatives are designed to be cost-effective means of surpassing existing regulatory requirements. It was agreed that the range of measures from regulation to voluntary initiatives and agreements were appropriate for further efforts to achieve sustainable development in the travel and tourism sector. Voluntary measures developed with multi-stakeholder participation, mutual trust and respect, transparency, monitoring, and assessment and verification were seen as most likely to generate confidence and support from all parties.

Participants referred to numerous public and private systems of certification, including the Green Globe programme. This was promoted by industry as an example of a global certification standard in tourism and industry agreed to put in place a multi-stakeholder advisory group for this programme. There was general support for greater discussion and promotion of 'best practices' and for further research to identify such practices that promote sustainable development in the tourism sector. It was suggested that consideration be given to a review of existing voluntary initiatives in this sector building on the work initiated by CSD-6 and the subsequent Toronto Workshop to Identify the Key Elements of a Review of Voluntary Initiatives and Agreements (10-12 March 1999).

Although tourism has significant economic benefits for many countries and communities, it also has adverse social and economic impacts in many locations. Concerns included leakage of revenues, low wages, poor working conditions, and child labour and sex tourism. Participants emphasised the need to reinvest in local communities, to encourage procurement of local products

and services, to promote vocational training and education, and to eliminate the sexual and economic exploitation of women and children. Programmes for retraining and re-employment could provide a social safety net for communities adversely affected by tourism development and should be promoted by governments, international organisation and major groups. Issues related to the special needs of older tourists who make up a growing number of travellers were also raised. It was agreed that special attention should be given to implementing existing agreements, codes, and regulations that seek to regulate or eliminate these conditions, such as those produced by the ILO. On the issue of waste management, there was agreement to make further efforts to reduce packaging waste associated with the travel and tourism industry.

Participants agreed that multi-stakeholder participation and openness and transparency at all levels were critical in achieving sustainable tourism. There was particular reference to the positive role that workers and trade unions could play through participation in efforts by business to identify and implement sustainability targets. There was agreement that partnership arrangements and multi-stakeholder processes were appropriate means of participation and cooperation among the stakeholders in the tourism sector.

There was general agreement by all participants on the need to develop, implement and use indicators for sustainable tourism. While work is taking place in several different organisation, better focus and coordination of these efforts is required, possibly at the international level, keeping in mind the need to base any indicator sets on local conditions and priorities. Identifying the limits to social and environmental carrying capacity in tourism destinations was highlighted as an important priority. CSD should play a role in promoting agreement on tourism indicators that incorporate environmental, cultural and social criteria. The need for reliable information and identification of best practices by industry were highlighted.

It was emphasised that a global framework and plan of action for sustainable tourism must be coupled with implementation and decision-making at the local level, as well as at the regional and national levels. The value of Local Agenda 21 as an enabling framework for partnerships was recognised. Local Agenda 21 planning is an established mechanism for facilitating multi-stakeholder cooperation, and can be effectively employed in tourist destinations to promote sustainable tourism practices. Participants noted with appreciation the new Memorandum of Understanding signed by ICLEI and WTTC to integrate the principles of Agenda 21 for Travel and Tourism Industry and Local Agenda 21 planning to support sustainable development in major tourism destinations around the world".

The chairman summary on "Influencing Consumer Behaviour" described that "Participants emphasised the importance of education as a tool to influence consumer and producer behaviour to promote sustainable tourism, particularly when education efforts and related educational materials are developed and applied through multi-stakeholder participation and cooperation. Local Agenda 21 programmes, workplace-based partnerships for education planning and actions for change, NGO

networks, tourism industry associations, educators and educational institutions, tourism information centres, and national and international institutions of education were identified as important channels for sustainable tourism education. Education efforts should focus not only on travellers but also on investors, workers and host communities. Special attention needs to be given to young people and their participation both as recipients of education and as partners in developing education programmes. It was emphasised that these efforts should be applied in both formal and informal education. The ultimate goal of sustainable tourism education should be to move all relevant actors from short-term to long-term thinking and planning. There was agreement that governments, the tourism industry and other stakeholders should establish programmes to raise public awareness about the impact of tourists on destinations, to promote respect for local communities and their cultures and to protect the environment. At the invitation of industry representatives, participants agreed to support the "Dodo" education project of WTTC and WWF, and to participate in development of other similar programmes. The value of workplace-based programmes to educate workers both as tourists and for those involved in travel and tourism as service providers was highlighted. The importance of ensuring that such programmes involve local communities and are relevant to individual destinations and local cultures was noted. As a specific initiative, participants endorsed the proposal of local authorities to develop, through multi-stakeholder engagement, destination-specific in-flight educational videos introducing travellers to sustainable tourism practices and to promote their extensive use by airlines.

Some participants expressed concern about the role of the media and the advertising industry, noting the impact they have on consumer perceptions and behaviour. Participants agreed that the media should be encouraged to act as an agent for influencing positive consumer behaviour. Governments were urged to encourage advertising messages that are consistent with sustainable development principles and objectives. There was considerable interest on the part of participants in the Global Code of Ethics being developed by the World Tourism Organisation. Multi-stakeholder participation in its development, implementation and monitoring should be encouraged. It was also proposed that a Sustainable Tourism Covenant, to be developed with major groups' participation, could promote higher standards of tourist behaviour. Several programmes for certification of voluntary initiatives were noted. Some concern was expressed about the proliferation of such schemes without international guidelines to assist consumers and producers in understanding their value and effectiveness. There was broad agreement on the need for a set of international guidelines to promote international consistency and provide decision-making tools for consumers and communities. The inclusion of an education component in tourism industry initiatives should be seen as a key criterion in such certification schemes. Several participants emphasised that criteria used in certification schemes should meet or exceed minimum national standards, where they exist, and should include social, cultural and economic aspects as well as environmental considerations. It was emphasised that multi-stakeholder engagement in developing, implementing, promoting and monitoring such schemes would increase their effectiveness. Several

participants endorsed de-marketing strategies as a means to protect sensitive or fragile destinations from damage through overloading. Such strategies could include pricing orientation, omission from guidebooks and promotion among consumers of other tourist sites. De-marketing strategies that influence societal values can take place in both originating and destination countries.

Participants supported the idea of an inter-agency effort, with stakeholder participation, to look at current activities aimed at influencing consumer behaviour and improving consumer advocacy. This effort would consider how to enhance the effectiveness of existing initiatives and activities, as well as research and evaluate the impact of price mechanisms and legislation on consumer behaviour. A report on the results of this work could be submitted to the CSD in 2002.

Several participants highlighted the link between tourism and health in the context of contagious diseases. Participants attached importance to the involvement of the tourism industry in efforts to address health issues associated with tourism, including HIV/AIDS and other contagious and infectious diseases''.

In the third part of his summary, 'Promoting broad-based sustainable development through tourism while safeguarding the integrity of local cultures and protecting the environment', the chairman reported that "Promoting broad-based sustainable development through tourism while safeguarding the integrity of local cultures and protecting the environment requires an effective partnership between key stakeholders at the local, national, regional, and international levels and participation at all levels of tourism planning, development and assessment. The need to develop employer-employee partnerships (including trade unions) with multi-stakeholder support and funding was endorsed.

Establishment of a multi-stakeholder working group was proposed and endorsed by several groups. It could work in collaboration with relevant UN agencies and organisation. It might consider such issues as: (a) financial leakages and how to maximise benefits for local communities, (b) preparing a joint initiative to improve information availability and capacity building for participation thus enabling communities to manage social and environmental change, and (c) developing a plan to ensure indigenous peoples' and other local communities' land, water and other natural resource rights. The initial results of this working group could be reported to CSD-8 in 2000.

There was considerable concern about the challenges of globalisation. Participants felt that multi-stakeholder participation could help mitigate the effects of globalisation. The principle of local community participation in decision-making was endorsed. Participants took note of the differences in the objectives of the World Trade Organisation and Agenda 21.

There was broad agreement that the rights of indigenous peoples and local communities should be respected. Several participants noted that the use of indigenous or local cultures as a "product" to market must be approached with sensitivity, and should include the participation in decision-making of those groups affected by it. Measures to combat the illegal trade in cultural

goods, such as issuing certificates of origin, should be considered. It was suggested that certification schemes include criteria on local and indigenous participation.

In discussing education as an essential tool, participants endorsed the proposal for stakeholders to jointly develop and employ musicians and other artists to promote Agenda 21 and sustainable tourism. They asked Governments to join them in this initiative and support the development of networks to provide sustainable development, generally.

It was agreed that local authorities and local communities must play the key role in determining their "carrying capacity" for tourism development. There should not be a globally imposed limit and decisions should be based on multi-stakeholder processes at the local level. Different locations will face different requirements and problems. Considerations of carrying capacity should include economic, social, cultural and environmental dimensions. Decisions should be made based on the principle of prior informed consent. While not all participants endorsed 'eco-taxes', there was support for appropriate pricing of resources, aimed at reflecting the true costs of goods and services. Industry should, in particular pay its fair share to maintain the natural and cultural assets that tourists want to utilise''.

Coastal impact of tourism as the third theme of segment was reported as "Participants recognised that many sustainable development issues are focused around coastal systems, and that tourism is a crucial sector in coastal areas." The particular importance of the coastal impact of tourism on Small Island Developing States was noted, as was the significant challenge posed to coastal communities by climate change.

In discussing integrated coastal zone management, participants agreed that there are real biophysical limits to capacity in any particular location as well as cultural limits that should be determined at the local level by the local community. The need for decisions to be made at a local level through a multi-stakeholder process with regard to national and international frameworks was endorsed. NGOs proposed the establishment of a multi-stakeholder group at the international level to advise on the planning and implementation of a fully integrated process of coastal tourism development and offered to launch this mechanism in collaboration with government, industry, trade unions and other major groups. Workplace-based planning was proposed as a way to influence consumer habits and choices. Coastal awards schemes to local coastal communities, such as the Blue Flag campaign in Europe, were highlighted as an effective incentive mechanism to encourage high quality coastal zone management. It was proposed that new tourism developments should be required to include all relevant sustainable development considerations, including design and implementation of a comprehensive waste management programme.

In discussing financial responsibility for infrastructure development and other costs associated with sustainable coastal tourism, participants agreed that the level of financial responsibility from industry and other stakeholders should be determined at the local level. Where local authorities decide to provide public subsidies for infrastructure development or maintenance

associated with tourism activities, the nature of the decision should be explicitly understood by the community that would bear the costs and the decision should involve the local community through a transparent multi-stakeholder process. Participants supported the polluter pays principle. While many participants noted that subsidies can impose costs on the local community, several noted that subsidies can also be beneficial.

A variety of measures aimed at mobilizing resources were mentioned, including fast-tracking the GEF, achieving agreement on cost and profit sharing formulas for all stakeholders, and encouraging UNDP and other agencies to help address consequences of coastal infrastructure development by making available information on practical sustainable development technologies and ways to monitor the coastal impact of tourism.

It was suggested that the CSD should invite and seek funding from international agencies such as the World Bank and regional development banks for pilot projects in both North and the South aimed at illustrating best practices of integrated planning. Some participants emphasised that these programmes should integrate Agenda 21 for travel and tourism with Local Agenda 21 programmes and should serve as benchmarks.

In discussing indicators, participants proposed that the CSD should encourage international agencies to develop indicators to measure the environmental, social and cultural impacts of coastal tourism. Indicators should be open to independent auditing and within a transparent, open framework where stakeholders' various responsibilities are clearly defined. Workshops were noted as a useful tool for disseminating information derived from indicators.

Participants agreed that the CSD should facilitate funding from international agencies such as the World Bank and from national governments for integrated environmental, social and economic research on best management practices in regard to design, development and management of tourism projects in coastal regions.

Regarding the role of small and medium sized enterprises (SMEs), industry representatives proposed that the CSD should encourage international agencies, national governments and industry to fund and support SMEs to implement environmental improvement measures.

Local authority representatives proposed that regional coastal management agencies be established, where appropriate, to act as a mechanism for managing coastal area planning. Alternatively, private foundations or NGOs could take the lead. They also called for a shift from a growth-based economic model to a steady state model.

Participants recommended that the CSD consider asking the IMO, with other relevant international agencies, to investigate the enforcement and application of internationally agreed standards and regulations relating to threats to sustainable development/the environment caused by shipping, with particular attention to coastal areas. Some participants noted that Flags of Convenience vessels, including cruise liners servicing tourists, were a particular area of concern.

Union representatives expressed concern at the impact of the recent growth in tourist-related or recreational fishing on traditional and indigenous fishing rights. They also called on CSD to support the rights of workers to act as whistleblowers on unsustainable practices by industry and to promote the protection of workers who do this''.

Inter-sessional ad-hoc working group on consumption and production patterns and on tourism

In other supportive activity, in response to para.69 of the Annex of Assembly resolution S/19-2 of 28 June 1997, on which the Assembly requested the CSD to develop an action-oriented international programme of work on sustainable tourism and in accordance with ECOSOC decision 1998/298 of 31 July 1998 as well as G A Res. 53/200 of 15 December 1998 (2002 as the International year of Ecotourism) and G A Res.53/24 of 10 November 1998(2002 as the International year of Mountains), one of the other CSD bodies " Inter-Sessional Ad Hoc Working Group on Consumption and Production Patterns and on Tourism" held a session on tourism from 22 to 26 February. In the tourism part of its session, the Ad Hoc working group had before it the report of SG and its Addendum (E/CN.17/1999/5 and Add I, II, III).

The role of the ad hoc working groups of the Commission on Sustainable Development was to serve as a preparatory meeting for the seventh session of the Commission and to facilitate the Commission's achieving tangible, action-oriented results on the issues of changing consumption and production patterns and of tourism and sustainable development. As agreed by the Inter-sessional Ad Hoc Working Group, the meeting produced two types of documents on both substantive items in its agenda. These documents were prepared by the Co-Chairmen of the Working Group on the basis of the discussions held during the meeting and comments made and proposals submitted by the participants.

The possible elements for draft decisions/resolutions by CSD and The Co-Chairmen's summaries of the discussions which attempt to reflect the overall thrust of the discussion in the Working Group.

The co-chairman of the Ad Hoc working group summarised the discussion on tourism, and reported to CSD7(E/CN.17/1999/6 report of inter sessional Ad Hoc working group on consumption and production patterns and tourism, part II.B), which later on was annexed to decision 7/3 of CSD7. This summary report contained concerns and ideas raised by delegations and categorized them into four major topics.

In the summary of the general considerations, the co-chairman reported "Many delegations noted that tourism is both currently and potentially a significant contributor to sustained economic growth and sustainable development. In a number of developing countries, tourism has emerged as a dominant economic contributor, providing infrastructure development, jobs, foreign exchange earnings, government tax revenue and other significant benefits to local communities'.

Developing countries experience trying times with regard to not only environmental management, but also socio-economic welfare and tourism market growth. Uplifting people is the biggest challenge facing the tourism sectors of these countries, and the creation of sustainable job opportunities and the promotion of emerging enterprises, as well as appropriate training, are of cardinal importance.

Many delegations also noted that the tourism industry is one of the fastest growing economic sectors in the global economy and has important economic, social, cultural and environmental impacts. Many delegations noted that the continued growth of the tourism industry has important implications for the achievement of sustainable development, particularly in Small Island Developing States and tourist destinations with fragile ecological environments.

Many countries emphasised that the tourism sector can be a major engine for economic development in many developing countries because of its large potential contribution to income- and employment-generation. Moreover, in some developing countries, particularly those lacking adequate resource endowments, such as the Small Island Developing States, tourism may be the only development alternative available in the short to medium term. However, there was some concern that over-reliance on tourism, especially mass tourism, carries significant risks to tourism-dependent economies since phenomena such as economic recession and natural disasters can have devastating effects on the tourism sector.

Many delegations noted that international tourism can potentially introduce both positive and negative social and cultural impacts in host destinations. Although tourism can create positive impacts on social development through employment creation, income redistribution and poverty alleviation, it also has the potential to introduce negative social and cultural change such as through drug abuse, child labour, prostitution, overcrowding, pressure on resources, and challenges to established culture.

Many delegations stated that an important consideration in sustainable tourism development is the tourist-carrying capacity of host destinations in both environmental and social terms, which should adequately reflect the ability of a local community to absorb tourists without submerging or overwhelming the local culture and its natural resources.

Many countries also stated that the tourism industry can present serious challenges to environmental management, particularly through its consumption of resources, the pollution and waste generated by the development of tourism infrastructures and facilities, transportation and tourist activities. In the absence of proper planning and management, tourism development can encourage the intensive or inappropriate use of land, which can lead to deforestation, soil erosion, and loss of biological diversity. Ironically, damage to the environment threatens the very viability of the tourism industry because tourism depends heavily on the natural environment.

Coastal area development for tourism was identified as an issue of particular concern by many countries. Improperly planned development of tourism can despoil the pristine beauty of coastal areas, contribute to beach destruction and coastal degradation and negatively affect the livelihood

of peoples in coastal communities. The treatment and disposal of liquid and solid wastes generated by the tourism industry were identified as a serious problem, particularly for less developed economies that lack the appropriate physical infrastructure or adequate waste treatment capacity. The disposal of untreated effluents into surrounding areas of land and sea often leads to the pollution of scarce inland freshwater resources, loss of valuable marine life, destruction of coral reefs and the silting and erosion of coastal beaches.

Some delegations, noting that the United Nations had declared 2002 as the International Year of Mountains, pointed out that opportunities exist for obvious linkages with the International Year of Ecotourism, also in 2002. Mountain regions represent a significant portion of the tourism industry. These remote, fragile and highly bio diverse ecosystems are homes to unique cultures and traditions, which draw tourists from an increasingly urbanised world. If it is not properly managed, and does not take into account local communities, local control of resources, the integral role of women, equitable distribution of benefits and appropriate infrastructure needs, tourism development in mountain regions threatens to undermine ecosystems and cultures.

Many countries emphasised that fresh water remains a pressing concern. Since the tourism industry is an extremely intensive user of fresh water, the problem of freshwater supply could worsen as the industry expands globally, unless steps are taken to minimise water use in accommodation and other tourism activities. Some other delegations noted that, although the tourism sector is only a minor contributor to global warming, air pollution could worsen at the global level, for example, from increased carbon dioxide (CO₂) emissions related to energy use in tourism-related transportation, and air-conditioning and heating of tourism facilities.

Many countries also emphasised that the tourism industry can help protect and rehabilitate natural assets, such as parks, protected areas and cultural and natural sites, by its financial contributions, provision of environmental infrastructure and improved environmental management. It can also help to raise the awareness of the local population regarding the financial and intrinsic value of natural and cultural sites, motivating communities to reclaim their natural and cultural patrimony through environmental protection and conservation. In general, the tourism industry has a vested interest in maintaining the environmental, social and cultural resources of destination areas, which represent their core business assets.

There was an attempt by many delegations to define sustainable tourism. One delegation suggested that sustainable tourism is, *inter alia*, development which "... meets the need of present tourists and host regions while protecting and enhancing opportunity for the future". Other delegations suggested that "sustainable tourism must seek a balance between (a) economic benefit and investment; (b) social participation, including local communities, with direct earnings, and seeking preservation and consolidation of its cultural values and traditions; (c) conservation and protection of environment and biological diversity, taking into account regulations that allow an appropriate management of habitats and the introduction of education and dissemination of information to promote an environmental consciousness among the local population and visitors".

One delegation noted that ecotourism is an economic activity that minimises environmental impacts, valuing and contributing to the conservation of ecosystems, and at the same time generates incomes for local communities.

One delegation noted that ecotourism has potential to create new patterns of tourism but, at the same time, there are impediments to promoting ecotourism, which include local communities' hesitation to replace conventional tourism, the reluctance to adopt codes of conduct to ensure the quality of ecotourism and the difficulty of promoting ecotourism in areas unlikely to attract visitors.

The Challenges part of his report included "Delegations noted that there are a number of important challenges associated with sustainable tourism development. These challenges include, inter alia, the following:

- a) A concentration of services and profits into very few big transnational corporations, which often leads to the development of enclaves with no linkage to other socio-economic sectors of the local society;
- b) The lack of an adequate tourism infrastructure, which was seen as a serious obstacle to tourism development in some countries, particularly developing countries;
- c) The need to improve the access of small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) to government incentives and publicity;
- d) The need to involve local communities, at all levels, in all aspects of the tourism development process, such as policy-making, planning, management, ownership and the sharing of benefits;
- e) The need to ensure that tourism development planning preserves the natural and cultural legacy, heritage and integrity of tourism destinations and respects the social and cultural norms of society, particularly among the indigenous communities;
- f) The need to inform people of the benefits to be gained from sustainable tourism development through community awareness campaigns;
- g) The need to raise public awareness about sustainable tourism and to encourage more responsible behaviour among tourists;
- h) The need to enhance the linkages of the private tourism sector with the other sectors of the economy, and to ensure that foreign investors in the tourism industry do not marginalise domestic entrepreneurs;
- i) To ensure sufficient coordination between the public and private sectors to achieve sustainable tourism;
- j) To overcome the lack of regional cooperation for promoting the development of sustainable tourism.

In the Action by Governments part, the issues was raised by co-chairman is as follows;

"Many delegations stressed that Governments should give appropriate attention and priority to tourism in development planning so that it develops in harmony with overall economic, social and

environmental goals, within an integrated policy framework. In this regard, Governments should develop national strategies or master plans for tourism, in the context of Agenda 21, which will provide focus and direction to all stakeholders.

Some delegations stated that countries should consider the various options available for financing tourism infrastructure projects, such as government outlays, financing by multilateral and regional financial institutions, involvement of the private sector through build-operate-transfer schemes, and foreign direct investment (FDI). In addition, there are also various options for private sector financing for, *inter alia*, training, education, management and marketing.

Some countries noted that the use of economic instruments to promote sustainable tourism, in particular the full-costing and pricing of energy and water, can promote eco-efficiency in the tourism industry as well as provide additional revenue that can be used to support improved management of these resources. In this regard, the polluter-pays principle and user-pays systems are appropriate and should be more widely applied and supported.

Many delegations were of the view that government policies should be implemented to encourage and support small and medium-sized enterprises in the tourism industry, especially in developing countries and countries with economies in transition.

Many delegations stressed that Governments should promote partnerships between all stakeholders and that they can play an important role by encouraging, supporting and facilitating the involvement and commitment of all stakeholders, especially indigenous and local communities, in the planning, development and management of tourism.

Many delegations emphasised that there needs to be an increase in the transfer of the benefits from tourism to local communities through the creation of jobs, entrepreneurial opportunities and social benefits if efforts to promote community participation are to be effective.

Some countries emphasised that, in some cases, there is a need to control the rate of growth of the tourism sector in order to preserve the natural and cultural legacy, heritage and integrity of tourism destinations as well as the social and cultural norms of society, particularly among the indigenous communities.

Many countries noted that it is necessary to promote capacity building in sustainable tourism, particularly among local governments. In many countries, local governments have important responsibilities for tourism development and management, and capacity building programmes will enable them to better understand these responsibilities with respect to sustainable tourism.

Some delegations pointed out that local and central governments should enhance their capacity to monitor the performance of the tourism industry and to develop suitable indicators of sustainable tourism that can be used in their decision-making.

Many delegations stressed that Governments should promote the role of the local community in deciding what it is prepared to offer, how its cultural patrimony is to be presented and which, if any, aspects of the culture are off-limits to visitors.

Some delegations suggested that tourism, in particular mass tourism, should be regulated and, where necessary, prohibited in ecologically and culturally sensitive areas. In protected areas and where nature is particularly diverse, vulnerable and attractive, tourism should be permitted only where it meets the requirements of nature protection and biological diversity conservation. In coastal areas where tourism can impose serious environmental damage, the principles of integrated coastal area management should be implemented. Environmental impact studies are an important tool for sustainable development and should be undertaken.

Many delegations noted that sustainability issues should be fully integrated into courses at all levels of education in order to develop environmental awareness and the skills required to promote sustainable tourism. In this regard, it is also important to raise public awareness about sustainable tourism and to encourage more responsible behaviour among tourists.

Many countries emphasised that there is a need for further efforts to prevent and control tourism-related abuse and exploitation of people, particularly women and children and other disadvantaged groups. Some delegations felt that both sending and receiving countries had roles to play in combating this serious negative impact of international tourism. Action by the private sector.

Many delegations stated that the tourism industry should ensure that their investment, employment, operational and other business decisions take full account of the wider implications of such actions for the long-term development and economic sustainability of the destinations in which they operate.

Some countries suggested that the tourism industry, by modifying the products it develops and offers the public, can directly influence the nature of tourism itself, directing it towards sustainable forms of tourism. Marketing can be used to enhance the industry's initiatives for promoting sustainable development by, *inter alia*, raising awareness among their clients of the potential environmental and social impacts of their holidays, and of responsible behaviour. In some countries, the tourism industry is also increasingly interested in eco-labels as a means of promoting those countries' facilities and destinations. Some delegations cautioned, however, that the concepts of eco-labelling and related issues are still under consideration by the Committee on Trade and Environment of the World Trade Organisation.

Many delegations urged tourism enterprises to integrate environmental management systems and procedures into all aspects of corporate activity. This would necessitate the implementation of; *inter alia*, environmental and social audits, and training of staff in the principles and practices of sustainable tourism management. Tourism enterprises were also urged to take all appropriate measures to minimise all forms of waste, conserve energy and freshwater resources, and control harmful emissions of all environmental media, as well as minimise the potential environmental impacts from tourism development, for example, by using local materials and technologies appropriate to local conditions. The tourism industry was encouraged to promote wider implementation of environmental management, particularly among small- and medium-sized enterprises.

Many delegations noted that the tourism industry had developed a number of environmental codes of conduct and other voluntary initiatives in support of sustainable tourism. It was suggested that an inventory and assessment should be made of such voluntary initiatives on the part of industry, and improvements in the monitoring and reporting of industry's progress towards the objective of sustainable tourism. Some delegations requested the preparation of an inventory of all existing codes of conduct, guidelines and voluntary initiatives concerning sustainable tourism'.

Finally, under the title of 'action by the international community' he reported that "Many delegations stressed the need for the international community to promote the recognition of the value of tourism as an economic tool for development, particularly for developing countries, and the fragility of the resources on which it depends, as well as the resulting need for international support to encourage its sustainable development.

Many delegations were of the view that international organisation and donor countries should increase their efforts in training and capacity building in the field of tourism in developing countries, and that studies should be carried out on specific issues of interest to developing countries. Technical and financial assistance to developing countries is critical to enable them to develop competitive and sustainable tourism sectors.

Some delegations stated that the international, regional and multilateral agreements and guidelines that address the issue of sustainable tourism need to be effectively translated into practical programmes for implementation by the tourism industry, Governments and civil society. There is also a need to consolidate as well as enhance the monitoring of these initiatives.

Many delegations stressed that the international community has an important role in assisting developing countries, in particular the least developed countries, economies in transition and Small Island Developing States, through financial and technical assistance to Governments at all levels.

Many delegations also stressed that the international community should strengthen development cooperation to make tourism development more environmentally sustainable, while emphasising financial support and measures to accelerate the transfer of environmentally sound technology to developing countries. Steps should be taken to facilitate the international exchange of information, experiences and technical skills, especially between the developed and developing countries. Some delegations said that international cooperation should make tourism sustainable in respect of its economic and social aspects as well.

Some delegations emphasised that regional cooperation is an important policy approach for promoting the development of sustainable tourism.

One delegation noted that, although it is important to allow for a variety of forms of ecotourism that depend on the regional situation, there are benefits to be derived from global standards to minimise negative ramifications of ecotourism and an international network to promote an exchange of information and views'.

The inter-sessional ad hoc working group also presented possible elements for a draft decision/resolution by CSD on tourism and sustainable development (E/CN.17/1999/16 part II. A. Para 57). The suggested text is as follows;

“The Commission on Sustainable Development,

Recalling the outcome of the nineteenth special session of the General Assembly for the overall review and appraisal of the implementation of Agenda 21, at which the Assembly requested the Commission on Sustainable Development to develop an action-oriented international programme of work on sustainable tourism, to be defined in cooperation with the World Tourism Organisation, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, the United Nations Environment Programme, the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity and other relevant bodies; and stressed that policy development and implementation should take place in cooperation with all interested parties, especially with the private sector and local and indigenous communities,

Recalling also that the General Assembly has proclaimed 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism and as the International Year of Mountains,

1. *Decides* to adopt an international work programme on sustainable tourism development, containing the elements outlined below, to be implemented in the period between the seventh session of the Commission on Sustainable Development and 2002, when the ten-year review of progress achieved since the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development will be carried out;
2. *Calls upon* Governments to advance sustainable tourism development, *inter alia*, through development and implementation of policies and national strategies or master plans for sustainable tourism development based on Agenda 21, which will encourage their tourism industry, assist in attracting foreign direct investment and appropriate environmentally sound technologies and, also, provide focus and direction to all stakeholders, including national tourism councils and the private sector as well as local and indigenous communities;
3. *Encourages* Governments to promote a favourable framework for small and medium-sized enterprises, the main engine for job creation in the tourism sector, by reducing administrative burdens, improving access to capital and providing training in management and other skills;
4. *Calls upon* the tourism industry to develop new forms of socially, culturally and environmentally compatible forms of tourism and to continue the development and use of voluntary initiatives in support of sustainable tourism development;
5. *Invites* Governments and major groups, as well as the United Nations system, working through the Inter-Agency Committee on Sustainable Development, in close collaboration with the World Tourism Organisation, and building on relevant work carried out by the United Nations Environment Programme, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, the International Labour Organisation, the United Nations

Development Programme, the Convention on Biological Diversity and other relevant organisation, to undertake the following tasks and to keep the Commission on Sustainable Development informed on progress achieved:

- (a) To promote long-term sustainable tourism development that increases the economic and educational benefits from the tourism resources and maintains the cultural and environmental integrity of the host community;
- (b) To support national efforts in developing countries and countries with economies in transition towards sustainable tourism development through relevant capacity building activities as well as financial and technical assistance with regard to all aspects of tourism, including education in the field of tourism;
- (c) To collect and disseminate information on best practices and techniques, including an appropriate mix of instruments to minimise negative and promote positive environmental and social impacts from tourism in developed and developing countries and in countries with economies in transition. This programme could also include the collection of disaggregated data on travel to determine the kinds of visitors to various countries and their needs;
- (d) To promote the exchange of information on transportation, accommodation and other services, public awareness raising programmes and education, and various voluntary programmes. Possible forms of this information exchange should be explored in consultation with relevant partners. Utilisation of means such as trade representations, tourist offices and the Internet should be considered;
- (e) To undertake studies on appropriate measures for promoting sustainable tourism development;
- (f) To clarify further the concept and definition of sustainable tourism and of ecotourism;
- (g) To develop indicators for sustainable tourism, taking into account the work of the World Tourism Organisation, as well as an ongoing testing phase of indicators for sustainable development;
- (h) To undertake activities that would be mutually supportive to the preparations of the International Year of Ecotourism and International Year of Mountains, as well as activities of the International Coral Reef Initiative;
- (i) To undertake a comprehensive survey and assessment of the existing voluntary initiatives relating to the economic, socio-cultural and environmental sustainability of tourism within the context of the process on voluntary initiatives launched by the Commission on Sustainable Development at its sixth session;
- (j) To consider establishing a global network to promote an exchange of information and views on ecotourism;
- (k) To elaborate, in consultation with Governments, the private sector, labour associations, local authorities and other major groups, a comprehensive set of guidelines for sustainable tourism development aimed at ensuring that the development of tourism is consistent with the goals and principles of sustainable development which could be approved by the United Nations by 2002;

6. *Invites* the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity to further consider, in the context of the process of the exchange of experiences, existing knowledge and best practice on sustainable tourism development and biological diversity with a view to contributing to international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable terrestrial areas, *inter alia*, mountains, and marine ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas;

7. *Invites* the World Tourism Organisation, World Travel and Tourism Council and the Earth Council as the authors of *Agenda 21 for the Travel and Tourism Industry* to develop modalities of assessment, monitoring and reporting to complement the work achieved thus far and to make the results available the Commission on Sustainable Development.”

Chairman of CSD7 in part B (tourism section) of his summary of the high-level segment, (E/CN.17/1999/20 chapter III) reported to General Assembly that;

“Participants focused on the need for the Commission to produce a work programme by the conclusion of its seventh session. Their attention was drawn in particular to the draft decision produced by the Inter-sessional Ad Hoc Working Group on Consumption and Production Patterns and on Tourism and a summary of specific suggestions from the tourism dialogue circulated by the Chair. Ministers from developed and developing countries provided useful information on activities, policies and strategies in their countries pertaining to sustainable tourism development.

Tourism was recognised as a key rapid growth sector in the world economy with important economic, social, cultural and environmental impacts, particularly in SIDS and tourist destinations with fragile ecosystems. Tourism had the potential to make an important contribution to poverty alleviation and economic advancement, particularly through integrated plans with the inclusion of local stakeholders in planning and development and where a key objective remained the protection of the cultural and natural assets of the tourist locality. It was acknowledged that different forms of tourism and local conditions needed to be taken into account and that war or civil strife was damaging to tourist industries and the environment.

There was also recognition that tourism could have adverse impacts, including drug abuse, child labour, prostitution, overcrowding, pressure on resources, leakage of revenues and challenges to established culture. Coastal area development was a particular concern because of the potential for damage to natural assets, communities' livelihoods and culture. Education; capacity building efforts; support for small and medium-sized enterprises and micro-enterprises; waste minimisation; study of "carrying capacity"; commitment to preserve natural and cultural legacies; and the importance of focusing on groups like women and indigenous communities in relation to tourism were identified as ways to address problems. The international community had a special role through focused financial and technical assistance and the transfer of environmentally sound technology, particularly in partnership with developing countries, economies in transition and Small Island Developing States.

Participants welcomed the multi-stakeholder dialogue on tourism. It was essential that local stakeholders be involved at all levels in tourism planning. The commitment of industry to be part of the solution to identified problems was welcomed. Local authorities also had a special role, particularly in relation to the identification of best practices and planning. Initiatives such as Agenda 21 for travel and tourism and Local Agenda 21 were identified as being positive tools for promoting sustainable development, with many participants expressing the view that stronger emphasis should be given to action at the local level. Participants also encouraged major groups and other stakeholders in their plan to develop more active partnerships for progress in tourism.

Participants placed the highest priority on the production of a work programme at the current session that identified clear responsibilities for action and reporting deadlines for work, wherever possible. They stressed that business and industry efforts to promote sustainable development, including in partnership with other stakeholders, should be supported. They also agreed that there were a number of points in the summary of suggestions from the tourism dialogue that should be included in the Commission's work programme. A number of ministers made specific recommendations on items that they believed should be endorsed or ones that might benefit from some further fine-tuning. There was a general sense that some activities merited Commission endorsement, including minimising packaging waste associated with the travel and tourism industry; an International Maritime Organisation (IMO) study on the effectiveness of marine pollution regulations, including in relation to tourism activities; and an invitation to specific international organisation and agencies to make information available on practical sustainable development techniques and ways to address/monitor the impact of tourism development.

Ministers and participants expressed abhorrence at the exploitation of women and children, especially through sex tourism. They called for stronger action to combat this phenomenon, especially on the part of those countries from which the tourists came, and noted the special role for the tourism industry in efforts to stamp it out. Governments were urged to ratify the International Labour Organisation (ILO) agreement to eliminate child sexual exploitation and to rigorously enforce laws that prohibited this.

Some participants expressed strong concern about labour practices in relation to the tourism sector and emphasised the importance of ILO work in this connection. Other participants cautioned that there were some differences of view in this area.''

He pointed out (section F, Chapter III, of E/CN.17/1999/20) that ministers and heads of delegation for particular consideration by officials in finalizing Commission outcomes identified the following points under the topic of tourism:

A focused work programme identifying clearly what actions are required, by whom and, wherever possible, by when. This would include work that major groups have agreed to undertake, as well as actions for Governments and international organisation and agencies;

The need to reflect the key role of industry and local authorities in achieving sustainable development in the tourism sector (including through such measures as Agenda 21 for travel and tourism, Local Agenda 21 and other initiatives, desirably with multi-stakeholder participation, and also monitoring, verification and assessment arrangements);

The need for specific measures for capacity building (for example, education and training arrangements for tourists, children, workers, educators, women, indigenous people and other relevant groups), including industry-led initiatives;

The importance of identifying tourism planning and management activities (including the development of integrated planning arrangements, with mechanisms for including stakeholders; development and promotion of "best practices"; development of inter-agency study on carrying capacity; early efforts to minimise packaging waste associated with travel and tourism; and arrangements to ensure that international organisation and agencies take tourism into account in work programmes on relevant issues);

Addressing of coastal issues effectively (including through fully integrated planning processes for coastal development; proactive support for small and medium-sized enterprises and micro-enterprises; IMO study on effectiveness of marine pollution regulations and compliance in the context of tourism impacts, especially in SIDS;

Inclusion of relevant direction for research activities;

Inclusion of direction for stronger action on the exploitation of women and children, especially through sex tourism, recognising the particular responsibilities of the home countries of sex tourists and the special role for the tourism industry in efforts to stamp out the problem. Governments to be urged to support ILO work in this area, including through ratifying and enforcing relevant agreements.

CSD decision 7/3 a key decision on tourism and sustainable development

The Commission on its seventh session in 19-30 April 1999 recall the GA resolution 53/200, proclaiming the year 2002 as IYE and considered the outcome of Multi-stakeholder Dialogues Segment on tourism and sustainable development including, the chairman report, as well as the outcome of intercessional Ad hoc working group on consumption and production patterns and tourism, co-chairman report together with proposed draft decision, and adopted decision 7/3 on tourism and sustainable development, which includes an international work programme on sustainable tourism development. The implementation of the programme is reviewed in 2002 as part of the 10-year review of progress achieved since UNCED (Para 2).

CSD based its decision on Assembly Resolution S/19-2, annex, of 28 June 1997. In paragraph 69 the Assembly requested the Commission on Sustainable Development to develop an action-oriented international programme of work on sustainable tourism development, to be defined in cooperation with the World Tourism Organisation, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, the United Nations Environment Programme, the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity and other relevant bodies, and stressed that policy development and

implementation should take place in cooperation with all interested parties, especially the private sector and local and indigenous communities.

CDS decision 7/3 has mainly three types of addressees: Governments, Tourism Industry and International society including United Nations system, major groups and governments.

In the government part, CSD urges them "To advance sustainable tourism development, *inter alia*, through the development and implementation of policies and national strategies or master plans for sustainable tourism development based on Agenda 21, which will encourage their tourism industry, assist in attracting foreign direct investment and appropriate environmentally sound technologies, and also provide focus and direction for the active participation of major groups, including national tourism councils and, as appropriate, tourism agencies and organisation, and the private sector as well as indigenous and local communities;

To consult, as appropriate, with all major groups and local communities in the tourism development process, including policy formulation, planning, management and sharing of benefits, which could reflect the need to harmonise the relationship among the people, the community and the environment;

To work in partnership with major groups, especially at the local level, to ensure active participation in tourism-related planning and development;

To undertake capacity building work with indigenous and local communities in order to facilitate their active participation, at all levels of the tourism development process, including transparent decision-making and sharing of benefits, and to create awareness of the social, economic and environmental costs and benefits that they are bearing;

To create the appropriate institutional, legal, economic, social and environmental framework by developing and applying a mix of instruments, as appropriate, such as integrated land-use planning and coastal zone management, economic instruments, social and environmental impact assessment for tourist facilities, including gender aspects, and voluntary initiatives and agreements;

To maximise the potential of tourism for eradicating poverty by developing appropriate strategies in cooperation with all major groups, and indigenous and local communities;

To welcome the major groups' agreement to promote sustainable tourism development through music, art and drama and to participate in such educational activities;

To facilitate destination-specific in-flight educational videos and other materials on sustainable development in relation to tourism and to encourage airline carriers to routinely screen such videos on all international and long-haul domestic routes;

To promote a favourable framework for small and medium-sized enterprises, the major engine for job creation in the tourism sector, by reducing administrative burdens, facilitating access to capital

and providing training in management and other skills, in recognition of the employment potential of sustainable tourism development;

To take strong and appropriate action, through the development and enforcement of specific legislation/measures, against any kind of illegal, abusive or exploitative tourist activity, including sexual exploitation/abuse, in recognition of the fact that such activities have particularly adverse impacts and pose significant social, health and cultural threats, and that all countries have a role to play in the efforts to stamp them out;

To participate in international and regional processes that address issues relevant to sustainable tourism development; to consider the ratification or adoption, and promote the implementation and enforcement, as appropriate, of standards or guidelines relevant to the travel and tourism industry, such as in the labour and health fields; and to support initiatives, especially through organisation like the International Labour Organisation and the World Health Organisation, that would make an early and positive contribution to sustainable tourism development;

To support appropriate measures to better inform tourists about cultural, ecological and other values and provide accurate information on the safety of tourist destinations, so as to enable consumers to make informed choices'' (para.3 decision 7/3).

CSD calls upon the tourism industry in Para. 4 of its decision:

''To develop environmentally, socially and culturally compatible forms of tourism and to continue the development and implementation of voluntary initiatives in support of sustainable tourism development, bearing in mind that such forms of tourism and initiatives should meet, or preferably exceed, relevant local, national, regional or international standards;

To further commit itself to the goal of sustainable tourism development by working towards guiding principles and objectives for sustainable tourism development and information for tourists on ecological and cultural values in destination regions;

To further develop voluntary eco-efficiency and appropriate management systems to save costs and to promote sustainable forms of tourism;

To take effective steps to reduce the volume of waste associated with travel and tourism activities;

To "design with nature" in collaboration with planning authorities, by using low impact designs, materials and technologies, so as not to damage the environmental or cultural assets that tourists seek to experience and that sustain the local community, and to undertake measures to restore tourist destinations with degraded environments;

To distance itself publicly from illegal, abusive or exploitive forms of tourism;

To meet or preferably exceed relevant national or international labour standards.

In the International society part, The Commission invites, as appropriate, Governments and major groups, as well as the United Nations system, in close collaboration with the World Tourism Organisation and, where relevant, UNEP, UNESCO, ILO, and UNDP as well as CBD other relevant conventions and organisations, to consider undertaking the following initiatives;

“(a) To promote sustainable tourism development in order to increase the benefits from the tourism resources for the population in the host communities and maintain the cultural and environmental integrity of the host community; to encourage cooperation of major groups at all levels with a view to facilitating Local Agenda 21 initiatives and promoting linkages within the local economy in order that benefits may be more widely shared; to this end, greater efforts should be undertaken for the employment of the local workforce, and the use of local products and skills;

(b) To support national efforts by countries, especially developing countries and countries with economies in transition, and major groups towards sustainable tourism development through relevant capacity building activities and programmes as well as multilateral and bilateral financial and technical assistance, and appropriate technologies in all aspects of sustainable tourism development, including environmental impact assessment and management and education in the field of tourism;

(c) To encourage more responsible behaviour among tourists through ensuring respect for national laws, cultural values, social norms and tradition as well as by increasing public awareness, in addition to other measures;

(d) To promote the application of integrated planning approaches to tourism development at the local level, including through encouraging the use of Local Agenda 21 as a process for planning, implementing and monitoring sustainable tourism development and recognising the potential for integration of Local Agenda 21 with Agenda 21 for the Travel and Tourism Industry as well as other such initiatives;

(e) To provide relevant direction on research activities, and collect and disseminate information on best practices and techniques, including an appropriate mix of instruments to minimise negative and to promote positive environmental, social and cultural impacts from tourism in developed and developing countries and in countries with economies in transition;

(f) To promote the exchange of information on transportation, accommodation and other services, public awareness-raising programmes and education, and various voluntary initiatives and ways to minimise the effects of natural disasters on tourism. Possible forms of this information exchange should be explored in consultation with relevant partners, utilising, inter alia, such means as bilateral and multilateral arrangements;

(g) To undertake studies on appropriate measures for promoting sustainable tourism development, such as community planning in fragile ecosystems, including in coastal areas, and to

develop tools to assist local authorities in determining appropriate management regimes and their capacity for tourism development;

(h) To further develop or support integrated initiatives, preferably through pilot projects, to enhance the diffusion of innovations and to avoid, wherever possible, duplication and waste of resources;

(i) To undertake activities that would be supportive of the preparations for the International Year of Ecotourism and the International Year of Mountains, as well as activities of the International Coral Reef Initiative;

(j) To clarify further the concepts of sustainable tourism and eco-tourism;

(k) To develop core indicators for sustainable tourism development, taking into account the work of the World Tourism Organisation and other relevant organisation, as well as the ongoing testing phase of indicators for sustainable development;

(l) To undertake a comprehensive survey and assessment of the results of implementing existing voluntary initiatives and guidelines relating to the economic, socio-cultural and environmental sustainability of tourism, to be reported to the Commission on Sustainable Development in order to identify best practices with respect to raising awareness of sustainable tourism development;

(m) To consider establishing a global network, taking into account the work of the World Tourism Organisation, regional mechanisms and all major groups, as appropriate, to promote an exchange of information and views on sustainable tourism development, including on ecotourism;

(n) To cooperate with the United Nations Environment Programme in further developing guiding principles for sustainable tourism development;

(o) To encourage business and industry to take steps to implement eco-efficiency approaches, in order to reduce environmental impacts associated with travel and tourism activities, in particular the volume of packaging waste, especially in SIDS.

The commission calls for international organisations to keep it informed on progress achieved and invites the WTO to involve major group's participations in any development regarding its Global Code of Ethics for Tourism. CSD also invites IMO and CBD respectively to evaluate the sufficiency of existing international regulations on marine pollution, as well as adverse impact of tourist vessel activities to fragile coastal zones and contribute, with existing knowledge and best practice in the area of sustainable tourism, to international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable ecosystems and protected area and habitats of major importance for biological diversity. The commission highlighted the important roll of major group on education and in Para. 10 of its decision "invites the United Nations Secretariat and the World Tourism Organisation, in consultation with major groups and other relevant international organisation, to

jointly facilitate the establishment of an ad hoc informal open-ended working group on tourism to assess financial leakages and determine how to maximise benefits for indigenous and local communities; and to prepare a joint initiative to improve information availability and capacity building for participation, and address other matters relevant to the implementation of the international work programme on sustainable tourism development''.

Sustainable Tourism in World Summit on Sustainable Development

In December 2000, the General Assembly adopted resolution 55/199, in which it decided to organise the ten-year review of UNCED in 2002 at the summit level to reinvigorate the global commitment to sustainable development. The General Assembly accepted South Africa's offer to host the event, which will be called the World Summit on Sustainable Development. The resolution decided that the review should focus on the identification of accomplishments and areas where further efforts are needed to implement Agenda 21 and other UNCED outcomes, action-oriented decisions in areas where further efforts are needed, and new challenges and opportunities within the framework of Agenda 21, and result in renewed political commitment and support for sustainable development.

The tenth session of the Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD-10), acting as the Preparatory Committee (PrepCom I) for the World Summit on Sustainable Development, took place at UN Headquarters in New York from 30 April to 2 May 2001. The preparatory session was held in accordance with UN General Assembly resolution 55/199.

The session elected the Bureau members, considered organisational matters and deliberated on five agenda items: progress in the preparatory activities at the local, national, regional and international levels, as well as by major groups; the process for setting the agenda and determining possible main themes for the Summit; specific modalities for future preparatory meetings, including matters of accreditation for NGOs; and the rules of procedure for the Summit. The session prepared and adopted five draft decisions.

CSD10 acting as the preparatory committee for WSSD provided PrepCom I with reports of SG on thematic issues. An addendum report on sustainable development of tourism (E/CN.17/2001/PC/21) was presented as a background paper for tourism. The report was prepared by the World Tourism Organisation as task manager for the area of sustainable development of tourism, with contributions from other United Nations agencies and international organisation. The report is a brief factual overview, which intends to inform the Commission on Sustainable Development on key developments in the subject area. The report contains an introduction and three parts. The inclusion of sustainable tourism as a sectoral theme to the programme for further implementation of Agenda 21 by 19th special session of GA while it was not subject of chapter in Agenda 21 is highlighted in the introduction.

The report in its first part 'Trend in tourism' after a background review of tourism growth and development, pointed out:

- Tourism is now regarded as the world's largest industry. In 1998, %7.9 of the worldwide export value of goods and services came from tourism. Tourism is already the largest sector of international trade in services tourism has become the main sector of economic activity, or at least the main source of foreign exchange earnings, it is an important source of employment in most countries.
- The development of tourism is characterised by continuing geographical spread and diversification of tourist destinations. While in 1950 the top 15 tourist destinations, all in Western Europe and North America, attracted 97 per cent of the world's total arrivals, by 1999 this figure had fallen to 62 per cent, with market shares increasing for developing countries and economies in transition,
- Some key qualitative development trends in tourism include: increased market segmentation; development of new forms of tourism, especially those related to nature, wildlife, rural areas and culture; and introduction of new programmes in traditional package tours.
- Consumers' motivations and behaviour are increasingly characterised by a more selective choice of destination, greater attention to the tourism experience and its quality, and a greater sensitivity to the environment, traditional culture and local people at the destinations.

The important points in part II 'Incorporation of sustainability in tourism development' of report are as follows;

- Uncontrolled growth in tourism aiming at short-term benefits often results in negative impacts, harming the environment and societies, and destroying the very basis on which tourism is built and thrives.
- some negative impacts of tourism including precarious conditions of employment, child exploitation and prostitution, degeneration of traditions and cultural values, and environmental damage to tourist sites and natural settings, pollution and waste generated by development of tourism infrastructure and facilities, transportation, and tourist activities themselves. Tourism could have positive impact. It has the potential to bring economic benefits to host communities and serve as a tool for poverty alleviation, conservation of natural and cultural assets and other benefits.
- The principle of sustainable tourism was proposed as early as 1988 by the World Tourism Organisation, with sustainable tourism "envisaged as leading to management of all resources in such a way that economic, social and aesthetic needs can be fulfilled while maintaining cultural integrity, essential ecological processes, biological diversity and life support systems".

- Host societies have become progressively aware of the problems of unsustainable tourism, and sustainability concerns are increasingly being addressed in national, regional and local tourism policies, strategies and plans.
- International society formulated Agenda 21 for the Travel and Tourism Industry in 1995.
- A multi-stakeholder Working Group on Tourism was called for by CSD7 convened its first meeting by WTO(tourism) in Costa Rica (January 2000), where members identified 11 priority issues covering a wide variety of aspects of sustainable tourism development. Further progress has been slow owing to lack of funding.
- There has been gradual but increasingly widespread application of environmental management techniques in tourism companies and establishments, as well as voluntary approaches such as certification systems, eco-labels, environmental awards and codes of conduct.
- The Global Code of Ethics for Tourism was approved by the member States of the World Tourism Organisation in 1999. It has been submitted to the Economic and Social Council for consideration at its substantive session of 2001 (E/2001/3).
- A set of sustainability indicators on tourism has been developed and tested in a number of countries. Further work is required to improve existing know-how and methodologies for the definition, adaptation and application of indicators to monitor the social, economic and environmental impacts of tourism.
- Enhancement of tourists' knowledge on natural disasters
- Ecotourism is a small but rapidly growing niche market. Ecotourism activities have been expanding rapidly over the past two decades worldwide and further growth is expected in the future. Ecotourism generally involves travel by small groups to natural areas with the main motivation being the observation and appreciation of nature, and includes educational information on local ecosystems, cultures and sustainability issues. It also attempts to minimise negative impacts upon the nature and socio-cultural environment. As one of the tools to control and manage ecotourism activities, it often involves fees for entry to protected natural areas, with at least part of the fees dedicated to the conservation of the area. The International Year of Ecotourism in 2002 will offer an opportunity to review ecotourism experiences worldwide, in order to consolidate tools and institutional frameworks that ensure its sustainable development in the future.

Main points in part III 'Issues for further consideration' are;

- Tourism is expected to continue to grow in the future owing to population growth, improved living standards, improvement and expansion of transportation systems, increasing free time and other factors. According to forecasts by the World Tourism Organisation, international tourist arrivals are likely to almost triple over the next two decades, with nearly 1.6 billion tourists visiting foreign countries by the year 2020. This will further increase the pressure on

the natural, cultural and socio-economic environments of popular destinations. More intensified efforts to address sustainability in tourism development are required

- Along with tourism in general, ecotourism and other forms of environmentally friendly tourism are expected to continue growing rapidly. This will also require specific planning, management and infrastructure to protect the natural sites of interest, which are often ecologically fragile. Availability of finance and capacity building may hold a key to the sustainable development of this sub-sector
- SIDS face particular challenges. Tourism is often seen as a promising growth sector in countries with a natural environment appealing to tourists, especially in view of the constraints that those countries may face in respect of developing alternative sources of foreign exchange through exports. However, rapid development of tourism can cause significant social disruptions and increase environmental and ecological pressures. The fragile ecosystems of SIDS, and their generally more limited scope for pursuing alternative development strategies, make concerns for the environmental and ecological impact of tourism particularly acute. Integrated and environmentally and culturally conscious tourism planning should be developed to make tourism compatible with the conservation of major ecosystems and with the preservation of the historical-cultural heritage.

The PrepCom II of CSD10 for WSSD held its session from 28 January to 8 February 2002 at UN headquarters in New York. The purpose of the session was to agree on a document that could form the basis of negotiations at the Committee's next session in March 2002.

After informal consultation, the chairman of PrepCom issued a list of issues and proposals for discussion which included; making globalisation work for sustainable development; poverty eradication and sustainable agriculture and livelihoods; changing unsustainable patterns of consumption and production; promoting health through sustainable development; energy transport and protection of the atmosphere; conservation and management of the natural resource based on economic and social development, managing the world's freshwater resources; sustainable development of SIDS and management of oceans, marine resources and coastal areas; means of implementation, addressing finance, transfer of technology, and science, education and capacity building; sustainable development initiatives for Africa and combating desertification; and strengthening governance for sustainable development at the national, regional and international levels.

After a series of informal meeting chairman's paper presented to PrebCom II. The paper has introduction and following areas; Poverty eradication, Changing unsustainable patterns of consumption and production, protection and managing the natural resource based on economic and social development, Sustainable development in globalising world, Health and sustainable development, Sustainable development of SIDS, sustainable development initiatives for Africa and Mean of implementation.

The Chairman's paper discussed sustainable tourism on two occasions. The first of these is in paragraph 89 in Chapter IV 'protecting and managing the natural resource based on economic and social development'. Para 89 reads as follows: "promote sustainable tourism development in order to increase benefits from tourism resources for the population in host communities, and maintain the cultural and environmental integrity of the host communities". Secondly, sustainable tourism was mentioned in chapter VII 'Sustainable development of SIDS'. In Paras 129-139, developmental issues of SIDS which require further measures were developed, such as accelerated national and regional implementation of the Barbados Programme of Action, sustainable fisheries management, management of Exclusive Economic Zones in the coastal areas of SIDS, adjustment to globalisation and trade liberalisation, establishment of a global sustainable energy development, support of the operationalisation of vulnerability of indices, adaptation to climate change and undertake the full review of Barbados POA in 2004.

Sustainable tourism was elaborated in Para 135, which read as follows; "Promote initiatives on tourism for sustainable development that will lead to development of community-based initiatives, and build the capacity necessary to protect cultural identity and to effectively conserve and manage natural resources". (Chairman's Paper of 11.02.02)

The Chairman also presented the summary of PrepCom II. Sustainable tourism only arose in Para 88 of the chairman's summary of the discussion. Para 88, together with other adjacent paragraphs, considered SIDS sustainable development, and read as follows; "The Small Island Developing States (SIDS) urged a renewed commitment to the Barbados Programme of Action, which was adopted in 1994 and requested support for a comprehensive 10-year review of its implementation in 2004. It was noted that the Barbados Programme was reviewed at its first five-year anniversary at the Special Session of the General Assembly in 1999. The considerable efforts of SIDS countries were acknowledged. But the overall assessment pointed to no real substantive changes in achievement. To highlight the point, the review identified six focal areas requiring not only priority but also urgent action. These included climate change, natural and environmental disasters, freshwater resources, coastal and marine resources energy and tourism. In the meantime, there has been significant cause for concern because recent studies point to a steady decline in the environmental quality of SIDS in all regions."

The Commission agreed to transmit to its third session the Chairman's Paper as the basis for negotiation, and adopted the Chairman's Report, to which are annexed the Chairman's Summary of the Second Preparatory Session, the Chairman's Summary of the Multi-Stakeholder Dialogue Segment, and the Proposals for Partnerships/Initiatives to Strengthen the Implementation of Agenda 21

CSD10 acting as the Preparatory Committee (PrepCom) for WSSD, met for its third session from 25 March to 5 April 2002, in New York. The purpose of the session was to consider the Chairman's Paper transmitted from PrepCom II, address ways of strengthening the institutional framework for sustainable development, evaluate and define the role and programme of work of

the CSD, and agree on a document containing review and assessment, as well as conclusions and recommendations for further actions.

Between PrepCom II and III chairman publicised another two versions of his paper. On 12th of February 2002 he published A/CONF.199/PC/L.1 as the chairman's paper for PrepCom III. In this document, Para 14 of part IV "protecting and managing the natural resource base of economic and social development" is about sustainable tourism and read as follows; "Actions are required to promote sustainable tourism development in order to increase the benefits from tourism resources for the population in host communities, and maintain the cultural and environmental integrity of the host communities".

In the same paper part VII (SIDS) paragraph 20 (f) is as follows; "Promote initiatives on tourism for sustainable development that will lead necessary to protect cultural identity and effectively conserve and manage natural resources".

On the 9th May 2002 chairman published an Advanced Unedited Text (chairman's text for negotiation) for the consideration of delegates before attending PrepCom III on March 25th. Para 38 of part IV considered sustainable tourism and is as follows; "Promote sustainable tourism development including non-consumptive and eco-tourism, taking into account the spirit of the International Year of Eco-tourism 2002 and UNESCO's International Year of Cultural Heritage in 2002, the draft CBD guidelines for sustainable tourism and the global code of ethics for tourism as adopted by the World Tourism Organisation in order to increase the benefits from tourism resources for the population in host communities, while maintaining the cultural and environmental integrity of the host communities and enhancing the protection of ecologically sensitive areas and natural heritages. Promote sustainable tourism development and capacity building in order to contribute to the strengthening of rural and local communities. This would include international, regional and national actions to: a) Enhance international cooperation, foreign direct investment and partnerships with both private and public sectors at all levels – b) Develop programmes that encourage people to participate in eco-tourism and enhance stakeholder cooperation in tourism development and heritage preservation to improve the protection of the environment, natural resources and cultural heritage – c) Provide technical assistance to developing countries and countries with economies in transition to support sustainable tourism business development and investment, tourism awareness programmes to improve domestic tourism, and to stimulate entrepreneurial development; -d) Assist host communities to manage visitation to their tourism attractions for their maximum financial benefit whilst ensuring the least negative impact on and risks for their traditions, culture and living environment. It is further recommended that the World Tourism Organisation and other relevant organisations facilitate the implementation in their Member States –e) Promote the diversification of the economic activities, including through the facilitation of access to markets and commercial information, and participation of emerging local enterprises, especially SMEs."

In SIDS part, Para 48(g) of part VII read as follows; " Develop community-based initiatives on sustainable tourism [by 2004], and build the capacities necessary to protect cultural identity and effectively conserve and manage natural resources;"

The first week of PrepCom III was dedicated to preliminary consideration of the Chairman's Paper, with discussions on the subsequent compilation text taking place during the second week. The PrepCom also held preliminary discussions on an informal paper on sustainable development governance, prepared by the Bureau on the basis of comments made during PrepCom II and between PrepCom II and III. During the two week meeting three working groups addressed the agenda. Working group I considered first four part of chairman's paper including protection and managing the natural resource base and working group II addressed the rest of the chairman's paper including SIDS.

During the PrepCom III and its working groups delegates considered sustainable tourism in the context of part IV and VII of chairman's paper and made the following interventions.

- On tourism in part IV New paragraphs were introduced on: ecotourism (Japan); UNESCO's International Year of Cultural Heritage in 2002 (Norway); and sustainable tourism development, technical assistance to developing countries, local enterprise, and managed visitation of tourism attractions by host communities (G-77/China). During brief discussions, the US provided text on technical assistance to developing countries and countries with economies in transition (CEITs) for sustainable tourism.
- On tourism in part VII (SIDS), the Para 48(g) was accepted as a base of negotiation.

The first reading of paper in the first week of PrepCom III provided preliminary comments and submitted new proposals, on the basis of which the Bureau prepared a compilation text. During the second week, delegates considered the compilation text. At the end of PrepCom III, a revised text was not distributed, as delegations were given time to submit additional comments on certain text sections. The Bureau and the Chair draft new text for consideration and negotiation at PrepCom IV.

CSD10 held its PrepCom IV for WSSD from 27 May to 7 June 2002 in Bali, Indonesia. The session was preceded by informal consultations held on 25-27 May to consider the revised chairman' paper (A/CONF.199/PC/L.5/Rev.1). During the session delegates produced the Draft Plan of Implementation for the WSSD (A/CONF.199/PC/L.5/Rev.1). During the session, delegates met in three parallel working groups to negotiate the implementation plan. The working groups established numerous contact groups and held "in-the-corridor" consultations to negotiate issues on which delegations were most interested. Informal Plenary sessions were convened at the end of the first week to approve text that had been adopted by the working groups and to make further attempts to resolve outstanding issues. At the beginning of the second week, the outputs of the working groups were consolidated into the Draft Plan of Implementation for the WSSD (A/CONF.199/PC/L.5/Rev.1), which was further considered in an Informal Plenary and contact groups. PrepCom Chair established a "Friends of the Chair" group to facilitate informal-informal

discussion on the implementation plan. In High Level Ministerial Segment, ministers held interactive dialogues on the implementation plan, partnerships and elements for the political declaration in the second week. The draft plan of implementation for the WSSD was negotiated in three working groups. Sustainable tourism as a part of chapter IV 'protecting and managing the natural resource base of economic and social development' was a part of negotiation in working group I. Tourism as a part of SIDS was developed in working group II. In working group I the text on tourism was accepted without controversy. It was amended with a reference to the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism, and also calls for programmes to increase participation and eco-tourism, enable indigenous and local communities to benefit from eco-tourism, and technical assistance to developing countries for sustainable tourism business development. In working group II the text on develop community based initiatives on sustainable tourism was agreed.

Paragraph 39 in part IV of the 'Draft plan of implementation for the world summit on sustainable development' of 2nd June 2002 (A/CONF.199/PC/L.5) covered sustainable tourism and read as follows;

“[Agreed] Promote sustainable tourism development, including non-consumptive and eco-tourism, taking into account the spirit of the International Year of Eco-tourism 2002, of the United Nations Year for Cultural Heritage in 2002, and of the World Eco-tourism Summit 2002 and its Quebec Declaration, and of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism as adopted by the World Tourism Organisation, in order to increase the benefits from tourism resources for the population in host communities, while maintaining the cultural and environmental integrity of the host communities and enhancing the protection of ecologically sensitive areas and natural heritages.

Promote sustainable tourism development and capacity building in order to contribute to the strengthening of rural and local communities. This would include actions at all levels to:

- (a) [Agreed] Enhance international cooperation, foreign direct investment and partnerships with both private and public sectors, at all levels;
- (b) [Agreed] Develop programmes, including education and training programmes, that encourage people to participate in eco-tourism, enable indigenous and local communities to develop and benefit from eco-tourism, and enhance stakeholder cooperation in tourism development and heritage preservation, in order to improve the protection of the environment, natural resources and cultural heritage;
- (c) [Agreed] Provide technical assistance to developing countries and countries with economies in transition to support sustainable tourism business development and investment and tourism awareness programmes to improve domestic tourism, and to stimulate entrepreneurial development;
- (d) [Agreed] Assist host communities in managing visits to their tourism attractions for their maximum benefit, while ensuring the least negative impacts on and risks for their traditions, culture and environment, with the support of the World Tourism Organisation and other relevant organisation;

(e) [Agreed] Promote the diversification of economic activities, including through the facilitation of access to markets and commercial information, and participation of emerging local enterprises, especially small and medium-sized enterprises.”

In part VII’ Sustainable development of Small Island Developing States’, tourism was developed as follows; “ Develop community-based initiatives on sustainable tourism [by 2004], and build the capacities necessary to diversify tourism products, while protecting culture and traditions, and effectively conserving and managing natural resources.”

Both paragraphs remained unchanged in the Advance unedited text of the draft plan of implementation of 12 June 2002.

In its closing session PrepCom IV decided to transmit the draft plan of implementation, after editorial changes by the secretariat, to Johannesburg for further negotiations.

Appendix VIII

Part II

Survey on International Environmental Instruments vis-à-vis Sustainable Nature Based-Tourism/Ecotourism

Introduction

The Rio Conference marks the beginning of a worldwide commitment, recognising that the right to development must be exercised in a way that responds equitably to the social and environmental needs of current and future generations. A commitment, which underlines the need to put in place systems for the sustainable use of natural resources, to counter the uncontrolled destructive processes entailed in some human activities.

The sustainable development option is grounded on the idea that it is possible to conserve our natural and cultural capital without compromising the future, and that this aspiration can be compatible with the present-day right to development. For these reasons, the application of the principles set out in the Rio Declaration to tourism development is a matter of fundamental strategic value tourism.

As a major consumer of natural and cultural resources, there is no disputing the growing specific weight of tourism in terms of the world economy. Today it is a phenomenon, which extends trough out the world and is leading vector of socio-economic development in many regions on earth. Tourism is also one of the most important social achievements this century, an activity capable of helping bring peoples closer together and of creating a conscience, which is respectful of the diversity of ways of life.

Today's tourism also exemplifies the contradiction, which exists between a society increasingly concerned to conserve its natural and cultural heritage, and the degradation that results from tourism when this is not planned adequately or if sensible tourism solutions are not employed. The out put of the Rio summit, Agenda 21, promotes the concertation of all the agents implicated in development processes with the aim of contributing their common efforts to the objective of sustainability. In the case of tourism, this effort would involve the drawing up of tourism development programmes that are economically rational, culturally sensitive, and environmentally sound and protective.

According to SG of WCST it is clear that for many countries tourism lies at the heart of the debate on environmental protection and the need for economic and social development. Against the old image of tourism, which preys on cultures and territories, a new international sensitivity has emerged in support of sustainable tourism options. The ultimate aim is that tourism, the environment and cultural heritage may comprise the elements of a great formula for balanced development in many regions on earth. (Cipriano Marín Secretary General of the WCST at UNEP side events in PrepCom IV-Bali)

Travel and Tourism is now one of the largest industries in the world contributing over 10% to global GDP. Economically, Travel and Tourism creates jobs and contributes to a country's GDP as

well as bringing in capital investment and exports. Socially and culturally, Travel and Tourism offers the opportunity of providing jobs for minority and disadvantaged groups, bringing adequate training in management skills, education and technology to local people and increasing incomes in rural and local economies, thereby contributing to the alleviation of poverty in developing countries. Environmentally, it is essential for tourism industry to maintain an optimal balance of its natural resources to ensure the ongoing arrival of tourists to destinations.

Sustainable nature based tourism has the potential to reduce the conflict between economic, social and environmental objectives and deliver development in a sustainable way.

The inevitable transition to sustainable development strategies gives tourism industry an opportunity to confirm itself as a solution rather than a contributor to the economical, social and environmental challenges facing the future. One of the main barriers to achieving this goal in the past has been the inherent fragmentation of tourism industry, and the relative fragility of viable operating margins, especially for the small and medium-sized enterprises that make up most of the industry. (Executive summary of UNEP tourism industry report to WSSD page 7)

Tourism is one of the world's largest industries, generating more than \$4 trillion per year and providing employment for nearly 250 million people worldwide. Global tourism is projected to expand four-fold from its 1996 levels by 2010. Whilst all segments of the industry are expanding, nature-based tourism in areas with significant biodiversity is increasing more rapidly than the industry as a whole. Large-scale tourism involves major infrastructure development, increased demands for water, energy and waste disposal and an influx of new people, ideas and cultures. This increased activity can lead to habitat conversion, pollution and resource degradation <http://www.celb.org/>

Present chapter is due to conduct survey on the most relevant international environmental organisations, instruments, and agreements and find out how the concept of sustainable nature based tourism was developed within the international environmental forums in recent decades. The aims of such study are primarily highlighting the main and essential ideas rise by relevant organisations and try to avoid as much as possible making any analysis and/or judgment. The points of strength and weakness as well as the lessons learned are the content of chapter four. Some ideas were planned jointly or parallel by various organisations. The survey tried to avoid duplication and focus on the original and innovative ideas

First part of survey explores the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) strategies, policies and activities on sustainable nature based tourism and review a variety of its working areas. This part encompasses of six sections such as; Tourism impacts and UNEP concerns, UNEP Principles on the Implementation of Sustainable Tourism, Multi-stakeholder partnerships and Voluntary Initiatives, UNEP and sensitive/protected areas, and UNEP and International Activities. Second part of survey meets the recent developments on nature based tourism at the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD).

Third part of this chapter examines the activities, policies and decisions of the World-Tourism Organisation (WTO/OMT) in the field of sustainable/nature based tourism.

Fourth part is a brief review on the UNESCO activities regarding sustainable/nature based tourism. Finally in the fifth part of this chapter the major documents and activities produced by European Union are studied.

UNEP and Sustainable Nature Based Tourism

UNEP examines the concept of sustainable tourism development that proposed by WTO/OMT as a base for its tourism sustainable development consideration. WTO states that "Sustainable tourism development meets the needs of the present tourists and host regions while protecting and enhancing the opportunity for the future. It is envisaged as leading to management of all resources in such a way that economic, social and aesthetic needs can be fulfilled, while maintaining cultural integrity, essential ecological processes, and biological diversity and life support systems".

In the eyes of UNEP sustainability implies permanence, so sustainable tourism includes optimum use of resources, including biological diversity; minimisation of ecological, cultural and social impacts; and maximization of benefits to conservation and local communities. It also refers to the management structures that are needed to achieve this. Sustainability, for tourism therefore, has three interconnected aspects: environmental, socio-cultural, and economic. (UNEP/IE)

UNEP together with the World Tourism Organisation (WTO/OMT) have been appointed by the Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD) as the Interagency Coordinators or lead agencies responsible for implementation of Agenda 21 issues on tourism and the main focal points on sustainable tourism for CSD and the CBD.

UNEP works in partnerships with governments, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the private sector and inter-governmental organisations (IGO). The coordination and cooperation is carried out through demonstration projects, training/education/awareness activities and support to voluntary initiatives. UNEP partnership with IGOs, development agencies and governments is for building the capacity to integrate environment into tourism policies and planning and vice-versa.

UNEP and industry partnership is particularly for increasing the accountability, "coalition of the willing", and to increase the implementation of voluntary initiatives and best practices.

UNEP role in sensitive area managers is to implement, support and maintain the tools to minimise impacts and to increase the benefits from visitation and tourism. UNEP relationship with Consumers is to change tourism behaviour and their matching consumption pattern.

According to UNEP/IE, it has developed strategy for sustainable tourism development to promote sustainable tourism among government agencies and the industry, to develop sustainable tourism tools for protected/sensitive area management, and to support implementation of multilateral environmental agreements related to tourism (such as CSD, Biological Diversity, Climate Change, Regional Seas, Marine Impacts from Land-Based Activities, Migratory Species, CITES, Ramsar, World Heritage and others).

Based on the above strategy UNEP developed its main policy making and rule settings which is reviewed by the present survey in the following sections;

- a) Tourism impacts and UNEP concerns
- b) UNEP Principles on the Implementation of Sustainable Tourism
- c) Multi-stakeholder partnerships and Voluntary Initiatives addressing the following issues;
 - WSSD Industry Report on Tourism and UNEP
 - Tour Operators Initiative
 - Management of Tourism Destinations and Local Agenda 21
 - Environmental Code of Conduct for Tourism
 - Ecolabels in the Tourism Industry
 - Business Incubators
- d) UNEP and sensitive/protected areas addressing the following issues;
 - Tourism and Protected Areas management;
 - Project Linking Conservation and Tourism at six World Heritage sites
 - Guidelines: Development of National Parks and Protected Areas for Tourism
 - International Coral Reef Initiative (action plan)
 - UNEP and Coastal managements
 - UNEP and Islands
 - UNEP and Mountain tourism,
- e) UNEP and International Activities
 - International Year of Ecotourism
 - UNEP contribution to the CSD7
 - UNEP contribution on Tourism to WSSD

Tourism Impacts and UNEP Concerns

Based on UNEP pinot of views, the diverse impact of tourism on environment, culture, economy and society will be elaborated in this section.

The following is the summary of an electronic UNEP document which reflects main UNEP concerns on the Impact of Tourism. The full text is available in <http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/sust-tourism/>.

It contains three areas; environmental, economical and social impact of tourism.

UNEP assessment on the environmental impacts of tourism

Tourism's relationship with the environment is complex. It involves many activities that can have adverse environmental effects. Many of these impacts are linked with the construction of general infrastructure and of tourism facilities. The negative impacts of tourism development can gradually destroy the environmental resources on which it depends. Negative impacts from

tourism occur when the carrying capacity is ignored. Uncontrolled conventional tourism poses potential threats to many natural areas around the world. It can put enormous pressure on an area and lead to impacts such as soil erosion, increased pollution, discharges into the sea, natural habitat loss, increased pressure on endangered species and heightened vulnerability to forest fires. It often puts a strain on water resources, and it can force local populations to compete for the use of critical resources.

On the other hand, tourism has the potential to create beneficial effects on the environment by contributing to environmental protection and conservation. It is a way to raise awareness of environmental values and it can serve as a tool to finance protection of natural areas and increase their economic importance.

UNEP consider three main impact areas of tourism on the environment as depletion of natural resources, pollution, and physical impacts.

Main depletion impacts of tourism on natural resources are as follows;

- Water resources; The tourism industry generally overuses water resources for hotels, swimming pools, golf courses and personal use of water by tourists. This can result in water shortages, especially in dryer regions like the Mediterranean, and degradation of water supplies, as well as generating a greater volume of waste water. The amounts of water used by tourists in dry lands can up to 440 litres per day and an average golf course in a tropical country such as Thailand needs 1500kg of chemical fertilizers, pesticides and herbicides per year and uses as much water as 60,000 rural villagers.

(Source: Tourism Concern)

- Local resources; Tourism can create great pressure on local resources like energy, food, and other raw materials that may already be in short supply.

- Land degradation; massive construction of tourism and recreational facilities has increased the pressure on land resources include minerals, fossil fuels, fertile soil, forests, wetland and wildlife and on scenic landscapes. Deforestation caused by fuel wood collection and land clearing is other kind of land degradation.

Main pollutions caused by tourism are as follows;

- Air pollution and noise; According to ICAO the number of international air passengers worldwide rose from 88 million in 1972 to 344 million in 1994 and tourism now accounts for more than 60% of air travel and is therefore responsible for an important share of air emissions. Transport emissions and emissions from energy production and use are linked to acid rain, global warming and photochemical pollution. Air pollution from tourist transportation has impacts on the global level, especially from carbon dioxide (CO₂) emissions related to transportation energy use. Noise pollution causes distress to wildlife, especially in sensitive areas.

- Solid waste and littering; In areas with high concentrations of tourist activities and appealing natural attractions, waste disposal is a serious problem and improper disposal can be a major despoiler of the natural environment - rivers, scenic areas, and roadsides. A cruise ships in the

Caribbean are estimated to produce more than 70,000 tons of waste each year. Solid waste and littering can degrade the physical appearance of the water and shoreline as well as mountain.

- Sewage; Wastewater created by tourism facilities has polluted seas and lakes surrounding tourist attractions, damaging the flora and fauna. Sewage runoff causes serious damage to coral reefs.

- Aesthetic Pollution; A lack of land-use planning and building regulations in many destinations has facilitated sprawling developments along coastlines, valleys and scenic routes. Such tourism facilities fail to integrate its structures with the natural features and indigenous architectural of the destination. Attractive landscape sites, such as sandy beaches, lakes, riversides, and mountain tops and slopes, are often transitional zones, characterised by species-rich ecosystems. The ecosystems most threatened with degradation are ecologically fragile areas such as alpine regions, rain forests, wetlands, mangroves, coral reefs and sea grass beds. The threats to and pressures on these ecosystems are often severe because such places are very attractive to both tourists and developers. Physical impacts are caused not only by tourism-related land clearing and construction, but by continuing tourist activities and long-term changes in local economies and ecologies.

Main degradation and physical impacts of tourism development are as follows;

- Construction activities and infrastructure development; The development of tourism facilities such as accommodation, water supplies, restaurants and recreation facilities can involve sand mining, beach and sand dune erosion, soil erosion and extensive paving. In addition, road and airport construction can lead to land degradation and loss of wildlife habitats and deterioration of scenery.

- Deforestation and intensified or unsustainable use of land; Construction of ski resort accommodation and facilities frequently requires clearing forested land. Coastal wetlands are often drained and filled due to lack of more suitable sites for construction of tourism facilities and infrastructure. These activities can cause severe disturbance and erosion of the local ecosystem, even destruction in the long term.

- Marina development; Development of marinas and breakwaters can cause changes in currents and coastlines. Extraction of building materials such as sand affects coral reefs, mangroves, and hinterland forests as well as overbuilding in shorelines, leading to erosion and destruction of habitats. Coral reefs are especially fragile marine ecosystems and are suffering worldwide from reef-based tourism developments.

Main degradation and Physical impacts from tourist activities are as follows;

- Trampling; Tourists using the same trail over and over again trample the vegetation and soil, eventually causing damage that can lead to loss of biodiversity and other impacts. Such damage can be even more extensive when visitors frequently stray off established trails.

- Anchoring and other marine activities; in marine areas many tourist activities occur in or around fragile ecosystems. Anchoring, snorkelling, sport fishing and scuba diving, yachting, and cruising are some of the activities that can cause direct degradation of marine ecosystems.

- Alteration of ecosystems by tourist activities; Habitat can be degraded by tourism leisure activities.

Safaris and wildlife watching activities have a degrading effect on habitat as they often are accompanied by the noise and commotion created by tourists.

Tourism has also environmental impact at global level. In the same document, UNEP elaborated such impacts as follows;

- Loss of Biological Diversity; Tourism, especially nature tourism, is closely linked to biodiversity and the attractions created by a rich and varied environment. It can cause loss of biodiversity when land and resources are strained by excessive use, and when impacts on vegetation, wildlife, mountain, marine and coastal environments and water resources exceed the carrying capacity. Loss of biological diversity also occurred because of the introduction of exotic species that are not native to the local environment and can cause enormous disruption and even destruction of ecosystems. This loss of biodiversity in fact means loss of tourism potential.

- Depletion of the Ozone Layer; Ozone depleting substances (ODSs) such as CFCs (chlorofluorocarbon) and halons have contributed to the destruction of ozone layer. The tourism industry may be part of the problem; by construction of new developments and continue during daily management and operations. Refrigerators, air conditioners and propellants in aerosol spray cans, amongst others, contain ODSs and are widely used in the hotel and tourism industry. Emissions from jet aircraft are also a significant source of ODSs.

- Climate change; Global tourism is closely linked to climate change. Tourism involves the movement of people from their homes to other destinations and accounts for about 50% of traffic movements; rapidly expanding air traffic contributes about 2.5% of the production of CO₂. Tourism is thus a significant contributor to the increasing concentrations of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. (Source: Mountain Forum)

Air travel itself is a major contributor to the greenhouse effect. Passenger jets are the fastest growing source of greenhouse gas emissions. The number of international travellers is expected to increase from 594 million in 1996 to 1.6 billion by 2020, adding greatly to the problem unless steps are taken to reduce emissions. (Source: WWF)

In the other side, global environmental impact such as natural disasters and climate change may affect tourism as well. Catastrophes like floods, earthquakes, wildfires, volcanoes, avalanches, drought and diseases can have a serious effect on inbound and domestic tourism and thus on local tourism industries.

Climate change is likely to increase the severity and frequency of storms and severe weather events, which can have disastrous effects on tourism in the affected regions. Some of the other impacts that the world risks as a result of global warming are drought, diseases and heat waves. Global warming may cause less snowfall at ski resorts, harm to vulnerable ecosystems such as rainforests and coral reefs because of rising temperatures and less rainfall, rising sea levels and increased events of extreme weather.

Other industries activities may effects tourism by more dramatic environmental impacts such as oil spills, agricultural runoff or industrial discharges causing algae blooms, and destructive practices such as blast fishing or fishing with poisonous chemicals.

Final part of environmental impact of tourism section of UNEP electronic document examines the ways and means that tourism can contribute to environmental conservation.

The major topics are;

- Financial contributions, Directly to the conservation of sensitive areas and habitat such as revenue from park-entrance fees and similar sources as well as contributions to government revenues to manage natural resources by User fees, income taxes, taxes on sales or rental of recreation equipment, and license fees for activities such as hunting and fishing.
- Improved environmental management and planning helps to make choices between conflicting uses, or to find ways to make them compatible. By planning early for tourism development, damaging and expensive mistakes can be prevented, avoiding the gradual deterioration of environmental assets significant to tourism. Cleaner production techniques such as Green Building can be important tools for planning and operating tourism facilities in a way that minimises their environmental impacts. Waste treatment and disposal are often major, long-term environmental problems in the tourism industry, pollution prevention and waste minimisation techniques are especially important for the tourism industry.
- Environmental awareness raising of the value of nature and leading to environmentally conscious behaviour and activities to preserve the environment by tourism is a potential to increase public appreciation of the environment. The tourism industry can play a key role in providing environmental information and raising awareness among tourists of the environmental consequences of their actions and moving them to incorporate the principles and practices of sustainable consumption including building consumer demand for products that have been made using cleaner production techniques, and for services.
- Protection and preservation, Tourism can significantly contribute to environmental protection, conservation and restoration of biological diversity and sustainable use of natural resources. Because of their attractiveness, pristine sites and natural areas are identified as valuable and the need to keep the attraction alive can lead to creation of national parks and wildlife parks. Tourism has had a positive effect on wildlife preservation and protection efforts. Numerous animal and plant species have already become extinct. Many countries have therefore established wildlife reserves and enacted strict laws protecting the animals that draw nature-loving tourists. As a result of these measures, several endangered species have begun to thrive again.
- Alternative employment; Tourism can provide an alternative to development scenarios that may have greater environmental impacts.
- Regulatory measures help offset negative impacts; for instance, controls on the number of tourist activities and movement of visitors within protected areas can limit impacts on the ecosystem and help maintain the integrity and vitality of the site. Such limits can also reduce the

negative impacts on resources. Limits should be established after an in-depth analysis of the maximum sustainable visitor capacity.

UNEP assessments on socio-cultural impact of tourism

For a variety of reasons, host communities often are the weaker party in interactions with tourists and service providers, leveraging any influence they might have. The impacts arise when tourism brings about changes in value systems and behaviour and thereby threatens indigenous identity. Changes often occur in community structure, family relationships, collective traditional life styles, ceremonies and morality. Positive impacts of tourism are a supportive force for peace, foster pride in cultural traditions and help avoid urban relocation by creating local jobs.

Main negative socio-cultural impacts from tourism is categorised by UNEP as Change or loss of indigenous identity and values, Culture clashes, Physical influences causing social stress, and Ethical issues.

Major impacts in the area of Change or loss of indigenous identity are as follows;

- Commodification; Tourism can turn local cultures into commodities when religious rituals, traditional ethnic rites and festivals are reduced and sanitized to conform to tourist expectations, resulting in what has been called "reconstructed ethnicity."
- Standardisation; Destinations risk standardisation in the process of satisfying tourists' desires for familiar facilities. Tourists often look for recognizable facilities in an unfamiliar environment.
- Loss of authenticity and staged authenticity; Adapting cultural expressions and manifestations to the tastes of tourists or even performing shows as if they were "real life" constitutes "staged authenticity". As long as tourists just want a glimpse of the local atmosphere, a quick glance at local life, without any knowledge or even interest, staging will be inevitable.
- Adaptation to tourist demands; Tourists want souvenirs, arts, crafts, and cultural manifestations, and in many tourist destinations. It may cause changes in design of local products in line with the new customers' tastes and results cultural erosion.

Major impacts in the area of Culture clashes are;

- Cultural clashes can take place as a result of differences in cultures, ethnic and religious groups, values and lifestyles, languages, and levels of prosperity. The result can be an overexploitation of the social carrying capacity and cultural carrying capacity of the local community.
- Economic inequality; many tourists come from societies with different consumption patterns and lifestyles. Local people that come in contact with tourists may develop a sort of copying behaviour, as they want to live and behave in the same way.
- Irritation due to tourist behaviour; Tourists often, out of ignorance or carelessness, fail to respect local customs and moral values. When they do, they can bring about irritation and stereotyping.
- Job level friction; In developing countries, many jobs occupied by local people in the tourist industry are at a lower level, while higher-paying and more prestigious managerial jobs go to

foreigners or "urbanised" nationals. This may cause friction and irritation and increases the gap between the cultures.

Major impacts in the area of Physical influences causing social stress are;

- Resource use conflicts, Competition between tourism and local populations for the use of prime resources like water and energy. Stress to local communities can also result from environmental degradation and increased infrastructure costs for the local community
- Cultural deterioration; Damage to cultural resources may arise from vandalism, littering, pilferage and illegal removal of cultural heritage items. Degradation of cultural sites may occur when historic sites and buildings are unprotected and the traditionally built environment is replaced or virtually disappears.
- Conflicts with traditional land-uses; Conflicts arise when the choice has to be made between development of the land for tourist facilities or infrastructure and local traditional land-use in intensely exploited areas such as coastal zones. The indigenous population of such destinations is frequently the loser in the contest for these resources as the economic value which tourism brings often counts for more.

Major impacts in the area of Ethical issues are as follows;

- The growth of mass tourism is often accompanied by increased crime like robbery and drug. Repression of these phenomena often exacerbates social tension.
- Child labour; ILO studies show that working situation in tourism industry are long hours, unstable employment, low pay, little training and poor chances for qualification. For many such jobs young children are recruited, as they are cheap and flexible employees.
- Prostitution and sex tourism; the commercial sexual exploitation of children and young women has paralleled the growth of tourism in many parts of the world.

Main positive socio-cultural impacts from tourism or tourism contribution to socio-cultural development is categorised by UNEP as following;

- Tourism as a force for peace; Tourism can foster understanding between peoples and cultures and provide cultural exchange between hosts and guests. Sympathy and understanding can lead to a decrease of tension in the world and thus contribute to peace.
- Strengthening communities; tourism can add to the vitality of communities in many ways such as strengthening of events and festivals, reduction of emigration from rural areas by job creation, and earnings prospects and skills.
- Facilities developed for tourism can benefit residents; Benefits can include upgraded infrastructure, health and transport improvements, new sport and recreational facilities, restaurants, and public spaces as well as an influx of better-quality commodities and food.
- Revaluation of culture and traditions; Tourism can boost the preservation and transmission of cultural and historical traditions, which often contributes to the conservation and sustainable management of natural resources, the protection of local heritage, and a renaissance of indigenous cultures, cultural arts and crafts.

- Tourism encourages civic involvement and pride; Tourism helps raise local awareness of the financial value of natural and cultural sites and can stimulate a feeling of pride in local and national heritage and interest in its conservation. The involvement of local communities in tourism development and operation appears to be an important condition for the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity.

UNEP assessment on economic impacts from tourism

Main negative economic impacts from tourism is categorised by UNEP as follows;

- Leakage; The direct income for an area is the amount of tourist expenditure that remains locally after taxes, profits, and wages are paid outside the area and after imports are purchased; these subtracted amounts are called leakage. Of each US\$ 100 spent on a vacation tour by a tourist from a developed country, only around US\$ 5 actually stays in a developing-country destination's economy. About 80% of travellers' expenditures go to the airlines, hotels and other international companies and not to local businesses or workers.

Such huge leakage commonly occurs by Import leakage when tourists demand standards of equipment, food, and other products that the host country cannot supply, or by Export leakage when multinational corporations and large foreign businesses have a substantial share in the import leakage and the construction of tourism infrastructure and facilities.

- Enclave tourism; local businesses often see their chances to earn income from tourists severely reduced by the creation of "all-inclusive" vacation packages. When tourists remain for their entire stay at the same cruise ship or resort, which provides everything they need and where they will make all their expenditures, not much opportunity is left for local people to profit from tourism.

- Infrastructure cost; Budget allocation to infrastructure demanded by tourism sector may reduce government investment in other critical areas such as education and health. Tourism infrastructural development can cost the local government and local taxpayers a great deal of money.

- Increase in prices; increasing demand for basic services and goods from tourists will often cause price hikes that negatively affect local residents whose income does not increase proportionately. Tourism development and the related rise in real estate demand may dramatically increase building costs and land values.

- Economic dependence of the local community on tourism; Over-reliance on tourism, especially mass tourism, carries significant risks to tourism-dependent economies. Economic recession and the impacts of natural disasters such as tropical storms and cyclones as well as changing tourism patterns can have a devastating effect on the local tourism sector.

- Seasonal character of jobs; the seasonal character of the tourism industry creates economic problems for destinations that are heavily dependent on it. The result is job insecurity, difficulties in getting training, employment-related medical benefits, and recognition of their experience, and unsatisfactory housing and working conditions.

Main positive economic impacts from tourism or tourism contribution to economic conservation is categorised by UNEP as following;

- Foreign exchange earnings; Tourism expenditures and the export and import of related goods and services generate income to the host economy and can stimulate the investment necessary to finance growth in other economic sectors.
- Contribution to government revenues; Direct contributions are generated by taxes on incomes from tourism employment and tourism businesses, and by direct levies on tourists such as departure taxes. Indirect contributions are those originated from taxes and duties levied on goods and services supplied to tourists.
- Employment generation; the rapid expansion of international tourism has led to significant employment creation. According to the WTO, tourism supports some 7% of the world's workers.
- Stimulation of infrastructure investment; Tourism can induce the local government to make infrastructure improvements such as better water and sewage systems, roads, electricity, telephone and public transport networks, all of which can improve the quality of life for residents as well as facilitate tourism.
- Contribution to local economies; Tourism can be an essential part of the local economy by formal or even unreported jobs though out the destination.

UNEP Principles on the Implementation of Sustainable Tourism

In 1995, UNEP launched an initiative to put sustainable development into practice in all tourism activities from mass tourism to nature based and specialist tourism.

The objectives for developing the UNEP Principles for Implementation of Sustainable Tourism are; assisting governments and intergovernmental, private-sector and other organisations apply the general concept of sustainable tourism in practice, and minimise environmental impacts from tourism as well as facilitating the development of more specific guidelines at the regional level or in relation to specific issues, such as coral reefs and biodiversity and finally providing a framework for the work programmes of the international agreements that address tourism issues such as CBD, UNFCCC and the Convention on the Regional Seas Action Plans.

UNEP conducted a special process of consultation to prepare final text of the principles by regional and web consultations as well as input comments made by UNEP's regional offices.

In February 1999, the proposed principles presented at 20th Session of UNEP's Governing Council and then to the UN Commission on Sustainable Development.

UNEP Governing Council in its Decision UNEP/GC.20/L.4/Rev.1 which was endorsed by CSD and reflected in its document E/CN.17/1999/L.6 requested UNEP to "further develop, through a consultative process involving governments and other relevant partners, guiding principles for sustainable tourism in accordance with the mandate of the United Nations Environment Programme and taking into account the draft principles on sustainable tourism."

In early 2000, the Principles were produced in final form, and have been used as reference by many inter-governmental and international organisations such as CBD.

The principles cover four areas.

First area is “Integration of Tourism into Overall Policy for Sustainable Development”.

In this area, National Strategies, Interagency Coordination and Cooperation, Integrated Management and Reconciling Conflicting Resource Uses are examined.

The UNEP’s aim at National Strategies is to ensure that tourism is balanced with broader economic, social and environmental objectives at national and local level by setting out a national tourism strategy that is based on knowledge of environmental and biodiversity resources, and is integrated with national and regional sustainable development plans.

The UNEP principles in this regard therefore are;

- Establish a national tourism strategy that is updated periodically and a master plan for tourism development and management.
- Integrate conservation of environmental and biodiversity resources into all such strategies and plans.
- Enhance prospects for economic development and employment while maintaining protection of the environment.
- Provide support through policy development and commitment to promote sustainability in tourism and related activities.

The UNEP’s aim at Interagency Coordination and Cooperation is to improve the management and development of tourism by ensuring coordination and cooperation between the different agencies, authorities and organisations concerned at all levels, and that their jurisdictions and responsibilities are clearly defined and complement each other.

The UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Strengthen the coordination of tourism policy, planning development and management at both national and local levels.
- Strengthen the role of local authorities in the management and control of tourism, including providing capacity development for this.
- Ensure that all stakeholders, including government agencies and local planning authorities, are involved in the development and implementation of tourism.
- Maintain a balance with other economic activities and natural resource uses in the area, and take into account all environmental costs and benefits.

The objective of UNEP on Integrated Management is to Coordinate the allocation of land uses, and regulate inappropriate activities that damage ecosystems, by strengthening or developing integrated policies and management covering all activities, including Integrated Coastal Zone Management and adoption of an ecosystem approach.

The UNEP’s principles in this respect are;

- Maximise economic, social and environmental benefits from tourism and minimise its adverse effects, through effective coordination and management of development
- Adopt integrated management approaches that cover all economic activities in an area, including tourism.
- Use integrated management approaches to carry out restoration programmes effectively in areas that have been damaged or degraded by past activities.

The main objective of UNEP on Reconciling Conflicting Resource Uses is to identify and resolve potential or actual conflicts between tourism and other activities over resource use at an early stage. Involve all relevant stakeholders in the development of sound management plans, and provide the organisation, facilities and enforcement capacity required for effective implementation of those management plans.

The UNEP principles in this regard are;

- Enable different stakeholders in the tourism industry and local communities, organisations and institutions to work alongside each other.
- Focus on ways in which different interests can complement each other within a balanced programme for sustainable development.

Second area which is covered by UNEP principles is 'Development of Sustainable Tourism' and contains two sections 'The Role of Planning' and 'Legislation and Standards'. In The Role of Planning section, the UNEP's aim at Planning for Development and Land-use at sub-National Level is to conserve the environment, maintain the quality of the visitor experience, and provide benefits for local communities by ensuring that tourism planning is undertaken as part of overall development plans for any area, and that plans for the short, medium, and long-term encompass these objectives.

The UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Incorporate tourism planning with planning for all sectors and development objectives to ensure that the needs of all areas are addressed. Tourism planning should not be undertaken in isolation.
- Ensure that plans create and share employment opportunities with local communities.
- Ensure that plans contain a set of development guidelines for the sustainable use of natural resources and land.
- Prevent ad hoc or speculative developments.
- Promote development of a diverse tourism base that is well-integrated with other local economic activities.
- Protect important habitats and conserve biodiversity in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity.

The UNEP's aim at Environmental Impact Assessment (EIAs) is to anticipate environmental impacts by undertaking comprehensive EIAs for all tourism development programmes taking into account cumulative effects from multiple development activities of all types.

The UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Examine impacts at the regional, national, and local levels.
- Adopt or amend legislation to ensure that EIAs and the planning process take account of regional factors, if necessary.
- Ensure that project proposals respond to regional development plans and guidelines for sustainable development.

The UNEP's aim at Planning Measures is to ensure that tourism development remains within national and local plans for both tourism and for other types of activity by implementing effective carrying capacity programmes, planning controls, and management.

The UNEP principles in this area are;

- Introduce measures to control and monitor tour operators, tourism facilities, and tourists in any area.
- Apply economic instruments, such as user fees or bonds.
- Zone of land and marine as an appropriate mechanism to influence the siting and type of tourism development by confining development to specified areas where environmental impact would be minimised.
- Adopt planning measures to reduce emissions of CO₂ and other greenhouse gases, reduce pollution and the generation of wastes, and promote sound waste management.
- Introduce new or amended planning or related legislation where necessary.

In the Legislation and Standards section, the UNEP's aim at Legislation Framework is to support implementation of sustainable tourism through an effective legislative framework that establishes standards for land use in tourism development, tourism facilities, management and investment in tourism.

The UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Strengthen institutional frameworks for enforcement of legislation to improve their effectiveness where necessary.
- Standardise legislation and simplify regulations and regulatory structures to improve clarity and remove inconsistencies.
- Strengthen regulations for coastal zone management and the creation of protected areas, both marine and land-based, and their enforcement, as appropriate.
- Provide a flexible legal framework for tourism destinations to develop their own set of rules and regulations applicable within their boundaries to suit the specific circumstances of their local economic, social and environmental situations, while maintaining consistency with overall national and regional objectives and minimum standards.
- Promote a better understanding between stakeholders of their differentiated roles and their shared responsibility to make tourism sustainable.

The objective of UNEP on Environmental Standards is to protect the environment by setting clear ambient environmental quality standards, along with targets for reducing pollution from all sectors,

including tourism, to achieve these standards, and by preventing development in areas where it would be inappropriate.

The UNEP principles in this regard are;

- Minimise pollution at source, for example, by waste minimisation, recycling, and appropriate effluent treatment.
- Take into account the need to reduce emissions of CO₂ and other greenhouse gases resulting from travel and the tourism industry.

The UNEP's aim at Regional Standards is to ensure that tourism and the environment are mutually supportive at a regional level through cooperation and coordination between States, to establish common approaches to incentives, environmental policies, and integrated tourism development planning.

The main UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Adopt overall regional frameworks within which States may wish to jointly set their own targets, incentive and environmental policies, standards and regulations, to maximise benefits from tourism and avoid environmental deterioration from tourism activities.
- Consider regional collaboration for integrated tourism development planning.
- Develop mechanisms for measuring progress, such as indicators for sustainable tourism.
- Develop regional strategies to address transboundary environmental issues, such as marine pollution from shipping and from land-based sources of pollution.

Third area is Management of Tourism and explores issues such as Initiatives by Industry, Monitoring, Technology and Compliance Mechanism.

The UNEP's aim at Initiatives by Industry is to ensure long-term commitments and improvements to develop and promote sustainable tourism, through partnerships and voluntary initiatives by all sectors and stakeholders, including initiatives to give local communities a share in the ownership and benefits of tourism.

The UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Structure initiatives to give all stakeholders a share in the ownership, to maximise their effectiveness.
- Establish clear responsibilities, boundaries and timetables for the success of any initiative.
- As well as global initiatives, encourage small and medium-sized enterprises to also develop and promote their own initiatives for sustainable tourism at a more local level
- Consider integrating initiatives for small and medium-sized enterprises within overall business support packages, including access to financing, training and marketing, alongside measures to improve sustainability as well as the quality and diversity of their tourism products.
- Market tourism in a manner consistent with sustainable development of tourism.

The UNEP's objective on Monitoring is to ensure consistent monitoring and review of tourism activities to detect problems at an early stage and to enable action to prevent the possibility of more serious damage.

The UNEP principles in this regard are;

- Establish indicators for measuring the overall progress of tourist areas towards sustainable development.
- Establish institutional and staff capacity for monitoring.
- Monitor the implementation of environmental protection and related measures set out in EIAs, and their effectiveness, taking into account the effectiveness of any ongoing management requirements for the effective operation and maintenance of those measures for protection of areas where tourism activities take place.

The UNEP's objective on Technology is to minimise resource use and the generation of pollution and wastes by using and promoting environmentally-sound technologies (ESTs) for tourism and associated infrastructure.

The main UNEP principles in this area are;

- Develop and implement international agreements which include provisions to assist in the transfer of Environmentally Sound Technologies (ESTs) for the tourism sector, such as the Clean Development Mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol for energy-related issues.
- Promote introduction and more widespread use of ESTs by tourism enterprises and public authorities dealing with tourism or related infrastructures, as appropriate, including the use of renewable energy and ESTs for sanitation, water supply, and minimisation of the production of wastes generated by tourism facilities and those brought to port by cruise ships.

The UNEP's objective on Compliance Mechanisms is to ensure compliance with development plans, planning conditions, standards and targets for sustainable tourism by providing incentives, monitoring compliance, and enforcement activities where necessary.

The main UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Provide sufficient resources for maintaining compliance, including increasing the number of trained staff able to undertake enforcement activities as part of their duties.
- Monitor environmental conditions and compliance with legislation, regulations, and consent conditions
- Use compliance mechanisms and structured monitoring to help detect problems at an early stage, enabling action to be taken to prevent the possibility of more serious damage.
- Take into account compliance and reporting requirements set out in relevant international agreements.
- Use incentives to encourage good practice, where appropriate.

Fourth area is the Conditions for Success and looked at Involvement of stakeholders, Information Exchange and Capacity Building.

The objective of UNEP on Involvement of Stakeholders is to increase the long-term success of tourism projects by involving all primary stakeholders, including the local community, the tourism industry, and the government, in the development and implementation of tourism plans.

The main principles of UNEP in this regard are as follows;

- Involve all primary stakeholders in the development and implementation of tourism plans, in order to enhance their success. Projects are most successful where all main stakeholders are involved.

- Encourage development of partnerships with primary stakeholders to give them ownership shares in projects and a shared responsibility for success.

The objective of UNEP on Information Exchange is to raise awareness of sustainable tourism and its implementation by promoting exchange of information between governments and all stakeholders, on best practice for sustainable tourism, and establishment of networks for dialogue on implementation of these Principles; and promote broad understanding and awareness to strengthen attitudes, values and actions that are compatible with sustainable development.

The UNEP principles in this regard are;

- Exchange information between governments and all stakeholders, on best practice for sustainable tourism development and management, including information on planning, standards, legislation and enforcement, and of experience gained in implementation of these Principles.

- Use International and regional organisations, including UNEP, can assist with information exchange.

- Encourage development of networks for the exchange of views and information.

The objective of UNEP on Capacity Building is to ensure effective implementation of sustainable tourism, and these Principles, through capacity building programmes to develop and strengthen human resources and institutional capacities in government at national and local levels, and amongst local communities; and to integrate environmental and human ecological considerations at all levels.

The main UNEP principles in this regard are as follows;

- Develop and strengthen their human resources and institutional capacities to facilitate the effective implementation of these Principles.

- Transfer know-how and provide training in areas related to sustainability in tourism, such as planning, legal framework, standards setting, administration and regulatory control, and the application of impact assessment and management techniques and procedures to tourism.

- Facilitate the transfer and assimilation of new environmentally-sound, socially acceptable and appropriate technology and know-how.

- Encourage contributions to capacity building from the local, national, regional and international levels by countries, international organisations, the private sector and tourism industry, and NGOs.

- Encourage assistance from those involved in tourism in countries which have not yet been able to implement sustainability mechanisms in training at the local and national level in the sustainable development of tourism in cooperation with the Governments concerned.

(http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/policy/about_principles.htm)

Voluntary Initiatives

Industry and governments as well as UNEP have been involved since the 1992 Earth Summit in Rio with voluntary initiatives as a policy to improve environmental performance and help achieve sustainability. Voluntary initiatives (V I) has ranged from commitments by individual companies to achieve environmental targets that go beyond existing regulations, to codes of conduct unilaterally approved at the national or international level by sectoral industry associations, to agreements on environmental performance targets between a government and a company, group of companies or industry sector. The scope of such initiatives is wide and can range from non-binding programmes to negotiated, legally binding covenants. The advantage of V I include; they are more flexible than regulations and may be better suited to rapidly changing in complex situations, they improve dialogue and trust between business, government and public and provide opportunities for innovation and flexibility in meeting environmental goals. During last decade UNEP facilitated V I by preparing the ground for sharing of experience and information concerning voluntary initiatives among a wide range of industry associations and multi-stakeholder discussions as well as dissemination of guidelines such as Environmental Codes of Conduct for Tourism and Voluntary Industry Codes of Conduct for the Environment and so on.

CSD at its sixth meeting held a special session on "Business and Industry" in 1988, and subsequently in March 1999 organised a multi stakeholder dialogue on voluntary initiatives in Toronto. The CSD7 has requested UNEP to carry forward this dialogue.

UNEP also contribute to the debate on voluntary initiatives by providing analysis of types of voluntary initiatives undertaken and the lessons that can be learned from them; reducing environmental impacts in key areas such as greenhouse gas emissions; working with industry to develop industry-specific initiatives to improve their environmental performance.

UNEP and industry are creating several initiatives including Tour Operators Initiative for Sustainable Development on which companies agree to develop environmentally sound practices along the lines of the Rio principle

The followings are major UNEP's contribution on Voluntary Initiatives on sustainable tourism.

- Industry report including tourism to WSSD
- Tour Operators Initiatives
- Management of Tourism Destinations and Local Agenda 21
- Voluntary Initiatives on environmental codes of conduct and their use in the tourism industry
- Voluntary initiatives on ecolabels

Industry report including tourism to the WSSD

UNEP launched the sector-specific reporting process at its 17th Annual consultative meeting with industry held in Paris in September 2000 and proposed that each industry sector prepare a self-

evaluation report for WSSD and offered to organise a Multi-stakeholder dialogue to discuss reports.

Tourism is one of the industry sectors UNEP was requested to report on at WSSD. To that end, in February 2001, UNEP launched a reporting initiative and organised a workshop to draw up guidelines for an appropriate tourism industry report, together with other 21 industry reports, to be submitted in WSSD. The Paris Workshop on preparing industry sector reports for the WSSD was attended by key industry stakeholders. More than 200 participants including some 130 representatives of business and industry, 40 representatives of NGO's, 10 representatives of labour organisations and 25 representatives from international organisations and academic institutions. Stakeholders' representatives commented on early drafts of reports during a series of consultative workshops convened in Paris during the period of October to December 2001. (UNEP, 10 years after Rio: the UNEP assessment, page 15)

The aims of the meeting was initiate a multi-stakeholder consultative process on the preparation of industry sector reports for the WSSD; to define the framework of industry sector reports for the WSSD; and to agree on the process for preparing such reports for the WSSD.

The tourism industry jointed to the process and provided with the tourism industry report charting the progress and priorities for the sustainable development of the industry.

To ensure the report offers an open, self-critical assessment of the industry the authors agreed to be part of a multi-stakeholder dialogue. The authors of the tourism industry report participated in a consultative meeting on 3 October 2001, in Paris, with representatives from invited NGOs, trade unions, the ILO, the WTO/OMT and other chosen groups. This provided an open forum for assessment of the report. The report addresses (i) the economic, environmental and social profile ;(ii) strategies, approaches and measures for progress and (iii) the future challenges and targets.

In the opening ceremony of tourism side event held in Bali PerpCom IV of WSSD in June 2nd 2002, UNEP Deputy Executive Director Shafqat Kakakhel Presented the main arguments of UNEP's preparation process of tourism industry report for WSSD. He pointed out;

- Tourism industry is a very close and valuable partner in UNEP efforts to fulfil this promise of safeguarding the environment for development
- The reports highlight numerous efforts by industry to reduce their environmental footprint
- 4.4% of the world's GDP flows directly from tourism so it is a good business. It should be strived to harness this potential for the benefit of people and the environment, all over the world.
- The tourism industry needs a sound environment to survive and grow and the principles of sustainability should be applied to all forms of tourism
- UNEP, working with partners, can play a role in helping develop well-managed tourism - tourism that takes account of its environmental, economic and social impact.
- This Year should be used to firmly entrench those principles, and to raise awareness of best practice - so that all can learn, and understand fully, what is meant by truly sustainable tourism

- This is the International Year of Ecotourism: Ecotourism, at its best, is tourism which promotes natural areas, educates those visiting them, and benefits local people and the local economy- it is sustainable tourism.

- UNEP is a major partner in the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN). (The project focuses on the management needs of the world's coral reef ecosystems, and their relationship to the communities that depend upon them. The health and welfare of coral reefs can determine the livelihoods of many people, as well as underpinning a profitable tourism industry. ICRAN will work with local communities, NGOs, governments and the private sector to ensure the future of these valuable ecosystems, as well as the future of the communities, and economies they sustain.)

- Working with the International Coral Reef Initiative, UNEP and ICRAN have produced a communication tool kit 2 to help the tourist industry explain to their customers the importance of protecting coral reefs.

- The UNEP/UNESCO Great Apes Survival Project (GRASP), which works for the conservation of gorillas, chimpanzees, bonobos and orang-utans, supports projects, including those, which help to develop or establish ecotourism. GRASP would like to work closely with tour operators to market and promote conservation activities, such as GRASP holidays.

UNEP urges the Tourism and travel industry

- To continue the dialogue with UNEP and others
- To develop, promote and implement codes of conduct which take account of the environment
- To push for the integration of travel and tourism into government policies
- To encourage all actors in the sector to practice corporate social responsibility
- To use the Global Reporting Initiative guidelines to report on environmental performance and to adopt quantified targets for improvement of environmental performance (i.e. energy efficiency etc...)

The Tourism Industry Report is prepared by the International Council for Cruise Lines, the International Federation of Tour Operators and the International Hotels & Restaurants Association as well as UNEP and Tour Operators' Initiative, Business Enterprises for Sustainable Travel and the World Tourism Organisation. In presenting the progress made since Rio 92 and the challenges ahead, the report starts with an overview of the industry today. It analyses Travel & Tourism in its social, economic and environmental dimensions, then details actions taken over the last 10 years since Rio 92 and finally sets out future goals.

<http://www.uneptie.org/outreach/wssd/docs/sectors/final/tourism.pdf>

As the foreword of report indicates the tourism industry report presents the perspectives of the travel and tourism industry in meeting the challenges of the 1992 Earth Summit over the past decade and into the future. It shows that the delicate balance between sustainable development and the inevitable economic growth from tourism must not only contribute to improving quality of life, but must also be synonymous with environmental, social and cultural preservation and protection in order to ensure a prosperous future for the travel and tourism industry. This report starts with an

overview of the industry today beginning with a summary of key figures and trends. It looks at general industry-wide trends in each of the three dimensions of sustainability (economic, social and environmental), details the implementation measures taken since Rio 92 and sets out future goals. The content of report cites other examples of sustainability issues facing three major segments of the global travel and tourism industry, tour operations, hotels and restaurants and cruise liners, and examples of efforts to address these issues.

It is an industry report, written and researched by industry representatives for expressing their views at WSSD.

Summary of part I “ Implementation of the 3 dimensions of sustainable tourism development”

This part contains the main ideas and views of WTTC.

In General Overview of this part of report, it is highlighted that; Travel and tourism can play a vital role in balancing between sustenance, prosperity and people's desire to improve their financial/material well-being, with the underlying need for identity, community, religion, home and family. It not only provides the livelihoods for both rural and urban communities, but has the capacity, when planned, developed and managed properly, to enhance community relations and build bridges of understanding and peace between nations. Travel and tourism also plays a crucial role in encouraging governments to reduce their barriers to growth.

According to WTTC estimates, travel and tourism achieved important economic impact directly and indirectly in 2001 such as, USD3.3 trillion contributions to global GDP means almost 11% of total GDP; 207 million jobs worldwide means over 8% of all jobs and USD630 billion in capital investment, almost 9% of all capital investment.

Tourism activities generated 698 million international tourist arrivals in 2000, representing an estimated 7.3% increase over 1999, while in 1950 the top 15 tourist destinations, all in western Europe and North America, attracted 97% of the world's total arrivals, by 1999 this figure had fallen to 62%, with market shares increasing for developing countries and economies in transition, particularly in south-east Asia, central and eastern Europe, and Latin America.’

Qualitative trends in the tourism industry such as development of new forms of tourism-especially which related to nature and wildlife, rural and cultural tourism forms market increasing.

Tourists are increasingly selective about destinations and are demanding higher quality products and services. One of the driving forces behind this trend is the emergence of an ‘experience-based economy’. Tourism products and services that demonstrate greater sensitivity to the environment, traditional culture and local people at the destinations are able to create such an experience.

The preservation of the tourism product – the environmental, social or cultural heritage specific to each country – is the only way to ensure a future for everyone. Many tourism companies are seeking to create more responsible consumer behaviour by using their products and services to educate and inform their customers and adapting ‘corporate citizenship’ programmes.

Economic dimensions of travel and tourism industry;

Travel and tourism, if utilised effectively, can be a force for positive growth and economic success for both developed and developing countries. It is able to provide wealth creation, choice, innovation and competition. It has the capacity to increase exports, bring in capital investment, boost economies GDP and create employment.

- Travel and tourism generates jobs throughout the economy, both in companies directly involved in the business and in related supplier industries such as retail, construction, manufacturing and telecommunications. Within a decade, this is estimated to increase to over 260 million jobs or 9% of all employment worldwide. These jobs employ a significant proportion of women, minorities and young people and are predominantly in small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs).

- Training and education is crucial to achieve the economic prosperity, for both SMEs and the larger multinational companies that can be accrued through tourism and led to protection for employees.

- There is a real need for human resource development within the sector that tackles the issues that lead to costly effects for travel and tourism. The sector is renowned, while it's not the whole story, for its high turnover, anti-social working hours, low pay, seasonal employment, instability and low job status and criticised for offering nothing more than 'hamburger flipping' jobs.

- One of the catalysts creating the urgency for trained, skilled workers within the industry is the increasing use of information technology. Tourism is a sensitive information industry.

- While tour operators have a limited number of staff in some of their receiving countries, a huge network of activities and jobs across the economy depends upon delivering the demand for tourism such as infrastructure development, transport services, agriculture, information technology, restaurants and entertainment and media, education and training, consumption of pharmaceutical products, clothing, equipment, and medical services.

- Given that each hotel room typically requires one member of staff, every hotel room built has the potential to create an additional job.

- The bulk of cruise line employees are from countries where employment opportunities are limited and training is scarce.

- to achieve sustainable economic growth, the travel and tourism sector needs to reduce social, economic, environmental and cultural barriers such as the lack of infrastructure, environmental degradation and fragile linkages (Hawkins, D.E., Finucane, E., Sharp M.; Reducing Barriers to Tourism Investment in Developing Countries. International Institute of Tourism Studies The George Washington University USA.)

- Public-private sector cooperation and planning, as a way to address these barriers, are essential to creating sustainable employment in the tourism industry.

- Tourism Satellite Accounting (TSA), is developed as a means for fully measuring travel and tourism's contribution as an economic activity. TSA is based on a 'demand-side' concept of economic activity (i.e. the economic activities of visitors and travel companies), as tourism does not supply a homogenous product or service. The data collected by TSA ensure governments have

a broader understanding of the impact of travel and tourism, in particular the implications of policy for the travel and tourism economy.

- Annual research undertaken by WTTC demonstrates that for every dollar spent on travel and tourism, a further dollar and a half is typically contributed to GDP in other sectors of the economy.
- Tour operators can have a significant impact upon economies. Whereas the Balearic Islands were the poorest province in the whole of Spain in 1950, by the year 2000 it was the richest – almost entirely due to organised tourism. Other countries where travel and tourism has had a positive impact on the economy are the Maldives, Mexico and Turkey.
- The hotel industry has considerable growth potential in economic development including basic infrastructure and levels of gross domestic output, employment, and education of the workforce.
- The cruise line industry is a significant economic contributor worldwide and particularly to the United States economy. It is a booming industry that is forecast to grow to 20.7 million passengers by 2010.

Social and environmental dimensions of travel and tourism industry;

- Tourism can be both a force for the preservation of or a threat to a community's natural and cultural heritage. The mutual dependence that exists between tourism and cultural heritage is becoming more evident. While culture heritage creates a foundation for tourism's growth, tourism has the power to generate funds that make conservation possible.
- Tourism is an industry that can boost rural economies, create entrepreneurs and jobs and help preserve indigenous cultures.
- One of the main challenges, therefore, for all stakeholders is to maintain an optimal balance to ensure sustainability. In destinations where the natural and cultural heritage deteriorates, the economy will be put at risk as tourists migrate to better-preserved destinations.
- The concept of 'corporate citizenship' is now being adopted by many of the key leaders in the private sector of travel and tourism and is emerging as a central issue for business companies. Corporate citizenship recognises the need to create a balance between all stakeholders' needs, society's different interests and the sustainability of the natural environment with a greater focus on governance and accountability. It is about taking responsibility for, and doing as well as possible in terms of social, environmental and economic performance given competitive opportunities and constraints. Within travel and tourism, corporate citizenship is becoming an increasingly important concept for the private sector.
- Self-regulation appears to be the most viable course of action for the hospitality industry, whether in the form of in-house environmental audits, the adoption of an environmental management system, and/or application for eco-certification.
- The cruise line industry has some of the strictest safety regulations and has one of the most enviable safety records. In July 2001, ICCL members adopted standards on environmental management.

- With the rise of mass tourism comes the threat of destruction of fragile eco-systems and coastal regions, local culture, and the depletion of natural resources. WTTC, with WTO/OMT and the Earth Council, in response to the scrutiny with which tourism was judged, collaborated and produced Agenda 21 for the Travel & Tourism Industry. This public-private sector effort was designed to ensure that as travel and tourism grew globally, its influence would not have an undesirable impact on the environment.

- Tourism can generate the necessary revenue to protect and preserve biodiversity and act as a force for environmental protection especially in developing countries.

- The new concept of eco-tourism or nature tourism is experiencing faster-than-average growth. Eco-tourism alone contributed \$154 billion in receipts in 2000 and is growing 20% annually compared with just 7% for tourism overall in an already booming industry, and reflects those consumers who are aware of the issues facing travel and tourism. However, eco-tourism alone is not the answer to addressing the environmental problems facing the industry. It also remains to be seen how far consumers have the willingness to encourage businesses to adopt more sustainably-developed tourism.

- The industry response to sustainable development tourism; by dialogue between stakeholders in both the private and public sectors that has led to the establishment of global voluntary initiatives in various forms. Presenting annual awards in recognition of outstanding actions on behalf of the environment, Introducing various code of conduct such as Code for Environmentally Responsible Tourism to strengthen the principles of conservation by the Pacific Asia Tourism Association In 1992, or drafting the Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism (<http://www.thecode.org>), Certification, education and awareness programmes such as Green Globe 21 (<http://www.greenglobe21.com>), Cyber Dodo programme, (<http://www.cyberdodo.com>), and. Green Key, Denmark, a scheme operated by the Hotel, Restaurant and Leisure Industry Association in that country, applies 78 criteria to be met by properties seeking certification and finally ecolabels with the aim of helping applicants to understand the nature of eco-labelling schemes are among VI.

- Requirement of a strong and co-operative partnership between government departments, national tourism authorities, international and national trade associations, trade unions and the travel and tourism private sector.

- All stakeholders now need to share the responsibility for travel and tourism's future and need to deliver the following to ensure its sustainability, based on CSD7;

Governments need to:

- integrate travel and tourism policy, especially the environment, into broader government policies;
- set up realistic capacities within sustainability frameworks, which have been set in consultation with industry and other stakeholders;
- create incentives for the travel and tourism industry backed up where necessary by effective regulation;

- be committed to the controlled expansion, where appropriate, of infrastructure;
- apply environmental taxes fairly and non-discriminatorily, where needed. They should be carefully thought out to minimise their impact on economic development, and revenues should be allocated to travel and tourism associated environment improvement programmes;
- set up mechanisms to support SMEs in the adoption of sustainable good practice;
- design policies creating incentives for corporate social responsibility in tourism, favouring a sensitive and engaging approach towards the local communities at the destinations, especially in the developing countries.

Public-private partnerships need to:

- plan and develop infrastructure with a long-term view and within a reference framework based on Agenda 21;
- implement indicators and environmental impact assessment tools to enable successful and effective local management and appropriate development;
- agree on common standards and tools to enable the measurement of progress towards achieving sustainable development;
- fund and develop contemporary research into sustainable tourism. Issues requiring attention include design, carrying capacity, tour operator activities, environmental reporting, and auditing and environmental impact assessments, socio-economic sustainability of the tourism businesses.

International bodies need to:

- co-ordinate environmental action to be undertaken by all sectors of the travel and tourism industry, at an international level;
- review existing voluntary initiatives to improve the quality of reporting, their transparency and credibility, and the assessment of their contribution to sustainability;
- ensure that all funding, from international, national and local funding bodies, should be dependent on sound environmental practice;
- encourage and support multi-stakeholder projects aiming for sustainable tourism development;
- set up mechanisms to support the adoption of sustainable good practices by SMEs.

Private sector companies need to:

- commit to place sustainable development issues at the core of the management structure;
- develop and more widely apply certification criteria to industry initiatives;
- innovate processes and applications through new technology;
- make a commitment to the education and environmental training of staff;
- encourage corporate citizenship as the standard for private sector companies;
- be willing to engage in multi-stakeholder dialogue.

The way forward for travel and tourism industry

- In recent years the UN has begun to make travel and tourism a priority in the sustainable development debate. The result of tourism industry to CSD7 was concluded that 'voluntary measures developed with multi-stakeholder participation, mutual trust and respect, transparency,

monitoring, and assessment and verification were seen as most likely to generate confidence and support from all parties’.

- Travel and tourism has the potential to bring social and environmental, as well as economic benefits. This would give developing countries the possibility to attain the full economic potential tourism can give.

- Sufficient training in management skills and education for local people is a must. Without substantial and skilled human capital, the tourism industry cannot be productive in the future.

- Adequate planning and development is also vital so that fragile eco-systems and scarce natural resources can be utilised effectively and protected for future generations.

- The fundamental infrastructure issues such as airport congestion, air traffic management, sources of capital investment, regulation and political support, and institutional reform facing the sustainable development and growth of travel and tourism, concern both the private and public sectors.

- There is a need to be more proactive participation from government to effective networking processes, legitimate policies, planning and development in tourism to alter its adverse environmental image to one of sustainability and stewardship.

- With effective networking processes, legitimate policies, planning and development from government, tourism can alter its adverse environmental image to one of sustainability and stewardship.

- Voluntary industry initiatives, from education to certification, are ongoing process towards sustainable development.

- Tour operators are looking at implementing strategies that combat both the indirect impact such as monitoring of subcontracted suppliers in environmental performance as well as direct impact like information to consumers on tour operator codes of conducts.

- Key areas of further progress in Hospitality include rising levels of awareness that using resources in an efficient and environmentally-sensible manner as well as transparency and reporting.

- ICCL strive to preserve local environments and cultural heritage, and work to generate and infuse local economies with sustainable income.

- Through public-private sector alliances ICCL works in partnership with a number of public bodies and environmental agencies to find productive solutions to the issues that confront the industry on a daily basis.

The summery of part II of report ‘the Tour Operator Industry’;

This part of report contains views and ideas of tour operator industry.

The economic dimensions of TOI are;

- Tour operating employs relatively few people across the world (a few tens of thousands), but their activities can stimulate hotel and infrastructure development include water, sewerage, airports, roads etc, transport services, agriculture, information technology, restaurants,

entertainment and media, education and training, consumption of pharmaceutical products, clothing, equipment, medical services, excursion venues and public administration concerned with policy-making, marketing and management of tourism.

- A huge network of activities and jobs across the economy depend upon delivering the demand for tourism through TOI.

- Outbound tourism demand is affected by confidence in economic conditions and security as well as perceptions of discretionary income. Leisure outbound travel has been growing at around one and a half times the growth in GDP and is not highly volatile, unless there are safety concerns.

The social dimensions of TOI activities are;

- The ability to travel and to witness other cultures not only brings prosperity to the receiving country, but also fosters understanding and tolerance in the visitor. The tour operator offer – based on high volumes, bulk buying and low prices – has provided access to travel to millions of people.

- The foreign influx has provided income for much greater social choices and accelerated the process of modernisation and openness. Richness of local people through tourism, restoration of national identity and cultural and culinary, creation of jobs in originating countries, particularly for women in travel agencies, airlines, airports and hotels well as for tour operators themselves are among other positive impact of tourism and tour operator activities.

- The 'homogenisation' of global products and services devoid of local identity has been exacerbated by tourism movements. Vulnerable cultures are likely to suffer where there are high densities of tourists.

- The opportunity for jobs in tourism and tourism-related activities in receiving countries has been very positive, as has the opportunity for training and development. A major market failure has been the inability to develop and diversify the complementary offer (things to see, buy or do outside the hotel) that would provide extra jobs and income in the community and allow monies to be distributed more widely.

- In countries with weak economy and high unemployment, tourism's benefit flew to the few who are directly involved in tourism, marginalise workers and targeted children vulnerable to sexual exploitation.

- Tour operators act as a bridge between suppliers, customers and the country visited, providing information about the destination, safety and cultural sensitivity

- As tourism is a horizontal activity, co-ordination, consultation and partnerships (public-public, private-private and public-private partnerships) are essential for it to be successful.

The environmental dimensions of tour operators are;

- The direct environmental impact of tour operators is relatively limited. Tour operators communicate with customers mainly through paper-based media, therefore brochures need to be used efficiently and to be sourced from renewable forests and recycled whenever possible.

Offices need to consume minimum possible energy.

- Customers need to be encouraged to make choices and to behave in ways that are socially and environmentally acceptable.

- In developed countries, in the case of arising any environmental problem, a basis for negotiation exists between the governing authorities and the local tourism actors together with IFTO. This is because of the availability of the technical and financial resources to monitor and enforce environmental standards in tourism development and the political will to act as well as a body of planning regulations.

- Developing countries may have priorities that are more pressing than sustainable development in tourism. There may be neither the political will nor the technical or financial resources to monitor environmental performance. In such circumstances it is important for the tour operator and other tourism actors to adopt self-regulation, while this is weaker than a legal solution as no effective sanctions can be applied.

- Tour operators seek out the lowest seat mile costs which require high-density seating and fuel-efficient modern aircraft operating at high load factors for less emissions of noise, CO₂ and NO_x per passenger.

- Using modern diesel-engine or gas-powered coaches in destinations which can carry up to 58 people and have low seat/mile CO₂ emissions. In many developing countries these are not available; LPG (liquid petroleum gas) or CNG (compressed nitrogen gas) distribution is extremely limited.

- at the hotel, visitor energy consumption/ emissions due to air-conditioning is broadly equivalent to energy consumption/emissions through central heating at home , while using renewable energy is recommended.

- There is a significant increase in the consumption of water as a result of tourism.

Instalment of De-salination plants, water payment by volume per consumer in hotels, employ to reduce consumption of water and energy consumption and waste by hotels are useful initiatives but water shortage remains a major issue in much of the developed and developing world.

- Sewerage systems are expensive and needs high tech systems. These may be funded through central/local government through multi-lateral sources. Solid waste is also a major issue for many municipalities operating in tourism areas.

- Infrastructure construction requires planning regulations that determine maximum spread and density to maintain an appropriate balance.

- Recent major progress by tour operators are, improvement of information to consumers by tour operators, development and attempting to comply with codes of conduct, responding to global warming issues relating to emissions by encourage zero emission engine manufacture and ensure that emissions per passenger are the lowest currently available economically by using modern fuel-efficient aircraft and coaches with high-density seating.

- In terms of indirect impact, there is the opportunity for the tour operator to be influenced by, as well as to influence, the behaviour of various public and private sector actors in the destinations.

- Many tour operators seek to monitor the environmental performance of sub-contracted suppliers and destinations and support countries and regions in implementing the development processes of local 'Agenda 21s' and tourism development plans as well as measures that help in visitor management and make their own staff aware of sustainable development needs.
- Strong governance and institutional frameworks have helped to manage flows of tourism through tour operators in most developed nations; in the developing world this has been less effective.
- Multi-stakeholder involvement in receiving countries/destinations can only be effective if tour operators are included as active partners.
- It is for the country/destination to determine what role tourism should play in their community and what policies they want to follow. Attempts by outsiders (e.g. tour operators or NGOs) to create solutions based on 'western criteria' are almost certain to fail.
- Key areas for improvement include:
 - tour operators need to develop a responsible tourism policy;
 - better information to consumers from tour operators, particularly on credible environmental standards applied to and monitored among sub-contracted suppliers;
 - stronger relationships with tour operators and local public-private sector actors in all significant tourism destinations to support destination management policies aimed at sustainable development. This should lead to constructive consultation as well as the emergence of true local partnerships;
 - significant development of the 'complementary offer' to create jobs among women and the local community in developing countries, and greater development of local agriculture to provide specific foods for tourists;
 - encouragement of zero-emission terrestrial vehicles and aircraft;
 - management of water, waste and energy consumption and the protection of tourism sites (heritage and natural) from unmanaged tourism flows that degrade both the natural environment and the visitor experience;
 - encourage tour operators to adopt self-regulation through appropriate codes of conduct specific to habitat and destination where there are insufficient governance and institutional frameworks;
 - raising tour operators' awareness of the social dimension of sustainable development and ensuring that policies and communications to consumers reflect local community concerns;
 - tour operators need to ensure those sustainable tourism development concepts, procedures and practices are included in their management and representative training programmes;
 - tour operators need to set goals for sustainable development against which their performance can be measured and reported both internally and publicly.
- Tour operators use a variety of tools to create means of implementations and feedback systems to alert the tour operators in the destinations.

- TUI, one of the largest tour operators in the world, with 23 million customers, and Scandinavian Leisure Group, part of My Travel, track the environmental performance of destinations and sub-contracted suppliers;
 - many of the small tour operators have clear guidelines for their staff to follow and report back on adverse consequences of their tourism activity.
 - the issues raised are commonly dealt with through the local contacts of tour operators in the destination.
 - the Tour Operator Initiative (under the aegis of UNEP, UNESCO and WTO) has provided the beginnings of a network of tour operators large and small, to develop better policies and systems of implementation;
 - IFTO has played an active and prominent role with WTO by chairing its Business Council. Sustainable development is a key part of WTO's programme of work.
- Tour operators should set the goal of introducing a comprehensive responsible tourism policy covering direct action and indirect impacts, within the next five years as follows;
 - Tour operators direct action included, better information to consumers; more use of electronic communication; reduction in use of paper; better use of recycled paper and paper from renewable forests; eliminate use of toxic paper coating; aggregate performance data to support corporate annual reporting and year on year improvements, ensure that sustainable development concepts, procedures and practices are included in management and representative training programmes; ensure greater adherence to tour operator codes of conduct.

Success in the above areas will depend on the development of agreed international criteria against which to measure the environmental performance of subcontracted suppliers in order to keep consumers better informed and the extent of the use of electronic means of communication as well as technological innovation and progress that will allow the development of low cost, thin (low weight) shiny paper for brochures that have high levels of environmental performance.

- Tour operators indirect impacts include the need to improve monitoring of the social and environmental performance of sub-contracted suppliers and destinations (building on health and safety initiatives and guidelines) by tour operators; to develop stronger relationships with local public and private sector actors in all significant tourism destinations, to support destination management policies and strategies aimed at sustainable development (multi-stakeholder involvement) to protect the natural environment and cultural heritage, to conserve plants and animals, protected areas and landscapes; to respect the integrity of local cultures and their social institutions.

The summery of part III 'incoming tour operators, agents, ground handlers, coach and rent-a-car companies and major attractions',

Social environmental and economic dimensions are,

- Incoming tour operator provides all logistical support as well as providing local knowledge (commercial, legal, political and environmental) on what can and cannot be done.

- 99% incoming tour operators are as local independent businesses. In developing countries, in particular, these local businesses compete to represent tour operators.

- From the perspective of the suppliers in the receiving destination, the incoming tour operator forms part of their destination network for which they are prepared to pay.

- The major attractions act as magnets to tourists providing the motivation for visits and leading to increased use of hotel rooms, roads, airports, rail transport as well as the land use for the attraction itself. They can provide a major drive for increased local employment.

- The incoming tour operators can, and do, lay down clear policies and procedures for subcontracted suppliers to follow to protect the environment and to support enlightened social policies

- In some developing countries, the custom and practice may not meet the standards demanded, for example, by ILO. Outbound tour operators can have influence over how their passengers are handled by the incoming tour operators/suppliers in this context,

- The decisions of incoming tour operators on excursion venues and planning of trips can have strong impacts on particular communities. These communities are in competition with each other for offering attractions to tourists who have limited time (e.g. craft markets) so decisions by incoming tour operators count heavily.

-The attractions of cultural heritage can lead to excessive use and congestion and to environmental degradation. The man-made attractions have imposed upon them panoply of planning and social regulation with which to comply. This includes stringent environmental impact assessments before any project is finally approved.

- The challenges for incoming tour operators, agents and ground handlers are:

- to obtain from government recognition of their influential role,

- to take a balanced and responsible approach to the provision of services that they provide within the context and possibilities of their local conditions,

- to influence their subcontracted suppliers to adopt a similar balanced responsible approach,

- The challenges for the coach and rent-a-car companies is to adopt more fuel-efficient, and eventually, emission-free vehicles.

- The challenge for attractions is to contribute to and obtain measures for access and subsequent distribution of very large numbers of customers, while complying with their social and environmental responsibilities.

The summary of part IV 'The hospitality industry',

- This research was published in 1995 and 2000, by The International Hotel & Restaurant Association (IH&RA) as the sole trade association exclusively dedicated to representing the hospitality industry (hotels and restaurants) at the international level, in the form of two White Papers on the Global Hospitality Industry. Their findings indicate that as of 1997 the industry

comprised over 301,400 hotel properties worldwide, totalling 13 million rooms and generating over USD202 billion in revenues. An industry of such magnitude inevitably has far-reaching impacts of a social, economic and environmental nature,

The social and economic dimensions of hospitality industry,

- Research indicates that approximately 20% of hotels worldwide are branded (i.e. have an affiliation to a national or international chain of hotels), and 80% are independent, so the industry could be categorized as small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs).

- The international hospitality industry makes a major contribution to gross domestic output.

They do so via four major activities, profits earned and distributed to owners, taxes paid on sales, wages and real estate, jobs created; and purchases of supplies and materials.

- Industry multiple taxation generates significant funding for governments.

- Hotels and restaurants also contribute to the important process of job creation. As a labour-intensive industry, hospitality employs large numbers of wage earners, whose taxes and disposable income add to gross domestic output and help to create further employment opportunities.

- Given that each hotel room typically requires one member of staff, every hotel room built has the potential to create additional job. For every dollar spent by a guest in a hotel, one additional revenue dollar is generated for the community as the 'multiplier effect',

- The total output of the hotel industry is closely tied to the infrastructure and levels of GDP, employment and education of the workforce.

- Of particular concern to the hospitality industry in high-income countries are current demographic trends – notably declining birth rates and ageing populations – and the shortage of workforce. In order to help combat the labour shortage hotels have to embrace a training culture in their businesses and employ people from an increasingly wide cross-section of cultures and backgrounds.

- By providing many young or unskilled people with their first job experience, the industry also effectively offers them an entry into the labour market. The industry's labour-intensive nature puts it in a prime position to draw upon all sectors of society to meet its workforce needs.

- Some hotel companies have signed agreements with trade unions, which focus on issues of trade union rights, skills training and equality in the workplace on the basis of non-discriminations.

- All stakeholders in a hotel project (be they investors, employees, or government) should have an equitable share in the profits through joint venture schemes or other forms of ownership. By these means developing countries may achieve wealth sharing.

- An area of concern is HIV/AIDS particularly for hotels located in high-risk areas where the disease is widespread. Hotels increasingly recognise the need for measures to protect 'frontline' employees given the higher-than-average extent of direct contact between customers and staff.

- The commercial sexual exploitation of children in tourism is a further area of social concern with implications not just for hotels worldwide, but for the tourism industry as a whole. This is an

area where collaboration between the various private sector partners, national governments and their law-enforcing agencies is vital.

The environmental dimensions of hospitality industry;

- Hotels, by the very nature of their operations, are likely to take a multitude of environmental actions that extend beyond the control of any single monitoring agency. As a result, self-regulation appears to be the most viable course of action, whether in the form of in-house environmental audits, the adoption of an environmental management system, and/or application for eco-certification such as Green Leaf, Green Key or Green Globe issued by one of a number of recognised bodies.

- The moral, social and political arguments for conducting business in an environmentally-sound manner are becoming more and more widely accepted.

- This is particularly noteworthy given the potential impacts the industry can have on air quality, energy and water consumption, land use and waste generation.

- The hospitality industry can also be considered a significant user of energy in the form of heat and power. As this directly involves the burning of fossil fuels and the emission of greenhouse gases, the hospitality industry is also an indirect contributor to global warming. As a result, industry bodies regularly draw attention to the importance of eliminating ozone-depleting substances in refrigeration, air-conditioning and fire-extinguishing appliances to avoid further contributing to this phenomenon.

- A hotel can consume between 60m and 220m per guest room per year, considerably more than local residence. Major efforts have been made by the industry to disseminate information and advice on these and other resource and energy-saving measures.

- Hospitality developers are well aware that poor siting, design, engineering and construction of tourism facilities run counter to their long-term interests by causing erosion, landslides and flooding.

- Much has been learnt from past experience, including the importance of preserving natural protective features such as dunes and vegetation cover when constructing hotel facilities on the waterfront in low-lying and coastal areas, and of harmoniously integrating hospitality facilities with the natural or architectural features of the surrounding area.

- Constructing or refurbishing hotels can be an opportunity to apply traditional techniques and technologies, to rediscover local materials, and to consult with local communities to learn how best to construct buildings that respect a given landscape and suit a particular climate.

- Waste disposal costs money and for this reason, hotels are increasingly careful to reduce waste volumes because it makes sound business sense by minimising the materials used in the first place, recycling and reusing waste materials and by safely disposing of residual wastes.

- Hospitality businesses can contribute to increasing recycling volumes, driving down recycling costs, increasing the profitability of local recycling markets and raising customer awareness.

- Most of the leading hospitality chains have introduced environmental policies and many have senior executives dedicated solely to environmental issues.

- Voluntary initiatives have been undertaken to help hotels deal effectively with HIV/AIDS in the workplace and the commercial sexual exploitation of children in tourism,

Means of implementation

The hospitality sector has adopted numerous strategies, approaches and measures in response to the challenge of sustainable development including, environmental management systems and tools; education, awareness creation, training and information dissemination; voluntary initiatives; multi-stakeholder communication and consultation; environmental reporting; implementation of the Rio principles.

- The framework for individual environmental management systems (EMS) may involve defining an environmental policy and building a management system to measure environmental impacts and compliance both with corporate policy and with local regulations, as well as documenting the system's performance for inspection and auditing purposes. It helps businesses to evaluate, manage and reduce their negative environmental impacts by providing a methodology to integrate environmental management into business operations in a systematic manner. Examples of hotel

- IH&RA, in conjunction with partners such as UNEP-DTIE, the International Hotels Environment Initiative (IHEI), the UNAIDS programme has sought to raise industry awareness of the social, economic and environmental dimensions of sustainable development through numerous educational programmes and publications such as information campaign on HIV/AIDS in the workplace or child abuse, curriculum materials for hotel schools, voluntary initiatives in supporting community concerns

- Given the predominance of SMEs in the hospitality sector, legislative enforcement and verification of compliance with environmental measures is highly complex. Therefore, voluntary initiatives such as eco-labels, environment awards and codes of conduct are proving to be an effective method of encouraging environmental improvement across a large number of businesses.

- In response to growing consumer awareness of the environmental context when purchasing products, eco-labelling has been one of most successful means for a hotel to gain environmental credibility and custom.

- In terms of the hospitality industry's social contribution, one initiative particularly worth noting is the Youth Career Initiative programme which offers severely under-privileged young people a 20-week training course in basic life skills along with an introduction to the hospitality industry. It seeks to open up genuine career opportunities that will lift them out of poverty and protect them from prostitution.

- On the cultural side, IH&RA has partnered with UNESCO in a joint initiative encouraging hotel companies to invest in the archaeological and cultural heritage through 'Memories of the Future' programme of UNESCO.

- Stakeholders experiencing demand for greater participation in decision-making by representatives of the latter category, which may translate into a heightened need to obtain voter approval for planning and development, for example, by carrying-out an environmental impact assessment.

- Further research must be conducted to track what the industry is doing as a whole in regard to communicating and consulting with its stakeholders.

- The ever-increasing pressure from hotel stakeholders for transparency and openness about the broader environmental aspects of hospitality operations is reflected in a widespread trend towards environmental reporting among hotels.

- Environmental reporting is starting to evolve into 'sustainability reporting' which communicates the economic performance of the company, and its environmental and social impacts.

- Multinational hotel companies are reporting their environmental activities and performance on a regular basis. It can be expected that companies in the years ahead will undertake to report on more and more aspects of their operations.

- IH&RA have been instrumental in advocating the implementation of the Rio principles in the hospitality industry through its ongoing efforts to raise environmental awareness. IH&RA and WTTC were co-ordinated industry representation at the multi-stakeholder dialogue on tourism of CSD7. The meeting's conclusions placed a strong emphasis on the educating the consumer on environmental responsibility, promoting environmental and social responsibility among travel and tourism companies, encouraging multi-stakeholder participation in the development of policy and programmes.

- Key areas of progress include: rising levels of awareness by using resources in an efficient and environmentally sensible manner can positively impact the bottom line, the multiplication of voluntary initiatives undertaken across the globe, and the recognition that transparency and reporting make for good business practice.

Future challenges and goals

Over the next ten years, however, the industry will face new challenges as it gears up for further growth in a period where social and environmental sensitivity are becoming progressively more acute and global capital flows will exert pressure on managers to provide greater returns on investment. The hospitality sector must focus its efforts on making progress in the following specific areas:

- increasing participation of all sectors of society and involving all stakeholders in the decision-making process;
- increasing provision of benefits, especially economic opportunities, to local residents. These could include purchasing from local suppliers, outsourcing laundry functions to local businesses, and supporting local enterprise through the provision of business advice, and by sharing marketing resources and infrastructure;

- lobbying governments to loosen visa requirements in order to facilitate the mobility of workers to address the shortage of qualified labour;
- focusing on attracting and retaining employees through lifelong learning, empowerment, better balance between work, family and leisure, greater workforce diversity, equal pay and better career prospects for women, profit sharing and shared the ownership scheme;
- ensuring that all establishments have the necessary policies and tools in place to manage the threat of HIV/AIDS;
- garnering further support among industry players and working with governments to combat the commercial sexual exploitation of children in tourism, for example by adopting an explicit ethical policy against child sex tourism on the property, training staff to spot and report suspicious incidents and agreeing to participate in programmes such as the Youth Career Initiative;
- guaranteeing that all new properties built are sited and designed to minimise negative environmental impacts. This can be partially accomplished through conducting Environmental Impact Assessments (EIAs);
- ensuring that the conservation of natural resources, including water and energy, is at the core of all operations and espousing new technologies which facilitate this;
- ensuring that waste generated in individual properties is kept to a minimum and disposed of in an environmentally sound way;
- clearly communicating and ensuring that the economic justifications for being environmentally-friendly and for supporting sustainable development are understood throughout the sector;
- stimulating consumer awareness about making socially and environmentally responsible choices when travelling;
- continuing to gather and disseminate information on best practice;
- further developing a common body of knowledge so that all stakeholders in the hospitality experience can be informed of the choices available to them;
- incorporating sustainable development teaching into hospitality school curricula.

The summary of part V 'The cruise line industry',

- ICCL is the leading trade association that represents the interests of the 16 largest passenger cruise lines that handle 95% of the North American vacation cruise market and approximately 85% worldwide. The mission of ICCL is to participate in the international and United States regulatory and policy development process and ensure that all measures adopted provide for a safe, secure and healthy cruise ship environment.

ICCL actively participates through the International Maritime Organisation (IMO), in reviewing current maritime issues and developing conventions and treaties which, when adopted and ratified by member nations, become international law. Through IMO, maritime nations have developed consistent and uniform international standards that apply to all vessels engaged in international commerce. These standards are set forth in a number of conventions and codes such as:

- SOLAS (Safety of Life at Sea);

- STCW (Standards of Training, Certification and Watch keeping);
- MARPOL (Marine Prevention of Pollution from Ships);
- ISM (International Safety Management Code).

Economical dimensions of cruise lines

- During the last decade, the cruise ship business is a tourist industry that has grown rapidly. According to WTO, world demand reached 8.7 million passengers in 1999. The industry has an enormous momentum and it is believed that North American and European demand will, by the end of 2010, surpass 12 million passengers.

- While the Caribbean region is the principal destination with 44.5% share of placement, a significant percentage of the global capacity is allocated to other markets. These include Alaska, 7.9%, the Mediterranean, 12.7%, Europe, 8.1%, the Trans-Canal (Panama), 4.0%, United States West Coast, 3.3%, Hawaii, 2.6%, and South America, 2.4%. Among the remaining destinations,

- A study conducted in 2001 by the Business Research and Economic Advisors (BREA) concluded that in 2000, total economic benefit by the cruise industry and cruise-related activities was approximately USD17.9 billion. Of this, the cruise industry contributed USD9.4 billion in direct spending for the products and services of United States companies and generated jobs for 257,067 Americans.

- The industry's extensive economic relationships include high-tech equipment, travel services, banking and insurance, textiles, technical services, dry-docking and shipyard repair as well as airlines, travel agents, food and beverage suppliers and the business and service sectors in the United States.

- Cruise industry has significant impact in Germany, Finland and Italy due to the shipbuilding activities in those nations. ICCL members have made a substantial investment in new building with over 32 ships scheduled for delivery between 2001 to 2005 With a capital cost of USD12 billion.

- The cruise lines' presence, even on a seasonal basis, in port cities strengthens the economy for many local elements. In addition to local port user fees and head taxes and surcharges, cruise ships purchase supplies and services such as pilots, tugboats, waste disposal services, fuel and fresh water at ports of call worldwide. Visits by cruise ships generate hundreds of millions of dollars worth of business to attractions, restaurants, retail shops, shore tour operators and other businesses at ports of call.

Social dimensions of cruise lines

- The industry involve their crew members in reducing the number, volume and composition of chemicals used on ships and work with them to identify opportunities to reduce, reuse and recycle whenever possible. Cruise guests are educated on the importance of recycling principles

- The industry favours contracting with vendors, suppliers and service providers who have made their own commitment to similar standards for safety and health, as well as continuous improvement.

- Cruise lines generally donate to charitable causes throughout the world, including their local home ports and major ports of call such as conduct the annual Caribbean Environmental Awareness Project, awarding grants to the Centre for Marine Conservation and the World Wildlife Fund, the Alaska Sea Life Centre, Bahamas Reef Environment Educational Foundation, National Audubon Society and Earth watch Institute or Raised funds for flood relief efforts in Caracas, (Venezuela) after the country was hit by devastating floods.

- Cruise industry employment provides substantial opportunities for employees from developing nations. Approximately 85% to 90% of ICCL cruise industry employees are hired from the international workforce.

- The cruise industry has provided opportunity for women to achieve increased economic, social and cultural equality.

- Training in new technologies, cross-cultural awareness, certification in management practices and hands-on experience brings added benefits to the employees of cruise. There are also comprehensive education and training programmes in place for crew members on the environmental issues.

Environmental dimensions of cruise lines

- ICCL member cruise lines are dedicated to preserving the marine environment, and the pristine condition of the waters upon which their vessels sail, and demonstrate this by a reduction of waste by over 50% over the past decade. They established standards regarding environmental practices and ship safety.

- The Cruise Industry Waste Management Practices and Procedures document was unanimously adopted by ICCL membership in June 2001, as an attachment to ICCL Mandatory Environmental Standard. The procedures enumerated in this document have been incorporated into all ICCL member lines' operating policies using as a vehicle, the requirements of the International Safety Management Code (ISM). Compliance with this comprehensive environmental standard is now a condition of ICCL membership.

- ICCL members continuously seek out and test new environmental and safety technologies such as new advanced technology in grey water and black water (sewage) treatment.

These advanced treatment systems are expected to remove sediments and impurities from shipboard waste water streams to the point that the output is essentially clean water. Additionally, ICCL member lines are investigating new technologies for dry-cleaning operations, photo processing, and digital imaging in order to reduce the production of hazardous waste. As technology develops, ICCL will recognise additional acceptable practices that will be incorporated into this living document.

- The industry has developed relationships with state and local officials in various communities on which it calls to establish co-operative relationships,

.. ICCL members have endorsed policy goals based upon the following fundamental principles:

- full compliance with applicable international laws and regulations;

- maintaining co-operative relationships with the regulatory community in the United States and internationally;
- designing, constructing and operating vessels so as to minimise their impact on the environment;
- embracing new technology;
- conserving resources through purchasing strategies and product management;
- minimising waste generated and maximising reuse and recycling;
- optimising energy efficiency through conservation and management;
- managing water discharges;
- educating staff, guests and the community,

The mechanism for accountability is established by placing the Mandatory Standards into each company and ship's Safety Management System (SMS). The requirement for a SMS is detailed in the ISM Code.

- It is important to the industry to establish partnerships with governments. The ICCL's success has been based on continuing partnerships with government agencies and local communities in order to contribute to the objective of sustainable tourism development.

- The United States Centre for Disease Control (CDC) established the Vessel Sanitation Programme (VSP) as a co-operative activity with the cruise ship industry. The programme assists the cruise ship industry in fulfilling its responsibility for developing and implementing comprehensive sanitation programmes, in order to minimise the risk for gastro-intestinal diseases. ICCL has embraced this programme to ensure health and safety on-board cruise ships.

- Every vessel that has a foreign itinerary carries 13 or more passengers, and calls on a United States port, is subject to unannounced bi-annual inspections and, when necessary, to re-inspection by VSP staff. The vessel owner pays a fee, based on tonnage, for all inspections.

Currently, over 140 cruise ships participate in the programme. The inspections are conducted by Environmental Health Officers (EHO) of the United States VSP, and take place only in United States ports. The inspection focuses on the following: the ship's water supply, spas and pools, potential for food or water contamination, practices and personal hygiene of employees, general cleanliness and physical condition of the ship, and the environmental and public health practices training programmes.

- Over the past two decades, an estimated 60 million passengers enjoyed a cruise vacation. During this period, not one passenger death due to a marine incident (such as a fire, collision, or grounding) occurred on any ICCL vessel operating from a United States port. No other form of transportation (bus, train, or aeroplane) can claim to be as safe as a vacation cruise or provide as extensive fire emergency and life support systems.

- The United States Coast Guard has conducted an in-depth examination of that ship for safety. The United States Coast Guard reviews the ship plans for compliance with construction requirements and then visits the vessel while under construction to assure it is properly built. They

verify crew training through observation of drills, examination of documentation, and interviews with officers and crew.

- The highest priority of the cruise industry is to provide a safe and secure vacation experience for our passengers.

- Over five years ago, members of ICCL began work on development of industry-wide guidelines for the medical facilities, staffing, equipment and procedures utilised on-board passenger vessels. Then, in 1996 it issued guidelines that represented the work of a group of experienced medical physicians and other medical experts knowledgeable about the unique needs and limitations of shipboard medical care. Medical Facilities Guidelines are intended to foster the following goals to provide reasonable emergency medical care for passengers and crew on-board cruise vessels, to stabilise patients and/or initiate reasonable diagnostic and therapeutic intervention, and facilitate the evacuation of seriously ill or injured patients when deemed necessary by shipboard physician.

- In addition to general requirements, ICCL cruise members have included new and innovative ideas and technologies in their newly constructed ships and have, in most instances, modified older ships to provide improved access to all public spaces for guests with many different types of disabilities.

Future challenges and goals

- Issues that the industry will be focusing on in the future include safety, environmental management, and continued product enhancements.

- As the ships become more complex, and the locations visited become more distant, the sophistication of cruising operations will grow exponentially.

- Through private-public sector relationships, solutions can be devised for all issues and challenges.

- The utilisation of new technologies.

- To participate in the development of new IMO safety initiatives that governs the operation of cruise vessels worldwide.

- Cruising is one of the most popular vacation options in large part because of its excellent safety record and the high level of quality service provided on-board cruise ships. ICCL will continue to work to ensure the safety and well-being of all passengers and crew on-board cruise vessels, as well as the pristine environments visited by ICCL's members' ships.

The summary of part VI 'Open for dialogue',

- There are some areas that have been mentioned but have not been examined in more detail in the report and are open to address. These issues include the following:

- NGOs are concerned that further work needs to be done to fully evaluate the impacts of tourism in developing countries. There are significant variations in the issues of sustainability between 'the north' and 'the south' and between developed and developing countries, which often require different approaches;

- further attention has been requested towards issues such as human rights, labour rights, water rights, religious rights, child labour and indigenous people;
- solutions to the shortage of skilled labour, training and human resources development are among the highest priorities for the industry, and are being explored further;
- there is disagreement as to whether tourism is a victim of the consequences of global warming or a contributor to it;
- non-industry stakeholders urge the industry to set minimum and optimum levels of sustainable development that operators need to achieve using specific performance indicators and to involve different stakeholders in this process;
- there is a need for clarity as to the extent to which the industry is committed to local partnerships for development and the empowerment of local communities;
- NGOs would welcome more detail on issues such as energy, water, sensitive ecosystems, and contributions to conservation of biological diversity and protected areas and international environmental regulations through the General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS) and WTO;
- the question of transparency and monitoring of the tourism industry's activities is still open and needs to be further addressed.

Tour Operators' Initiative

The Tour Operators' Initiative for Sustainable Tourism Development has been developed by tour operators for tour operators with the support of the UNEP, UNESCO and WTO/OMT, who are also full members of the Initiative. It was launched in Berlin in March 2000 as a network of tour operators that have joined forces to improve their practices, and raise the awareness of the industry. It was signed by over twenty tour operators. Under this international umbrella, tour operators who are members of the Initiative will be able to respond to international agendas while creating a platform to develop ideas and projects to address the environmental, social, economic and cultural aspects of sustainable development within the tourism sector. The mission of the Initiative is to advance the sustainable development and management of tourism and to encourage tour operators to make a corporate commitment to sustainable development. Operators signing the Initiative are asked to join in a commitment to (i) introduce environmental policy and management systems into their operations, (ii) monitor and report progress implementing sustainable tourism practices, and (iii) promote sustainable tourism to suppliers, contractors and customers. The Initiative is voluntary, non-profit, and open to all tour operators, regardless of their size and geographical location.

The founding members have agreed that, to ensure the profitable future of tourism, they have to work towards sustainability and maintain the quality of the environment, which is the raw material of tourism. Examples of best practice advanced by the initiative are the responsible use of natural

resources; reducing, minimising and preventing pollution and wastes; enhancing biodiversity and co-operating with local communities.

In carrying out its mission, the Initiative addresses ways to minimise adverse impacts on, and to generate benefits for environment, culture and communities in tourism destinations through the design and operation of tours and of the conduct of tour operators' business activities.

The members of TOI commit to:

- adopt practices with regard to environmental, social-cultural and economic impacts of their activities internally and when forming business relationships with partners, suppliers and subcontractors;
- encourage and seek cooperation with all stakeholders at destinations to develop integrated planning and management of destinations;
- create awareness among their customers towards the natural, social and cultural environments they visit by promoting, in their communication and advertising, behaviours and activities compatible with the principles of sustainable development. (Source: <http://www.toinitiative.org>)

The Deputy executive Director of UNEP in his speech at the side events of PrepCom IV of WSSD in Bali pointed out "UNEP would like to commend the Tour Operators' Initiative, a network of 23 tour operators that have joined forces under the support of UNEP, UNESCO and the World Tourism Organisation, and have already committed to introduce good practices in their business operations. The members of the TOI altogether cater for over 30 million tourists (2001 estimate). One of the main achievements of the TOI is the development of performance indicators for reporting on sustainability. These indicators will be proposed to the Global Reporting Initiative Board in June 2002 for approval as a sector supplement to the 2002 Sustainability Reporting Guidelines."

TOI strategic objectives and associated actions

TOI describes its strategic objectives and associated actions with such mission as follows;

Objective 1: Assist tour operators in implementation of sustainable tourism through adoption of best practices in their internal operations and management of the supply chain and in destinations by:

- 1.1 Facilitating the exchange of best practices adopted to implement the principles for sustainable tourism and the Initiative's Statement of Commitment.
- 1.2 Developing new management tools and adapting existing ones, specific to the industry (EMS, ISO14001, LCA etc) for tour operators own operations, and for sustainable management practices in the supply chain.
- 1.3 Providing a platform for dialogue with other partners
- 1.4 Involving tour operators in the relevant programmes of work of UNEP, UNESCO, and WTO/OMT.
- 1.5 Assessing progress made on a regular basis.

1.6 Facilitating partnerships between members to address issues with a common voice.

Objective 2: Broaden the support for sustainable development among other players in the tourism sector, including of tourists by:

2.1 Cooperating with key stakeholders with a common agenda, on specific activities and projects.

2.1 Increasing the awareness of key players.

Objective 3: Create the critical mass of committed tour operators by:

3.1 Increasing the visibility of committed tour operators and creating the image of the Initiative as a world leader in the area of environmentally, socially and culturally responsible tourism.

3.2 Increasing membership of the Initiative.

3.3 Establishing partnerships with other organisations that contribute to achievement of the objectives.

3.4 Strengthening links with regions through tour operators' associations and UNEP, UNESCO and WTO/OMT networks, where the Initiative is underrepresented at present.

TOI statement of commitment

TOI Statement of Commitment has three parts and contains general obligation of members as a partner of TOI and every members' commitment to sustainable tourism development goals.

First part 'Commitment to sustainable development and management of Tourism' main points are;

- The members regarding Sustainable Tourism Development as a guiding concept for the sound management of their business and defining Sustainable Development as development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.

- They are committed to developing, operating and marketing tourism in a sustainable manner; that is, all forms of tourism which makes a positive contribution to the natural and cultural environment, which generate benefits for the host communities, and which do not put at risk the future livelihood of local people.

- They can contribute to Sustainable Tourism Development and will strive to anticipate and prevent economic, environmental, social and cultural degradation and will work towards integrating these considerations into our operations and activities.

- Members are entering into a partnership with the UNEP, WTO/OMT, and the UNESCO, to improve our performance in order to achieve sustainable development and management of tourism.

Second part 'Principles of sustainable development and management of tourism' main issues are;

- The members recognise that tourism can contribute to the viability of local economies and that tourism can have negative impacts on the economy, environment, nature, social structures and local cultures. In the long-term interest of host communities and of the industry, members will endeavour to prevent or minimise these impacts and are committed to complying with applicable local, national and international laws and regulations.

- They are committed to a continual attempt to improve our performance in the context of sustainable development and management of tourism and oppose and actively discourage illegal, abusive or exploitative forms of tourism.

- Members will manage and monitor the environmental, cultural and social impacts of their activities and will strive to pursue the best practices in all activities - internally and when forming business relationships with partners, suppliers and sub-contractors – especially with regard to responsible use of natural resources reducing, minimising and preventing pollution and waste, conserving plants, animals, ecosystems and protected areas (biodiversity), conserving landscapes, cultural and natural heritage, respecting the integrity of local cultures and avoiding negative effects on social structures involving, and co-operating with, local communities and people and using local products and skills

- Encouraging partners, suppliers and sub-contractors to improve their contribution to sustainable development and management of tourism, and work with them and share information to assist in this.

- Seeking greater cooperation within the tourism industry and between this industry and the public sector in order to further Sustainable Tourism as well as co-operating with national and local authorities, local communities, or any other interested party, to develop and implement the integrated planning and management of destinations in order to preserve the quality and sustainability of these destinations.

- Developing these principles into a corporate policy and defining measurable goals, monitoring and reporting publicly on the progress.

Third part 'Public awareness and communication' main points are;

- Create awareness and active involvement among the customers towards the natural, social and cultural environment of the places they visit and encourage host communities and customers to develop a better understanding and mutual respect for one another.

- By public communication and advertising, promoting behaviour and activities compatible with the principles of sustainable development and management of tourism.

- Encouraging other tour operators to support this Statement.

Working group areas in TOI

The members of the Initiative have formed Working Groups in key areas of action such as Sustainability Reporting, Cooperation with destinations and Supply Chain Management. (State of Commitments, TOI website)

Working group on sustainability reporting

The Global Reporting Initiative and the Tour Operators Initiative for Sustainable Tourism Development (an initiative supported and coordinated by UNEP) signed a MOU in August 2001. The objective of this partnership was to draft and release a supplement to the core 2002 Sustainability Reporting Guidelines, specific for the tour operators' sector.

The guidelines are developed by a Multi Stakeholder Working Group that includes members of the TOI, as well as representatives of other major stakeholder groups, relevant to the tour operator's sector.

The supplement provides performance indicators addressing the operations and activities specific to tour operators as they relate to internal management, supply chain management, customer awareness, and destination development. The first release of this report, along with a vision statement for how it will evolve in the future, is being planned in coordination with the mid-2002 release of the GRI Sustainability Reporting Guidelines. The GRI is a multi-stakeholder initiative to develop, promote, and disseminate a generally accepted framework for voluntary reporting of the economic, environmental, and social performance of an organisation - "sustainability reporting". The GRI seeks to make sustainability reporting as routine and credible as financial reporting in terms of comparability, rigour, and verifiability. <http://www.globalreporting.org/>

The Sector Supplement to the GRI 2002 Sustainability Reporting Guidelines provides forty-seven indicators which have been developed to measure tour operators' performance in addressing the environmental, economic and social impacts of their business operations.

The indicators have been grouped under five categories:

1. Product management and development (PMD) includes actions related to the choice of the destination as well as the type of services to be included (e.g., the use of train vs. plane).
2. Internal management (IM) reflects all the operations and activities that take place in the headquarters or country offices (e.g., use of office supplies, production of brochures, direct employment).
3. Supply chain management (SCM) addresses actions related to the selection and contracting of service providers.
4. Customer relations (CR) summarises the actions taken to deal with customers, not only with regards to the responsibility to serve them and reply to their comments, but also the opportunity to provide information and raise consumer awareness regarding sustainability.
5. Cooperation with destination (D) includes all activities and decisions related to destinations that tour operators make beyond the production and delivery of their holiday package. This mainly includes efforts made by tour operators to engage in dialogues with destination operators about the impacts of tour packages, and philanthropic activities.

During the process of developing the supplement, the participants began to develop 'guidance notes' listing recommended best practices, as well as more specific instructions on the sustainability issues to be taken into account for three specific indicators (PMD3, SCM9 and D1). The guidance notes have not been officially reviewed and approved as part of the GRI framework and represent the experience and recommendations of the TOI and the members of the Multi Stakeholders Working Group. (<http://www.toinitiative.org/reporting/>)

As decided in first general assembly of the Board in November 2000, the members of the Tour Operators' Initiative will participate in a pilot phase in 2003, the main objectives of which are to

build awareness and know-how on reporting principles and practices, and to facilitate the revisions and improvement of the indicators, through the generation of the following outputs:

- A user's manual containing guidance notes to a number of indicators based on collected best practices, as well as measuring protocols.
- Recommendations on most effective reporting formats for the sector.
- A proposed model suitable to the tour operators' sector for organising the internal flow of information to support reporting efforts.
- Recommendations of the links between the core 2002 Guidelines and tour operator-specific indicators.
- A proposed classification of core and advanced indicators for the tour operators' sector.

Based on working group, the pilot is not only provide the structure for tour operators to learn about Sustainability Reporting and the Tour Operators' Performance Indicators, but also the platform to revise the indicators based on a better understanding of their business and sustainability relevance.

Working group on cooperation with destinations

In general the working group establish to develop partnerships with specific destinations based on wide consultation with all stakeholders, and aiming at establishing a common vision for sustainable development. The main objectives of working group are working in partnership with all stakeholders in the destinations to create a better tourism experience that safeguards the destination, its culture, economy and environment and increases benefits for the local community. Considering the strong mutual links between the tour operators and the destinations, creation of a dialogue between them is a further step.

The objectives of the dialogue in each destination includes identification of a shared, agreed way forward with the destination for promoting sustainable tourism, in which the destination perspective is the priority, and which maintains economic and business viability for all stakeholders as well as an agreed action plan to build on synergies between the tour operators and the various destination stakeholders and finally development of strategies and actions to deal with pressure points in the destination in relation to tourism. <http://www.toinitiative.org/destinations/>

To build a partnership with destination stakeholders that would address current problems as well as future potential, the members of TOI are committed to establish and strengthen links with local authorities, the private sector, civil society and NGOs in the destination and engage in a dialogue to listen to the visions of the different destination stakeholders for future of the destination and the different roles between tour operators and the destination, and to share their views with them to support and fully participate in an open and transparent dialogue process as well as establish a Steering Group based in the destination to set up the dialogue.

Working group on supply chain management

The development of tools to assist tour operators in incorporating sustainability into their relationships with their suppliers is a main part of the work in Working Group on Supply Chain Management.

The goal of the Working Group is to improve tools and mechanisms for the integration of sustainable tourism principles into supply chain management.

The Working Group is addressing the Accommodation sector, and is aiming at identifying the appropriate mechanisms to influence accommodation providers to improve their own sustainability performance by:

- Developing a set of key environmental, social and economic performance indicators relevant to the accommodation sector. This set of core indicators should be developed in a collaborative manner with input from, and endorsement of experts and 'stakeholders' Appropriate for all destinations and all accommodations.

All members of the Tour Operators' Initiative is recommended to use, in the suppliers' selection and contract negotiation phases, this common set of indicators.

- Distributing a general information leaflet to accommodation providers, summarising the commitments of TOI members and how this translates into expectations of accommodation suppliers.

- Identifying and disseminating environmental and social specifications for new establishments built and/or financed by Initiative's members. Working Group on Communication: to develop a strategy and tools to facilitate the communication on sustainability both within the members' companies and to their customers. http://www.toinitiative.org/supply_chain/

Management of Tourism Destinations and Local Agenda 21

According to UNEP the term "destination" refers broadly to an area where tourism is a relatively important activity and where the economy may be significantly influenced by tourism revenues.

Participating governance structures led by local authorities, with the involvement of local NGOs, community and indigenous representatives, academia, and local chambers of commerce, make up what are known as "Destination Management Organisations" (DMOs). Often DMOs take the form of local tourism boards, councils, or development organisations. The network of local tourism businesses (hotels, attractions, transportation services, service providers such as guides and equipment rentals, restaurants, etc.) are also a significant part of a destination.

Destination management includes land use planning, business permits and zoning controls, environmental and other regulations, business association initiatives, and a host of other techniques to shape the development and daily operation of tourism-related activities and has significant environmental impacts.

There is certainly no "one size fits all" approach to destination management because of the variety of needs, expectations and anticipated benefits of tourism on different destinations.

Local agenda 21 is a comprehensive planning framework and Destination Management Organisations, based on the principles of agenda 21, for tourism potential develops in the specific local communities with a vision for what kind of tourism they want to facilitate. It is an approach through which a local community defines a sustainable development strategy and an action programme to implement it. It examines how to support local authorities and destination managers to incorporate sustainable guidelines into tourism development and management plans at the local level. The success of a local Agenda 21 depends directly on the involvement of the population, and on the partnerships between the various players. Such partnerships encourage a balance between economic development, social development and the protection of natural resources and the environment. (Local Agenda 21 and Tourism, UNEP)

UNEP works with the International Council of Local Environmental Initiatives (ICLEI) to build local capacity and to disseminate tools and useful approaches to local destination governance. ICLEI estimates that more than three thousand local communities worldwide are now implementing local Agendas 21.

The 'Promoting Sustainable Tourism within Local Agenda 21' is a UNEP study of local communities' experiences on how tourism takes place in local Agenda 21 programmes. The communities under study have adopted a local Agenda 21.

The endeavours of the study are to identify position of tourism within local Agendas 21, the effectiveness of the Local Agenda 21 process in dealing with problems posed by tourism in destinations and in defining a tourism strategy, the possible limits to this approach as far as tourism is concerned and recommendations for improving the way in which specific tourism-related aspects are taken on board in local Agenda 21 processes.

UNEP and Environmental Code of Conduct for Tourism

Environmental degradation cause increasing concerns and decrease sustainability within the tourism industry. A wide range of instruments are used to put the tourism industry on the path of sustainability including regulations, establishing legal frameworks and minimum standards as well as economic instruments. Voluntary environmental codes of conduct have come to the fore in recent years as a new and promising tool to raise awareness of environmental issues and improve behaviour and practices. They provide an interesting complement to other tools such as regulations and economic instruments. They are among the best approaches to ensure long-term commitments and improvements. Agenda 21 encourages business and industry "to adopt and report on the implementation of codes of conduct promoting best environmental practice". Within the tourism sector these are now sufficiently numerous and widespread to warrant an interim review of their content and effectiveness.

UNEP technical report on environmental Codes of Conduct

In late 1992 UNEP/IE undertook a survey of the global state of existing voluntary environmental codes of conduct in tourism industry developed by countries, industry associations and NGOs

(about 30 codes). The result was discussed a year later in a workshop and its output 'Environmental code of conduct in tourism' is published by UNEP in 1995(technical report no 29). It offers not only examples of environmental codes for the tourism industry, for host communities and for tourists, but also essential elements common to successful codes and some of the most common pitfalls, implementation and monitoring tools and programmes currently in use to activate codes and monitor and report on performance; and references and useful addresses. (Source: http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/private_sector/vi-tools.htm)

The purpose of the report is:

- to review existing codes of conduct at all levels related to tourism industry;
- to review codes related to tourists and hosts;
- suggest the main areas to be covered in developing codes of conduct and provide existing best examples of programme and initiatives carried out by stakeholders;

The report contains six parts.

The main issues addressed in first part 'The need for environmental code of conducts for tourism' are as follows;

- The development of codes of conduct: voluntary codes of conducts are sets at guidelines which industries drawn up as a guide to how they should operate. They are not enforced, nor are they enforceable and industry finds them as an alternative to the enforced regulations and therefore appreciates them. Both governments and tourism industry prepared codes for tourism worldwide and for both host communities and tourists themselves. The international chamber of commerce (ICC) was the first that publicized a general code of conduct for all industries and businesses in 1991, which served as a base for tourism codes as well, and was used by WTTC for example.
- Tourism and development: Manila Declaration in 1980 emphasised the social, cultural, environmental, economical, educational and political values of tourism. Tourism bill of rights in 1985 acknowledged the rights of individuals to rest and leisure and as a voluntary code set out the reciprocal obligations of hosts and tourists to respect each other values. WCCT in Europe issued a set of definitive guidelines such as importance of self regulation, in the same context; the Pacific Asia Travel Association PATA has supported the improvement of the natural, social and cultural environment for more than 40 years.
- The objectives of voluntary code of conduct for tourism are to:
 - Serve as a catalyst for dialogue between all stakeholders;
 - Create an awareness within industry and governments of the importance of sound environmental policies and management and promote a quality environment and sustainable industry;
 - Awareness campaign for appropriate visitors behaviour and local communities toward environmental protection and host-guest relationship;
 - Encourage all stakeholders to achieve such goals.

- The benefits of implementing voluntary codes of conduct for tourism include:
 - Improvement in the natural environment and in the sustainability of the tourism.
 - An improved image for the tourist destination covered by the code;
 - Improvement in the quality of tourism products and services;
 - Political support to extract funding for new tourism products
 - Attracting environmentally responsible tourism;
 - Improve motivation and team spirit in tourism industry;
 - Improve company image;
 - Reduced costs as a result of efficient energy and water conservation and waste reduction
 - Support for local economy and infrastructure and improve quality of life for the host communities.

Second part of report 'Environmental codes of conduct for the tourism industry' considered the origin and scope as well as the content and theme of the codes.

- The origins of the codes are;
 - Government organisation codes have a national focus with primary intention of initiating a national wide dialogue on sustainable tourism, and address the development and management of sustainable tourism without specific relevance to the different sectors that comprise the industry.
 - Industry association's codes, at national level, are focused on cross-sectoral tourism development. At regional level, codes outline principles for sustainable tourism development, applicable to the all sectors of the industry. The codes serve as a tool to guide the activities of the organisation and its members. The ICC's business charter for sustainable development as an internationally focused industry code has been widely accepted and used as the basis for the development of many tourism-environmental codes such as WTTC or Global environmental management initiatives (GEMI).
 - Sector-specific codes have been formulated by both industry organisations and NGO's such as the international hotels environment initiative (IHEI) lead to the charter for environmental action in the international hotel and catering industry or environmental guidelines for tour operators formed by European tour operators association.
 - Site-specific guidelines are mostly developed by national park authorities such as 20-20sustainable design published by US national park.
 - Several NGO's have implemented green tourism programmes such as IUCN, WWF and ICOMOS.
- the content of the codes have several common issues such as:
- most codes make an overall commitment to the environment with the fallowing common points; tourism development must consider all aspects of human and natural environment, it should sustainable, the industry should be supportive of local and national planning bodies,

the environmentally responsible tourism organisation should be rewarded and environment should be interpreted to include not only ecosystems but also people and their communities.

- Recognising overall responsibility; many codes stress that the industry should accept responsibility for the environmental impact of tourism development and undertake corrective action where necessary.
- Taking the environment into account in planning and development by recognition of environmental limits specially in sensitive area, integration tourism with other land use policies as well as human values of destination, participation of local communities in decision-making processes, incorporating sustainability concepts into design and construction, and integrating such considerations into a full environmental impact assessment, and monitoring implementation after development.
- Environmentally-sound management practices by minimising the negative impacts of tourism through carrying out environmental audits or using other techniques to assess and improve on water, energy conservation and waste management, ensuring positive visitor experience by effective visitor management, control and education, environmentally motivating and training staff, monitoring and reporting of environmental performance, and managing tourism enterprise to support local economy.
- Cooperation with other sectors; many codes stress the importance of effective cooperation and communication between the public and private sectors as well as the need to exchange information and experience between and within sectors
- Increasing public awareness of the importance of environmentally and culturally responsible tourism is cited as an important issue in many codes including PATA, AIT/FIA, Canada's guidelines for the industry and Finnish code.

Third part of the report 'Environmental codes of conduct for host communities' consider the host-guest relationship as an issue for development and maintenance sustainable tourism. However, thoughtfully developed and implemented codes for host community may address;

- the role of local people in tourism development,
- safeguarding local cultures and tradition,
- educating local peoples on the importance of environmental conservation and economical development balance,
- and providing tourist products and experiences;

Codes for host community address four areas;

- the social norms and practices of the host community
- the cultural norms and practices of the host community
- the economic development of destination
- the protection and preservation of the environment

The fourth parts of the report 'Environmental codes of conduct for tourists' main points are as follows;

- Tourists' codes are to persuade tourists to have positive approaches toward environment and engage sympathetically with host community. they also can help to the following;
 - Prompt the concept of sustainable consumption as stressed in agenda 21;
 - supply tour operators with additional information on environmental issues to be provided to tourists;
 - provide tour operators and travel agencies with the necessary guidelines to develop 'greener' tour packages;
 - training programme tools for tour guides
- The report identified three different kinds of codes for tourists concerned general behaviour guidelines, specific tourists activities, and specific sites and cities.
- General behaviour guidelines address the planning of trip and destination's matter including;
 - Learn as much as possible about destination;
 - Patronized suppliers which demonstrate a commitment to environmental practices;
 - Plan vacations and visiting during the off peak season;
 - Visit lesser-known destinations;
 - Respect local culture and traditions and the privacy, culture, habits and traditions of locals
 - Support the local economy by buying local goods and services;
 - Contribute to local conservation efforts;
 - Conserve and preserve natural environment and do not disfigure monuments and cultural sites
 - Effective management of water and energy use and waste disposal; be careful with fire;
 - Use only designated road and path and avoid making unnecessary noise;
- Tourist specific activities attempt to educate tourists on the base of enjoys but do not destroy. The common issues addressed by most of the codes in this area are;
 - Avoid disturbing wildlife and damaging ecosystems;
 - Dispose of waste properly;
 - Respect the practices of local community;
 - Respect local legislation.
- Site-specific codes address the behaviour of tourists at specific locations and combine location-oriented guidelines as well as those of more general nature such as;
 - Dispose of waste carefully;
 - Protect the natural and cultural environment;
 - Pay a fair price for goods and services;
 - Do not give money or other things to begging children, there are other ways to help them,
 - Use environmentally-sensitive means of transport;
 - Purchase eco-labelled products;

- Avoid buying elaborately packaged products and use returnable bottles rechargeable batteries;
- Tourists codes should carry a positive message, be precise and functional. They should be prepared in consultation with tourists and hosts and address the domestic tourists, especially young people as well.

The fifth part of report 'Implementation of environmental codes of conduct for tourism' considers that the implementation process is best begun by appointing a working group or task force comprising all stakeholders to plan and carry out implementation of the code. This part provides examples of tools and the programmes which both public and private sectors have found useful in implementation. The tools are listed below can be used to support the implementation of codes;

- dissemination and publicity campaigns;
- publications; seminars and conferences;
- pilot projects and technical assistance;
- awards, education and training;

These tools will prove more effective when they are combined in an integrated package.

- Dissemination and publicity campaigns are the first step toward the implementation of code. It could be done through media announcements or launch awareness campaign in relevant places such as schools and universities. A particularly effective means of raising public awareness is the use of awards and the donation of insignia for special achievements.
- Publications are one of the main ways of supporting the implementation of codes. Publication of codes of conducts is not in itself a sufficient means of implementation codes, through a well written code that is published and then widely disseminated will be partially implemented. Additional techniques are always required. Seminars and conferences are a popular means of implementing codes.
- Pilot projects are usually used to demonstrate, test and put into practice development and management strategies. They are often the final step in the implementation process. Code operators normally create a task force for tourism and related industry to analyse destinations, products, and services and recommend them the improvement procedures.
- Awards are a way of both implementing codes and monitoring their effectiveness. As consumer demand for 'greener' tourism, awards often prove to be valuable marketing tool, and method of disclosure. Education and training are essential for all members of the tourism industry if environmental performance is to be improved.

The sixth part of report 'monitoring and reporting' contains the following issues;

- It is essential to measure the progress achieved and share the results where codes are implemented. Monitoring environmental performance, reporting and information exchange with others are important component of good environmental management. Monitoring and reporting, though two distinct processes, are in fact one function. Many industries give higher priority to monitoring than to reporting which is still in a very early stage of development.

- The benefit of monitoring and reporting are as follows;
 - The improvement of policy and performance;
 - The promotion of openness and dialogue;
 - The assessment of progress;
 - To inform customers of the companies environmental behaviour;
 - Improvement of the corporate image ;
 - Ability to assess customer awareness and attitudes to codes;

Some useful publicans for monitoring and reporting environmental performance as well as travel and tourism environmental activities are quoted in this part of report.

- the monitoring and reporting process; monitoring can be used to measure the response, and the level of acceptance, of the contents of codes, measure the extent of implementation of the code, and identify the areas of failure and take appropriate measures to reach the goals defined.
- The two important monitoring initiatives in tourism industry have been made by the World Travel & Tourism council (WTTC) by launching global environmental management improvement and public awareness programme (Green Globe), and the Ecotourism Society (TES) by publishing ecotourism guidelines for nature tour operators.
- Looking further ahead,
 - The next step may be to monitor costumers awareness and tourists reflection to understand the likelihood of change;
 - The adoption or decision on the promotion of some form of code enforcement.

Final part of report is about conclusions and recommendations and contains the following points;

- Although most codes are relatively new, more are likely to be produced in the years to come. A further review is necessary in a few years
- Too many codes, especially if they carry conflicting messages, could be almost dangerous as too few.
- Codes may need to become, to some degree, enforceable if they are to become primary management tools
- UNEP/IE survey indicates the number of points about codes.
 - First; codes must be positive, specific and action-oriented. Real change requires real codes, with real objectives. The most common features of successful codes are; the need to make an overall commitment to the physical and human environment, to accept responsibility for environmental damage and take corrective action where necessary, and to promote and reward out standing environmental performance; the need to develop policies and strategies that take into account of land use planning regulations and the need to protect some area from further development; the need to develop management policies that enhance beneficial and minimise adverse impacts on the environment; and the need to cooperate with other firms, sectors and countries.

- Second; it is essential to consider the implementation and monitoring of the codes from the very beginning. Some codes in relation with implementation and monitoring, have developed package of measures which comprise, publicity and dissemination campaign, publication of all types, the provision of expert services to signatories of the code, the provision of networks to improve communication between participants, the organisation of conferences for the exchange of ideas, the provision of award for outstanding environmental behaviour, and the organisation of demonstration projects to set examples for others to follow.
- Third; there is an important need to monitor, evaluate and reporting the implementation of codes. Monitoring and evaluation, just like production of codes, should incorporate the reactions of people directly affected by the codes. Bering in mind that there has been little progress in this area to date

UNEP and Ecolabels in the Tourism Industry

Ecolabels could help tourism suppliers identify critical issues, speed up the implementation of eco-efficient solutions, and lead to effective ways of monitoring and reporting on environmental performance. They can also help sell tourism products, decrease the use of resources such as energy and water, and reduce costs for tour operators. Ecolabels are therefore both marketing and an environmental management tools. They should be seen as a part of an overall environmental strategy, representing a coordinated effort of all stakeholders designed to improve environmental performance in tourism industry.

UNEP code of conduct on 'Ecolabels in the tourism industry'

Ecolabels in the tourism industry published by UNEP in 1998 examines the role of ecolabels with in the context of voluntary self regulation in the tourism industry. It aims to understanding better ecolabels and to provide a guide and operating ecolabels schemes for all those involved in designing and operating ecolabels schemes - the tourism industry, local and national government, local communities and non- governmental organisations.

The publication describes the key elements needed to make a tourism ecolabels effective, credible and efficient. These include the framing of effective criteria for qualification, an objective procedure for assessing the performance of applicants and a sound monitoring system. Examples from existing schemes are used to demonstrate the range of solutions available in each case.

The structural framework of tourism ecolabels is examined the financial and human resources needed and the levels of membership fees that are levied, the amount of technical assistance provided, and the forms in which marketing support can be offered. Means of assessing effectiveness are also discussed. It contains six parts.

In the introduction part, the importance of tourism ecolabels was highlighted as a tool for conserving the pristine environment and confronting with poor environmental planning and

inefficient use of natural resources. It means good environmental practices can save money and for that many of tourism' stakeholders are increasingly interested in ecolabels. Ecolabels disclose the real 'environmental identity' of products and services, offering 'environmental-friendly' producers a competitive advantage.

Ecolabels can:

- Recognise, correct and monitor all environmental impacts (as a management tool).
- Help entrepreneurs identify critical misuses.
- Speed up of implementation of eco efficient solutions based on cleaner technology and efficient housekeeping measures.
- Guarantee an external source of monitoring and public reporting.
- Changing behaviour of tourism providers and tourists.
- Help consumers to make sustainable choice on holidays
- Help producers to sell tourism (ecolabel) products.

UNEP selected 28 ecolabelling schemes through out 400 to identify and analysis existing ecolabelling schemes. The lists of schemes are as follows;

Audubon Cooperative Sanctuary System, Audubon Cooperative Signature Programme, Eco friendly Hotels Worldwide, Ecotel, Green Globe (as international ones), Blue Flag, Committed to Green, European Chapter for Sustainable Tourism in Protected Areas, Kleinwalser Valley Environmental Award, PATA Green Leaf, Tyrolean Environmental seal of Quality (as regional ones), Austrian Ecolabel, David Bellamy Award, Environmental Squirrel, Gites Panda, Green Key, Green Leaf, Green suitcase, NASC, National Ecotourism Accreditation Programme, Seaside Award, We Are an Environmentally-friendly Operation (as national ones), Distintivo Ecoturistico, Ecotour, Green Tourism Business Scheme, OKO Grischun, OKO Tourismuspreis, Scottish Golf Course (as sub-national ones).

Second part 'Why, Where and by whom' main points are as follows;

- An effective ecolabels should respond the needs of all stakeholders.
- Motives; motives of understudy schemes are to protect tourists and environment as well as to promote environmentally-conscious entrepreneurs and improve the industry's environmental performance.
- Geographical coverage; there are four different geographical levels. Of the 28 schemes, 5 are international, 6 regional, and 11 national and 6 sub-nationals.
- Focus areas; three main focus areas are distinguished:
 - Facilities, including accommodation, catering, shops and marinas, 19 schemes focus on facilities.
 - Services including tour operators, tour agencies and transport companies, two schemes are considered in this area, none of them are transport or travel agencies.
 - Location including recreational areas such as beaches, natural parks and golf courses, nine schemes certify tourism activity related to the location.

- Promoters; the scheme promoter is the organisation that decides to implement the scheme in the first place. They are divided to the following categories:
 - supra-national public authorities operating at the regional level
 - public authorities operating at the regional and local level
 - industry associations operating at all geographical levels
 - private entrepreneurs and NGO's
- the analysis by the type of promoters shows that regional organisations have not developed any of schemes themselves, public authorities are very active, industry associations promote high rate of participation, and private sector have a poor role and NGO's that have fair role in developing schemes.
- It is noted that some schemes have been developed by partnerships between different stakeholders.
- Duration; the certification covered one year duration for half of the schemes analysed while nearly all the others vary from two to three years.

The third part 'the criteria and the application form' contains;

- Criteria and objectives: as the core of ecolabel scheme, all schemes establish a list of criteria which applicants have to satisfy to qualify for the ecolabel. It should be designated to lead participants to a higher level of environmental performance and should take into consideration the local environmental issues, the sector's environmental impact, and technical and management know-how. To set the criteria, the different views of all stakeholders should take into account and make survey of tourism operators and specialists, to determine the critical environmental issues. Synthesizing the diverse interests is important. The public authority's scheme guarantees implementation of criteria by targeted industrial sector. Industry associations or private sector and NGOs' schemes guarantee the credibility of scheme. Each scheme needs to have mechanisms for periodical criteria and reviewing.
- Content: content should be realistic, through effective. Stringent criteria create barrier to entry. Criteria should aim at make improvement in the environmental performance of participants. A balance approach is needed to have a realistic, effective criteria based on local state of environmental, economical and technical possibilities, and the nature of the local tourism industry.
- Mainly there are two types of criteria:
 - Result-driven criteria; it expresses as a target or standard that participants need to attain (e. %25 reduction of energy consumption). It is flexible but do not provide any indication of how to achieve the target.
 - Process-driven criteria; it expresses the technical-management solutions necessary to achieve a certain target (e. switch off air conditioners at 16.00). It indicates the way of achievement of targets to the participants.

- Criteria can also be based on a pre-defined set of actions, or simply as full compliance with current environmental legislation in force or a set of principles which participants commit themselves to implement.
- The common action areas in the criteria of the UNEP survey schemes are as follows;
 - In criteria for accommodation; the common action areas are environmental policy, water, energy, solid waste, purchasing, transport and traffic, noise, air emissions, landscape and surroundings, facilities design and construction, cultural heritage, joint local environmental efforts, communication with guests, training staff, and other environmental and health considerations.
 - In the criteria dealing with coastal area, beaches and marinas, the common action areas are; water quality, beach and intertidal area, safety, beach and marina management, cleaning, and information and education.
 - In the criteria dealing with Golf courses, the common action areas are; waste management, landscape and cultural heritage, water resource management, turf grass and pest management, energy efficiency and purchasing policy, education and training, communication, wildlife and habitat management.
 - In the criteria dealing with tour operators, the common action areas are; pre-departure information, visitor information and education, contribution to local development and conservation efforts, environmental Impact assessment and management, and local accommodation.
- Implementation schedule: some criteria must always be implemented to qualify for the label (compulsory), in others, a delay period is acceptable (delay compulsory) and in yet others, some criteria can be altered to suit the abilities of the applicant (optional). Delay compulsory allows participants time (for financial or technical reasons) to implement and be upgraded. Optional criteria provide a strong incentive to improvement.
- The application form: during the application phase, the information is exchanged between applicants and schemes operators. It includes;
 - Providing information to applicants by scheme promoter including general introduction and benefits description, the scheme rules, the criteria needed for qualification, the application form, and the contact line and address.
 - Information requested from applicants by scheme operators; it normally includes the applicant's personal history and the applicant's environmental performance level.
- Scheme operators can devise their forms as a check list including questionnaire, a report or a contract which is the simplest and promoter request a statement of commitment to a set of environmental principles.

The fourth part 'Implementation and Monitoring' main points are as below;

- Assessing the participants: once the applications have been made, the scheme operators have to decide on the compliancy of the applicants. Assessment process involves verification and evaluation.
 - If the evaluation is required, the operator can conduct it directly or through specialised consultant. To make verification, operator may do so through a site visiting or/and providing justificative material or documents for applicant's claim. Another option is consumer feedback by means of questionnaires or to require referees to guarantee the truthfulness of the information provided.
 - After verification, scheme operators must evaluate the application by objective and quantified techniques with setting minimum scores, or/and more general and qualitative evaluations which depends on the judgement of the evaluators.
- Rating: applicant's achievements can be assessed into different classes or categories, depends on the environmental performance of applicant and made public. Rating system may be based on rating structure, be rated on the number of criteria implemented or as a result of overall performance, or/and formal recognition, to award increasing numbers of ecolabel symbol.
- Monitoring: continuous implementation of the criteria is essential for effective environmental action. Monitoring is therefore fundamental to any scheme and provides enforcing power as well as feedback evaluations of award winners' performance. Monitoring can be based on;
 - Site visits by representatives of ecolabel scheme to provide effective control of performance level.
 - Visitors' feedback by collecting visitors' ideas through questionnaires to assess the compliance level of the applicant.
 - Third party monitoring in specific area to evaluate the initially-attained levels of consumption have been maintained.
 - Self-monitoring to produce reports stating applicant compliance level and describing the results obtained.

The fifth part 'The structural framework' contains the following;

- Administration structure: all ecolabel schemes need financial and human resources, and administrative organisation.
 - Financial resources; most of the schemes are at least partly founded by the contribution from applicants and relevant international or regional organisation and NGO's. The promoters provide the rest of the funding.
 - Human resources; combination of part time and full time run the scheme, some of them are voluntary. By assigning existing staff to the required task such as monitoring or promotions may remove a part of economic difficulties of scheme.
 - Administrative organisation; in decentralised schemes, compatible with regional and international schemes, the administration responsibility is to implement the basic rules, provide guidelines, and establish local rules and implementation procedures. A

centralised structure is usually adopted in national and sub-national schemes and the criteria and certification procedure are common to all applicants.

- Membership fees; in many schemes, fees are related to annual turnover, the physical size of the applicant's operation, type of accommodation, geographical region. It can vary if extra award or services are provided. In exchange the members are provided with use of logo and promotional materials and manuals as well as online assistance. Extra charge is usual for site visiting and evaluation. Membership fee may be requested on application or only if the application is successful.
- Technical assistance is a high priority in any ecolabel. It can be delivered through publication, application forms, and site visits, telephone and E mail responses, environmental plans, listing of 'green' suppliers, databases and on line services, and seminars and training workshops.
- Marketing support; the most promotional schemes in marketing support tools are press and media coverage, publication of directories, and on-line marketing.
- General rules; all rules about payment, services included fees, monitoring structure, duration of the award, assessment procedure, terms of the use of logo, and suspension conditions should be clearly defined. Informative brochures are useful and minimise the risk of dispute. Dispute resolution system also should be clear and well defined.
- Assessing effectiveness: Assessing the effectiveness of an ecolabel in reducing environmental impacts can improve the scheme of ecolabel. Such assessment includes an analysis of the state of environment before and after the launch of scheme as well as a market survey to highlight changes in the consumption and production patterns of tourists and entrepreneurs. The results provide important information about which aspects of ecolabel scheme need to be adjusted.

The final part 'conclusions' underlined the following;

- the main reason to include ecolabel scheme to the tourism industry;
 - They raise the environmental awareness of the main stakeholders in tourism industry, local authorities and consumers.
 - They evolve tourism small and medium sized enterprises in environmental activities.
 - They can improve the environmental performance of the tourism sector.
 - They provide environmental information for consumers to make an informed choice.
- the effective tourism ecolabels are;
 - to develop a simple, but exhaustive, application procedure,
 - to compile detailed criteria for the scheme which can evolve with time,
 - to make an objective evaluation of the information provided by the applicant,
 - to provide technical assistance to award winners,
 - to provide assistance with marketing and promotion,
 - to create a monitoring structure to assess compliance,

- to develop clear rules about the use of the label.
- the major instructions on the initiation of a new tourism ecolabel are;
 - identify the major impacts of tourism,
 - identify the target groups and their impacts
 - identify the key stakeholders and developing appropriate criteria and workable scheme,
 - identify business self-interest in the scheme,
 - identify necessary human and financial resources,
 - predict self financial condition of scheme,
 - identify the complicated issues for the scheme to deal with,
 - benefit from experience and lessons of the other scheme,
- The development of ecolabel schemes should occur within a wider context together with other policy tools such as legislation, planning instruments, taxes, and economic incentives.
- As a voluntary instrument, ecolabels should be used in conjunction with other voluntary environmental management tools including environmental auditing, environmental management system, and environmental reporting.
 - Environmental auditing is a way of assessing the environmental damage caused by a business. It assesses the value of improvement made to reduce the damage and suggests action to provide effective remedies.
 - Environmental management system (EMS) offers a structured and systematic way of incorporating environmental care into all aspects of a business including strategic planning activities, organisational structure and implementation of an environmental policy as an integrated part of the service process. ISO 14001 is now available for EMS.
 - Environmental reporting is a way of communicating environmental objectives, practices and achievements to stakeholders by simple publication, annual newsletter or complete performance report.
- the following points are for further consideration in the future;
 - the need to develop means of measuring the effectiveness of tourism ecolabels,
 - Ecolabels should develop for all sector of tourism industry including transport, recreational facilities, travel agencies and tour operators.
 - All relevant stakeholders should be involved in planning and designing of scheme.
 - Ecolabel must be adapted to the local situation and its criteria should be revised regularly.
 - Ecolabels should address, along with facility management, siting, design, use of environmental technologies, and environmental management techniques.
 - Ecolabels schemes should include an institutional framework to meet all stakeholders such as an annual steering committee.
 - Avoid of unnecessary duplication of ecolabels which create confusion among consumers.
 - The need for internationally recognised standards on environmental labels. ISO is working on an international standard focusing on environmental labels and a declaration.

Business Incubators

Tourism could play a more important role in supporting the sustainable use of biodiversity, but the bottleneck often may be a lack of entrepreneurial capacity to benefit from this opportunity.

UNEP, therefore, considered that one of the major shortcomings for the implementation of sustainable tourism is the absence of a critical mass of qualified and committed entrepreneurs in sensitive sites. While business incubators have been extensively used in many fields and have been the target of UNIDO work, no incubator focusing specifically on sustainable tourism in World Heritage Areas has been proposed or implemented

UNEP, together with Conservation International and UNESCO's World Heritage Centre and Man and Biosphere Reserves Programme, are developing a proposal and joining forces in a project to strengthen entrepreneurial capacity to generate income to sensitive areas while at the same time creating benefits for the local community.

The project, as UNEP describe, aims to set up a network of sustainable ecotourism enterprises that will be supported in an "incubator" through the first years of business life. These enterprises will create business opportunities for locals as well as jobs. The number of tourism enterprises that directly benefit from sustainable use of biodiversity, cultural resources and sustainable technologies will be increased and they will be more able to help finance sensitive areas with local resources.

The incubator project which is still under development, provides support to the entrepreneurs through training in subjects like tourism business management, environmentally sound technologies, entrepreneurship and business management, or technology transfer of management tools such as benchmarking, standardisation and best practices, business assistance, as well as credit, with assistance in gaining access to feasible credit lines for the entrepreneurs, and marketing.

In implementing the project UNEP will cooperate with UNIDO, as an information exchange agent, and IUCN, which has an extensive network in conservation-friendly business management structures.

Tourism in Sensitive Areas

Ecologically sensitive areas are those where natural resources are critically endangered by physical changes and which contain a great diversity and interdependence of living habitats. (UNEP)

Sensitive areas hold the main assets on which the tourism industry depends and have been experiencing increase in visitation. Any changes in the component of an ecosystem will have unpredictable effects on the entire system so conservation should be considered as a top priority. The areas recognised by UNEP that tourism can make a contribution to the protection of sensitive

areas are financial contributions, provision of environmental infrastructure, improved management, awareness raising and education, and by the creation of protected areas, national parks, cultural and natural sites.

UNEP evaluated tourism role in sensitive areas by initiatives such as Protected Area Management and tourism, Coastal Zone Management and tourism, Coral Reefs and tourism, islands and Mountains areas and tourism.

Tourism and Protected Areas management

Tourism activity in a protected area may harm the natural and aesthetic value of the area and can serve as a self-financing mechanism and therefore as a tool of conservation. This will only be possible if the level, type and management of tourism are appropriate and, in particular, the "carrying capacity" of the area is respected.

IUCN identified a protected area as "An area of land and/or sea especially dedicated to the protection and maintenance of biological diversity, and of natural and associated cultural resources, and managed through legal or other effective means". UNEP relay on this definition.

This means that protected areas need not be limited to state-sponsored reserves, but can include those managed, for example, by indigenous communities, private landowners, industrial holdings etc. To give greater coherence to the role and scope of protected areas within conservation planning and sustainable land use, IUCN and its World Commission on Protected Areas have expanded on this basic definition and developed six modified categories of protected area. The new IUCN Protected Area Categories were proposed in February 1992 at the 4th World Congress on National Parks and Protected Areas in Caracas and agreed at IUCN's General Assembly in Buenos Aires in January 1994. They are summarised below.

Category I a: Strict nature reserve/wilderness protection area managed mainly for science or wilderness protection an area of land and/or sea possessing some outstanding or representative ecosystems, geological or physiological features and/or species, available primarily for scientific research and/or environmental monitoring;

Category I b: Wilderness area: protected area managed mainly for wilderness protection - large area of unmodified or slightly modified land and/or sea, retaining its natural characteristics and influence, without permanent or significant habitation, which is protected and managed to preserve its natural condition.

Category II: National park: protected area managed mainly for ecosystem protection and recreation - natural area of land and/or sea designated to (a) protect the ecological integrity of one or more ecosystems for present and future generations, (b) exclude exploitation or occupation inimical to the purposes of designation of the area and (c) provide a foundation for spiritual, scientific, educational, recreational and visitor opportunities, all of which must be environmentally and culturally compatible.

Category III: Natural monument: protected area managed mainly for conservation of specific natural features – area containing specific natural or natural/cultural feature(s) of outstanding or unique value because of their inherent rarity, representative ness or aesthetic qualities or cultural significance.

Category IV: Habitat/Species Management Area: protected area managed mainly for conservation through management intervention - area of land and/or sea subject to active intervention for management purposes so as to ensure the maintenance of habitats to meet the requirements of specific species;

Category V: Protected Landscape/Seascape: protected area managed mainly for landscape/seascape conservation or recreation - area of land, with coast or sea as appropriate, where the interaction of people and nature over time has produced an area of distinct character with significant aesthetic, ecological and/or cultural value, and often with high biological diversity. Safeguarding the integrity of this traditional interaction is vital to the protection, maintenance and evolution of such an area.

Category VI: Managed Resource Protected Area: protected area managed mainly for the sustainable use of natural resources - area containing predominantly unmodified natural systems, managed to ensure long-term protection and maintenance o f biological diversity, while also providing a sustainable flow of natural products and services to meet community needs. For more information please refer to <http://iucn.org/themes/forests/6/notitle.html>

Categories I-III covers a variety of "traditional" designations of protected area. Category IV recognises the need to set aside areas for restoration in many parts of the world, and the active management that this will entail. Categories V and VI recognise that maintenance of biodiversity is not always the primary reason for protection and that cultural values, environmental management, sustainable land use and recreational needs all help determine the choices made regarding a country's protected area network.

Protected areas can in theory now cover land used for almost everything except industrial-scale activity such as intensive farming and forestry, large-scale mining or large settlements. (Protected Areas for a New Millennium IUCN 1998)

A wider definition of protected areas has a number of advantages. Protected areas may be seen as less threatening because protection does not necessarily mean a complete block on human activity. They are likely to lead to new management options in a wide range of situations, and open up the possibility of innovative partnerships between conservationists and other interest groups, such as indigenous peoples and the tourism industry as Hector Ceballos -Lascurin described in his book 'Tourism, ecotourism and protected areas' which is published in 1996 by IUCN. He is the inventor of word ecotourism.

Environmental protected areas as well as natural heritage and national parks are amongst the most attractive tourism destinations worldwide. UNEP together with IUCN and other IGO's and NGO's tried to formulate the access and sustainable tourism use of such human assets.

UNEP therefore along with other relevant international organisation conducted two initiatives in this area include developing some sample projects and presenting update guidelines.

Project Linking Conservation and Tourism at Six World Heritage Sites

UNEP, UNESCO's World Heritage Centre, and RARE Centre for Tropical Conservation are working on a project to link conservation of biodiversity and sustainable tourism at six World Heritage natural and cultural sites. This effort will bring together conservation education, planning, business development and marketing techniques to create a model for using tourism to promote the protection of important habitats.

A key project component is to involve tour operators in site-specific activities to create better tourism products and sustainable management systems. The project relies on a partnership between protected areas, managers and the private sector to promote biodiversity, conservation and economic development.

The project targets El Vizcaino and Sian Ka'an sites in Mexico, Tikal in Guatemala, Rio Platano in Honduras, Komodo and Ujung Kulon in Indonesia

The project's final results are expected to include enhanced staff capabilities, clear tourism strategies, and active support from the tourism industry, increased revenues, and widespread benefits for local people. Efforts to spread the knowledge gained to other World Heritage sites and protected areas will also be a key project component. Linking Conservation of Biodiversity and Sustainable Tourism at World Heritage Sites is a four-year project starting from 2001 with a budget of about US\$3.5million. "Ecotourism has many definitions, but as a general goal it should provide an opportunity to develop tourism in ways that minimise the industry's negative impacts and a way to actively promote the conservation of Earth's unique biodiversity," said Klaus Toepfer, UNEP Executive Director. "Let's hope that this project will become a model for environmentally sound tourism around the world. A blue print that shows how ecotourism, as a tool for sustainable tourism, can be a means of avoiding environmental degradation while sharing the economic benefits with local people," he said. (UNEP press release Paris, 24 January, 2002)

Guidelines: Development of National Parks and Protected Areas for Tourism

The upkeep of protected areas does, however, represent a substantial outlay, particularly for developing countries. To recoup these costs many countries promote tourism in National Parks. Such a move not only recognises the desire of people everywhere to seek solitude and contact with nature, but also offers them a chance to be acquainted with the natural heritage which they will hand on to future generations.

To help countries to achieve sustainable stewardship of their national parks and related protected areas, the World Tourism Organisation and the United Nations Environment Programme have jointly published these guidelines in 1992, assisted by The World Conservation Union as consultants. These guidelines are a practical working document intended for use by all those

concerned with management of national parks and related protected areas. In the first Chapter costs and benefits of tourism in protected areas were tackled. In the second and third chapter tourism considerations in selection of areas for national parks (potential for tourism) and tourism carrying capacity (definition and case study in islands) were addressed. Chapter four and five noted planning for tourism in national parks including zoning and marketing and guidelines for development of tourist facilities in national parks (Site plans).

Based on such experience UNEP together with IUCN and WTO/OMT launched a joint initiative to update, develop and expand a new version of guidelines for planning and management of sustainable tourism in protected areas.

The guidelines was published in early 2002 and aim to build an understanding of protected area tourism, and its management. They provide a theoretical structure, but are also intended to help managers in practical ways.

The summary of UNEP research on ‘sustainable tourism in protected areas, Guidelines for planning and management’

The guidelines contains 12 chapters which commences with an introduction includes purpose of guidelines and some tourism’s definitions.

The main purposes of the guidelines are;

- To assist protected area managers and other stakeholders in the planning and management of protected areas, visitor recreation and the tourism industry, so that tourism can develop in a sustainable fashion, while respecting local conditions and local communities.
- To discuss the role of visitor management, including techniques that control and limit impacts of use, while allowing maximum enjoyment of as many visitors as can be accommodated within the limits set by environmental and social conditions;
- To outline approaches to the planning and development of tourism infra-structure and services in protected areas;
- To provide guidance on the definition, measurement, management and use of park tourism data;
- To outline ways of enhancing the quality of the tourism experience;
- To describe positive examples, through a variety of case studies, of how tourism can effectively contribute to the conservation of natural and cultural diversity; and
- To give positive examples, again through the use of case studies, of how tourism can contribute to the development of local communities.

Chapter two ‘Protected areas, biodiversity and conservation’ addresses a short history of protected areas and the IUCN protected area management category system.

Chapter three ‘Tourism in protected areas’ examines the interaction of tourism and protected areas and has the following parts; Trends affecting the planning of tourism and protected areas, Growth and diversification of market niches, Potential benefits of tourism in protected areas, Potential

risks of tourism in protected areas, and Tourism in protected areas which are not publicly owned or managed.

First of all, it's worthy to note the definition of planning as described in this chapter. Planning is a process that involves selecting a desirable future out of a range of plausible alternatives, and implementing strategies and actions that will achieve the desired outcome. Thus, by definition, planning moves us from the present to the future.

- The major trends affecting the planning of tourism and protected areas lay out below;
 - Rising educational levels and demand for travel; Higher education levels are strongly correlated with demand for outdoor recreation activities, and lead to changes in the patterns of recreation and tourism. The groups most interested in visiting protected areas, such as eco-tourists, tend to be more highly educated than tourists in general. Tourism of this kind requires explanatory materials, interpretive facilities and interpretive guiding. It increases the expectations of service quality in protected areas, and raises political pressure for greater protection of cultural and natural heritage.
 - Ageing population; UN predictions are for 22.1% of the global population to be over 60 in 2050, and 28.1% in 2100. By mid-century, many industrial countries will have median ages of 50 or higher. Therefore the proportion of the population which is available to visit protected areas will have an increasingly elderly profile in the future. Elderly people extend their interest in outdoor activities, such as walking, nature study, fly-fishing or wildlife observation. Older visitors present some challenges for protected area planning and management as well as some opportunity. Park managers must develop an understanding of the needs of this older population.
 - Changing roles of women; Women are becoming more prominent, even numerically dominant, in the paid workforce. It is often women who determine the choice of travel destination. Women are interested in more appreciative activities, such as nature and culture studies and ecotourism. Many women are interested in protected area recreation opportunities. Also, women are increasingly drawn to protected area and tourism management as a career. It is important for protected area managers to understand that the role of women in park travel is strongly influenced by their life stage.
 - Changes in the distribution of leisure time; There are important and sometimes conflicting trends in the amounts, distribution and availability of leisure time. Short, fast trips (particularly 2 to 4 day weekend trips) now account for 80% of vacation travel in the USA. Therefore many parks now need to allow for short visits by tourists with limited time, which calls for higher quality service, and specialised recreation opportunities. In Europe leisure time involves longer paid vacations and shorter working weeks. Therefore, they are important generators of park visitation all over the world.
 - Importance of service quality; Tourists are increasingly demanding high quality recreational opportunities and the services that support them. Increased ecotourism means greater demand for specialised recreation and accommodation, all with a focus on quality. Protected area managers and the private sector need to deliver quality visitor services. The challenges for managers include

ensuring they have service quality goals, programmes to deliver high quality service and monitoring programmes in place.

- Changing leisure patterns; there are big increases in leisure time due to earlier retirement. Older, retired people are also able to travel for longer periods each year. Rising incomes in rich countries in particular are driving up the volume of domestic tourism, and of outbound traffic. If this continues, there is likely to be a further general increase in recreation pressures upon all protected areas, and of demands for higher quality service.

- Advances in global communications and information technology; The Internet and information technology lead to increased demand for trips to a wider variety of locations, and enables park agencies to provide current, sophisticated information directly to visitors, at very low cost. These new technologies enable visitors to be well informed about everything, from management policies to the recreation experience. Lack of sophisticated Internet web sites in destination resulted that the protected area agency has little control over the accuracy of information, and cannot influence the kinds of visitor expectations.

- Proliferation of travel options; The WTO predicts that international travel will grow at the rate of 4.1% annually between now and the year 2020. The proliferation of long-haul air travel has revolutionised global park visitation, with people seeking out World Heritage Sites, national parks and other protected areas. This trend will continue and in general protected area managers should prepare for more visitors from around the globe.

- Personal security and safety; More than any other factor, threats to personal security and safety adversely affect tourism demand. The fear of terrorism can affect global travel trends. When regional wars, rebellions and terrorism occur, domestic and international travel falls, and fewer tourists visit protected areas. A sense of personal security is also affected by the prevalence of violent crime, petty theft, water quality, disease or bad sanitation. Once a destination achieves a negative reputation, it is very difficult to rebuild visitor confidence; Leisure travel is a luxury good, people have a wide range of opportunities and they will not travel to areas perceived as unsafe. Protected area managers should be aware of safety expectations of visitors, explain the local situation to potential visitors, and respond to visitor safety demands. If possible, protected area managers need to have security management plans in place.

- Increasing social and environmental concerns; the growth of interest in sustainable tourism and ecotourism is a response to social and environmental concerns. Protected areas are well placed to take advantage of this trend as they embody the values that such travellers hold. Tourists are attracted to destinations that have a positive reputation, and are actively avoiding destinations that have social or environmental problems.

- Globalisation of the economy; in globalised economy, individual countries are influenced by decisions and economic conditions elsewhere. The linkage between origin and destination communities makes achieving sustainable tourism difficult, since the host country often has a limited ability to influence tourist trends. Protected area managers can take advantage of this

global context through clever marketing, using the Internet and by promoting the distinctive niche which they offer as a tourist destination.

- The major trends affecting 'Growth and diversification of market niches' lay out blows;

- Ecotourism and nature-based tourism; There has been a huge growth in 'soft' adventure and ecotourism or nature-tourism types of trips. Protected areas are very attractive settings for the growing demand for outdoor, appreciative activities in natural environments. Challenges for protected area managers are to ensure that while visitors have opportunities to participate in desired activities, they are aware of and maintain the values as well as target market programming to increase attractiveness as a destination, and manage the visitors appropriately.
- Protected area visitors comprise many market segments; markets comprise many segments with different dimensions. If visitor segments and biophysical and cultural attributes of the park are matched and then sensitively promoting appropriate protected area attributes to the targeted segment adverse impacts on the protected area will reduce, and economic benefits will increase.

Main segment visitors include:

1) socio-demographic characteristics (e.g. variables such as age, sex, occupation, origins, income level, and ethnic association, and religion, level of education or class). These segments would be expected to have different characteristics and activity participation.

2) Geographic characteristics (e.g. origins, distance from sites and modes of transport)

3) psychographic segments: Thus, one segment might be considered "escapers" who look for adventure, and getting away from it all, while another might be considered "green" and actively seeking environmentally-sensitive products and services.

4) Activity participation

5) Frequency of participation

6) Perceived product benefits

The value of segmentation is that it can predict behaviour, and thus help managers to plan for this behaviour. Segmentation by perceived product benefit can be used to develop an understanding of what tourists really seek in a visit to a protected area, and so establish an appropriate management response.

- Major trends affecting 'Potential benefits of tourism in protected areas' are briefly described in the next Table;

- To gain economic benefits, two conditions must be met: (1) there must be products and services for tourists to spend money on, and (2) it is necessary to minimise the amount that leaks out of the local area. Protected area managers should aim to develop tourism development policies which support long-term economic development and encourage repeat visits. They should try to maximise local employment, social and cultural benefits through high visitor spending and low local leakage.

- Guidelines for capturing economic benefits are:

Increase the number of visitors: Increasing visitation is risky unless the financial benefits from the visitors exceed their costs. It may increase other impacts, some negatively.

Increase the length of stay: Increased length of stay provides more opportunity to sell local products and services.

Attract richer market niches: Different marketing tactics may bring in consumers with strong abilities to spend.

Benefits	
Enhancing economic opportunity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increases jobs for local residents Increases income Stimulates new tourism enterprises, and stimulates and diversifies the local economy Encourages local manufacture of goods Obtains new markets and foreign exchange Improves living standards Generates local tax revenues Enables employees to learn new skills Increases funding for protected areas and local communities
Protecting natural and cultural heritage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protects ecological processes and watersheds Conserves biodiversity (including genes, species and ecosystems) Protects, conserves and values cultural and built heritage resources Creates economic value and protects resources which otherwise have no perceived value to residents, or represent a cost rather than a benefit Transmits conservation values, through education and interpretation Helps to communicate and interpret the values of natural and built heritage and of cultural inheritance to visitors and residents of visited areas, thus building a new generation of responsible consumers Supports research and development of good environmental practices and management systems to influence the operation of travel and tourism businesses, as well as visitor behaviour at destinations Improves local facilities, transportation and communications Helps develop self-financing mechanisms for protected area operations
Enhancing quality of life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Promotes aesthetic, spiritual, and other values related to well-being Supports environmental education for visitors and locals Establishes attractive environments for destinations, for residents as much as visitors, which may support other compatible new activities, from fishing to service or product-based industries Improves intercultural understanding Encourages the development of culture, crafts and the arts Increases the education level of local people Encourages people to learn the languages and cultures of foreign tourists Encourages local people to value their local culture and environments

Increase purchases per visitor: Offering more locally-made goods for sale, available directly and indirectly to the visitor, helps increase visitor expenditure and local incomes.

Provide lodging: The costs of overnight accommodation are relatively large and are paid for locally. Local lodging also increases expenditures on meals, and local goods and services.

Provide guides or other services: Since much tourist activity in protected areas is information intensive, there are usually good opportunities for guide services.

Host events: Artwork, crafts and festivals based on local culture can increase local economic impact.

Purchase local food and drink: When visitors, park staff and tourism employees consume locally grown food and drink, they provide important income to local farmers.

- Protected areas can be the engines of sustainable rural development. IUCN argues that protected areas, sustained by tourist income, not only create jobs and raise income but can also be used to support local communities' needs for improving communications, education, training, and health care. It also affects increased school graduation rates; reduced infant mortality, elimination of water and air pollution, increased access to recreation sites, protected areas or subsistence resources; and better access to services, such as the park's programmes for interpretation and environmental education.

- Major trends on 'Potential risks of tourism in protected areas' are;

- Financial and economic costs; Tourism brings increased demand for goods, services and facilities. Such increased demand brings increased costs and possibly higher tax burdens for the local community. Tourism can lead to increased foreign ownership and raised property values. Where the local economy and protected areas are heavily dependent on tourism, they may become vulnerable to external factors beyond their control, such as natural disasters, currency fluctuations, and competitive capture of markets or political instability.

- Social costs; increased numbers of tourists may disturb community activities, and compete for recreation places and other services. Poorly planned tourism development can lead to increased congestion, littering, vandalism and crime. Seasonal employments, commercializing local traditions, vulnerability to exploitation are among other potential social costs.

- Environmental costs; as listed in the table next page.

Element	Examples of risk from tourism activities
Ecosystems	The construction of accommodation, visitor centres, infrastructure, and other services has a direct impact on the environment, from vegetation removal, animal disturbance elimination of habitats, impacts on drainage etc. Wildlife habitat may be significantly changed (travel routes, hunting areas, breeding areas, etc.) by all kinds of tourist development and use.
Soils	Soil compaction can occur in certain well-used areas. Soil removal and erosion also occurs, and may continue after the disturbance is gone.
Vegetation	Concentrated use around facilities has a negative effect on vegetation. Transportation may have direct negative impacts on the environment (e.g. vegetation removal, weed transmission, animal disturbance). Fire frequency may change due to tourists and park tourism management.
Water	Increased demands for fresh water. Disposal of sewage or litter in rivers, lakes or oceans. Release of oil and fuel from ships and smaller craft. Propeller-driven watercraft may affect certain aquatic plants and species.
Air	Motorised transportation may cause pollution from emissions (from plane, train, ship or automobile).

Wildlife

Hunting and fishing may change population dynamics.

Hunters and fishers may demand the introduction of foreign species, and increased populations of target animals.

Impacts occur on insects and small invertebrates, from effects of transportation, introduced species, etc.

Disturbance by visitors can occur for all species, including those that are not attracting visitors.

Disturbance can be of several kinds: noise, visual or harassing behaviour.

The impact can last beyond the time of initial contact (e.g. before heart-rate returns to normal, or before birds alight, or mammals resume breeding or eating).

Marine mammals may be hurt or killed by boat impacts or propeller cuts.

Habituation to humans can cause changed wildlife behaviour, such as approaching people for food.

- Private reserves, community-driven initiatives and tourism; an extensive system of both public and private reserves supports an ecotourism industry. There is a long tradition that links the scientific researchers and ecotourism. Researchers established many of the private reserves, which are run more efficiently than those managed by government agencies. Many reserves are owned and managed by NGOs, mainly for biodiversity conservation, both in developing and developed countries. Like all protected areas, private reserves are vulnerable to political unrest, poaching, community opposition to loss of access to resources, squatters and sometimes antipathy towards tourism.

- The following Guidelines are suggested for increasing the benefits of tourism in all kinds of protected areas,
 - Ensure that the measurement of park tourism activities, volumes and impacts is accurate, as complete as possible and that the data are effectively communicated;
 - Match the services and products available in the park and locally to tourist travel motives;
 - Make products and services available for tourists' expenditure
 - Aim for high service quality in all tourist services;
 - Develop a constituency of satisfied and supportive park visitors, people who will argue for park objectives in the large political debates in society;
 - Develop opportunities for park visitors to play a positive role in park management (through membership in Friends Groups, by providing donations to targeted programmes, or providing personal assistance to staff);
 - Ensure that all information and interpretation programmes create appropriate expectations;
 - Minimise local leakage (retain local expenditures through maximum local self-sufficiency) by developing linkages with local industries;
 - Provide local accommodation options;
 - Provide recreation activity options;
 - Encourage consumption of locally-grown foods;
 - Ensure local participation and control (e.g. local guide services);
 - Ensure revenue-sharing or direct payment programmes;
 - Understand the role of the protected area in regional and national tourism activities;
 - Understand the fiscal and economic roles of park tourism;

- Host special events;
- Provide opportunities for local people to celebrate their cultural traditions;
- Where needed, assist in the education of local people in the skills necessary for tourism;
- Evaluate all tourism services provided by the private sector to ensure service quality and adherence to park policy;
- Ensure that the park has staff trained in tourism planning and management;
- Continuously evaluate all tourism programmes to ensure that goals are met;
- Ensure that tourism programmes are based upon competent financial management;
- Price appropriately; and
- Earmark the income from fees appropriately.

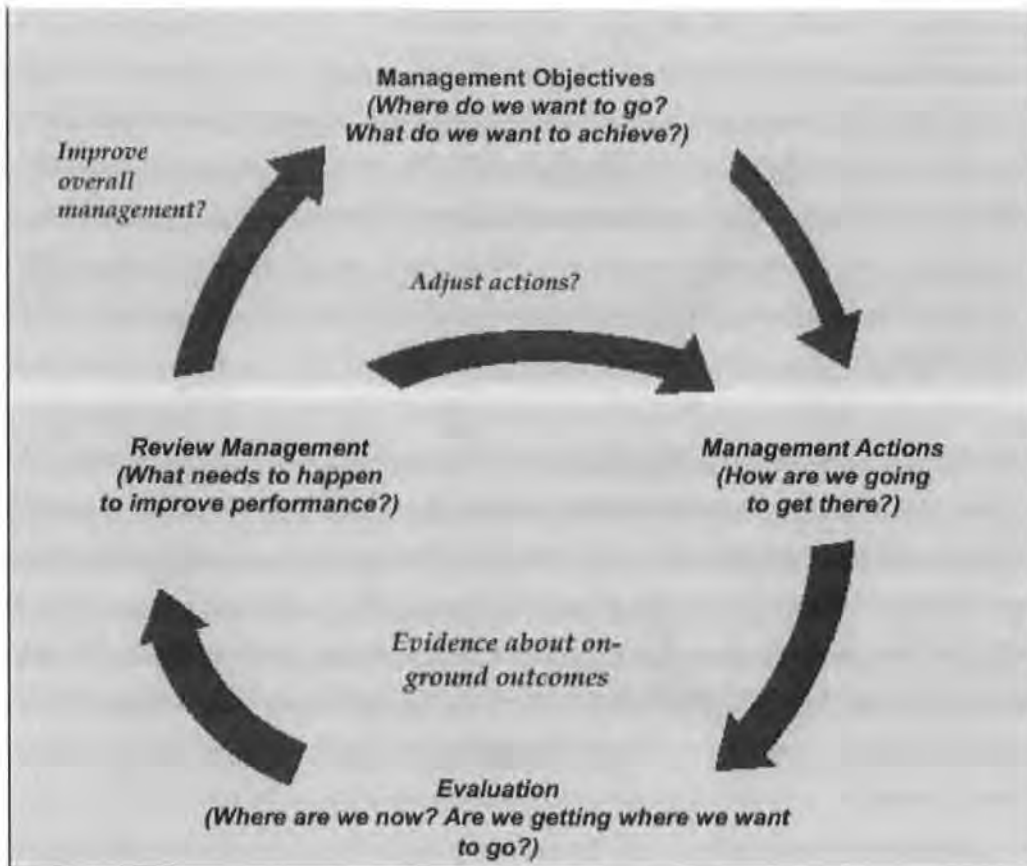
Chapter four's trend is 'Planning in protected area tourism' and contains following issues;

- Protected area plans, policy and planning; each park and protected area needs a plan that describes how tourism and associated development will be managed. Park plans for managing tourism attempt to maximise the benefits of tourism while minimising its costs. Tourism policies are an important component of the overall document, sometimes called a management plan. It is important in designing a planning process to adopt a procedure that is understandable, defensible, where decisions can be traced and where the value judgements inherent in protected area planning are made explicit. It is essential that all stakeholders are appropriately involved in the process through establish a public involvement programme, a popular model for protected area management planning system is to identify the key stages of objectives, actions, evaluation and management review (Tasmania Parks and Wildlife Service, 2000).

The Australia and New Zealand Environmental Conservation Council (ANZECC) as well as IUCN's WCPA Best Practice Protected Area Guidelines series also addressed management planning, in the numbers of their publications.

- Tourism in the Park Management Plan; the park management plan is the vehicle for determining and listing all park policies. It is comprehensive in character. Listed below are several Guidelines that can be used to guide the development of the park tourism policy and plan:

- The natural and cultural environment within the protected area should form the basis for all other uses and values affecting the park and its management. These fundamental assets must not be put at risk;
- Protected area tourism depends on maintaining a high quality environment and cultural conditions within the area. This is essential to sustaining the economic and quality of life benefits brought by tourism;
- The protected area management organisation exists to protect the values for which the area was originally established through, among other things: active management of tourism and tourists; sharing of responsibility for management with tourism operatives, local communities and visitors; and providing potential economic opportunities for tourism;



- Protected area visitors expect to find facilities, programmes, and recreational and learning opportunities within the park, but not all demands can be met, as some of these expectations may be inconsistent with park goals and objectives;
 - Visitors actively seek the best service quality they can afford for the money they have available. They do not necessarily seek the cheapest opportunities available;
 - Visitors desire diversity in the recreational opportunities afforded, but not all parks can or should set out to provide for every demand;
 - Planning should occur within, and acknowledge, the regional context of a particular protected area. This means that the types of tourism opportunities afforded in other protected areas should be inventoried as part of the planning process; and that the planning of tourism within a protected area should take account of tourism demands and provision in nearby areas; and
 - Managing expectations is jointly the responsibility of park managers and other tourism operators.
- Developing goals and objectives; the goals for a protected area provide the overall policy framework for managing tourism in that area. Objectives are more explicit statements of what is to be accomplished.

Characteristic	Guidelines	Examples
Output-oriented	Objectives deal with the results or accomplishments of an activity. They describe what is to be accomplished, but not how. The "how" is part of the local protected area manager's creativity.	"Provide 3,000 visitors annually with a world class wildlife viewing opportunity" "Maintain an average annual population of 500 lions" "Increase the average ecological knowledge of visitors by 50% within 5 years"
Time-bound	Goals and objectives should maintain or move toward a desirable future condition. A time frame for an objective should be specified. Time-bound objectives provide the direction needed to develop the appropriate management actions, and require accountability.	"Within five years, provide 3,000 visitors annually with a world-class wildlife viewing opportunity" "Over the next 3 years, labour income from park tourism should increase 4% per year"
Specific	Objectives should provide all parties with a clear vision of what is to be accomplished. Once stakeholders agree to the objective, everyone is clear as to the meaning, and everyone becomes accountable for their role in achieving the objective.	"Over the next 3 years, labour income from park tourism should increase 4% per year" (The time frame is fixed, the increase is explicit and the term "labour income" has a shared meaning).
Measurable	Measurable objectives provide a clear basis for evaluating progress. Measurable objectives allow managers to determine where efforts need to be placed in the future. They indicate what elements in the protected area need to be monitored, where, and with what frequency.	"Over the next 3 years, labour income from park tourism should increase 4% per year" (Indicates that local labour income needs to be measured at least once per year over the first three years of the protected area plan)
Attainable	Objectives must be realistic over the time frame of the park plan. Objectives must be achievable with the available funding and staffing resources. Objectives represent a compromise between an idealistic vision (e.g. without impairment of park resources) and the reality of the impacts of tourism. Attainable objectives provide a motivation for action. Realistic objectives provide managers, visitors and operators with a sense of foreseeable accomplishment. By focusing on desired, rather than existing, conditions, objectives point towards an improvement in conditions. Attainable objectives may require trade-offs between a perfect world and a realistic one.	"Increase the average ecological knowledge of visitors by 50% within five years"

Guidelines for successful protected area planning objectives

It is worthy to note that the mentioned goals are not necessarily specific enough to guide the management of tourism. Since the development of protected areas tourism has other important social purposes such as development of local economic opportunity or enhancement of the quality of life.

Objectives should have following characteristics, output-oriented; time-bound; specific; measurable; and attainable.

- Characteristics of successful protected area planning processes: A successful planning process has several characteristics. The highlights the most important of these, with Guidelines for their implementation, and comments of explanation are as follows;

Criteria	Planning guidelines	Comments
Clarity in plan production	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> State how the protected area is to be managed. State how surprises are to be dealt with. State how funding and personnel will be raised and allocated. State how monitoring will occur. State a specific time frame. Provide for periodic review. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protected area personnel may change, so the document "outlives" any one person. Provides continuity between changes in government.
Implementation oriented	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make provisions for implementation during the planning process. Indicate roles and responsibilities. Work with politicians, interest groups and local communities to ensure implementation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plans are written to change or work toward future conditions. This only happens if they are implemented. Without implementation, plans are useless.
Socially acceptable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Invite input from a large range of interests. Use consensus-building processes. Use technical planning assistance. Social acceptability increases potential for implementation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Those affected by plans must find them acceptable, as must those with "veto" powers. Consensus is not necessarily unanimity.
Mutual learning oriented	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obtain expectations about anticipated experiences/programmes/facilities from visitors. Determine how park plans and business plans affect each other, jointly define the tourism product, and develop marketing plans cooperatively. Managers should outline legal mission of the park, implications of different management strategies, and mitigation approaches. Scientists should determine cause-effect relationships, and social-environmental consequences of actions. Determine importance of benefits and values from citizens. Techniques that empower stakeholders to become more aware of the issues increase their ability to generate innovative approaches. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabling different publics and stakeholders to come together provides opportunities for mutual learning and appreciation. Many-way dialogue helps active mutual involvement. Avoid underestimating the competence of citizens. Providing a range of venues for this learning is helpful, not only formal venues. Do not forget associated agency staff and volunteers.
Responsibility and shared ownership	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use many involvement techniques at all stages of the planning process (e.g. workshops, field trips, open houses, focus groups, advisory committees, etc.). Create responsibilities for stakeholder groups. Encourage stakeholder participation in issue identification, evaluation of alternatives and implementation. Share information (e.g. about briefings or meetings) rather than provide information (e.g. displays, draft plans) - this creates more legitimate stakeholder involvement. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implementation of the plan is much enhanced if all stakeholders take responsibility and ownership of the plan. The publics "own" the plan, not the agency. Some workshops can be run over several days to build strong sense of ownership.
Representative of wide interests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recognise that protected area tourism affects, and is affected by, many political and social interests at national and community level. Embody a wide range of values and interests through public participation. Conduct a stakeholder analysis to identify the types of values affected by plan. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Active engagement of stakeholders secures support. Even those fundamentally opposed to park's objectives can benefit from seeing their interests honestly handled.
Relationship building oriented	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use planning process to strengthen relationships, secure community commitment and build support for funding and personnel. Demonstrate to local communities how they might benefit from tourism in the protected area. Seek information, rather than provide information: this builds greater levels of trust. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Agencies need to overcome distrust or other problems, by openness. Open communication is necessary with the community and within the agency.

- Involving stakeholders: The main groups of stockholders who have a direct interest in, and are affected in different ways by, park and tourism management policies, include: Park planners and managers(important), Park volunteers, Park visitors(important), Park employees, Local community(important), Native or indigenous community, Landowners (in and around the area), Residents (in and around the area), Resource extraction interests, Government ministries, Allied and sometimes competing government agencies, Profit-making private sector, Non-governmental organisations, Environmental groups, Economic development organisations, Concessionaires, licensees and permit holders, Hospitality industry, Tour operators(important), Destination marketing organisations, Educational institutions, Research bodies, Media.

- Involve the range of stakeholders: Protected area planning encompasses two different, but related, domains. Technical component and Planning process, such as limits of acceptable change park managers as well as scientists and other experts, and a public participation of all stakeholders described. A key to success is the integration of these two inputs into a single, coherent planning process. The entire decision-making and planning process must be designed for stakeholder involvement throughout.
- Stakeholder motivations: Each category of stakeholder has its own motivations and perspectives on the benefits of tourism in protected areas, whether physiological, psychological, social, economic or environmental. Stakeholders' perspectives and motivations are summarised under grouped headings in next page.

An effective and comprehensive management plan for a park must incorporate an understanding and appreciation of the perceptions of these groups. It is critical that public participation be a central component of all management plan development. The process used to identify the values, choose amongst alternatives, and to make decisions must be open, participatory, equitable and visible.

- A range of stakeholder involvement processes are available: Many public involvement techniques exist. As a general rule, the higher the degree of involvement means;

- The more staff time and energy is required;
- The more money it costs to support the process;
- The more detailed and sophisticated resource information is requested by participants;
- The greater is the expectation of stakeholders that their contributions will be valued and used;
- The greater the visible commitments that must be made to use the results, keep stakeholders informed, and explain any deviations from recommendations or decisions.

- Managing conflict: it requires understanding conflict in protected areas. Conflicts occur whenever two or more groups compete for similar resources and one finds that another group interferes with its pursuit of a particular goal – such as recreation, indigenous hunting or collecting. Four main kinds of conflicts that may occur are; -Conflicts between visitors and managers, - Conflicts between recreationists in the same activity, -Conflicts between recreationists engaged in different activities, - Conflicts between recreation and non-recreation activities.

Stakeholders' views of tourism in protected areas

Groups	Motivations
Society and local communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Redistribute income and wealth Provide opportunities for local businesses to benefit from local resources Increase opportunities for employment Contribute to improved quality of life Gain foreign currency Assist community development Promote the conservation of natural and cultural heritage Sustain and commemorate cultural identity Provide education opportunities to members of society Promote health benefits Expand global understanding, awareness and appreciation Create employment and income Promote conservation and heritage appreciation
Specific to local communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Securing additional income As a source of employment Enhance respect for local traditions, cultural values, local environment Access to better services Enhancement of self esteem
Protected area managers/experts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Promote conservation Develop heritage appreciation Generate revenue (to make a profit or reduce operating costs) Create employment and income Learn from others Build alliances with the local community Develop long-term sustainable economic activity Manage resource extraction Foster research Create a positive experience Generate repeat visits
Tourists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enhance personal experiences, which include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> cognitive objectives (for example, learning about nature and wildlife) affective concepts (for example, gaining peace of mind) psychomotor desires (for example, getting exercise) feel personal accomplishment gain health benefits participate in a social experience spend quality time with peers meet people with similar interests achieve group team building achieve family bonding explore family history provide the opportunity for courtship reaffirm cultural values promote conservation and preservation
Tourism operators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operate profitably Respond to market demand Identify target markets Develop target markets Exploit market advantage Develop products for target markets Provide markets with services Support visitors and assist them to understand the resources

An effective and comprehensive management plan for a park must incorporate an understanding and appreciation of the perceptions of these groups. It is critical that public participation be a central component of all management plan development. The process used to identify the values, choose amongst alternatives, and to make decisions must be open, participatory, equitable and visible.

- A range of stakeholder involvement processes are available: Many public involvement techniques exist. As a general rule, the higher the degree of involvement means:

- The more staff time and energy is required;
- The more money it costs to support the process;
- The more detailed and sophisticated resource information is requested by participants;
- The greater is the expectation of stakeholders that their contributions will be valued and used;
- The greater the visible commitments that must be made to use the results, keep stakeholders informed, and explain any deviations from recommendations or decisions.

- Managing conflict: it requires understanding conflict in protected areas. Conflicts occur whenever two or more groups compete for similar resources and one finds that another group interferes with its pursuit of a particular goal – such as recreation, indigenous hunting or collecting. Four main kinds of conflicts that may occur are; -Conflicts between visitors and managers, - Conflicts between recreationists in the same activity, -Conflicts between recreationists engaged in different activities, - Conflicts between recreation and non-recreation activities.

To resolve or at least reduce conflicts there are two basic approaches to the resolution of conflict. One is to develop an understanding of the goals, and then establish a management regime that allows for goal fulfilment without interfering with the goals of another. The other is to try to change the goals. Usually, resolution involves better and more communications. In some cases, formalised conflict resolution, processes such as negotiation, and arbitration, will help resolve matters. In others, more informal co-operative and collaborative processes may be successful.

The outcome of a dispute is likely to involve one of three approaches: Prohibition of certain activities, Separation of activities in time or in space, and Provision of information and education. Once decisions on how to address a conflict have been taken, action should follow and must be made to stick.

- Plan development and implementation; once a plan or a policy has been agreed upon, it must be implemented. A first step is its communication to all stakeholders.

Chapter five's trend is 'Sensitive development of infrastructure and services' and deals with the sensitive and sustainable design of park infrastructure and services. All protected areas, other than those in IUCN Category I a, require some level of visitor service infrastructure. Tourism-related structures must be located with care and also be very carefully designed and operated. Infrastructure and services should be best fulfil visitor needs, while minimising negative impacts

and serve the people now using the area, and fulfil needs such as sanitation, food provision, lodging, information, transport and safety. This chapter contains following issues;

- Culturally sensitive design and operation: culturally sensitive design and operation are essential in the provision of visitor services. It requires sensitivity to heritage issues and values. Heritage is a broad concept, encompassing not only wildlife and landscapes, but also historic sites, architectural features, collections, past and continuing cultural practices, including ceremonies, rituals, events, even language, traditional knowledge and living experiences. The International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) develops approaches to the conservation and use of cultural heritage. ICOMOS developed a Charter on culture and tourism in 1999, the key management elements of which are presented in next page.

Guidance from the 1999 ICOMOS Charter Source: <http://icomos.org/tourism/charter.html>

- Protection and use of the built heritage: There are basically four approaches to protecting and using the built heritage; preservation, restoration, recreation, and adaptation. Guidelines for any new building in the context of the historic built heritage include work with the character of existing buildings, be sympathetic to the local vernacular style and materials (though this is not incompatible with contemporary architecture), pay careful attention to the setting; and involve the stakeholders in finding the architectural solution.

- Interpretation and education for cultural heritage: Interpretation is required to communicate the significance of an area to visitors, and to members of the host community, and the need for its conservation and should aim to develop awareness of, and respect for cultural and heritage values and present in a manner relevant to them. A professionally-planned heritage interpretation programme involves: the careful determination of interpretation themes; the choice of media to present the themes; the presentation of the material; and the evaluation of the presentation.

- Environmentally sensitive design and operation: Tourist facilities and programmes within protected areas should act as standard-setters in environmentally sensitive design and operations.

This can be done by:

Minimising the negative environmental impact of visitor support services;

Creating an atmosphere in which visitors feel they are in a special place; and

Setting an example of environmentally sensitive design and operation practices, to educate and demonstrate the value and practicality of sustainable, innovative and effective solutions.

Following table provides Guidelines for environmentally and culturally sensitive design and operation.

Element	Guiding directions
Authenticity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retention of authenticity is important. Interpretation programmes should: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enhance the appreciation and understanding of that cultural heritage; Present the significance of the culture in a relevant and accessible manner; Use appropriate, stimulating and contemporary forms of education, technology and personal explanations; and, Encourage high levels of public awareness and support of heritage.
Employment	<p>Tourism should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> bring benefits to host communities and provide an important motivation and means to maintain their heritage and cultural practices; Promote equitable distribution of benefits of tourism, through education, training and creation of employment opportunities; and Encourage training and employment of local guides and interpreters. <p>Managers should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carefully address the potential impact of visitors on the characteristics, integrity and biodiversity of the place, local access and the social/economic/cultural well-being of the host community; and Select circulation routes to minimise impacts on integrity of place.
Respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Respect sanctity of spiritual elements, values and lifestyles of the host. Respect rights and interests of the community, property owners and indigenous peoples, who may have traditional rights over their own land, or wish to restrict certain activities, practices or access. Encourage and help all parties to understand and resolve conflicting issues. Conservation should provide well-managed opportunities for visitors and members of the host community to experience and understand that community's heritage and culture, first hand.
Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Encourage visitors to experience the wider cultural/natural heritage of the region. Involvement of all parties, including local and/or indigenous community representatives is necessary to achieve a sustainable tourism industry.
Economic returns	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allocate a significant proportion of revenues to protection, conservation and presentation of places, and tell visitors about this allocation. Ensure that distribution and sale of crafts and products benefit the host community.
Visitor satisfaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure that the visitor experience is worthwhile, satisfying and enjoyable. Present high quality information to optimise visitors' understanding of heritage and need for protection. Provide appropriate facilities for comfort, safety and well-being of the visitor. Ensure tourism promotion creates realistic expectations. Minimise fluctuations in visitor arrivals and even the flow as much as possible.
Consultation and evaluation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Continuing research and consultation are important to understanding and appreciating the heritage significance of the place. Involve host communities in planning for conservation and tourism, and establishing goals, strategies, policies and protocols. Evaluate the ongoing impacts of tourism on the place or community.

Guidelines for environmentally and culturally sensitive facilities

Aspect	Guidelines
Environmental impact assessments	<p>Consider whether or not a statutory or informal environmental assessment is required, including ecological, social, cultural and economic evaluation.</p> <p>Develop a mitigation plan, where required.</p>
Landscaping and site design	<p>Develop a context plan – examining the entire surrounding area and community, including valued views and resources.</p> <p>Develop a management plan for the site, including the relationship with the surrounding/ adjacent protected area, addressing zoning and access.</p> <p>Develop a site plan, focusing on detailed design. This should minimise site disturbance, physical intrusion and intervention.</p> <p>Tree management considers tree retention, relocation or replacement.</p> <p>Plant vegetation to supply a more natural environment that provides habitat for birds, mammals and other wildlife.</p> <p>Use indigenous species for landscaping.</p> <p>Consider cultural aspects of site.</p> <p>Ensure linkages are considered (for land use, human circulation, nearby trails, other facilities, outpost camps, etc.).</p>
Built facilities	<p>Height and mass should be in scale with existing vegetation and topography.</p> <p>Design guidelines should recognise the history of place, cultural characteristics and indigenous or vernacular design features, colours, etc.</p> <p>Facilities should be constructed for energy efficiency, using renewable energy wherever possible.</p>
Resource conservation and consumption	<p>Design and operate services so as to minimise use and production of water, energy, waste, sewage, effluent, noise, light and any other emissions.</p> <p>Encourage the use of renewable sources of energy.</p> <p>Consider a permaculture approach (which mimics the interconnectedness and diversity of flora and fauna in natural systems) to turn waste into resources and problems into opportunities.</p>
Materials	<p>Materials should be indigenous, appropriate to the area, and involve low maintenance.</p> <p>Materials used in construction should be “sourced” to ensure that they come from sustainable production systems, or should be recycled where appropriate.</p> <p>Ensure that all materials brought onto the site for construction are used – apply a “no waste” condition to contractors.</p>
New and low impact technologies	<p>Use new technologies in construction and operations where appropriate, practical, cost effective, and where there are no perverse effects elsewhere (e.g. “smart” room controls and sensors, low heat transfer glazing assemblies, free cooling/heating, energy from solar/ wind/micro-hydro, power controls for energy savings, re-use of produced heat, etc.).</p> <p>Use new technologies, which are more effective in stand-alone equipment and vehicles, as well as in facilities.</p>
Services	<p>Develop and implement service standards to meet the needs of all stakeholders – visitors, agencies, private sector, staff.</p>
Quality control	<p>If guidelines and conditions of operation of the protected area agency are clear, reporting or decisions should be simple and clear.</p> <p>Baseline information should be maintained (ideally from pre-construction) so as to assess what, if any, impacts may occur as a result of construction and operations. These may be very simple observations, or quite complex.</p> <p>Set conditions of operation and timelines such that the developer/concessionaire can afford to invest in quality and visitor satisfaction, as well as obtain a reasonable return on the investment.</p> <p>Initiate regular meetings with managers and facility operators to help resolve problems or issues.</p>

Aspect	Guidelines
Green practices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop green purchase policies. Use biodegradable cleaning products. Use alternatives to watering, such as mulching, alternate mowing and composting. Develop an integrated pest management plan. Use bulk or re-usable storage containers. Keep all systems and equipment well maintained, since all systems degrade in efficiency over time. Encourage staff vehicle pooling for staff transport to site. Ensure marketing materials are environmentally sensitive, and use electronic communications.
Programming	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reward staff for creativity and monitoring. Involve visitors in developing ongoing improvements. Manage human use – a human use strategy (see above) assists this. Consider partnerships with others (e.g. other public agencies) to assist in programming. Develop high staff to client ratios. Build monitoring into programme activities.
Relationship with the local community	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consult with the local community before development or significant changes in activities. Donate surplus or left over goods to local charities or causes (e.g. soaps, bed linens, amenities, foods). Maximise employment opportunities with the local community. Buy goods and services locally, and encourage “green” products and services, where none are available. Assist local organisations, provide discounted services, or donate a percentage of fees or profits to a worthy local cause. Encourage visitors to spend more time locally. Offer work experience or training options locally.

- Design of public and private sector facilities: There is a continuing debate on the appropriate mix of operating approaches to visitor facilities. The most common options are: park agency, concessionaire, Friend's Groups, NGOs and local communities. Each option has its advantages and disadvantages. The key factors in making the decision are: government policy on private involvement; fiscal considerations; the administrative structure of the protected area agency; and its capability to manage. Key aspects of the design of camp-sites, roofed accommodation, interpretation facilities and transport facilities are;

Camp-sites; facilities associated with camping in wilderness and backcountry situations should be as simple as possible, appropriate to the level of use, and appropriate to the degree of allowable impact. Well-designed facilities for backcountry camp-sites can minimise human impact on remote sensitive environments. Waste disposal is an important issue for all camp-sites. Self-composting toilets and recycling programmes for metal, paper and glass can significantly reduce sewage disposal problems.

Roofed accommodation; There is a vigorous debate about the merits of allowing built accommodation within Category I to IV protected areas in principle, their presence in Categories V and VI protected areas is not controversial. There are some good arguments for locating built accommodation (ranging from resort-style buildings to lodges or cabins) within Category I to IV protected areas, particularly where the areas are large:

The protected area managers have stronger control over the accommodation complex and the ways visitors use the protected area;

The visitors spend most or all their time within the protected area, which should increase their appreciation of it, and there is less need to use transport;

Well-designed accommodation and service facilities can attract visitors to under-utilised areas; and

Through fees and other financial arrangements, the protected area benefits from the money spent on accommodation and meals.

Against that, it can be argued that:

Tourist accommodation is per se out of character with an essentially natural area, being often visually intrusive and potentially polluting;

Tourist development requires a range of services, usually brought in by road, which create a secondary impact on the protected area;

Tourist accommodation has an in-built potential to grow and, once established, is difficult to restrain; By providing the centre of tourist activity outside the protected areas near established settlements, it is easier to bring benefits to local people (especially to women, who need to be near their children) and will minimise their need to travel to work.

Information, orientation and interpretive facilities can be used to influence visitor behaviour and thus assist protected area management, for example by safeguarding fragile environments. Visitor centres represent major investments in protected areas, and provide a broad range of information, interpretation, safety and recreation services. Since they are focal points for traffic, they should be appropriately located, normally near the park entrance in the case of Category I–IV protected area; and adhere to the basic guidelines of construction and operation illustrated in Table above. The best of today's new visitor centres are located in positions which attract the most visitors and fulfil many functions. Visitor centres must build in a strong interpretive component, help visitors to understand the significance of the area, and thus assist the protected area manager as well.

- Transportation and infrastructure: Transportation infrastructure within protected areas provides visitors with access to opportunities for understanding, appreciation and enjoyment but often has very significant impacts on protected areas such as noise, pollution and dusts which can disrupt wildlife, damage vegetation and affect water quality. Therefore, its design, routing and management must be carefully planned, especially since there is often pressure to open it to public use.

- Evaluating development proposals: Protected area managers are frequently faced with proposals for developments of various kinds related to recreational development. The following Checklist of questions helps the protected area agency to determine the impact of the proposal.

Is the scale of development right for the protected area, both physically and in terms of visitor numbers, and timing of their visit?

Are there alternative uses of the site, which should be considered?

How will the character of the site be conserved?

What economic value will the development bring to the protected area and to the local community?

How important will the proposed development be to supporting the protected area's goals and objectives, and will it support any other (traditional) activities?

What, if any, will be the effect on traffic?

What is the level of demand for the proposed facility or service, and the value to the visitor?

Do similar facilities exist now in the general location, and how well used are they?

What are the proposals for the subsequent management and maintenance of the site?

Answers to these questions will assist in evaluating the need for the proposal itself, as well as establishing any modifications that are required to it.

Chapter six's trend is 'Managing the challenges of tourism in protected areas' and addresses challenges in park tourism planning, and sets out various management frameworks which have been developed by park agencies to assist with the task.

- Management of risk and safety: Visitor risk management is the systematic identification, analysis and control of the broad range of visitor risks, which threaten an agency or its ability to achieve its objectives.

- Risk management: A risk, in the broadest sense, involves exposure to an unintentional event or situation that can cause a loss. The loss for a protected area management might be as simple as the pain of a twisted ankle or as complex as a liability claim ending in a lawsuit. $\text{Risk} = \text{Frequency of Incident} \times \text{Severity of Consequences}$. "Risk management" involves foresight and control or proactive and thoughtful action. Risk management practices are an integral component of the recreation. it is important to identify hazards in a systematic way.

- Shared responsibility: The prevention of public safety incidents, and when necessary the delivery of public safety, and of Search and Rescue services, should be a shared responsibility between protected area managers, tourism operators and other stakeholders, visitors and users.

- Emergencies and emergency planning: Emergency planning (to prevent or limit injury to persons or damage to physical property or the environment), which may overlap with public safety questions (such as risk assessment and prevention, and search and rescue services) is concerned with developing proactive and reactive responses to high frequency-low impact/consequence events (e.g. overdue party, broken limb). It also deals with the broader area of emergency programming for lower frequency-higher impact/consequence events (e.g. floods, tornadoes, hurricanes, fires, landslides and avalanches).

- Visitor risk management programme: evaluating risk requires assessing, controlling and financing. The components of a Visitor Risk Management Programme include:

- Staff training;
- Inspection and identification of risk areas;
- Networking with legal advisors, insurers and other agencies;
- Reporting incidents.

The main elements of such a programme include:

- A policy statement setting out the goals, objectives, strategies and performance indicators (to help monitor how well objectives are achieved);
- A structured process to (1) identify risks, (2) assess them, (3) manage them, and (4) monitor what happens and review policy (ANZECC, 2001).

- Principles of visitor management in protected areas: The impacts of visitation on the natural and cultural resources must be carefully managed, directed and mitigated wherever possible. The principal question confronting park tourism planning is to determine what degree of impact is acceptable. How much damage to the natural environment is worth the positive economic and quality of life gains from park tourism? What impacts on natural and cultural resources would occur if park tourism did not exist and the resources were utilised for some other purpose?

Some key principles for visitor management are laid out below;

Principles of visitor management

Principle	Description
1. Appropriate management depends on objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Objectives provide definitive statements of the outcomes of protected area management. They identify the appropriateness of management actions and indicate acceptable resource and social conditions. They allow evaluation of success of management actions. The specific objectives are likely to be more contentious than general value statements. The process of establishing objectives is essentially political; therefore, public participation is essential.
2. Diversity in resource and social conditions in protected areas is inevitable and may be desirable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Impacts, use levels, and expectations of appropriate conditions tend to vary (e.g. impact of a camp-site in periphery vs. centre of the protected area). Environmental variables influence visitor use and level of impact (e.g. topography, vegetation, access). Managers can identify this diversity, then make decisions on its desirability, thereby separating technical decisions from judgmental ones. Using zoning explicitly to manage for diverse recreation opportunities is more likely to preserve important values.
3. Management is directed at influencing human-induced change	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protected areas often protect natural processes as well as features, so management is generally oriented to managing human-induced change since it causes most disturbances. Human-induced change may lead to conditions considered to be undesirable. Some changes are desirable and may be the reason for the creation of the park. For example, many parks are created to provide recreation opportunities and local economic development. Management actions determine what actions are most effective in influencing amount, type and location of changes.

Principle	Description
4. Impacts on resource and social conditions are inevitable consequences of human use	<p>Even small amounts of recreational use can lead to disproportionately large biophysical or social impacts, so any level of use leads to some impact.</p> <p>Many impacts are purposefully designed, for example providing a certain level of environmental education for park visitors.</p> <p>Managers must ask: "How much impact is acceptable or desirable?"</p> <p>The process to determine the acceptability of impact is central to all visitor planning and management.</p> <p>Managers must utilise appropriate actions to create and manage this acceptable level of impact.</p>
5. Impacts may be temporally or spatially discontinuous	<p>Impacts from visitor use or management activities may occur out of the protected area, or not be visible until later (e.g. prohibitions of use may displace that use to other areas; or poor water treatment may result in water pollution downstream).</p> <p>Planners need substantial knowledge of relationships between use and impacts to predict relationships at a variety of scales and over time.</p>
6. Many variables influence the use/impact relationship	<p>Many variables other than level of use affect the use/impact relationship in protected areas (e.g. behaviour of visitors, travel method, group size, season, and biophysical conditions).</p> <p>Education and information programmes, as well as regulations aimed at restricting visitor behaviour, may be necessary in addition to limits of use.</p>
7. Many management problems are not dependent on numbers of users	<p>Management issues relating to the density of human use often have relatively simple technological solutions (e.g. parking, toilet facilities, water supply). But the relationship to use is not always linear. For example, the facilities designed for a few users may have very large impacts, but facilities designed for many more users have proportionally less additional impact.</p> <p>Similarly, social conditions (e.g. visitor satisfaction) are not always density-dependent.</p>
8. Limiting use is only one of many management options	<p>A use-limit policy is only one of a number of potential management actions available, and is one of the most intrusive actions that protected area managers can employ.</p> <p>There are many issues involved in employing limits to use, such as choosing appropriate allocation or rationing techniques.</p> <p>Limiting use can have major political problems because of the necessary decision of who does not get access, and how access is allocated.</p>
9. The decision-making process should separate technical decisions from value judgments	<p>Many protected area management decisions are technical (e.g. location of trail, design of visitor centre). But others reflect value judgments (e.g. decisions to limit use, and how, types of facilities, tourism opportunities provided).</p> <p>Decision processes should separate questions of "existing conditions" from "preferred conditions."</p>

- Protected area management frameworks: carrying capacity in 1970's encouraged managers to try to solve visitor use problems by setting limits to numbers based upon a pre-determined level, derived from ecological, social and other analyses. This approach is basically a restrictive concept, and working against protected area objectives designed to encourage appropriate visitor enjoyment and valuation of the resource.

- A choice of frameworks for management in carrying capacity approach: Some frameworks which have been used in various parts of the world include:

- 1) Limits of Acceptable Change (LAC)
- 2) Visitor Impact Management (VIM)

- 3) Visitor Experience and Resource Protection (VERP)
- 4) Visitor Activity Management Process (VAMP)
- 5) The Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)
- 6) Tourism Optimization Model (TOMM).

The pros and cons about each approach are documented in the following table:

Assessment of visitor management models

Characteristic	Limits of Acceptable Change (LAC)	Visitor Impact Management (VIM)	Visitor Experience and Resource Protection (VERP)	Visitor Activity Management Process (VAMP)	Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS)	Tourism Optimization Management Model (TOMM)
Main areas of application	Protected areas, especially IUCN Category Ib	Sites within protected areas	Primarily National Parks in the USA	Primarily Canadian National Parks, but applicable elsewhere	Any protected or multiple use area with nature-based tourism present	Australian system, but applicable in situations of communities with nature-based tourism
Able to assess and/or minimise visitor impacts	+	+	+	+	+	+
Considers multiple underlying causes of impacts	+	+	+	+	+	+
Facilitates selection of a variety of management actions	+	+	+	+	+	+
Produces defensible decisions	+	+	+	+	+	+
Separates technical information from value judgements	+	+	+	+	+	+
Encourages public involvement and shared learning	+	+	+	+	+	+
Incorporates local resource uses and resource management issues	+	+	+	+	+	+
Planning investment needed	--	-	---	---	---	---
Overall effectiveness based on experience	---	-	-	-	---	-

- The Limits of Acceptable Change Planning Process (LAC): LAC is featured because of its widespread use and acceptance. The LAC offers a way to focus on determining the desirable environmental and social conditions for the visitor activity, and the management actions required to achieve these conditions. It uses a process that is systematic, explicit, defensible and rational, and involves public participation. Guidelines for the application of the LAC framework and other approaches are provided.

Chapter seven's trend is 'Tools for visitor management' and reviews the tools that can be used to manage park visitation and tourism. The choice of these tools and their application within the protected area management plan is at the heart of tourism planning in protected areas. This chapter concentrates on the management of park visitation that already exists and contains five areas of studies.

I) A toolbox of strategies and tactics: strategies to manage the problems of large numbers of visitors in some protected areas often need to be complemented by other strategies designed to attract them to other newly established areas specially in developing countries. Managers have at their disposal a wide range of strategies to manage the impacts of park tourism. The main features of these strategies to control, influence and mitigate visitor (negative) impacts are described below.

1. Managing the supply of tourism or visitor opportunities, e.g. by increasing the space available or the time available to accommodate more use;
2. Managing the demand for visitation, e.g. through restrictions of length of stay, the total numbers, or type of use;
3. Managing the resource capabilities to handle use, e.g. through hardening the site or specific locations, or developing facilities; and
4. Managing the impact of use, e.g. reducing the negative impact of use by modifying the type of use, or dispersing or concentrating use.

The following table sets out a list of possible strategies and options for managing visitor numbers and coping with high levels of use.

Strategies and tactics for managing high levels of use

Strategy	Management tactics and techniques
1. Reduce use of the entire protected area	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Limit number of visitors in the entire protected area 2. Limit length of stay 3. Encourage use of other areas 4. Require certain skills and/or equipment 5. Charge a flat visitor fee 6. Make access more difficult in all wilderness
2. Reduce use of problem areas	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inform about problem areas and alternative areas 2. Discourage or prohibit use of problem area 3. Limit number of visitors in problem areas 4. Encourage/require a stay limit in problem areas 5. Make access harder/easier to areas 6. Eliminate facilities/attractions in problem areas, improve facilities/attractions in alternative areas 7. Encourage off-trail travel 8. Establish different skill/equipment requirements 9. Charge differential visitor fees
3. Modify the location of use within problem areas	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discourage/prohibit camping/use of horses 2. Encourage/permit camping/horses in certain areas 3. Locate facilities on durable sites 4. Concentrate use through facility design or info 5. Discourage/prohibit off-trail travel 6. Segregate different types of visitors
4. Modify the timing of use	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Encourage use outside of peak use periods 2. Discourage/ban use when impact potential high 3. Fees in periods of high use/high impact potential
5. Modify type of use and visitor behaviour	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Discourage/ban damaging practices/equipment 2. Encourage/require behaviour, skills, equipment 3. Teach a wilderness ethic 4. Encourage/require a party size and/or limit on number of horses 5. Discourage/prohibit horses 6. Discourage/prohibit pets 7. Discourage/prohibit overnight use
6. Modify visitor expectations	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inform visitors about appropriate wilderness/PA uses 2. Inform about potential conditions in wilderness/PA
7. Increase the resistance of the resource	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Shield the site from impact 2. Strengthen the site
8. Maintain/rehabilitate resource	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove problems 2. Maintain/rehabilitate impacted locations

The content of the table are expanded upon in the rest of this chapter.

The following discusses some of the key tools for visitor management used by protected area managers.

1) Seasonal or temporal limit on use level:

Definition: Use limits are direct restrictions on the number of people that may enter a recreation area.

Benefits: Use limits maintain use at a predetermined level, potentially controlling biophysical and social consequences of fast growing, or excessive use levels.

Costs: Use limits tend to generate controversy, particularly in how they are implemented, so the process used to determine the use limit is critical. Restriction of access to an area has financial costs. The costs of enforcement can be high, especially in the early stages.

Frequency of use: Use limits are commonly applied in wilderness hiking, canoeing situations and access to historic buildings and sites. They are becoming more common in front country situations.

Examples: when all camp-sites are occupied, other people are not permitted access; to limit the number of day users, managers can restrict the size of car parks; and where public transport is a major means of access, it is possible to set a limit on bus numbers, size of boats or frequency of trains.

2) Group size limit

Definition: Group size limits the maximum number of people in one group of tourists or recreationists travelling together.

Benefits: Larger group sizes tend to have greater social and biophysical impacts; group size limits reduces these impacts. Over time, users become familiar with the limits and adapt their expectations of the site accordingly.

Costs: The approach restricts access to any area for larger groups, which has cost implications.

Tourism operators may not welcome the imposition of limits. The administrative costs of enforcement and the educational costs can be high.

Frequency of use: Group size limits are commonly used in many back country, dispersed recreation and remote zones of protected areas.

Examples: a limit is set to the number of people that can camp together on a back-country camp-site; and a limit is set to the size of party that is permitted to snorkel on a coral reef.

3) Pre-assignment of recreation site

Definition: Pre-assignment (through pre-registration or pre-booking) involves the allocation of individual sites to specific individuals or groups before entry into a recreation area, much like a reserved seat on a passenger aircraft.

Benefits: This approach optimises use of sites with known area and limited capacity, and minimises inter-party competition. The technique spreads the number of visitors over time but yet assures them access. Knowing the level of demand well in advance, the manager is able to assign

appropriate staff levels, supplies and equipment. Pre-registration is highly appreciated by most park visitors.

Costs: There can be a substantial management cost for the pre-registration procedures. Fees are often used to re-cover these costs. This approach requires all potential visitors to know the rules and procedures for pre-registration, and so can be problematic for foreign tourists. It assumes all visitors will comply and has limited flexibility for accidental violations.

Frequency of use: This approach is becoming more common at car camping sites, back-country camp-sites, river access sites, historic sites and trekking trails. When demand is high, pre-registration for use is desirable for both the users and the managers. The big issue is the method used for pre-registration. Agencies use telephone, mail and increasingly, the Internet. Six months is a common maximum length of time between the first time allowed for pre-registration and use.

Examples: pre-booking a camp-site; and pre-booking entry to an historic site.

4) Area closures

Definition: Area closures include prohibiting all, or some types of, tourist use of particular areas.

Benefits: If closures are obeyed, all direct human influences and negative impacts at the site are removed.

Costs: This approach restricts visitor freedom. It requires explanation and enforcement.

Frequency of use: Area closures are common at historic sites and museums and other high use locations, such as near visitor centres at high-altitude locations. They are used in protected areas at environmentally sensitive sites, near wildlife concentrations, or in the habitat of endangered species. Usually visitors are provided with reasons for the closure, but this can be counterproductive if the features are attractive and encourage use.

Examples: prohibiting camping in a designated part of the park; allowing camping only at specific sites; closing an area to all recreational use; requiring a permit before entry to the area; and prohibiting camping within certain distances of surface water.

5) Restrictions on the use of fire

Definition: Fire restrictions aim to reduce the visible and biological effects of using fire.

Benefits: This approach significantly reduces the potential of wildfires, reduces fuel wood use, and reduces ecological impacts due to wood gathering. The sale of campfire wood can be a lucrative source of income for parks.

Costs: The costs of fire prohibition include enforcement and loss of the experience value associated with campfires. Some parks have the legal authority to collect costs from those tourists who cause wildfires. If wood collection is prohibited, but fires are permitted, some alternative supplies of wood must be made available.

Frequency of use: Fire restrictions are frequently used in front country, less frequently in back-country. Occasionally, fire prohibitions are implemented in periods of high fire danger.

Examples: fire may be prohibited entirely; fire may be permitted only in designated sites; fire of a certain type may be forbidden (e.g. green wood or locally collected firewood); and in high altitude situations, fire may be allowed only with stoves fuelled by gas.

6) Restrictions by group characteristics

Definition: The characteristics of groups are used to prohibit entry.

Benefits: Significant reductions in biophysical impacts and visitor conflicts; increased visitor safety and satisfaction for those who gain access.

Costs: Reduction in some visitor freedom and accessibility occurs. Information must be provided on the restrictions, and enforcement is required.

Frequency of use: Nearly all national park and other recreation areas employ restrictions on some visitor group types. Most frequent are prohibitions on the use of motorised or mechanised conveyances, such as powered boats, all-terrain vehicles and bicycles. Some backcountry areas prohibit users on horse.

Examples: groups with certain equipment, e.g. guns, vehicles; and groups planning to undertake certain activities, such as orienteering or hunting.

7) Length of stay limits

Definition: Length of stay limits set the amount of time an individual or group may stay in a recreation area.

Benefits: Increased accessibility to the area for more visitors.

Costs: This approach reduces the opportunity for visitors to enjoy longer visits to the area. There are enforcement and administrative costs.

Frequency of use: Length of stay limits are frequent in areas with more demand than supply. Along linear features, such as trails and rivers, users are required to move camp-sites every night, in order to keep the flow of people moving through the area.

Examples: no-one may stay overnight; and no-one may stay longer than three nights at any one place.

8) Technology requirements

Definition: Technology requirements make it mandatory that tourists carry specialised equipment for environmental or safety reasons.

Benefits: This approach can reduce biophysical impacts, and increase safety levels.

Costs: There is an administration and enforcement requirement. Education concerning proper use of technology is needed. The equipment may be expensive.

Frequency of use: It is becoming common on specialised sites, such as white water rivers and other wilderness settings, to demand certain levels of equipment and supplies.

For example, since some wilderness parks ban bottles and cans, this effectively requires that all supplies must be carried in burnable containers, thereby reducing the amount of garbage. Some protected areas require all hikers to carry remote sensing devices to enable easier rescue, if lost.

Examples: visitors must be prepared for cooking with gas stoves only (i.e. no wood burning); visitors must be prepared for personal waste disposal (e.g. portable toilets); and visitors must have appropriate safety equipment.

9) Trip scheduling

Definition: Trip scheduling involves establishing the location and timing of individual group use of a recreation area.

Benefits: Trip scheduling can reduce congestion; provide opportunities for solitude; facilitate interpretation; and reduce competition for limited space. This approach can make management much easier, since it results in a fairly constant and predictable stream of visitors.

Costs: Visitors lose the freedom to see what they want when they want. There are costs to administer schedules and permits. Personnel costs for tours may be high.

Frequency of use: Trip scheduling is common in front-country situations involving historic resources and visitor centres. It is used occasionally on white water Rivers, especially in conjunction with camp-site assignments. It is appropriate for sensitive wildlife species that are easily disturbed by visitors at certain times.

Examples: timing of raft launches on rivers; group naturalist tours of wildlife concentrations; and designated times for viewing historic sites, interpretive films and displays.

10) Barriers

Definition: A barrier is a deliberately established obstacle to visitor movement.

Benefits: There is a reduction of visitor impacts, reduction of vandalism, and efficient movement of people through a site.

Costs: The costs include reduction of visitor freedom to walk/drive wherever they want, construction and maintenance costs and enforcement. Poorly designed barriers can be an unwelcome visual intrusion.

Frequency of use: This technique is common in front country, uncommon in back-country. Not all barriers need to be obvious. There are many park facility designs that allow for the construction of effective, but unobtrusive barriers.

Examples: a fence to keep people out of the breeding grounds of rare species; a ditch to keep people from walking into a sensitive wetland; and a low barrier to keep vehicles off the grass.

11) Site hardening

Definition: Site hardening involves constructing facilities and locating trails and roads to reduce the impacts of visitors on sensitive soils and vegetation, and to help meet the visitors' needs for usable access.

Benefits: Hard surfacing is effective in reducing erosion; and may reduce maintenance costs.

Costs: The approach is relatively expensive. It can be unsightly and out of character, and can cause damage to vegetation if the wrong materials are used. Especially in areas defined as natural zones in the management plan, paved roads and other hard surface features will be incongruous.

Frequency of use: This approach is widely used where the natural surface is unable to cope with the pressures of feet and wheels. It is seldom used in back-country situations.

Examples: hard surfacing materials used to reduce erosion on trails; and hard topping of roads.

12) Park information (see also section 7.5 below)

Definition: Park information involves the provision of data, facts and advice to visitors concerning the park, its biology and geology, locations of visitor facilities, rules and regulations, and appropriate behaviour.

Benefits: The benefits include data, facts and advices which help inform the visitor of what is happening where in the park. It may result in more visitors adopting appropriate behaviours that will reduce impacts and provide the visitors with a more satisfying visit.

Costs: Some forms of information provision are costly. There are personnel, printing and display costs. Information is not universally effective. Brochures, signs and other messages must be placed where visitors will take notice of them. They must be presented in the appropriate language for the visitors, at an appropriate level of educational attainment. The use of the Internet is a very cost-effective way of distributing information very broadly for a low cost. When parks do not provide their own information, they run the risk of others are providing inaccurate or misleading information.

Frequency of use: The communication of park information is commonly used. Nearly all protected areas contain some level of information about some aspect of the area. Those parks with insufficient funds often depend upon private sector tourism operators to provide most of the information.

Examples: leaflets, books, maps etc.; website, local radio; signs, information points; visitor centres; Internet web sites; and face-to-face provision of advice.

13) Interpretation

Definition: Interpretation involves providing information to visitors in such a way that they will be stimulated to learn more and gain more appreciation. Thus interpretation is more than the presentation of data and facts (see Information), but includes weaving them together so that visitors come to understand, and appreciate the values for which the park was established.

Benefits: The primary benefit from effective interpretive programmes is a visitor population which gains understanding and appreciation of the protected area. This in turn can help reduce visitor impacts and provide greater public support for the park.

Costs: The costs of interpretation vary depending on the interpretive methods used. Brochures are relatively inexpensive, whereas major interpretive centres are expensive to construct and operate, though they may be very popular. Visitors to protected areas often pay for their interpretation, through the purchase of programmes or materials.

Guiding services are a major source of employment in many protected areas.

Frequency of use: In wealthier countries, many protected areas provide some type of interpretive materials. In developing countries, protected area managers rarely have the resources for more

than modest interpretive provisions. In many places, the private tourism sector also provides interpretation through specialised programmes and guides.

Examples: nature trails and trail-side signs; field guides, trail leaflets, maps; guided walks or tours; and interactive displays, interpretation centres.

14) Differential pricing

Definition: Differential pricing involves establishing two or more prices for the same recreation opportunity.

Benefits: Differential pricing can redistribute use levels, achieve a social purpose and maximise income in periods of peak demand.

Costs: Differential pricing policies are more complicated to administer, may cause confusion amongst employees and guests, and resentment when the reasons for use are not clearly communicated.

Frequency of use: Most park systems use some form of differential pricing, which combines an element of social justice (e.g. differential charging rates for less privileged groups), market response (e.g. raising prices when demand rises), and management tactics (e.g. to help redirect visitor pressures).

Examples: higher fees during peak holiday periods; differential fees according to location or outlook of accommodation; discounts for children and pensioners; and differential charges for park entry, so that foreign tourists pay more than residents do.

15) Visitor and/or operator qualifications

Definition: A Visitor and/or operator qualification means limiting entry only to those possessing required qualifications.

Examples: scuba divers must be qualified to use a marine protected area; ecotour leaders must have a certificate of competence; and users of the protected area must be accompanied by a qualified local guide.

Frequency of use: Specialised qualifications are common for high-risk activities, such as scuba diving or mountain climbing. They are common too, for commercial businesses that provide guide services to visitors. Some African game parks allow their visitors to view game only from a specialised vehicle with qualified guides, while tours on foot are often permitted only with an armed guard.

Examples: scuba divers must be qualified to use a marine protected area; ecotour leaders must have a certificate of competence; and users of the protected area must be accompanied by a qualified local guide.

16) Tourism marketing

Definition: Marketing is the practice of connecting people's demands with a supply of goods and services.

Benefits: Higher incomes result when the visitors are interested in, and agree with park management policies. Lower conflict occurs when the visitor suits the environments and services available within the protected area.

Costs: While protected area management should aim to understand their visitors' characteristics, wants and needs, research and advertising can be expensive.

Frequency of use: It is important for protected areas to develop a market of customers that are interested in the environments and services that they can offer. Yet protected area managers seldom use professional marketing to develop the appropriate tourism market. This is changing, as protected area managers develop an understanding of marketing, and staffs trained in tourism enter park agencies. The best approach is target marketing, (i.e. going after the sector of the population that is most suitable for the resources, the services and the products available). Protected area managers can also consider de-marketing, that is trying to convince potential park visitors to go elsewhere by reducing promotional activities or promoting alternatives. Some parks in a system encourage visitors to visit other parks in the same system.

Examples: web site information for tourists; briefing of tour operators; and agreements on protected area promotion by the national tourist agency.

II) Zoning in protected areas: Protected area managers face a strategic choice between concentrating and dispersing recreational use. A dispersal strategy is to deal with negative impacts in a small area or several areas, but it is less effective in more sensitive settings. A concentration strategy focuses recreational use on small areas with high levels of management; thereby confining the impacts will be more intense.

Concentration strategy may effectively discourage visitors from gaining access to other parts of the protected area.

Zoning is the principal method used to deploy visitors, and hence it is critical in achieving the appropriate combination of concentration and dispersal. It is designed to allocate geographical areas for specific levels and intensities of human activities and of conservation.

Zoning requires two steps:

1. A descriptive step, which identifies important values and recreational opportunities. It requires an inventory of resource characteristics and types of existing recreational opportunities.
2. An allocation (prescriptive) step; in which decisions are made about what opportunities and values should be provided where in the protected area. It involves managers working with operators, visitors and other stakeholders to determine what should be protected, what facilities will be provided, what programmes should be set up and where and when.

Benefits: 1. the process of zoning helps managers, operators, visitors and local communities to understand what park values are located where;

2. Zoning oriented to establishing standards of acceptable human impact helps to control the spread of undesirable impacts; and

3. Zoning provides a better understanding of the distribution and nature of different recreation and tourism opportunities within and around the protected area.

Zoning should apply to all activities within a protected area including conservation, other land uses, recreation and tourism.

For tourism, zoning involves decisions about what type of recreational opportunity will be provided, and where.

Useful frameworks zoning include the Recreation Opportunity

Spectrum and the Tourism Opportunity Spectrum, both operate at the large-scale, involving whole landscapes extending well beyond protected areas in categories I to IV.

The following table is national parks zoning system in Canada by which land and water areas are classified according to ecosystem and cultural resource protection requirements.

Zone class	Zone purpose	Boundary criteria	Management framework	
			Resources	Public opportunity
I Special preservation	Specific areas or features, which deserve special preservation because they contain or support unique, rare or endangered features or the best examples of features.	The natural extent and buffer requirements of designated features.	Strict resource preservation	Usually no internal access. Only strictly controlled and non-motorised access.
II Wilderness	Extensive areas which are good representations of each of the natural history themes of the park and which will be maintained in a wilderness state.	The natural extent and buffer requirements of natural history themes and environments in areas of 2,000ha and greater.	Oriented to preservation of natural environment setting.	Internal access by non-motorised means. Dispersed activities providing experiences consistent with resource preservation. Primitive camping areas. Primitive, roofed accommodation including emergency shelters.
III Natural environment	Areas that are maintained as natural environments and which can sustain a minimum of low-density outdoor activities with a minimum of related facilities.	The extent of natural environments providing outdoor opportunities and required buffer areas.	Oriented to preservation of natural environment setting.	Internal access by non-motorised and limited motorised means, including in the north, authorised air charter access to rivers/lakes, usually dispersed activities, and with more concentrated activities associated with limited motorised access. Rustic, small-scale, permanent, fixed-roof accommodation for visitor use and operational use. Camping facilities are to be the semi-primitive level.
IV Recreation	Limited areas that can accommodate a broad range of education, outdoor recreation opportunities and related facilities in ways that respect the natural landscape and that are safe and convenient.	The extent of outdoor opportunities and facilities and their area of immediate impact.	Oriented to minimising impact of activities and facilities on the natural landscape.	Outdoor opportunities in natural landscapes or supported by facility development and landscape alteration. Camping facilities will be of the basic serviced category. Small and decentralised accommodation facilities.
V Park services	Towns and visitor centres in certain existing national parks, which contain a concentration of visitor services and support facilities as well as park administration functions.	The extent of services and facilities and their immediate area of impact.	Oriented to emphasising the national park setting and values in the location, design and operation of visitor support services and park administration functions.	Internal access by non-motorised and motorised means. Centralised visitor support services and park administration activities. Facility based opportunities. Major camping areas adjacent to, or within, a town or visitor centre to the basic serviced category. Town or visitor centre.

- Transportation management through zoning: the zoning policies within the management plan should also address transportation matters, such as regulations governing numbers, types and speed of road vehicles; the use of public transport to reach and travel within the protected area; corridors indicating where off-road vehicles, boats and aircraft may move; and the times at which movements can take place. All this requires proper legislative regulation and policing.

- Pricing for visitor management: charging visitor fees can fulfil several management objectives including earning income, decreasing use, increasing use, and moving use to an alternative area or time, creating an attitude of respect, or achieving some desirable social purpose. Experience indicates that modest fees generally do not have a significant effect on park visitation. But there is evidence that people will be put off (and go elsewhere) if the entrance fee to a protected area is a large proportion of the total trip cost especially for long haul visitors.

- Regulation of visitor use: there is also a choice between a strategy of direct regulation, directive measures and indirect measures. Direct regulation of visitor behaviour relies on the force of law. If it is absent, protected area management will lack credibility and be undermined. Indirect measures aim to make the visitor aware, but leave the decision open on where to go and what to do. A strategy based on indirect measures will use information, interpretation and various learning opportunities.

The effectiveness of indirect measures mainly depends on co-operative tourism operators, the general level of education. In practice a combination of direct regulations, directive measures and indirect measures is usually used. Protected agency managers are not able to solve all the problems which may affect the protected area, particularly when they originate from outside it. The degree of control they can exercise is at the following levels. The agency has direct control over its own operations, and can thereby minimise any negative impacts (e.g. by adhering to certain minimum standards for visitor centre or trail construction); or the agency can have an indirect impact on the activities of others (e.g. it may require or prohibit private sector tourism operators from undertaking certain activities); and the agency can influence others – individuals, agencies, communities, operators, etc. Voluntary arrangements made between the protected area agency and partners are now widely used. They may arise out of the initiative of the protected area manager, or of a particular group which has an interest in the protected area. In relation to tourism and protected areas, the following are some examples of Voluntary arrangements.

Systems of standard setting and certification applied to the tourist facility and/or provider.

Charters, which set general principles for tourism in protected areas. An example of a regional system of this kind in Europe

Systems of standard setting and certification applied to protected areas, ensuring that both the site itself and recreation within it are properly managed

Advisory codes for visitors, which indicate appropriate behaviour in protected areas.

- Information and interpretation: Interpretation and education go beyond simply informing, towards developing an understanding and appreciation. The fundamental objectives of interpretation are to promote management goals, to promote understanding of the agency, and to improve understanding of the protected area. Protected area agencies should develop an information and interpretation policy. The goals set by the policy should aim to meet the needs of both the visitor and the manager. Many protected areas will require an interpretive plan to implement the policy. Table below provides a brief summary of the main interpretation techniques that should be considered in preparing the plan.

Interpretation techniques

Technique	Comments
Personal services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide information directly to visitors by park staff or private individuals. • Information duty at park gate, trail head and visitor centre. • Special programmes such as guided walks, campfire programmes and theatre dramas. • Personal services are highly effective, can adapt to a wide range of circumstances, but are very expensive per visitor contact.
Non-personal services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide information to visitors using technology. • Wide range of technology available, including publications, signs, films, Internet sites and radio broadcasts. • Non-personal services are less effective than personal services, are less adaptable to questions and changing circumstances. • Non-personal services can make information widely available at a relatively low expense per visitor contact.
Supporting activities and facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Common facilities include: visitor centres, outdoor amphitheatres, nature trails, information boards, signs. • Common activities include: highly trained interpretive specialists, media specialists, specialised audio and visual equipment, programme effectiveness evaluation. • Many interpretive programmes involved park staff, private tour guides and volunteers. • All the various types of services must be coordinated within an overall interpretive plan.

Visitors require some basic information before they arrive. It is critical that suitable expectations are set in advance. Once they get to the park their needs change, becoming more detailed and complex. This is the demand to which interpretation should respond. It can be also used to modify human behaviour and therefore the environment and cultural heritage resources are better protected and supported. Interpretation through information technology has become very sophisticated recently can be an effective way of transmitting information to visitors. But there are some disadvantages such as; expensive to install, need additional security (e.g. from fire, flood or theft), demand for energy, require skilled maintenance. But perhaps the most important concern is obstructing of the message and gives superficially impressive.

Chapter eight's trend is 'The economics of tourism in protected areas' and deals with the economic aspects of protected area tourism.

- The economic value of tourism: Tourism based on protected areas is a large and growing part of the economy of many countries but in general, economic evaluation data of this kind are scarce, and often unreliable when available. At the same time the most of protected area systems in the world are under-funded. The total economic value of a protected area is the sum of the use values and the non-use values. Use value may be direct or indirect. Direct values are considered to be market values. Indirect values are non-market values. Non-use value may also be broken into different categories: option, existence or bequest value. There is some debate about whether option value is a use or non-use value, because it is a non-use value in the present, and a use value

in the future. All non-use values are also non-market values. Park tourism is most often considered a direct use value of a protected area.

Total economic value of a protected area

Economic value of parks	=	Use value	+	Non-use value
		<p>1. Direct: Recreation, education, research, wildlife harvesting. Associated with direct use of the area. (market values)</p> <p>2. Indirect: Ecological functions of an area, watershed protection, wildlife habitat, climate influence, carbon sequestration. Associated with indirect uses of the protected area. (non-market values)</p>		<p>1. Option value: Insurance to retain option of potential future site use. Protected areas act as a resource bank.</p> <p>2. Existence value: Benefit of knowing a PA exists. Often measured by willingness to donate money or time.</p> <p>3. Bequest value: Provides benefit of knowing the areas will be around for future generation. (all non-market values)</p>

- Measuring the economic impacts of tourism: a brief introduction of different approaches to measure the economic impacts of park tourism are;

Economic impact assessment measures the value of all financial transactions made by groups related to the protected area, and their impacts on a local, regional or national economy. Impacts can be measured in such terms as Gross Domestic Product (GDP), labour income or the number of jobs created by the park.

An economic impact occurs with any financial transaction in an economy, for example a protected area agency buys supplies or a tourist purchases services.

Economic benefits are the gains that a protected area brings to the local, regional or national economy. Benefits are more than financial: they also consist of the non-market values, but they are generally reported in unit figures of the currency. Non-market benefits are measured in protected areas by two techniques – the Travel Cost Method (TCM), and the Contingent Valuation Method (CVM). TCM is based on the value of a protected area to the society as measured by the amount of money that people pay to travel to it and only used for the measurement of consumer surplus. CVM is based on the assumption that consumers can accurately assign a value to recreation experiences and that these values can accurately be captured in a survey and is used to estimate consumer surplus, and also option, existence and bequest values.

The IUCN Task Force on Economic Benefits of Protected Areas recommends that a framework for valuing protected areas should have these three steps:

1. Define the audience (for local, regional, national or global use);
2. Determine the scope of the study (time, data, resources and institutional structure); and,
3. Choose the appropriate analytical techniques (contingent valuation, hedonic pricing, travel cost method, change in productivity methods, change in earnings methods, opportunity cost approach or replacement cost approach) (IUCN, 1998).

- Communicating economic impacts: the findings of economic impact studies should be communicated to interested stakeholders in appropriate levels. Full economic impact studies are valuable for the managing agency itself, and for officials in government, aid agencies and business.

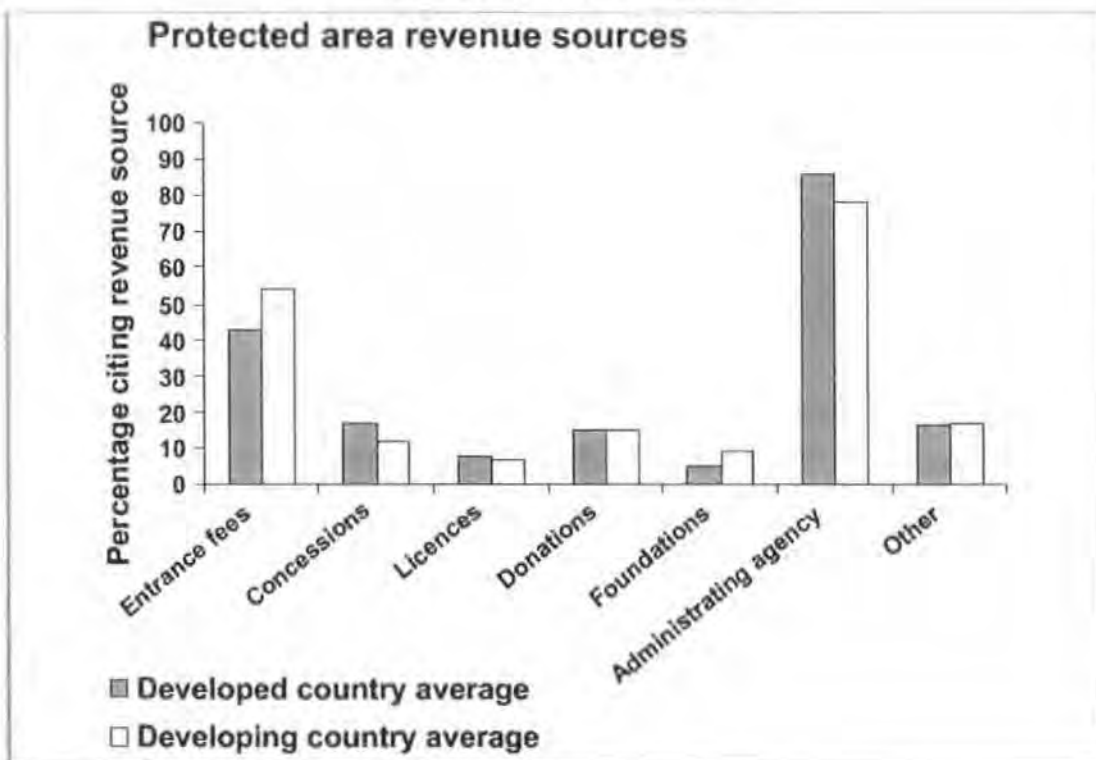
Summary figures are useful for local governments, local tourism interests, local politicians and the local media. Brief summaries of economic impacts may interest park visitors and local citizens. Protected area managers should do all the best to provide such valuations and communicate the results widely.

Chapter nine's trend is 'Financial aspects of tourism in protected areas' and describes financial aspects of park management.

- The chapter begins with a brief overview of the global trends in protected area finance that shows the extent of the challenge. It then reviews the fund-raising opportunities available to managers, and public/private sector relationships. Later sections consider various ways in which extra finance can be generated and secured from tourism: through parastatals; development assistance; user fees; and corporate contributions. It ends with a discussion of the issue of concessions. The average public support for protected areas in developed countries (US\$2,058 per km) is much greater than that in developing countries (US\$157).

- Fund-raising opportunities for protected area managers: funds provided to the park agency from government are the most prevalent revenue source. The second most prevalent source is from entrance fees, a tourism-based income source as shows below;

Protected area revenue sources



Income sources potentially available to protected areas are government funding programmes, park entrance fees, recreation service fees, special events and special services, accommodation.

equipment rental, food sales, merchandise sales, donations, foreign aid, licensing of intellectual property, sale or rental of image rights, parking, cross product marketing, public investments, and private sector initiatives.

- Public and private sector financial relationships: Tourism management in protected areas requires finance, but most agencies take advantage of only a small portion of potential income sources. The mix of finance sources used is the result of the individual initiative of the manager. Government agencies are typically competent providers of tourism services; they often have structural limitations that inhibit efficient and effective functioning. Thus the private sector may be better able to deliver certain services. Financing protected areas is a thorny question the world over. The question of alternative strategies for funding protected areas is studied by an expert panel in the USA and the result lay out below;

Evaluation of funding strategies

Strategy	Economic and Ecological Effectiveness	Viability	Equity	Accountability	Predictability	Flexibility
Capture ecosystem service values	o	+	+	o	+	o
Public investments and donations	+	—	o	+	—	o
Private sector initiatives	+	o	o	+	—	o
Federal funding programmes/ reforms	+	—	+	+	+	—
General public funding	+	—	+	+	+	—

Key: + = High; o = Medium; - = Low (Source: Alkire, 2000).

- The roles of the public and private sectors in protected area tourism can be both mutually supportive and conflicting and the long-term success of protected area tourism requires cooperation between both the public and private sectors.

- Public and private sector cooperation: The current mix of public/private responsibilities is flexible; the private sector can provide almost all service. Both the public and private sectors in wealthier countries usually provide information through visitor centre which could serve as clearing-houses for all types of information. Public and private cooperation is evident in the provision of information databases on the Internet. It is expected that all major protected areas will provide this type of information in the future. The operation of a protected area tourism industry requires the cooperation of both the public and private sector. The long-term health of the natural environment and the financial condition of all sectors of ecotourism depend upon cooperation.

- Funding of protected areas through parastatals: luck of sufficient financial resources may inhibit protected areas from providing high quality services, charging appropriate fees, or functioning in a positive, proactive fashion; and there is little incentive for the employee to provide high levels of service quality. Such concerns have been behind the development of protected area agencies which have parastatal forms of operation. Typically, parastatal agencies function like companies

within government (often called crown or public corporations). The key components of a parastatal structure are; the Internal financial management, Year over year retention of earnings, Flexible staffing policies, Competency-based incentives to employees, Flexibility in setting fees and charges, Flexibility in licensing concessions, properties and services, Ability to respond quickly to client demands, Board of Directors, Higher levels of client service.

The main advantages of parastatals are: their ability to retain the money they earn; the incentive this creates to raise additional funds; and their more autonomous and entrepreneurial approach to operations. As a result, parastatals tend to be much more financially successful and better financed than government agency forms of operation.

- International sources of assistance:

I) Development assistance; There are multilateral donor agencies such as WB and Asian Development Bank and bilateral ones like the European Union, and national programmes such DANIDA, DFID, CIDA and JICA. An important addition to multilateral funding has come over the past 10 years with the establishment of the Global Environment Facility, which is channelled through the WB, UNEP, inter alia to help implement the CBD. In general, multilateral bank funding is available only to governments or to private-sector projects expressly approved by governments. Therefore, projects submitted to development agencies, especially multilateral banks, must usually have the backing of the appropriate government agencies. Typically a development bank grant or loan for the establishment and maintenance of national parks and protected areas would be provided as support to implement a national conservation plan or biodiversity related projects. Increasingly international funding is being channelled through NGOs in both the development and conservation sectors. Most bilateral and multilateral agencies focus their support mainly on poverty relief and see the development of tourism in protected areas as a means to that end. This has led to the advocacy of "pro-poor" tourism strategies.

II) Debt-for-nature swaps: Debt-for-nature swaps are one form of international assistance that can be developed almost exclusively for conservation and protected areas. Under such arrangements, part of the official debt of a government is exchanged for local currency to invest in a domestic environmental protection project. Such projects may include designation and management of protected areas, park personnel training, and environmental education programmes. Swaps have already generated more than US\$100 million for domestic environmental protection projects. Conservation International, The Nature Conservancy and WWF are among the active NGO's in debt-for-nature swaps.

- Tourists' contribution via fees: In most protected area systems, tourism fees and charges are an important part of the income of the park and agency. There are several types of visitor fees levied on protected area property such as; entrance fee, entrance fee, recreation fees, user fee, concession fees, merchandise sales, food sales, accommodation, licences and permits, taxes, leases and rent fees, voluntary donations. Protected area visitors are generally willing to pay much higher fees in parks if the fees go directly towards the management of the environment visited and service

provided, not to a central government coffer. A common problem is that the destinations typically lack the expertise to design effective pricing strategies and financial management structures.

- Guidelines on reducing public resistance to fees are:

- Use fee revenues for quality improvements to trails, toilets, maps, and other facilities;
- Make small fee increases rather than making them in large jumps;
- Use moneys for operational costs rather than as a control mechanism for visitor entry;
- Retain and use money for specific, known, park purposes, rather than for general revenues;
- Use extra money for conservation of the area visited; and
- Provide abundant information to the public about the income earned and the actions funded through it.

- Pricing policies: The main principle underlying park pricing is government policy with regard to public use. Protected area managers need to answer two important questions. First, what are the objectives of the protected area's pricing strategy? Secondly, how are the prices established for a specific product or service in accordance with these objectives? Managers are challenged to develop a comprehensive and focused rationale for fees, and each rationale must be clearly defined in order to defend against scrutiny from park users and political bodies. Brown (2001) offered that fee prices should be based on visitor demand for access. A range of pricing schemes can be used for protected areas lay out below, but flexibility in fee structure is crucial. Very often concerns that increased fees will discourage visitors prove unfounded but based on the experience tourists are ready to pay for quality. Pricing fees is one thing, collecting them is another, particularly if access is not controlled, or in large areas, or in marine areas.

Types of protected area pricing strategies

Pricing scheme	Description
Peak load pricing	Different prices for different times, depending on demand.
Comparable pricing	Prices based on average of user fees charged by other parks for equivalent attractions or services (difficulties may arise when the park is unique and there are not other comparables on which to base a price).
Marginal cost pricing	Prices set where the added costs equal the added benefits derived from the park; prices set at the intersection of the marginal cost and marginal benefit curve.
Multi-tiered pricing	Different prices based on residency, age, location, etc. (these have been found to yield more revenue than a high or low fee alone, but have limits).
Differential pricing	Different prices based on level of service offered (e.g. different prices for camp-sites in different locations of a park may result in a more even distribution of use or increase in revenue).

Source: Brown, 2001.

- Willingness to pay: It is important to understand the visitors to the protected areas in order to determine their ability and willingness to pay for services and products

- Corporate contributions to protected areas: Corporate funding is becoming more common in protected areas. The motivations behind corporate support for protected areas are several:

- A desire to support, and be seen to be supporting, a worthwhile cause;
- For tourist companies working in a protected area, the need to sustain the basis of their industry;
- The need to access resources in or near the protected area;
- As a kind of compensation for damage done to the protected area
- The need to acquire a greener image for the company or its products;
- The benefits that protected areas can bring to their staff and customers.
- The scope for innovative partnerships can be considerable such as profit sharing, corporate donations and incentives, scientific research and royalties, and renting equipment.

- Managing concessions and contracts within protected areas:

Concessions are agreements made between the protected area agency and the operators. Most agencies require operators to have a licence to operate a business in the park. The licence may be exclusive, with no other similar licensed operation permitted, or non-exclusive, when other operations are also allowed. Private sector involvement in protected areas is most commonly related to accommodation, tour operations, waste collection, transit, site maintenance, camp-site maintenance, concessions, and information provision.

- Whether to use concessions: to let out concessions the agency will need to consider the following;

- The capacity and legal powers of the protected area agency
- The strengths of the private sector
- The income foregone
- The suitability of the operation for a concession
- The suitability of non-private sector concessionaires

- Basic considerations in drawing up and letting concessions: The following are among the more important issues that protected area managers need to take account of in drawing up concessions:

- It is necessary that the staff members be suitably trained for such operation. Company and staff qualifications can be one selection criterion.
- There are many operational details, such as hours of operation, range of services, and level of service, that must be outlined in the contract.
- A fundamental issue is that of pricing policy. In some jurisdictions, it is recognised that the park concession has a monopoly and, therefore, regulation of prices is required. In others, competition is encouraged through the development of multiple concession operators in different locales.

- The arrangements for monitoring are important too, and should be specified in the licence, along with the actions that will follow if the concessionaire fails to meet agreed standards.

Selection procedures should be fair to all parties, open, transparent and neutral. Wherever possible, competitive tendering procedures should be adopted.

- Detailed points to be considered in relation to concessions:

- The length of the contract must be long enough for the company to develop their procedures, explore the market and establish a solid business presence. However, the contract should not be too long, so as to avoid complacency. A term of 5 –10 years is often chosen with annual monitoring and evaluation of the contract performance.
- Tourism facilities owned by private enterprise under a form of land lease are often disadvantageous to park management. The basic facilities are owned by the protected area, but are leased to the private sector or donated by private sector to park.
- The concession or licence contract outlines the rights and responsibilities of each party including minimum or compulsory trading hours, standards for customer service, environmental practices, pricing policy, public access to facilities, infrastructure maintenance responsibilities, signage, advertising, staff and operations, accreditation standards, and design of facilities.
- Typically, the park receives a fee from the concessionaire. This fee can be in many forms such as a straight annual set fee or flat fee or a percentage of concessionaire gross revenue or simply be a percentage of all revenue. The fee payable can be gradually increased over times. The fee can be structured to provide incentives for the concessionaire to operate at specific times.
- It is not uncommon for concessionaires to try to avoid contract rules by going to higher levels of government officials or influential politicians. Therefore monitoring, incentives and enforcement is a need in managing parks.
- Local communities can play a beneficial role in concessions. Local people are often excellent guardians of their resources. Local businesses, too, may be used for services in a cost-effective manner for the protected area agency. It is an important option for protected area management, which can contribute significant funds to the local community.

- Summary: the discussion on some of the financial aspects of tourism in protected areas reveals the complexity and sophistication of park finance. Clearly protected area agencies require staff members that are specially trained in finance, as well as accounting and marketing and not transfer untrained staff into such field. Since so many protected areas and their agencies are becoming more reliant on their income from park tourism, their future depends upon competent financial management.

The chapter ten's trend is 'Human resources planning for tourism in protected areas' and contains a number of general observations about the importance of human resources planning.

- Tourism is a critical component of park management, it is important for a park and a protected area agency to have experts as staff members. Effective human resource management in combination with current theories of ecologically based land management, and sustainable sources of income will provide an excellent foundation for managing sustainable tourism in protected areas.

- The human asset: All protected area employees and volunteers are, possibly, the most important single factor in ensuring the successful management of tourism in protected areas. If the relationship between staff and visitors is positive, the benefits will be many. Protected area authorities that are committed to researching, hiring and developing their personnel by using appropriate human resource development strategies will be better placed to protect the environment, involve local communities and share the conservation message with tourists. If the staff are selected carefully and skilfully trained, protected areas will operate more smoothly and tourists will undoubtedly notice, appreciate and share their appreciation with other potential visitors.

There are general trends in the labour force at large that can be used to improve human resource planning, recruiting and pay.

- Job analysis: Each post assigned to a protected area employee should have a specific and detailed job description to ensure job satisfaction for the individual and an efficient and effective organisation overall. Job analysis is a commonly used strategy for identifying organisational human needs. The characteristics that are analysed in a job analysis are:

- Work outcomes (the tasks to be accomplished)
- Work procedures (required job activities)
- Equipment and tools necessary for quality job performance
- Work environment characteristics
- Job specifications (the knowledge, skills, attitude and other characteristics necessary for a suitable level of performance).

Human resource planning must start from the present situation. Staff development programmes offer a mutually beneficial strategy for both employer and employee.

- Recruitment and selection: Recruitment is the process of attracting qualified candidates to apply for vacant positions within an organisation. Selection is the final stage of the recruitment process, when decisions are made as to who will be chosen for vacant positions.

Since protected areas need to pursue a special and sensitive combination of goals, the recruitment and selection of the people charged with the delivery of the work of the protected area particularly whom interface with tourists, is particularly important.

- Human resource development (HRD): By applying a well-ordered and professional HRD approach to work in the protected areas field, the skills, knowledge and attitudes of park personnel

will be enriched and the overall quality of work performed will improve. The three branches of HRD are training and development, organisational development, and career development. Training and development should be focused on developing the individual employee's fundamental competencies, so that employee can perform current and future jobs to the highest standard. Training should include visitor and community relations, financial planning and business skills, environmental education, conflict resolution, ecological research and monitoring, and patrolling and law enforcement. Organisational development is about improving the energy generated when employees work together. Career development is a facet of human resource development that is focused on individual employees and helps prepare an employee for future positions in the organisation. Career development often involves certification programmes, educational diplomas or degrees, apprenticeships and the use of training courses for continuing professional development.

- Performance evaluation: Performance evaluations or appraisals provide protected area managers with essential information for making strategic management decisions. The information gained through the collection, analysis and evaluation of employees' performance enables managers to communicate how well staff are doing, and, if necessary, provides the reasons why changes should be made. Each protected area needs to develop a performance evaluation system that reflects its unique values, goals and objectives.

Chapter eleven's trend is 'Monitoring tourism in protected areas' and covers the questions of monitoring and evaluation.

- Why monitor? Monitoring is the systematic and periodic measurement of key indicators of biophysical and social conditions. Management experience is an important element of decision-making; the results of systematic monitoring provide a more defensible basis for management actions. Monitoring requires ample funding, trained personnel, access to data and sufficient time to implement programmes. There are two particular aspects of monitoring tourism in protected areas, monitoring visitor impacts and monitoring service quality.

- What should managers monitor? Indicators should be identified early on in the planning process. Several points should be noted about the use of indicators to monitor tourism in protected areas:

- 1 They should identify conditions or outputs of tourism development or protected area management (e.g. the proportion of the park impacted by human activity or annual labour income from tourism) rather than inputs (e.g. the money spent on a programme);
- 2 They should be descriptive rather than evaluative;
- 3 They should be relatively easy to measure; and
- 4 Initially only a few key variables should be selected for monitoring.

- Where should managers monitor? Monitoring should be focused on:

- Areas where problems are most acute, and/or where staff or visitors have indicated concerns. These are likely to include places where conditions are at the limit, or violate

existing standards and/or places where specific and important values are threatened; and place where conditions are changing rapidly (Cole, 1983).

- Areas where new management actions are taking place
- Areas where the effects of management are unknown
- Areas where information is lacking and a monitoring programme will provide data on tourism and protected area conditions and trends.

- When should monitoring occur? Timing depends on the indicator being monitored. Research on visitor impacts can be used to identify the most appropriate frequency for re-measurement. The establishment of a monitoring programme at the outset of project development, and the gathering of baseline information allows for early warning of impending changes, enabling timely management action to take place. It is therefore critically important to develop baseline data on initial conditions. The values placed on all subsequent monitoring data will depend upon the changes observed compared to the baseline data.

- Who should monitor? Trained staff, field staff and rangers, the local community, local schools and universities, specialist tourist programmes that support protected area research, tourism operators; and visitors.

The characteristics of a monitoring system: Monitoring should be approached in an organised, systematic manner.

The following are the ideal characteristics of a monitoring system:

- Meaningful variables – the variables measured should provide information that is useful in leading to management change;
 - Accurate results – the results should reflect actual conditions;
 - Reliable system – the monitoring should lead to repeatable results, from which reliable conclusions can be drawn;
 - Able to detect change – the system must be able to detect change resulting from human activity and environmental fluctuations;
 - Affordable – the monitoring design must consider the ability of the agency to fund and carry out the recommended procedures;
 - Easy to implement – procedures should be as simple and straightforward as possible;
 - Appropriate to management capability – the monitoring protocol must be capable of implementation within the capacity of the protected area management
- The Nature Conservancy (TNC) developed guidelines for monitoring programmes as follows;
- Monitoring should be incorporated into general planning and management.
 - Monitoring must be grounded in protected area management and community development objectives.
 - The complex causes of impacts must be recognised and analysed.
 - Indicators and methods for measuring them must be selected carefully. A number of criteria are recommended for selecting good indicators include measurability, precision,

consistency, sensitivity, degree of relationship with actual tourism activity, accuracy, utility, availability of data, cost to collect and analyse

- When selecting standards or acceptable ranges for measuring indicators, several factors must be considered
- Local stakeholder participation is critical.
- Monitoring methodology and analysis of findings must be user-friendly and minimally demanding in time or budget.
- Monitoring results must be carefully analysed to determine appropriate management options.
- Monitoring must lead to specific management and awareness-building actions.

(Website: <http://nature.org/aboutus/travel/ecotourism/resources/>)

- Developing a monitoring programme: To be effective, a monitoring plan should be developed with these features:

- Objectives and rationale – the goals of the monitoring plan relate directly to the goals outlined in the protected area management plan;
- Indicators – the chosen indicators are those that best indicate the conditions to be monitored;
- Monitoring procedures – the frequency, timing and location of measurement activity, as well as specific instructions on methods used;
- Analysis and display of monitoring data – procedures for data analysis and for the presentation of results; and
- Personnel – explicit indication of responsibility for monitoring, effectively integrating the monitoring task into the overall management of the protected area.

TNC recommends the steps appropriate for developing and implementing tourism impact monitoring plan as follows;

A) Planning for monitoring

1) Formation of a steering committee.

2) Holding a community meeting.

B) Developing a monitoring programme

3) Identifying impacts and indicators to be monitored.

4) Selecting methods of measurement.

5) Identifying limits or ranges of acceptable change.

6) Developing an operational monitoring plan.

C) Conducting monitoring and applying results

7) Training staff, managers and community representatives.

8) Carrying out monitoring and examining data.

9) Presenting monitoring results.

D) Evaluating and Advancing Monitoring

10) Evaluating the monitoring programme and conducting outreach.

- Research: Research can provide new knowledge, insight and procedures for tourism management. There are several key Guidelines to be considered in the stimulation and management of park tourism research such as:

- Consider involving a wide range of researchers,
- Adopt an open attitude to research,
- Set up a research permit process,
- Give practical help to researchers and institutes,
- Conduct tourism research using protected area staff or consultants
- Involve private sector tourism operators
- Communicate the results of research
- Stimulate research with awards

Final chapter 'Conclusions' The guidelines suggest that national and international organisations need to encourage governments to make improvements in the following critical areas:

1. Support for effective legislation, with adequate resources for implementation;
2. Creation of national policies on protected areas and the management of tourism as well as education about the environment and conservation; and
3. Development of a management plan for each protected area, covering all activities, including tourism, to ensure that objectives are achieved and resources are well-used.

Tourism Impacts on Coral Reefs and UNEP general activities on coral reefs

A major focus of UNEP is to provide accurate and accessible information on the state of our environment for informed decision-making, adaptive management action and policy-setting.

The Regional Seas Programme of UNEP is due to promote and coordinate monitoring of coral reefs throughout the tropics. Assessments of social, cultural and economic values of reefs serve to highlight the close relationship between reefs and coastal communities.

UNEP is a co-sponsor of the Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network GCRMN, and a member of International Coral Initiatives (ICRI) since it was launched in 1994.

The Global Ocean Observing System which is co-sponsored by IOC (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission), WMO (World Meteorological Organisation) UNEP and IUCN (The World Conservation Union), with assistance of FAO is an international body responsible for Routine Ocean observing systems to Better understanding of the oceans and their resources to facilitate improved ocean management and sustainable development.

Such responsibility will not be possible without the establishment of routine ocean observing systems. A critical component of this system is monitoring of coral reefs because of the apparent links between global climate change and coral bleaching. Coral reefs may yet prove to be the first major marine ecosystem to show significant impacts from global climate change.

UNEP is a partner in the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN), an operational unit under the ICRI umbrella, with the goal of catalysing concerted action for protection of coral reef resources. Thus the coral reef as a multidimensional issue is under appropriate umbrella within UNEP as well as other international bodies.

Coral reef ecosystems are some of the oldest and richest biological communities on the planet, with important stores of biological diversity, significant roles in biogeochemical cycles and coastal protection, and important economic resources for subsistence fisheries, tourism and resource extraction. They are also proving to be important indicators of environmental stress and global change, and a flagship system for integrated coastal management. Globally, coral reef bleaching is signalling global warming and climate change, and the rapid decline in reefs threatens important biological diversity. Coral reefs may be the ecosystem equivalent of the canary in the coal mine, giving early warning that human impacts are now a significant threat at the level of whole ecosystems. Regionally, coral reefs are important indicators of the health of regional seas areas, integrating the cumulative impacts of different regional pressures, and recording the consequences of land-based sources of pollution. Nationally, coral reefs are important economic resources to be managed sustainably rather than degraded for short-term profits. Locally, many coastal inhabitants depend on reef resources, and they are the first to suffer the consequences of reef degradation.

One of the UNEP initiatives to conserve and sustainable use of coral reef is the establishment of The Coral Reef Unit, within the Division of Environmental Conventions in close collaboration with the Division of Early Warning and Assessment and the UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre. Para three of decision 21/5 of 21st UNEP Governing Council (Nairobi, 5-9 February 2001) read as follows; "Supports UNEP's continued participation and existing cooperation in the Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network to implement the global coral reef monitoring network to support conservation and sustainable use of coral reef ecosystems, especially in light of the recently released report which presents the prospect that 60 per cent of the world's coral reefs could be lost by 2030".

In Para 6 of the same decision the GC requested the Executive Director to increase existing collaborative efforts between UNEP's ongoing coral-related activities and multilateral environmental conventions, especially with UNFCCC, Cites, CBD, the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands, and the Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage;

Para 7 requested the Executive Director to develop collaborative approaches with United Nations agencies including FAO, the World Trade Organisation, UNDP and UNESCO , to address the economic, social and environmental urgency of achieving sustainability in the management and use of coral reefs;

Para 8 requested the Executive Director to further increase fund raising efforts to support coral reef related activities and to work with partners including the International Coral Reef Initiative to

maximise the contribution of existing and potential new funding mechanisms to address the urgent needs of conservation and sustainable use of coral reefs.

Decision 21/5 reaffirmed previous decisions of UNEP's GC such as decision 18/33 of 26 May 1995, 19/15 of 7 February 1997 and 20/21 of 4 February 1999, and emphasised on the UNEP role on and urged international coordination and cooperation in this area.

UNEP through Coral Reef Unit is mobilizing an international response in partnership with other concerned governmental, intergovernmental and non-governmental organisations.

The Coral Reef Unit described its objectives and strategy as follows;

- Provides leadership in the UN system and the international community in concerted action to reverse the decline in coral reefs;
- Build consensus and public awareness on the principal causes of coral stress and identify priority actions to control them, in cooperation with other bodies including NGOs;
- Promote effective and coordinated coral reef programmes under global conventions (including CBD, CITES, Ramsar and World Heritage) and Regional Seas Conventions and Action Plans covering warm seas;
- Improve coordination, integration and delivery of practical information, assistance and training on coral reef protection and management, especially through the Regional Seas Programmes;
- Implement UNEP's participation in the International Coral Reef Initiative (ICRI) and the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN), with the financial support of the UN Foundation through UNFIP, including hosting the ICRAN Coordinating Unit at the UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre;
- Facilitate and encourage fund-raising for coral reef projects;
- Collaborate with the GEF and other potential funding mechanisms in designing relevant coral reef projects.

As part of this process, UNEP has assessed where it has a comparative advantage, and where there are opportunities to leverage real progress. According to the Coral Reefs Unit of UNEP, the following are some of the potential domains for UNEP-led action in favour of coral reefs and related ecosystems. Some of these are addressed within the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN). Others require an independent UNEP initiative or the development of new partnerships.

- UNEP, with its Regional Seas Programmes, is well placed to work with governments and strengthen their capacity to take care of their coral reefs. A particular need is to improve the national institutional frameworks for reef management, helping governments to assign clear institutional responsibilities for reef monitoring, assessment, conservation and resource management.
- UNEP works with FAO, UNESCO, IOC, UNDP and the World Bank to build more agency commitment and support to coral reefs through mechanisms such as the Global Observing

Systems. UNEP also continue to lead improvements in global observing, assessment and reporting on coral reefs through the new UNEP.NET global environmental information network, the Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network, UNEP-WCMC and Reef Base.

- Building on its participation in the International Coral Reef Initiative (ICRI) and the Regional Seas Programmes, UNEP works to strengthen partnerships among governments, international agencies, non-governmental organisations and the private sector for coral reef action. ICRAN, in which UNEP is a key partner, is spearheading fund-raising efforts, in collaboration with the UN Foundation and the ICRAN partners, to increase the flow of resources through many channels to assist the protection and sustainable management of coral reef areas.
- Through the Integrated Global Observing Strategy (IGOS) Partnership, UNEP is leading the development of a Coral Reef sub-theme under IGOS, planning how remote sensing and other new information technologies can be used to provide better information support on coral reefs.
- UNEP is helping the scientific community to target research on areas where the lack of knowledge is a real barrier to progress in reef management
- The most important priority is to ensure that coral reefs survive and continue to provide food, protection, recreation and other services to people that most depend on them. In its work with various partners, and particularly through the Regional Seas programmes, UNEP insists that efforts at the global and regional levels must result in practical benefits in the field on specific coral reefs and for the well-being of local communities and economies.

(Source;<http://www.unep.ch/coral/crdocs.htm>)

The latest developments on the implementation of UNEP decisions and recent progress:

In relation to decisions 20/21 (Coral Reefs) and 21/12 (Coral Reefs), several coral reef meetings were held back-to-back in Maputo, Mozambique in November 2001. UNEP's World Conservation Monitoring Centre (WCMC) organised the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN) Steering Committee (SC) Meeting on 24-25 November. This was followed by the International Coral Reef Initiative (ICRI) Regional Workshop for the Indian Ocean on 26-28 November and the ICRI Coordination and Planning Committee meeting on 29-30 November. Finally, UNEP organised the Integrated Global Observing Strategy (IGOS) Coral Reef Theme team planning session on 28 November 2001.

An ICRI resolution on Coral Reefs, Coral Bleaching and Climate Change to the World Summit of Sustainable Development (WSSD) in 2002, was discussed and approved during the biannual meeting of ICRI in Maputo. Delegates called for coral reefs to be put at the centre of the crucial WSSD. UNEP provided comments suggesting the resolution should reflect a balance between the threat of climate threat and other threats to reefs. These comments were approved and incorporated.

UNEP are considering whether they can help to improve the international governance framework for coral reefs, e.g. by exploring the opportunities for the Multilateral Environmental Agreements

(MEAs) with an interest in reefs to become more integrated in coral reef conservation at global and regional level, and by improving the operational effectiveness of ICRI.

Outcomes of the ICRAN Steering Committee meeting include the establishment of an ICRAN communications task force that is involved in overall public relations, fundraising, environmental education and outreach strategies. An ICRAN Task Force for the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) SBSTTA was formed to ensure that ICRAN has substantial input into this convention. An Executive Committee was established at the Maputo Meeting to provide guidance to the ICRAN Director on administrative, management and strategic development issues. Finally, it was agreed to set up a Corals Task Force to deliver ICRAN in each of the four regional Seas Areas where ICRAN is active. The UNEP Coral Reef Unit is working on expanding ICRAN into other Regional Seas areas such as the Red Sea and South Asia.

Other relevant initiatives or bodies related to UNEP on coral reef are as follows;

The UNEP-World Conservation Monitoring Centre has prepared the World Atlas of Coral Reefs, a detailed global map of coral reefs that compiles data on a broad range of coral reef related topics. It contains 94 maps, including global maps of biodiversity and reef stresses, regional maps showing 3-D bathymetry and high resolution maps showing reefs, mangroves, population centres, dive centres and protected areas. Colour photographs show reefs, wildlife, people and places. Introductory texts explaining the formation, structure and ecology of coral reefs; their various uses and abuses at the hands of humans; and the techniques used in coral reef mapping. Detailed texts describe the distribution and status of coral reefs in every country. Data tables list information on biodiversity, human use, and protected areas. These include statistics on coral reef area, biodiversity, fish consumption, and threats. (Source: <http://www.unep-wcmc.org/>)

The International Coral Reef Initiative (ICRI) is a partnership among nations and organisation seeking to implement the marine- and coastal-related provisions of Agenda 21, and other international Conventions and agreements for the benefit of coral reefs and related ecosystems. The Initiative was established to stop and reverse the global degradation of coral reefs and related ecosystems. The ICRI partnership and approach thus far has been to mobilise governments and a wide range of other stakeholders in an effort to improve management practices, increase capacity and political support, and share information on the health of these ecosystems. (Source: www.icriforum.org)

The International Coral Reef Information Network (ICRIN) is designed to support ICRI's goals of sustainable protection for coral reefs and related ecosystems, by providing an integrated system of public information distribution. ICRIN acts as a central source of information on coral reef outreach and education materials and techniques, and as a catalyst for more effective public awareness activities. ICRIN's primary objectives are to communicate effectively to the public the value and importance of the world's coral reefs and the threats to the reefs' sustainability, and to motivate target audiences to take action to protect coral reefs. (Source: www.icriforum.org/icrin/icrin.htm)

The International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN) is a collaborative effort designed to reverse the decline of the world's coral reefs. Supported by the United Nations Foundation (UNF), ICRAN consists of a set of inter-linked, complementary activities that will facilitate the proliferation of good practices for coral reef management and conservation. The project consists of a one-year start up phase, now ongoing, and a four-year action phase from 2001 to 2005. (Source: www.icran.org)

UNESCO - World Heritage Centre UNESCO's World Heritage Convention aims to preserve the Earth's natural and cultural heritage. Several coral reef areas, including Australia's Great Barrier Reef, are included in the World Heritage List of sites of outstanding interest. (Source: www.unesco.org/whc)

UNEP and tourism aspects of coral reefs

This part is examined tourism aspects of and effects on coral reef considering UNEP ideas, initiatives and activities

Coral reefs supply our white sandy beaches with sand, they form barriers that break the waves and protect our shorelines and property, they provide a home to an enormous diversity of marine plants and animals, they support an important reef fishery and provide food to local people, they are a source of new medicines, and they generate income from tourism because of their outstanding beauty and attractiveness.

The reef-building corals are quite particular about the conditions they need to survive and grow. They need clear and clean water, low in nutrients and sediment; they can't cope with much change in the salinity or the temperature of the water, and they need plenty of light because tiny algae (single-celled plants) live inside the coral animals. The algae are essential to the health of the reef, providing some food to the coral and helping to build the skeleton.

Lack of such conditions means coral bleaching. The major man-made threats to coral reefs are coastal development (including land clearing and construction), which causes increased runoff of fresh water and mud; sewage pollution, marine pollution, destructive fishing practices and over-fishing; and physical damage from careless recreational activities.

A major conclusion in the 'Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 1998' (GCRMN) report was of two simultaneous, but contradictory, global phenomena occurring on coral reefs: there is an increasing rate of degradation of many coral reefs due to direct human activities; while there is greatly enhanced awareness by people everywhere about the problems facing reefs and actions are being catalysed to conserve them.

The paradox continues and coral reefs continue to deteriorate in all areas where human activities are concentrated, notably along the coast of eastern Africa, all of continental South Asia, throughout Southeast and East Asia and across the wider Caribbean region. During 1998 there was massive coral bleaching and mortality of corals over large reef areas in many parts of the world.

The following is the status of coral reef in recent years.

Year of Prediction	Reef % destroyed pre 1998	Reef % destroyed in 1998	Reef % at critical stage, loss 2-10yr	More reef % threatened, loss 10-30 yr
1992 - Guam	10	-	30	30
1998 - Reefs@Risk	-	-	27*	31*
2000				0
Arabian Region	2	33	6	6
Wider Indian Ocean	13	46	12	11
Australia, PNG	1	3	3	6
South & East Asia	16	18	24	30
Wider Pacific Ocean	4	5	9	14
Caribbean Atlantic	21	1	11	22
Status 2000 Global	11	16	14	18

*The R@R process determined these numbers by statistically assessing predicted threats to existing reefs, and did not include coral bleaching as a threat.

Source: status of global reef, 2000, page 30, GCRMN (www.aims.gov.au)

Fifty-eight percent of the world's reefs are potentially threatened by human activity. Over exploitation and coastal development pose the greatest potential threat (WRI, Bryant et al. 1998 in <http://www.wri.org/wri/reefsatrisk/>).

Some of the man-made damage is related to tourism. At the same time, tourism is of great economic importance to countries with significant areas of coral reef, such as the Caribbean states and territories.

Because tourism in the Caribbean is dependent almost entirely on coastal resources, most development takes place in the coastal zone and most of the impacts occur in the coastal zone. Impacts from tourism activities include both direct physical impacts (such as diver damage and anchor damage), as well as indirect impacts from resort development and operation, and development of tourism infrastructure in general.

Impacts from tourism can often be reduced by raising awareness and changing behaviour among both tourists and local tourism industry workers.

Tourism has both direct and indirect impacts on coral reefs. Snorkelling, diving and boating can cause direct physical damage to reefs, and fishing and collecting can contribute to over-exploitation of reef species and threaten local survival of endangered species. Indirect impacts relate to the development, construction and operation of tourism infrastructure as a whole (resorts, marinas, ports, airports, etc.).

Direct physical damage from snorkelling and diving has been the subject of extensive study and is well documented. The damage inflicted by divers and snorkelers consists mostly of breaking fragile, branched corals or causing lesions to massive corals. Most divers and snorkelers cause little damage; only a few cause severe or widespread damage. Research indicates that reef degradation and change of reef community structure occurs once a certain level of use by divers and snorkelers is exceeded. As a rule of thumb it is recommended that the level of 5,000 to 6,000 dives per sites per year should not be exceeded. Training and briefing of divers and snorkelers will greatly help to reduce negative impacts.

Physical damage from anchors and especially boat groundings can be severe. Anchor damage is proportional to the size of the boat and is further dependent on the type of coral community. Recovery of coral damage from boat groundings is slow. Anchor damage can be avoided to a large extent by installing permanent moorings, designating anchorages and providing adequate information on anchoring and mooring.

Although fishing has caused declines in reef fish stocks throughout the Caribbean, the direct role of tourism in fishing-related decline is most likely not significant. Indirectly, however, tourism increases the demand for seafood and does have an impact on reef fish resources. Collecting of marine souvenirs by tourists is probably insignificant but there still is a market for marine curiosities in response to a certain tourist demand. This demand can definitely be decreased by increased awareness.

Tourism-related sources of sewage pollution include resorts and, to a much lesser extent, recreational vessels. There is evidence that a very large percentage of the sewage generated by hotels is discharged in coastal waters without adequate treatment. The main impact of sewage pollution is nutrient enrichment, which favours certain species (algae in particular) at the expense of corals. The impacts of nutrient enrichment from sewage pollution on corals in general have been well studied, but those specifically from sewage pollution from hotels and recreational vessels have not been quantified. The studies indicate that the impact of sewage pollution depends on the level of treatment before discharge and the degree of natural flushing by tides and currents at the point of discharge.

Coastal development and the construction and operation of related tourism infrastructure cause increased runoff and sedimentation. Sedimentation is one of the main reasons for reef degradation. Increased sediment loading of coastal waters increases turbidity reduces light levels and leads to stress on corals, usually expressed by "bleaching" of corals. Heavy sediment loading may also cause corals to suffocate and die. Other documented impacts of sedimentation on corals include lower growth rates, reduced productivity and reduced recruitment.

Tourism is obviously a source of large amounts of solid waste, the impacts of which depend very much on the method of disposal. If disposed of inappropriately, leaching of toxic substances may harm corals. Of particular concern is the "accidental" waste - plastics in particular - that is blown into the ocean from beaches or vessels and has a detrimental effect on corals and other marine life. (Source: <http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/sensitive/coral-threats.htm>)

UNEP recently publicized, in five different languages, an electronic guideline for tourism's sustainable use and protection of coral reef sites. The guideline is for both travellers and navigations. The main highlights of "it's my choice 'Coral or no coral?'" are as follows;

- Standing on or picking up corals, feeding fishes, riding turtles or fishing on reefs are harmful for them.
- Do not kick up sand with your fins and do not swim in shallow water.
- Do not feed the fish and never ride the turtles. Swim next to them instead. They love that.

- To be briefed on the coral ecosystem assist to avoid destruction.
- Keep the equipment under control to avoid bumping into the reef. Swim and dive correctly.
- Using fabric bags instead of plastic ones. Plastics threat marines' animal such as tortures.
- Disposing properly of any litter and save water and energy.
- Avoiding purchase coral reefs and shells as souvenir and don't eat the ecosystem.
- Avoid damage caused by careless anchoring.

(Source:<http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/sensitive/coral/home.htm>)

Coastal Zone Management

The world's coastal regions are densely populated and environmentally vulnerable. They are subject to increasing pressures from many sources, including industrial development, urban expansion, the exploitation of marine resources and tourism. According to a recent study by the World Resources Institute 70% of European coastlines are highly threatened, the highest percentage of any region in the world, as indicated by the density of population, roads, pipelines, utilities, cities and major ports. Coastal ecosystems are highly productive and extremely sensitive to such development, and are valuable both ecologically and economically. Coastal waters are the nurseries for most commercial fish and shellfish stocks; coastal tourism is an important source of revenue; and healthy coastal wetlands provide a buffer zone against the impacts of climate change and rising sea levels. (European Code of Conduct for Coastal Zones, Chapter I-Introduction, CO-DBP (99) 11 10) More than half of the world's population lives within 60 km of a coastline. The world's coastal areas are thus exposed to rapid urban growth, increasing population pressure, expansion of major industries, particularly tourism, and extensive exploitation of marine resources. The results include the pollution of marine and freshwater resources, air pollution, loss of marine and land resources, the loss of cultural resources, loss of public access, soil degradation, and increasing levels of noise and congestion. (UNEP)

Agenda 21 in its Chapter 17.11 'Protection of The Oceans' reaffirmed the need to integrate the many uses made of coastal resources and to develop them in harmony with the environment.

Although there have been many attempts to protect coastal areas and to encourage sustainable forms of coastal development, few have been successful. The main reason is that they have largely been sectoral, and there is fierce competition for coastal resources in many areas. For example, there is often conflict in coastal areas over access to the coastline, which is required for tourist beaches, marinas, aquaculture and cooling for power generation.

In 1995 'the guidelines for Integrated Management of Coastal and Marine Areas' was published by UNEP as an initiative to protect sensitive coastal area. On the environmental impact of tourism guidelines highlighted that 'the environment of many coastal areas has been adversely affected by tourism. In many of the major resorts in the Mediterranean area, for example, the population more than doubles during the summer tourist season, and local government is hard pressed to provide the resources required. As a result, in several areas of the Mediterranean bathing water is polluted,

the sea is over-fished, natural wetlands are drying up, and disposal of waste and sewage presents difficult problems.

Almost all coastal and marine areas produce or support multiple products and services. Sectoral solutions usually 'transfer' the problem between resources, products and services. But coastal resources cannot be sustainably used by any interest group as their exclusive right. Most importantly, the sea cannot be regarded as a common basin for effluent disposal. Tourism will not flourish if the area loses its attraction to visitors; fisheries are usually on the receiving end of everyone else's problems. Industry and energy facilities can degrade the environment for all other activities. There is, therefore, a need to bring sectoral activities together to achieve a commonly acceptable coastal management framework.

Coastal environments are under increasing pressure and their problems can no longer be avoided or deferred. The transfer of coastal water pollution downstream, or air pollution dispersed further a field by ever higher smoke stacks, are not acceptable (or sustainable) solutions to coastal conflicts. Instead, environmental costs must be incorporated into economic evaluations and not passed on to other areas or to future generations. An integrated approach to coastal and marine management is needed to resolve the conflicting demands of society for products and services, taking into account both current and future interests'.

Integrated coastal zone management (ICZM)

In 1992, The Integrated Management of Coastal Zones was published by FAO, in its fisheries technical paper N°327 which is considered positively by UNEP. The major aims of such endeavour were Strengthen sectoral management by improving training, legislation and staffing; preserve the biological diversity of coastal ecosystems by preventing habitat destruction, pollution and over-exploitation; and promote the rational development and sustainable use of coastal resources

The main principles of mentioned Integrated Coastal Zone Management (ICZM) are as follows;

- The coastal area is a unique resource system that requires special management and planning approaches.
- Water is the major integrating force in coastal resource systems.
- It is essential that land and sea uses be planned and managed in common.
- The edge of the sea is the focal point of coastal management programmes.
- Coastal management boundaries should be issue-based and adaptive.
- A major emphasis of coastal resources management is to conserve common property resources.
- Prevention of damage from natural hazards and conservation of natural resources should be combined in ICZM programmes.
- All levels of government within a country must be involved in coastal management and planning.
- The nature-synchronous approach to development is especially appropriate for the coast.

- Special forms of economics and social benefit evaluation and public participation are used in coastal management programmes.
- Conservation for sustainable use is a major goal of coastal resources management.
- Multiple-use management is appropriate for most coastal resource systems.
- Multi-sector involvement is essential to sustainable use of coastal resources.
- Traditional resource management should be respected.
- The environmental impact assessment approach is essential to effective coastal management.

Blue Flag

The United Nations Environment Programme, jointly with the Foundation for Environmental Education in Europe (FEEE) and the World Tourism Organisation (WTO), published, in 1996, "Awards for improving the coastal environment: the example of the Blue Flag" . The main objective of this document was to share with non European countries the experience developed in Europe in the use of the Blue Flag award as environmental management tools for beaches and marinas. The first part of the publication deals with the development and operation of the Blue Flag scheme, the range of criteria to be fulfilled such as water quality, cleanliness, safety and management of beaches, information and education. Examples of national initiatives are used to illustrate how they are applying the campaign to better respond to country specific needs and priorities.

The second part of the publication discusses the lessons learnt from the European Blue Flag scheme. It highlights the problems likely to be encountered and the necessary steps to mount a successful coastal award campaign in non-European regions.

UNEP has supported the transfer of the Blue Flag idea and concept to non-European regions. The Blue Flag Programme is a voluntary certification scheme for beaches and marinas that has proved to be effective in assisting and facilitating the implementation of environmental policies. The scheme has been operated since 1987 by the Foundation for Environmental Education in Europe.

Blue Flags are awarded based on achievements in four areas: water quality, safety and services, environmental management, environmental education and information.

A successful Blue Flag programme is supported by national, local, and regional policies on safety, water quality, environmental education, waste management, management of nature-based recreation, siting of tourism facilities and other issues. The Blue Flag also strengthens and facilitates the effective implementation of these policies.

UNEP proposed that before adapting the European Blue Flag scheme to other regions, an initial feasibility evaluation should be conducted and thus has supported the feasibility evaluation phase in Asia Pacific in August 1999 and in Caribbean islands in December 1999.

In other development UNEP participate on drafting the European Code of Conduct for Coastal Zones which was an initiative of the EUCC that launched the idea in 1993. It was included as a priority action in the Pan-European Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy (PEBLDS, 1995) and drafted in 1996/97 by EUCC staff under the auspices of the Council of Europe and UNEP. It

was officially adopted by the Council of Europe Ministers in April 1999. The main points of subsection 11.4 of chapter 11 'Tourism and Recreation' of European Code of Conduct for Coastal Zones CO-DBP (99) 11 are lay out below;

The European guidelines for tourism development in coastal areas

Tourist development should be carried out in such a way as to ensure that the environmental, cultural, and social diversity of the area is protected and enhanced. First and foremost, it needs to meet the needs of the local host community without compromising the natural or cultural values which are attractive to tourists in the first place, or the economic viability of existing sustainable commercial activities. Local communities can be supported, for example, by the use and promotion of locally produced food, wines, and souvenirs.

The attitudes of local communities and civil society in general should be incorporated into development plans at the earliest stages, well before planners become wedded to any particular decision. In addition, it should be determined whether the carrying capacity of the local environment can sustain a new tourism development, adhering to the Precautionary Principle, before further planning is allowed to proceed. Inland attractions should be promoted to relieve pressures on coastal beaches.

Zoning of coastal lands for specific recreational uses, seasons, or for nature and wildlife conservation should be encouraged, and allow for the possibility of establishing disturbance-free zones in the habitats of threatened or endangered species.

- Siting of Buildings and Infrastructure: Development in coastal regions which does not require a coastal location can be concentrated outside of the coastal strip. Guidelines related to the siting of buildings and infrastructure can be found in the Chapter on "Urbanisation".

- Design and Planning: The possibility of refurbishing existing buildings and facilities should be fully explored before any new construction is considered. In some areas care should be taken where older buildings may be the refuge of breeding birds or bats.

Where new facilities are considered necessary, they should be compatible with the architecture and environment of the surrounding area. Large buildings which impair quality of scenic views should be avoided. Innovative designs, technologies and construction techniques should be encouraged and supported.

During the planning stage, past use of the site should be investigated to determine whether digging will uncover contaminated land, as this will require special treatment.

Facilities should be designed to avoid changes in near-shore sediment transport patterns, the geomorphology of the coastline, and/or water quality. Before any coastal installation is built in or near to a coastal location, a thorough study of the geo-morphological regime is essential. This will reveal the way in which sedimentary patterns affect existing habitat development and provide a basis for assessing the likely changes to sedimentary transport systems consequent upon erecting any structures.

The construction of traditional shoreline promenades should be avoided, as these will disturb coastal dynamics in much the same way that roads, rows of hotels, and other such barriers do. Alternative designs which can be integrated into the natural environment should be considered.

Interference with natural run-off patterns should also be avoided. Activities which increase the volume or toxicity of run-off and which should be avoided include: extensive paving (roads, parking lots), destruction of vegetation and the use of fertilizer and/or pesticides (e.g. for maintaining golf courses).

Designs should ensure that natural vegetation is left intact as much as possible. Where this is not possible, indigenous species should be used for landscaping. Landscaping should be planned so as to avoid the need for excessive watering (and appropriately treated effluent should be used for watering vegetation).

Buildings should be positioned and designed in such a way as to save energy, by reducing the need for artificial lighting, heating, cooling or ventilation and making use of renewable energy technologies (e.g. solar).

- Construction: Construction materials should be environmentally friendly and conducive to re-use or recycling. The use of toxic building materials such as certain plastics (particularly PVC), and chemicals harmful to climate and the atmosphere (e.g. CFCs, HFCs, HCFCs) should be avoided. Materials which require minimal energy inputs are also favoured (e.g. unfired bricks, wood instead of aluminium). The use of glue (e.g. for connecting prefabricated housing units) should be avoided where possible, because of both its fumes and its permanence - glue prevents materials from being re-used at a later time.

Finishing wood with natural oils and paints (based on linseed oil and pigmented with iron oxide, for example) is preferable to the use of permanent paints (normal latex or oil-based). The use of traditional lime mortar will permit the re-use of bricks when a building is eventually torn down: modern mortars are stronger than bricks so that when brick buildings are demolished, the bricks break before the mortar.

During construction, all efforts should be made to avoid trampling or otherwise damaging vegetation, dunes and the beach. Materials should be stored in designated places, preferably on elevated platforms. Fuel and chemicals should be stored on an impervious structure. Leaking or empty oil drums should be removed immediately, and soils which may have absorbed spills should be removed.

Dust should be damped down to avoid covering sensitive habitats. Polluted wastewater should be collected and removed, and under no circumstances should be allowed to enter the natural drainage system, including ponds or marshes. The use of concrete should be carefully controlled to minimise the chance of leakage into watercourses.

Once facilities are built, efforts should be made to monitor impacts on the coastal environment. If unforeseen impacts arise, activities should be modified to minimise or mitigate environmental impacts.

- **Energy Conservation:** Wasteful energy practices should be discontinued. For example the installation of energy saving devices such as compact fluorescent lighting should be promoted while the installation of energy wasters such as electric hand and hair dryers in toilets and bathrooms should be avoided. Tourists should be reminded to conserve energy, for instance by switching off lights when they leave the room.

- **Wastewater Treatment:** Adequate wastewater treatment is an essential component of tourism development. Guidelines can be found in the Chapter on "Water Management".

- **Solid Waste Treatment:** Provisions for the handling and treatment of solid waste generated by tourist facilities should be arranged prior to their development in close cooperation with municipal authorities where relevant. Guidelines on solid waste treatment are included in the Chapter on "Urbanisation".

- **Litter:** Coastal and marine waste management strategies should form an integral part of coastal zone and/or tourism management plans. A "deposit on return" system for drinks containers and plastic carrier bags should be considered as part of such a plan.

Provisions should be made to keep beaches clean and free from litter, by providing adequate waste receptacles, sanitary facilities, carrying out beach clean-ups, etc. "Sharps" boxes should be provided for the disposal of glass, needles and similar items.

Shops, restaurants, hotels and other businesses located near the seafront should adopt proper waste management practices, including reducing their wastes and preventing it from escaping into the marine environment. They should also make efforts to reduce litter generated by their customers, including by providing sufficient waste receptacles. Efforts to recycle should be encouraged by making waste separation receptacles conveniently available to guests.

Businesses should be encouraged to avoid the use of disposable products (plates, utensils, table cloths, cups, toiletries). When disposable products are used, they should be made of recyclable materials. Recycled and non-chlorine bleached paper should be used whenever paper products are provided.

- **Water Conservation:** The size of any tourism project should be commensurate with the potential for the local hydrologic cycle to sustain it without depleting groundwater reserves. It should be anticipated that tourists (particularly those from developed countries) are likely to use more water than local populations in areas where water resources are scarce. Water saving toilets, shower heads and faucets (e.g. those that release water only when the user's hands are present) can be installed; towels and linens can be changed only when necessary. Tourists should be informed about the need to conserve water (see checklist for tourists).

- **Transport and Tourism:** Tourist facilities should be designed in such a way as to make walking and cycling attractive to tourists. However, especially in the coastal strip, tourist movement should be organised and enforced in such a way that deterioration caused by trampling is avoided. Facilities to rent and/or store bicycles should be conveniently located. Free or low-cost shuttle buses which run on clean fuels should provide a viable alternative to the use of private

automobiles. Hotels and resorts should provide walking/cycling path maps for tourists upon arrival. Additional guidelines related to Transport and Tourism can be found in the Chapter on "Transport". (Source: <http://www.coastalguide.org/code/cc.pdf>)

UNEP and Sustainable Tourism of Islands in the context of Sensitive area

UNEP has contributed to sustainable use of natural resources in islands by promoting international conferences and framework making.

- Sustainable Tourism in Small Island Developing States and Other Islands; UNEP and WTO/OMT organised the international conference on Sustainable Tourism in Small Island Developing States and Other Islands in Lanzarote, Spain in October 1998. The Conference focussed on transport, maritime tourism and on the different tools which can be implemented to prevent environmental impacts of tourism on small islands. A comprehensive review is done in chronological part of this chapter which includes summary of outcomes and final report.
- International Conference on Sustainable Tourism in the Islands of the Asia-Pacific Region: WTO/OMT and UNEP co-organised the Hainan Conference with the support of UNESCO in Sanya, Island of Hainan, China 6-8 December 2000 The conference, was a regional follow up to the Lanzarote conference and examined the various aspects that need to be considered by governments and the private sector with the aim of tourism contribution to the overall economic, social and environmental sustainability. The conference produced "the Hainan Declaration", a document outlining main conclusions based on the UNEP Principles for Implementation of Sustainable Tourism. The summary of conference and related documents as well as Hainan Declaration is reflected in the chronological part of this chapter.(Source: <http://www.sidsnet.org/>)

UNEP and Mountain Tourism

Chapter 13 of Agenda 21 deals with the management of vulnerable ecosystems and sustainable development in mountainous regions which notes that mountains are an important source of water, energy, biological diversity, key resources, such as minerals, forest products and agricultural products, and of recreation . Chapter 13 includes two programme areas to further elaborate the problem of fragile mountain ecosystems: these are (1) generating and strengthening knowledge about the ecology and sustainable development of mountain ecosystems; and (2) promoting integrated watershed development and alternative livelihood opportunities. Chapter 13 states, "The fate of the mountains may effect more than half of the world's population and that particular attention should be paid to mountain resources, especially water and biodiversity". It recognised mountain tourism as an important component in sustainable mountain development and conservation of mountains on the global environmental agenda. Sustainable mountain development was discussed at the third session of the Commission on Sustainable Development

and the nineteenth Special Session of the General Assembly. Within the framework of the Commission's multi-year programme of work, it was taken up at the eighth session, in the year 2000, in the context of the sectoral discussion on "integrated planning and management of land resources."

The Commission on Sustainable Development on the Third Session (11-28 April 1995) had the issue in its agenda and in its section four of its report 'Sustainable mountain development' highlighted the outcome of the commission. Para 194 and 195 of the report reads as follows; "The Commission urges interested Governments, with the support of the international community, to prepare and implement comprehensive national and/or local mountain development programmes in relevant countries as outlined in chapter 13 of Agenda 21: the "mountain agenda". These include strengthening national capacity for sustainable mountain development and the preparation of long-term mountain action plans. Action-oriented projects and programmes should emphasise the long-term monitoring of their environmental, economic and social impacts. Initiatives to implement the mountain agenda should incorporate development strategies that address the impacts on mountain communities and ecosystems of, inter alia, production and land-use systems, tourism, transportation policies and energy production and use. These initiatives must incorporate a participatory approach involving all stakeholders, including farmers, women, and local and indigenous communities, as well as non-governmental organisations.

The Commission also recognises that there is a need to take a new look at the overall flow and full-cost pricing of resources and services to and from mountain areas, including water, wood and non-wood as well as range products, energy, mineral resources, tourism and human and government services. The Commission further recognises the need for a fair share of the benefits derived from the use of mountain resources to remain with the local people and their communities".

On July 1998 the ECOSOC proposed the members of the UN General Assembly to designate 2002 as the International Year of Mountains (IYM). Accordingly UN General Assembly in its resolution 53/24, on 10 November 1998, proclaimed the Year 2002 as the International Year of Mountains in recognition of the crucial role that mountains play in our lives. The Task Manager for CSD multi-year programme was the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations (FAO), which also served as lead agency for the 2002 International Year of Mountains.

SG in his report (E/CN.17/2001/PC/14) to WSSD on Sustainable mountain development in 2 March 2001 pointed out that "Mountain issues fall into several programme areas, all of which have seen various degrees of progress. The major areas include: rural development and food security; conservation of biological diversity; fresh water; forests; tourism; climate change; disaster reduction; culture and traditional knowledge; and research. Progress in all these groups has been reported on in some detail in past reports of the Secretary-General to the Commission on Sustainable

Development and will not be described in further detail here''. He also in the same report mentioned that cultural diversity and traditional ways of life in maintain area provide opportunities for economic growth, especially through tourism, as they are major reasons for the fact that many people want to visit mountains. The balanced and prudent approaches are needed in developing the enormous potential offered by tourism in mountain areas to avoid negative impacts in terms of both environment and people.

Mountains provide most of the worlds freshwater. More than 3 billion people rely on mountain watersheds for their supplies of fresh water. Mountains are a source of key resources such as minerals, forest products and agricultural products and of recreation as well as hosting the most divers' species than other part of the earth. Mountains are one of the world's most important tourist destinations and have become a magnet for tourism, which is the most rapidly growing industry in the world. Tourism is vital to the conservation and development of mountain regions. Mountain tourism accounts for 15 - 20% of worldwide tourism, or US\$ 70 - 90 billion per year. By the year 2010, the World Tourism Organisation predicts that there will be one billion international tourists and more than US\$1,500 billion generated in revenue (UNEP). As tourism increases in mountain regions around the world, environmental, social and economic impacts can also be expected to increase. Tourism presents both opportunities and dangers for mountain regions. Tourism revenues have become a primary source of income for many mountain communities. The influx of visitors into mountain regions poses a threat to these unique and often pristine environments. More than 50 million people visit mountains each year. They are drawn to these areas by the physical beauty of environments. One promising answer to the challenge of developing mountains wisely for recreation is ecotourism. Ecotourism can help reduce poverty and hunger, a key issue in mountain areas where a high proportion of the world's poor and food-insecure live. It also has considerable potential for strengthening communities and for protecting mountain ecosystems. This form of holidaymaking makes a point of putting something back into the area and culture being visited, in terms of revenue and financial support for conservation projects, but often also in-kind. Some tourism operators plant trees to combat desertification, collect garbage from trekking regions and ensure tourists use biodegradable wrapping on food and drink. During many eco-holidays, tourists help out with projects that protect endangered species and habitats. Handled properly, ecotourism can be a valuable tool in advancing tourism, especially for poor mountain communities in the developing world, without destroying natural resources and the environment. (Source: <http://www.mountains2002.org>)

UNEP has set-up a Mountain Programme coordinated by UNEP's World Conservation Monitoring Centre (UNEP-WCMC) and launched the following activities.

- UNEP Mountain Programme in Europe and Central Asia: In response to requests from governments in Europe and Central Asia, UNEP has launched the European mountain initiative. The initiative, which builds on the experience of the Alpine Convention, covers the Carpathians and the Caucasus mountain ranges as well as mountains in Central Asia and aim at assisting

Governments of the region in facilitating increased cooperation for the protection and sustainable management of the exceptional ecosystems of these majestic mountain ranges. The European Mountain Initiative is on the agenda of the Ministerial Conference "Environment for Europe", to be held in Kyiv, Ukraine, in May 2003. (Source: <http://www.unep.ch/roe/emi.htm>)

- Global Programme of Action for Mountains: The UNEP Global Programme of Action for the Protection of the Marine Environment from Land-based Activities is implementing innovative approaches to promote sustainable development. UNEP, in partnership with the UN Focus Group on Mountains and FAO is now exploring the possibility of setting up an International Partnership or a Global Programme of Action for Sustainable Mountain Development.

- Mountain Watch / Mountain Atlas: UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre is working with partners to provide information on mountain ecosystems. The Centre has made a World Map of Mountains and their Forests, which provide basic materials for a proposed World Atlas of Mountains. It is working to develop Mountain Watch, a map-based global overview of mountain biodiversity and the priorities for management

- Bishkek Global Mountain Summit: The Bishkek summit on International Year of Mountains from October 29th to November 1st, 2002 is the main global concluding event of IYM, will draw together the ideas and recommendations generated from all levels and sectors of society at previous events and agree concrete actions for the sustainable development and management of mountain areas in the 21st century. The UNEP Mountain Programme is facilitating the preparation and implementation of the Summit meeting. (Source: <http://www.globalmountainsummit.org>)

UNEP and International Activities

International Year of Ecotourism

Along with the World Tourism Organisation, UNEP is the UN task manager for the International Year of Ecotourism 2002. The project includes activities to support the World Ecotourism Summit in Quebec, May 2002, through partnerships with WTO and relevant NGOs. Through publications, preparatory regional and stakeholder-specific meetings, events and awareness campaigns, the project aims to ensure that the Summit achieves its goals of strengthening the capacity of governments and the private sector to use ecotourism as a tool for sustainable development and conservation of natural and cultural resources. The full review of the preparation process and Ecotourism Summit and its main output 'Quebec Declaration' will be discussed in the WTO part of this Chapter.

UNEP Contribution to the CSD7

UNEP based on the initiation of Secretary General of United Nations provided the Commission on Sustainable Development at its seventh session in 19-30 April 1999 with contribution report E/CN.17(05)B22 on Tourism and Environmental Protection.

The contribution report contains five parts. In the first part 'Tourism relationship with the environment' first the tourism environmental impact and its contribution to the environments was underlined briefly.

In section A of part I the environmental impact of tourism is pointed out.

The main potential adverse impacts of tourism on the environment are;

- Land and landscape: pressure on natural resources such as sand mining, beach and sand dune erosion, soil erosion, urbanisation, road and airport building leading to land degradation, loss of wildlife habitats, deterioration of scenery,
- Marine resources: and recreational impacts, damage to coral reefs and subsequent impacts on coastal protection and fisheries;
- Atmosphere: high levels of energy use in tourism facilities and in transportation
- Freshwater: overuse of critical water resources for hotels, swimming pools and golf courses.
- Pressure on other local resources: for example energy, food, and other raw materials which may be in short supply locally.

The main harm to wildlife and habitats are;

- Biological resources: disruption of wildlife habitats, clearance of vegetation for tourism developments, increased pressure on endangered species due to trade and hunting; extra demand for fuel wood, forest fires;
- Ecologically fragile areas such as rain forests, wetlands, mangroves, coral reefs, sea grass beds could be threaten, if nature tourism not properly planned and managed.

The main impact to the environment by Pollution and wastes contaminate are:

- Land: solid wastes and litter (a tourist produces an average of about 1 kg of waste a day)
- Freshwater: pollution by sewage
- Marine waters and coastal areas: sediment run off, pollution from land-based hotels and marinas; waste and litter linked with marine sports and cruises
- Air: at local level, air pollution from tourist transportation, global impacts, especially from CO₂ emissions, related to energy use in transportation, air-conditioning and heating of tourist facilities, etc.
- Noise: related to ground as well as air transportation.

The main Social and cultural pressures related to conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity are;

- Social and cultural impacts: tourism means disturbance to the local way of life and disturbance of social structures, and can adversely affect traditional practices that contribute to the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity
- Adverse impacts on livelihoods and lack of benefit sharing with those who bear tourism related costs to both the human and natural environment.

- Resource use conflicts: competition between tourism and local populations for limited resources of water, sanitation and energy, competition with traditional land uses, especially in heavily used areas such as coastal zones.

In the section B of part I 'environmental threats to tourism' the main points are;

- Global warming which threatens tourism in coastal areas and small island developing states, in ski resorts and hurricanes.
- Loss of biodiversity linked to human activities and loss of landscape attractiveness affect a number of tourist destinations
- Water pollution damages tourism sites in many regions as well as contaminating the freshwater supply.
- Local air pollution linked to urban congestion can discourage tourists from visiting some destinations.

In the section C of part I 'contribution of tourism to the environmental conservation' the main points are as follows;

- The tourism industry can contribute to the conservation of areas that are assets for their development such as parks, protected areas, cultural and natural sites, through financial contributions, provision of environmental infrastructure and improved management.
- Tourism also helps raise awareness of the local population with regards to the financial value of natural and cultural sites;
- For sustainable tourism, there is a need to better understand develop a more systematic analysis of direct and indirect costs and benefits from tourism as well as green accounting approaches.

In part II 'environmental challenges for the private sector' the main points are as follows;

- The tourism industry has developed a number of voluntary initiatives such as environmental management of tourism facilities and especially hotels as well as development of ecolabels and environmental code of conducts.
- The key remaining challenges are to promote wider implementation of environmental management, use more widely environmentally-sound technologies, raise the awareness of tourism clients, develop a better dialogue with the local communities, work with governments and other stakeholders to improve the overall environmental quality of destinations, report publicly on environmental performances and address the key issues of siting and more eco efficient design of tourism facilities.

In part III 'environmental challenges for governments' the main points are;

- A number of initiatives have been taken by governments including develop national strategies or master plans for sustainable development of tourism, develop appropriate regulatory mechanisms and tools, create terrestrial and marine protected areas, support voluntary initiatives by the tourism industry;
- The key remaining environmental challenges for governments are;

- ratification and implementation of international and regional environmental conventions, integrate more fully tourism development into the overall plans for sustainable development, develop more widely land use planning, and protect the coastline through building restrictions, identify and adopt the most appropriate mix of regulation and economic instruments, work towards the real enforcement of regulations and standards.
- improve the understanding of the benefits and burdens of tourism in environmental, social and economic terms, strengthen capacity for the management and control of tourism in their sphere of responsibility, provide support through pilot projects and capacity development programmes, ensure the participation of all stakeholders especially indigenous and local communities, ensure that tourism makes a positive contribution to economic development and that the economic benefits of tourism are equitably shared, encourage and catalyse industry initiatives for sustainable tourism across all sectors of the tourism, promote changes in consumer behaviour in both host and guest
- Develop activities to monitor, control and mitigate adverse effects of tourism development,

In part IV 'challenges for NGO's' main points are as follows;

- NGOs assist to modify consumers' preferences and behaviour, making sensitive issues public and highlighting problematic areas and influencing decisions as well as increasing the environmental awareness and educational level.
- Key remaining challenges for NGO's are more specifically voice their views in tourism policies and strategies, contribute to development, and implementation, of environmental standards for tourism develop or participate in raising awareness and education, assist with monitoring tourism activities and development

In part V 'environmental policy challenges for the international community' after a short briefing of their activities, the report highlights main remaining challenges ahead of international community as follows;

- Assist and support governments in development of national strategies or master plans for sustainable development of tourism and of environmental land use and building regulations and standards for tourism
- Raise awareness and build capacity of all stakeholders by providing information on best practices for sustainable tourism
- Encourage the private sector to develop and apply codes and guidelines, environmental management systems, and promote the development of the use of environmental reporting by companies in the various branches of the tourism sector;
- Assist in assessing the environmental effectiveness of existing voluntary initiatives in the various branches of the tourism sector and present corresponding recommendations
- Promote the transfer of Environmentally Sound Technologies, practices, and management tools adapted for the tourism sector

- Work with other stakeholders to establish, and disseminate lessons from, Best Practices projects on sustainable tourism
- Provide support through provision of information and capacity development
- Programmes particularly on the costs and benefits of tourism development, the use of economic incentives to promote sustainable tourism,
- Assist in establishment of monitoring of progress towards sustainable tourism.

The report finally accounts the emerging issues as developing partnership, involvement of the banking and insurance sectors, use of economic instruments, involvement of tourism boards, capacity building of local government, greater focus on transport, emerging types of tourism, improve monitoring.

UNEP Contributions to WSSD on Sustainable Tourism

After a decade of intensive endeavours, WSSD as the highest level forum of international decision-making recognised the important role of tourism industry as a major sector, but is struggling to cope with the corresponding ecological effects. UNEP has a key role to support governments and industry to foster effective programmes focused on sustainability, using the WSSD as a milestone. The main outcome document of WSSD in Johannesburg, the Plan of Implementation, contains targets and timetables to spur action on a wide range of issues, as well as focusing on a new range of issues comparing with Agenda 21 such as sustainable tourism.

The Plan of Implementation makes several references to sustainable tourism:

Chapter 41 of the Plan of Implementation promotes sustainable tourism development as a means to increase the benefits from tourism resources for the population in host.

Chapter 64 calls for support of Africa's efforts to attain sustainable tourism that contributes to social, economic and infrastructure development through a variety of measures.

Chapter 19 explains the interlinking of energy conservation and emission control in the context of Integrate energy considerations and socio-economic programmes as well as major energy-consuming sectors, inter alias tourism.

Chapter 42 on the important issue of biodiversity conservation also named tourism as one of its relevant area of concerns

Chapter 52 reveal sustainable tourism as an issue for sustainable development of SIDS.

A comprehensive review on the sustainable tourism in WSSD is developed on the second part of Chapter two of present research.

In preparation for the World Summit on Sustainable Development, a series of Preparatory Committee meetings were held. During the WSSD preparation process UNEP contributed by organising a panel discussion at PrepCom II on, which debated the potential of business and industry including tourism as a catalyst for sustainable development. On the occasion of PrepCom IV, UNEP's tourism programme presented the tourism industry report. In PrepCom II, UNEP hosted a panel discussion on Industry as a Partner for Sustainable Development. The objective of

the panel discussion was to discuss what industry has been doing to implement Agenda 21, including the gaps and next steps www.uneptie.org/outreach/wssd/about/prepcomii/prepcomii.htm. On PrepCom IV, UNEP launched a special side-event in Bali on June 2. The event, entitled "UNEP and the Private Sector", looked at concrete examples of private sector contributions to sustainable development. The main issue of the event was sustainable tourism based on the tourism industry report of UNEP. http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/wssd/prepcom_iv.htm

In preparation for WSSD, UNEP also launched a multi-stakeholder consultation process for identifying the main industrial development sustainability concerns. This process resulted in five operational documents, each of which served as input to the corresponding regional Preparatory Committee Meeting in Africa, Asia and the Pacific, Europe and North America, Latin America and the Caribbean, and West Asia.

The report of UNEP regional consultation in Asia and the Pacific region which was held on November 27, 2001 in Phnom Penh, Thailand highlighted that "Appropriate training courses may be developed and implemented, among others, in the area of wildlife management for park rangers, forest service personnel, wildlife and environment agencies' technical staff and officials and other related professionals and technicians. Training courses may also be developed in the area of eco-tourism, such as, management of eco-tourism firms, marketing and promotion of eco-tourism opportunities and the like. The database and information management component may include, among others, the development of an Internet-based database on all relevant information concerning the Asia-Pacific heritage parks and nature reserves, including data on endangered species and rare flora and fauna, habitat and species information, geographical boundaries, maps and photographs, legal status, management structure, sites and activities for eco-tourism and others". Para 56 of follow up actions of third revision, Regional platform on sustainable development for Asia and the Pacific, 23 October 2001

The regional consultation workshop of Latin America and the Caribbean was held on October 18-19, 2001 in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. Among the recommendations that the workshop proposed for sustainable industrial development in the region is that "Foster tourism that is in harmony with nature so as to reduce the environmental impact that has been on the rise, as well as the most serious threats that are related to the modification and destruction of habitat". Page 4 of the UNEP report of the workshop and Para 25 of Recommendations for sustainable industrial development in the Latin America and Caribbean region

The report of two other regions, Africa and Europe and North America did not address tourism as a separate issue.

In the regional consultation on West Asia which was held on September 22, 2001 in Manama, Bahrain, participants on Para 9 of the Industry and Environment part of the UNEP report of workshop emphasised that "based on the current trends over 10 years after Rio, the major issues the Region faces today include signs already visible of the serious damage to the Region's

cultural identity caused by unsustainable and environmentally irresponsible tourism. This results in more pressures on the Region's coastal areas, marine environments and water resources.

UNEP contributed to WSSD on tourism by publishing various reports such as Industry as a Partner for 'Sustainable Development 10 years after Rio and the UNEP assessment' and 'Tomorrow's Markets - Global Trends and their Implications for Business'.

UNEP also facilitated the preparation of a series of sectoral reports including tourism, whereby industry organisations take stock of progress towards sustainable development, and outline future challenges and actions to be taken. The report highlighted that travel and tourism has the potential to reduce the conflict between economic, social and environmental objectives and deliver development in a sustainable way and the need, now more than ever, for travel and tourism to be recognised as a vital part of the global economy. The report indicated that The challenge is to move from the existing *ad hoc* approach, to one that can integrate the current social, economic and environmental programmes, funds and initiatives, and evolve new patterns of managing travel and tourism businesses in a more systematic and dynamic way. The "overview report" presented UNEP's assessment of the tourism industry's commitments - as well as recommendations for the consideration of other stakeholders. The summary of the tourism industry report to the WSSD may find in the 'UNEP and Industry' part of this chapter.

UNEP was a partner in a number of proposed Type II partnerships in the Johannesburg summit such as

Capacity building for Sustainable Consumption and Production Patterns, to be led by UNEP with contributions from UNIDO and UNESCO and with Consumers International as key partner. This project will aim to improve the skills of decision-makers to implement sustainable consumption and production policies which have direct implication on sustainable tourism.

Global Network on Energy for Sustainable Development is leaded by UNEP with the involvement of other UN agencies. The aim is to establish a Global Network on Energy for Sustainable Development (GNESD) in order to make it easier for partners to contribute to the provision of environmentally sound energy services underpinning sustainable development. Energy consumption and environmentally sounds form of tourism is one of the concerned issues of GNESD.

Second phase of Capacity Building Task Force on Trade, Environment and Development is leaded by UNCTAD and UNEP, in close liaison with the WTO. The aim is to enhance human and institutional capacity of developing countries to deal with issues arising at the intersection of trade liberalisation, environmental protection and economic development.

An integrated approach to prevention, preparedness for and response to environmental emergencies in support of sustainable development, to be led by the Office for the Co-ordination of Humanitarian Affairs (OCHA) and UNEP. The aim is to advance integrated approaches to environmental emergencies, so as to ensure that all aspects of emergency management, including

risk reduction and emergency prevention, are properly addressed in a systemic way. For more information please refer to:

(www.johannesburgsummit.org/html/sustainable_dev/p2_changing_consumption.html).

Appendix VIII

Part III

WTO/OMT and Sustainable/Nature based Tourism

Introduction

The World Tourism Organisation with some 139 state members and more than 350 affiliated members is an intergovernmental organisation vested by the United Nations to promote the development of responsible, sustainable and universally accessible tourism. It serves as a global forum for tourism policy issues and a practical source of tourism know-how and statistics.

Its affiliate members are representing regional and local promotion boards, tourism trade associations, educational institutions and private sector companies, including airlines, hotel groups and tour operators.

The main organs of WTO/OMT are General Assembly and its subsidiary bodies as well as Executive Council and its subsidiary bodies, and Secretariat.

The General Assembly is the supreme organ of the Organisation. Its ordinary biannual sessions are attended by delegates of the senior tourism officials and high-level representatives of the private sector, full and associate members, as well as representatives from the Business Council.

The six Regional Commissions which were established in 1975 as subsidiary organs of the General Assembly normally meet once a year. They enable member States to maintain contact with one another and with the Secretariat between sessions of the General Assembly, to which they submit their proposals and convey their concerns.

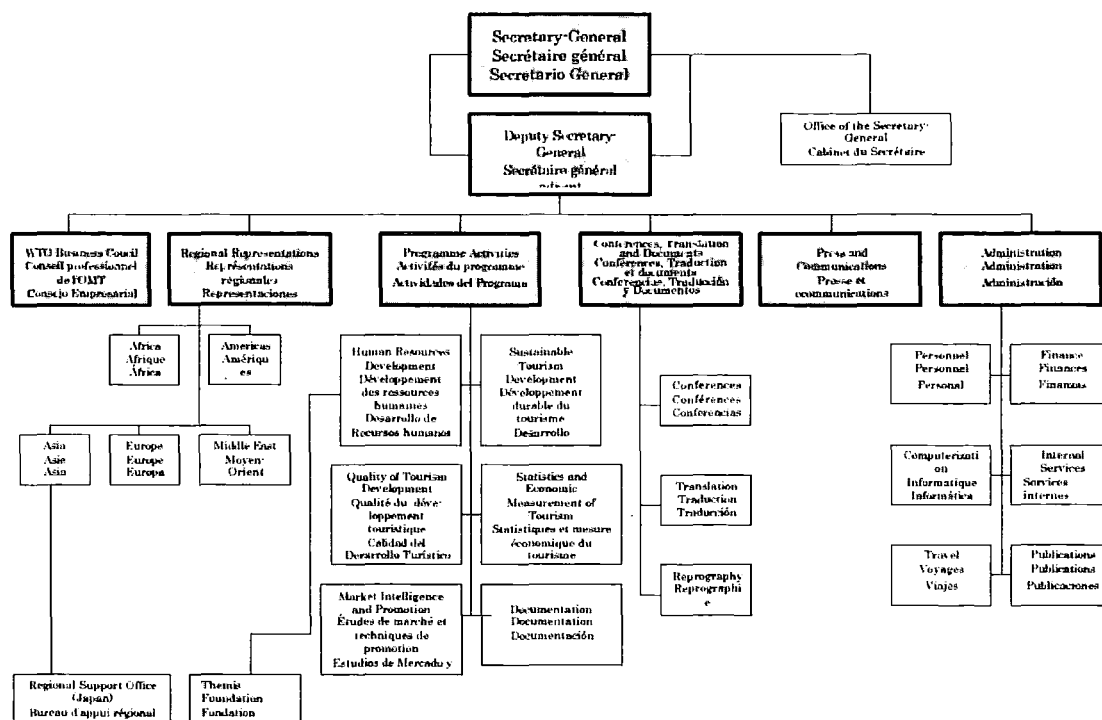
The Executive Council address all necessary measures, in consultation with the Secretary-General, for the implementation of its own decisions and recommendations of the Assembly and report thereon to the Assembly.

The Council meets at least twice a year and consists of full members elected by the Assembly for four years in the proportion of one member for every five full members with a view to achieving fair and equitable geographical distribution.

Subsidiary Organs of the executive council are programming committee, committee on budget and finance, sustainable development of tourism committee, quality support committee, committee on statistics and macroeconomic analysis of tourism, committee on market intelligence and programme, and sub-committee for review of application for affiliate membership.

The secretariat of WTO/OMT is hosted by the government of Spain and the seed of organisation is based in Madrid. The origination chart of WTO/OMT is as follows;

ORGANIZATION CHART / ORGANIGRAMME / ORGANIGRAMA



WTO/OMT could be considered as a transforming organisation soon. WTO requested through its Secretary General's letter to the UN SG to revisit the 1977 agreement between WTO and UN and recognise the WTO as a new UN specialised agency

ECOSOC in its meeting of 23 July 2002 in New York discuss the transformation of the WTO into a specialised agency of the United Nations. Mr. Francesco Frangialli, Secretary-General of WTO in his letter of 5 September 2002 welcomed the ECOSOC discussion expressed that "in the opinion of several participants, the debate on the WTO's application was characterised by exceptional fervour and rare unanimity. No fewer than 18 delegations from all over the world, out of the 54 countries that make up the Council, along with two ECOSOC non-members, Venezuela, Chairman of the Group of 77 and Botswana, took part in the discussion in order to support the proposal, to point out the importance of tourism as a factor of economic and social progress at the world level, and to underline the WTO's contribution to its development, which was judged to be highly positive. No opposing opinion was expressed, with the United States notably joining the consensus". He also addressed the United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) in its July 2002 sessions and pointed out following interrelated facts;

- Tourism, in its economic, social, cultural and environmental dimensions, has become one of the dominant activities at the beginning of the 21st century. In 2001, in spite of the first crisis to affect the industry, 693 million visitors travelled from one country to another. They spent some 462 billion dollars, making tourism one of the top categories of international trade.
- Over the past thirty years, World Tourism Organisation has been consolidated as part of the United Nations family. The Organisation's role is not limited to that of an observer in ECOSOC; indeed it has the status of a "related agency" of the System by virtue of an

agreement approved by the UN GA and the General Assembly of WTO in 1977. Since 1976, WTO has been an executing agency of the UNEP and, in this capacity; carry out a large majority of the tourism development projects it finances around the world.

- WTO meets the criteria for such a transformation, as established by Article 57 of the Charter, and that it has a calling to be brought into relationship with the United Nations in accordance with the provisions of Article 63 of the Charter.
- Transforming the WTO into a specialised agency would mean greater coherence by increasing the synergies among those different stakeholders and enhancing the coordination carried out by ECOSOC.

ECOSOC in its Resolution 2002/24 'Arrangements for the negotiation of an agreement between the United Nations and the World Tourism Organisation' considered the request for conversion of the World Tourism Organisation to a specialised agency of the United Nations contained in the letter dated 21 December 2001 from the Secretary-General of the WTO/OMT to the Secretary-General of the United Nations (E/2002/5), and desirous of making arrangements for the negotiation with the WTO of an agreement to constitute it as a specialised agency in accordance with Articles 57 and 63 of the Charter of the United Nations, and therefore authorizes the President of the Council to appoint from among States members of the Council, the members of the Committee on Negotiations with Intergovernmental Agencies; requests the Committee on Negotiations with Intergovernmental Agencies to meet at an appropriate time to negotiate with the World Tourism Organisation a relationship agreement between the UN and WTO, and requests them to submit a draft relationship agreement between the UN and WTO for the consideration of the Council at its substantive session of 2003.

The president of ECOSOC constitutes the group to negotiate with that formed on its part by the WTO Executive Council during its session held in June 2001 in Petra, Jordan.

After such negotiation ECOSOC should be able to make a determination regarding the matter at its session in the summer of 2003; the text of the new agreement, once reviewed by ECOSOC, could then be submitted to the respective General Assemblies of both organisations in autumn next year and would then come into force after being approved by both sides.

Tourism economic impact and development

As WTO/OMT elucidates international tourism is the world's largest export earner and an important factor in the balance of payments of many countries. Foreign currency receipts from international tourism reached US\$476 billion in 2000, outstripping exports of petroleum products, motor vehicles, telecommunications equipment, textiles or any other product or service. Travel and tourism is an important job creator, employing an estimated 100 million people around the world. The vast majority of tourism jobs are in small or medium-sized, family-owned enterprises. Research shows that job creation in tourism is growing 1 1/2 times faster than any other industrial sector. Tourism jobs and businesses are usually created in the most underdeveloped regions of a country, helping to equalize economic opportunities throughout a nation and providing an

incentive for residents to remain in rural areas rather than move to overcrowded cities. Travel and tourism stimulates enormous investments in new infrastructure, most of which helps to improve the living conditions of local residents as well as tourists. Tourism development projects often include airports, roads, marinas, sewage systems, and water treatment plants, restoration of cultural monuments, museums and nature interpretation centres. The tourism industry provides governments with hundreds of millions of dollars in tax revenues each year through accommodation and restaurant taxes, airport users' fees, sales taxes, park entrance fees, employee income tax and many other fiscal measures. International and domestic tourism combined generate up to 10 per cent of the world's Gross Domestic Product (GDP) and a considerably higher share in many small nations and developing countries. <http://www.world-tourism.org/>

International Tourism Receipts

	International Tourism Receipts (billion)					Growth rate current prices		Growth rate constant prices	
	1990	1995	1999	2000	2001	00/99	01*/00	00/99	01*/00
US\$	263.4	406.5	456.3	474.4	462.2	4.0	-2.6	0.6	-5.2
Euro	206.8	310.8	428.1	513.6	516.1	20.0	0.5	17.2	-2.1

Source: World Tourism Organization (WTO) © (Data as collected by WTO June 2002)

Compared to the preliminary estimates issued in January 2001, updated information demonstrates that world tourism only experiments a small reduction in 2001. Recent information published by WTO/OMT, shows that the decrease in world tourism arrivals has been adjusted to - 0.6 per cent. It means tourism is resilient and stable economic sector. “International tourism experienced a serious crisis but showed again how resilient it can be. On one hand it was surprising to see a decrease in an industry that is used to constant growth, on the other it is encouraging how stable this economic sector is. Its decrease was temporary and somewhat less painful than we had expected. Decrease in some other industries, information technology for example, can be much more volatile and can have stronger effects. We are confident that our predictions during ITB, that tourism growth will be restored by the end of this year, will be fulfilled.” said WTO Secretary-General Francesco Frangialli (WTO news letter Madrid, 18 June, 2002).

According to the data released in June 2002 by the Secretariat of WTO/OMT, international tourist arrivals amounted to 693 million in 2001 (-0.6% compared to 2000), 4 million down from the 697 million of 2000 due to the weakening economies of major tourism generating markets and the impact of the terrorist attacks of September 11. Most affected regions were South Asia (-6.3%), the Americas (-5.9%) and Middle East (-3.1%). Europe registered the same decrease as the world (-0.6%), and Africa and East Asia and the Pacific recorded positive percentages of 3.8 and 5.5 respectively.

463 billion US\$ international tourism receipts were recorded worldwide in 2001 (-2.6% over 2000) which means US\$ 1.3 billion or euro 1.4 billion a day and average receipts per arrival were US\$ 670 or euro 750. Half of all receipts are earned by Europe, Americas has a share of 26 per cent, East Asia and the Pacific 18 per cent, Africa 2.5 per cent, Middle East 2.4 per cent and South Asia 1.0 per cent.

Tourism has not collapsed during this period of time instead, tourists shifted their travel habits they chose closer and less expensive destinations. Half of the receipts were collected by Europe, and almost a third by the Americas (17.7%), followed by East Asia and the Pacific (17.7%), Africa (2.5%), Middle East (2.4%) and the last in the list, South Asia with 1 per cent.

World's Top 15 Tourism Earners

Rank		International Tourism Receipts (US\$ billion)		Change (%)	Market share (%)
		2000	2001*	2001*/2000	2001*
1	United States	82.0	72.3	-11.9	15.6
2	Spain	31.5	32.9	4.5	7.1
3	France	30.7	29.6	-3.7	6.4
4	Italy	27.5	25.9	-5.7	5.6
5	China	16.2	17.8	9.7	3.8
6	Germany	17.9	17.2	-3.7	3.7
7	United Kingdom	19.5	15.9	-18.8	3.4
8	Austria	10.0	12.0	19.7	2.6
9	Canada	10.7	-		
10	Greece	9.2	-		
11	Turkey	7.6	8.9	17.0	1.9
12	Mexico	8.3	8.4	1.3	1.8
13	Hong Kong (China)	7.9	8.2	4.5	1.8
14	Australia	8.0	7.6	-4.8	1.6
15	Switzerland	7.5	7.6	1.6	1.6

Source: World Tourism Organization (WTO) ©

(Data as collected by WTO June 2002)

WTO forecasts that international arrivals will top one billion by 2010. Likewise, earnings are predicted to grow to US\$ 1,550 billion by 2010.

The following topics will study in order to survey Sustainable nature based tourism in the context of WTO/OMT;

- Background and Chronology of World-Tourism Organisation
- Codes and guidelines
- WTO and tackling social, cultural, environmental and economical impact of tourism
- WTO and the implementation of Agenda 21.
- International Year of Ecotourism and Quebec Summit

Backgrounds and Chronology of World Tourism Organisation

1925, The World Tourism Organisation had its beginnings as the International Union of Official Tourist Publicity Organisations set up in The Hague, The Netherlands during the International Congress of Official Tourist Traffic Associations

1934 International Union of Official Tourist Propaganda Organisations (IUOTPO) is created in The Hague

1947 IUOTPO is resurrected as the International Union of Official Travel Organisations (IUOTO) after World War II and moved to Geneva. IUOTO was a technical, non-governmental organisation, whose membership at its peak included 109 National Tourism Organisations and 88 Associate Members, among them private and public groups.

1967 At initiative of IUOTO, United Nations declares 1967 as International Tourist Year; during these years it became clear that there was a need for more effective tools to keep developments under review and to provide tourism with inter-governmental. In 1967, IUOTO members also approved a resolution transforming it into inter-governmental organisation empowered to deal on a worldwide basis with all matters concerning tourism and to cooperate with other competent organisations, particularly those of the United Nations' system, such as the World Health Organisation (WHO), UNESCO, and the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO). In December 1969 by the UN General Assembly, which recognised the "decisive and central role" the transformed IUOTO should play in the field of world tourism "in cooperation with the existing machinery within the UN". The resolution was ratified in 1974 by 51 of the nations whose official tourism organisations were members of IUOTO.

1970 IUOTO members approve formation of intergovernmental World Tourism Organisation and then after IUOTO were renamed as World Tourism Organisation.

1975 First General Assembly of the World Tourism Organisation is held in Madrid, Spain and WTO is officially launched with Robert Lonati as Secretary-General

1976 WTO Secretariat moves from Geneva to Madrid and WTO became an executing agency of the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

1977 a formal cooperation agreement was signed between the United Nations and WTO/OMT. In the same year WTO conference of social impact of tourism was held in Manila. The out come of the conference is Manila declaration on the social impact of tourism which is adopted in Manila, Philippines on 22 May 1977.

The summary of ten principles Manila declaration on tourism social impact may find in the chronology of international Environmental Initiatives on Sustainable Tourism part of this paper.

1980 WTO convened World Tourism Conference in Manila on which, the Manila Declaration on World Tourism is unanimously agreed

The Declaration touches upon all aspects and roles of Tourism and considers the responsibility of States for the development and enhancement of tourism in present-day societies as more than a purely economic activity of nations and peoples.

The Declaration acknowledges Tourism as an activity which is essential to the life of the Nations and recognises the right to annual paid holidays (point 1-2).

The Declaration continues by saying that Tourism is a very important factor in national economies, that domestic as well as tourism from abroad should be expanded and that it represents a great source of employment, as well as a source of mutual knowledge and understanding. Youth tourism should also be encouraged (point 3-15). Point 18 of the Agreement recognises that "The satisfaction of tourism requirements must not be prejudicial to the social and economic interest of the population in tourist areas, to the environment or, above all, to natural resources which are the fundamental attraction of tourism, and historical and cultural sites".

In the practice of tourism (point 21), spiritual elements must take precedence over technical and material elements. Governments should mobilise the means of education and information at their disposal; preparation for tourists, travellers and holiday could usefully form part of the process of youth education and training (point 22-25).

1982 World Tourism Conference convened in Acapulco; Acapulco Document is adopted

1983 the General Assembly recalled the Manila declaration as well as Acapulco Document and adopted resolution A/RES/38/146 in 19 December 1983 entitled 'World Tourism Organisation'.

The General Assembly recalled its previous resolutions 32/156 and 32/157 of 19 December 1977, 33/122 of 19 December 1978 and 34/134 of 14 December 1979, concerning the World Tourism Organisation, as well as resolution 36/41 of 19 November 1981, which pertains, inter alia, to the Manila Declaration on World Tourism.

Taking note of paragraph 5 of General Assembly resolution 36/41 and of subparagraph (c) of Economic and Social Council decision 109 of 23 July 1975, in which the Assembly and the Council decided that the World Tourism Organisation might participate, on a continuing basis, in the work of the Assembly and the Council in areas of concern to that Organisation,

Noting that the World Tourism Meeting was convened from 21 to 27 August 1982 at Acapulco, Mexico, and that it adopted the Acapulco Document on World Tourism as a follow-up to the Manila Declaration,

Recognising the new dimension and role of tourism as a positive instrument towards the improvement of the quality of life for all peoples, as well as a significant force for peace and international understanding,

The GA urges Member States to give due attention to the principles of the Manila Declaration and the Acapulco Document on World Tourism while formulating and implementing, as appropriate, their tourism policies, plans and programmes, in accordance with their national priorities and within the framework of the programme of work of the World Tourism Organisation; and requests the World Tourism Organisation, in cooperation with the United Nations system, to

continue its efforts towards the future development and promotion of tourism, especially in the developing countries, bearing in mind the principles and guidelines contained in the Manila Declaration and the Acapulco Document; and requests the UNDP and other relevant bodies towards the implementation of the Manila Declaration and the Acapulco Document.

1985 Tourism Bill of Rights and Tourist Code adopted at WTO General Assembly, Sofia, Bulgaria. The summary of code is available in the chronology of international Environmental Initiatives on Sustainable Tourism part of this paper.

1989 Inter-Parliamentary Conference on Tourism, jointly organised with the Inter-Parliamentary Union, adopts The Hague Declaration on Tourism

1995 The World Conference on Sustainable Tourism held in Lanzarote adopted Charter for sustainable tourism. The Charter for Sustainable Tourism listing 18 points those are essential for sustainable tourism. The summary of Lanzarote Declaration on Charter for sustainable tourism is available in the chronology of international Environmental Initiatives on Sustainable Tourism part of this paper.

1995 WTO statement on the prevention of organised sex tourism was adopted by eleventh session of WTO General Assembly in its resolution A/RES/338(XI) in Cairo, Egypt. The summary of statement lay out below;

- The statement can be defined as "trips organised from within the tourism sector, or from outside this sector but using its structures and networks, with the primary purpose of effecting a commercial sexual relationship by the tourist with residents at the destination" to consider international community concerns on organised sex tourism.
- The GA is Aware of the grave health as well as social and cultural consequences of this activity for both host and guest tourism and rejects all such activity as exploitative and subversive to the fundamental objectives of tourism in promoting peace, human rights, mutual understanding, respect for all peoples and cultures, and sustainable development; particularly condemns child sex tourism
- Requests governments to mobilise their competent departments to undertake measures against organised sex tourism and educate them about the negative consequences of this activity; to gather evidence of organised sex tourism and to issue guidelines to the tourism sector insisting to refrain from organising any forms of sex tourism, to enforce legal and administrative measures to prevent and eradicate child sex tourism, to assist concerned IGO's and NGO's in taking action against organised forms of sex tourism;
- The GA appeals to donor countries, aid agencies and other sources of finance to engage in tourism development projects seeking to enhance and diversify the supply of tourism services at the destinations affected by sex tourism, so as to foster employment opportunities in the tourism sector, develop its linkages with other sectors of the national economy, and contribute to tourism's social and economic sustainability;
- The GA appeals to the travel trade to;

- Join efforts and cooperate with non-governmental organisations to eliminate organised sex tourism, at both the origin and destination of travel flows, by identifying and focusing on the critical points at which this activity can proliferate;
- Educate staff about the negative consequences of sex tourism, including its impact on the image of the tourism sector and tourist destinations, and invite staff to find ways to remove commercial sex services from the tourism offer;
- Develop and strengthen professional codes of conduct and industry self-regulatory mechanisms against the practice of sex tourism;
- Adopt practical, promotional and commercial measures, such as, for example, positive self-identification of enterprises which refrain from engaging in sex tourism; banning commercial sex services, in particular involving children, on the contracted tourism premises; providing information to travellers about health risks of sex tourism, etc.;
- Warn tourists particularly against engaging in child sex tourism, denouncing its criminal nature and the manner in which children are forced into prostitution;
- Encourage the media to assist the tourism sector in its action to uncover, isolate, condemn and prevent all organised forms of sex tourism;

1996 Francesco Frangialli, France, appointed interim Secretary General who was elected as Secretary General of the origination. Second WTO Forum on Parliaments and Local Authorities: Tourism Policy-Makers adopts the Bali Declaration on Tourism, Bali, Indonesia.

1998, the International Conference on “Sustainable Tourism in SIDS and Other Islands” was held in Lanzarote, Canary Islands in Spain. It was jointly organised by UNEP and WTO. The Conference addressed the challenges of sustainable tourism in small islands. The summary of the outcome of conference is available in the chronology of international Environmental Initiatives on Sustainable Tourism part of this paper.

1999 WTO General Assembly held in Santiago, Chile and adoption of Global code of ethics. (See Codes and Guideline in the same part)

Codes and Guidelines

Previous to Rio summit, WTO/OMT as an intergovernmental organisation was involved to set up international arrangements for tourism industry worldwide. Its major contribution to this end is summarised in the first section of this part as well as in chronological part of first Chapter.

Since 1992 WTO has been engaged in advancing and implementing the principles of Agenda 21 in this sector, working in collaboration with the national tourism authorities of its Member States, other intergovernmental agencies and the private sector leadership. Key guidelines and practical tools related to nature based tourism/Ecotourism, generated by WTO/OMT are listed in the following;

- Agenda 21 for the Travel and Tourism Industry

- Global Code of Ethics for Tourism
- National and regional tourism planning and guide for local authorities on developing sustainable tourism
- Indicators of sustainable tourism
- Voluntary initiatives for sustainable tourism
- Compilation of good practices in sustainable tourism
- Sustainable tourism development at specific destinations: coastal areas and islands, cultural heritage sites, natural and rural areas
- Handbook on natural disaster reduction in tourist areas
- An explanatory bibliography on sustainable tourism
- Tourism in protected areas, ecotourism, guidelines for sustainable tourism in protected areas,

Agenda 21 for the travel and tourism industry

The World Tourism Organisation, jointly with the World Travel and Tourism Council and The Earth Council prepared the report in 1996. After its publishing a series of regional Think Tank WTO-WTTC Seminars were held to raise awareness and encourage implementation of this general action plan in the tourism sector in London and Jakarta (1997), in Dominica and at Victoria Falls (Zimbabwe, 1998), and in Hong Kong and Berlin (1999).

According to WTO a revised version of the publication is currently under preparation. The new version will reflect the dynamic changes and demonstrate the progress with relevant case studies at each priority action area in this field focusing on local Agenda 21 Programmes encouraging their practical application at specific tourism destinations. (See Chronology of International Environmental Initiatives on Sustainable Tourism part of Chapter I)

Global code of ethics for tourism

In October 1999, the 16th General Assembly of the World Tourism Organisation, held in Santiago, Chile, approved the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism in its resolution A/RES/406(XIII) which sets a frame of reference for responsible and sustainable development of world tourism.

According to WTO/OMT the Code is an essential tool to help minimise the negative impacts of tourism on the environment and cultural heritage while maximising the benefits for residents of tourism destinations.

The resolution A/RES/406(XIII) includes preamble, reaffirmation of members' obligations, and the principles.

The code includes nine principles outlining the "rules of the game" for destinations, governments, tour operators, developers, travel agents, workers and travellers themselves.

In preamble, the resolution recalls that in replay to 1997 Istanbul session and outcome of special committee on the preparation of the Code meeting in Cracow, Poland in 1998, the WTO Secretary General with the assistance of all WTO relevant bodies prepared the draft Code for the member

states comments. Additional consultations were undertaken with tourism industry and the workers, as well as relevant NGO's while the principles of Code aroused great interest among the delegations at CSD7.in 1999. All contributions so far as possible are reflected in the draft submitted to the Assembly for consideration.

The preamble reaffirmed that the aim of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism is to establish a synthesis of the various documents, codes and declarations of the same kind or with comparable aspirations published over the years, to complement them with new considerations reflecting the development of present societies and to serve as a frame of reference for the stakeholders in world tourism.

The main points in reaffirmation of member's obligations part of resolutions are as follows;

- Reasserting the aims set out in Article 3 of the Statutes of WTO and aware of the "decisive and central" role of this Organisation in promoting and developing tourism with a view to contributing to economic development, international understanding, peace, prosperity and universal respect for, and observance of, human rights and fundamental freedoms for all without distinction as to race, sex, language or religion,
- Firmly believing that, through the direct, spontaneous and non-mediatized contacts it engenders between men and women of different cultures and lifestyles, tourism represents a vital force for peace and a factor of friendship and understanding among the peoples of the world,
- In keeping with the rationale of reconciling environmental protection, economic development and the fight against poverty in a sustainable manner, as formulated by and expressed in Agenda 21, adopted on Rio summit.
- Taking into account the swift and continued growth, both past and foreseeable, of the tourism activity, whether for leisure, business, culture, religious or health purposes, and its powerful effects, both positive and negative, on the environment, the economy and the society of both generating and receiving countries, on local communities and indigenous peoples, as well as on international relations and trade,
- Aiming to promote responsible, sustainable and universally accessible tourism in the framework of the right of all persons to use their free time for leisure pursuits or travel with respect for the choices of society of all peoples,
- convinced that the world tourism industry as a whole has much to gain by operating in an environment that favours the market economy, private enterprise and free trade and that serves to optimize its beneficial effects on the creation of wealth and employment,
- convinced that, provided a number of principles and a certain number of rules are observed, responsible and sustainable tourism is by no means incompatible with the growing liberalisation of the conditions governing trade in services and under whose aegis the enterprises of this sector operate and that it is possible to reconcile in this sector economy and

ecology, environment and development, openness to international trade and protection of social and cultural identities,

- Considering that, with such an approach, all the stakeholders in tourism development have different albeit interdependent responsibilities in the individual and societal development of tourism and that the formulation of their individual rights and duties will contribute to meeting this aim,
- Committed to resolution 364(XII) at its General Assembly of 1997 (Istanbul), the Manila Declarations of 1980 on World Tourism and of 1997 on the Social Impact of Tourism, as well as on the Tourism Bill of Rights and the Tourist Code adopted at Sofia in 1985 under the aegis of WTO, but believing that these instruments should be complemented by a set of interdependent principles
- Affirm the right to tourism and the freedom of tourist movements, and wish to promote an equitable, responsible and sustainable world tourism order
- Referring in particular to the following instruments:
 - Universal Declaration of Human Rights of 10 December 1948;
 - International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights of 16 December 1966;
 - International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights of 16 December 1966;
 - Warsaw Convention on Air Transport of 12 October 1929;
 - Chicago Convention on International Civil Aviation of 7 December 1944, and the Tokyo, The Hague and Montreal Conventions in relation thereto;
 - Convention on Customs Facilities for Tourism of 4 July 1954 and related Protocol;
 - Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of 23 November 1972;
 - Manila Declaration on World Tourism of 10 October 1980;
 - Resolution of the Sixth General Assembly of WTO (Sofia) adopting the Tourism Bill of Rights and Tourist Code of 26 September 1985;
 - Convention on the Rights of the Child of 26 January 1990;
 - Resolution of the Ninth General Assembly of WTO (Buenos Aires) concerning in particular travel facilitation and the safety and security of tourists of 4 October 1991;
 - Rio Declaration on the Environment and Development of 13 June 1992;
 - General Agreement on Trade in Services of 15 April 1994;
 - Convention on Biodiversity of 6 January 1995;
 - Resolution of the Eleventh General Assembly of WTO (Cairo) on the prevention of organised sex tourism of 22 October 1995;
 - Stockholm Declaration of 28 August 1996 against the Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children;
 - Manila Declaration on the Social Impact of Tourism of 22 May 1997;

- Conventions and recommendations adopted by the International Labour Organisation in the area of collective conventions, prohibition of forced labour and child labour, defence of the rights of indigenous peoples, and equal treatment and non-discrimination in the work place;

The principles of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism was solemnly adapted by member states, reflected on the following nine articles.

Article Paragraphs

1. The understanding and promotion of the ethical values common to humanity, with an attitude of tolerance and respect for the diversity of religious, philosophical and moral beliefs, are both the foundation and the consequence of responsible tourism; stakeholders in tourism development and tourists themselves should observe the social and cultural traditions and practices of all peoples, including those of minorities and indigenous peoples and to recognise their worth;
2. Tourism activities should be conducted in harmony with the attributes and traditions of the host regions and countries and in respect for their laws, practices and customs;
3. The host communities, on the one hand, and local professionals, on the other, should acquaint themselves with and respect the tourists who visit them and find out about their lifestyles, tastes and expectations; the education and training imparted to professionals contribute to a hospitable welcome;
4. It is the task of the public authorities to provide protection for tourists and visitors and their belongings; they must pay particular attention to the safety of foreign tourists owing to the particular vulnerability they may have; they should facilitate the introduction of specific means of information, prevention, security, insurance and assistance consistent with their needs; any attacks, assaults, kidnappings or threats against tourists or workers in the tourism industry, as well as the wilful destruction of tourism facilities or of elements of cultural or natural heritage should be severely condemned and punished in accordance with their respective national laws;

Article 1

5. When travelling, tourists and visitors should not commit any criminal act or any act considered criminal by the laws of the country visited and abstain from any conduct felt to be offensive or injurious by the local populations, or likely to damage the local environment; they should refrain from all trafficking in illicit drugs, arms, antiques, protected species and products and substances that are dangerous or prohibited by national regulations;
6. Tourists and visitors have the responsibility to acquaint themselves, even before their departure, with the characteristics of the countries they are preparing to visit; they must be aware of the health and security risks inherent in any travel outside their usual environment and behave in such a way as to minimise those risks;
1. Tourism, the activity most frequently associated with rest and relaxation, sport and access to culture and nature, should be planned and practised as a privileged means of individual and collective fulfilment; when practised with a sufficiently open mind, it is an irreplaceable factor of self-education, mutual tolerance and for learning about the legitimate differences between peoples and cultures and their diversity;
2. Tourism activities should respect the equality of men and women; they should promote human rights and, more particularly, the individual rights of the most vulnerable groups, notably children, the elderly, the handicapped, ethnic minorities and indigenous peoples;

Article 2

3. The exploitation of human beings in any form, particularly sexual, especially when applied to children, conflicts with the fundamental aims of tourism and is the negation of tourism; as such, in accordance with international law, it should be energetically combated with the cooperation of all the States concerned and penalized without concession by the national legislation of both the countries

visited and the countries of the perpetrators of these acts, even when they are carried out abroad;

4. Travel for purposes of religion, health, education and cultural or linguistic exchanges are particularly beneficial forms of tourism, which deserve encouragement;
5. The introduction into curricula of education about the value of tourist exchanges, their economic, social and cultural benefits, and also their risks, should be encouraged;
1. All the stakeholders in tourism development should safeguard the natural environment with a view to achieving sound, continuous and sustainable economic growth geared to satisfying equitably the needs and aspirations of present and future generations;
2. All forms of tourism development that are conducive to saving rare and precious resources, in particular water and energy, as well as avoiding so far as possible waste production, should be given priority and encouraged by national, regional and local public authorities;
3. The staggering in time and space of tourist and visitor flows, particularly those resulting from paid leave and school holidays, and a more even distribution of holidays should be sought so as to reduce the pressure of tourism activity on the environment and enhance its beneficial impact on the tourism industry and the local economy;

Article 3

4. Tourism infrastructure should be designed and tourism activities programmed in such a way as to protect the natural heritage composed of ecosystems and biodiversity and to preserve endangered species of wildlife; the stakeholders in tourism development, and especially professionals, should agree to the imposition of limitations or constraints on their activities when these are exercised in particularly sensitive areas: desert, polar or high mountain regions, coastal areas, tropical forests or wetlands, propitious to the creation of nature reserves or protected areas;
5. Nature tourism and ecotourism are recognised as being particularly conducive to enriching and enhancing the standing of tourism, provided they respect the natural heritage and local populations and are in keeping with the carrying capacity of the sites;
1. Tourism resources belong to the common heritage of mankind; the communities in whose territories they are situated have particular rights and obligations to them;
2. Tourism policies and activities should be conducted with respect for the artistic, archaeological and cultural heritage, which they should protect and pass on to future generations; particular care should be devoted to preserving and upgrading monuments, shrines and museums as well as archaeological and historic sites which must be widely open to tourist visits; encouragement should be given to public access to privately-owned cultural property and monuments, with respect for the rights of their owners, as well as to religious buildings, without prejudice to normal needs of worship;

Article 4

3. Financial resources derived from visits to cultural sites and monuments should, at least in part, be used for the upkeep, safeguard, development and embellishment of this heritage;
4. Tourism activity should be planned in such a way as to allow traditional cultural products, crafts and folklore to survive and flourish, rather than causing them to degenerate and become standardized;
1. Local populations should be associated with tourism activities and share equitably in the economic, social and cultural benefits they generate, and particularly in the creation of direct and indirect jobs resulting from them;
2. Tourism policies should be applied in such a way as to help to raise the standard of living of the populations of the regions visited and meet their needs; the planning and architectural approach to and operation of tourism resorts and accommodation should aim to integrate them, to the extent possible, in the local

- Article 5 economic and social fabric; where skills are equal, priority should be given to local manpower;
3. Special attention should be paid to the specific problems of coastal areas and island territories and to vulnerable rural or mountain regions, for which tourism often represents a rare opportunity for development in the face of the decline of traditional economic activities;
 4. Tourism professionals, particularly investors, governed by the regulations laid down by the public authorities, should carry out studies of the impact of their development projects on the environment and natural surroundings; they should also deliver, with the greatest transparency and objectivity, information on their future programmes and their foreseeable repercussions and foster dialogue on their contents with the populations concerned;
 1. Tourism professionals have an obligation to provide tourists with objective and honest information on their places of destination and on the conditions of travel, hospitality and stays; they should ensure that the contractual clauses proposed to their customers are readily understandable as to the nature, price and quality of the services they commit themselves to providing and the financial compensation payable by them in the event of a unilateral breach of contract on their part;
 2. Tourism professionals, insofar as it depends on them, should show concern, in cooperation with the public authorities, for the security and safety, accident prevention, health protection and food safety of those who seek their services; likewise, they should ensure the existence of suitable systems of insurance and assistance; they should accept the reporting obligations prescribed by national regulations and pay fair compensation in the event of failure to observe their contractual obligations
 3. Tourism professionals, so far as this depends on them, should contribute to the cultural and spiritual fulfilment of tourists and allow them, during their travels, to practise their religions;
- Article 6
4. The public authorities of the generating States and the host countries, in cooperation with the professionals concerned and their associations, should ensure that the necessary mechanisms are in place for the repatriation of tourists in the event of the bankruptcy of the enterprise that organised their travel;
 5. Governments have the right – and the duty – especially in a crisis, to inform their nationals of the difficult circumstances, or even the dangers they may encounter during their travels abroad; it is their responsibility however to issue such information without prejudicing in an unjustified or exaggerated manner the tourism industry of the host countries and the interests of their own operators; the contents of travel advisories should therefore be discussed beforehand with the authorities of the host countries and the professionals concerned; recommendations formulated should be strictly proportionate to the gravity of the situations encountered and confined to the geographical areas where the insecurity has arisen; such advisories should be qualified or cancelled as soon as a return to normality permits;
 6. The press, and particularly the specialised travel press and the other media, including modern means of electronic communication, should issue honest and balanced information on events and situations that could influence the flow of tourists; they should also provide accurate and reliable information to the consumers of tourism services; the new communication and electronic commerce technologies should also be developed and used for this purpose; as is the case for the media, they should not in any way promote sex tourism;
 1. The prospect of direct and personal access to the discovery and enjoyment of the planet's resources constitutes a right equally open to all the world's inhabitants; the increasingly extensive participation in national and international tourism should be regarded as one of the best possible expressions of the sustained growth of free time, and obstacles should not be placed in its way;
 2. The universal right to tourism must be regarded as the corollary of the right to rest and leisure, including reasonable limitation of working hours and periodic
- Article 7

holidays with pay, guaranteed by Article 24 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and Article 7.d of the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights;

3. Social tourism, and in particular associative tourism, which facilitates widespread access to leisure, travel and holidays, should be developed with the support of the public authorities;

4. Family, youth, student and senior tourism and tourism for people with disabilities, should be encouraged and facilitated;

1. Tourists and visitors should benefit, in compliance with international law and national legislation, from the liberty to move within their countries and from one State to another, in accordance with Article 13 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights; they should have access to places of transit and stay and to tourism and cultural sites without being subject to excessive formalities or discrimination;

Article 8

2. Tourists and visitors should have access to all available forms of communication, internal or external; they should benefit from prompt and easy access to local administrative, legal and health services; they should be free to contact the consular representatives of their countries of origin in compliance with the diplomatic conventions in force;

3. Tourists and visitors should benefit from the same rights as the citizens of the country visited concerning the confidentiality of the personal data and information concerning them, especially when these are stored electronically;

4. Administrative procedures relating to border crossings whether they fall within the competence of States or result from international agreements, such as visas or health and customs formalities, should be adapted, so far as possible, so as to facilitate to the maximum freedom of travel and widespread access to international tourism; agreements between groups of countries to harmonise and simplify these procedures should be encouraged; specific taxes and levies penalizing the tourism industry and undermining its competitiveness should be gradually phased out or corrected;

5. So far as the economic situation of the countries from which they come permits, travellers should have access to allowances of convertible currencies needed for their travels;

1. The fundamental rights of salaried and self-employed workers in the tourism industry and related activities, should be guaranteed under the supervision of the national and local administrations, both of their States of origin and of the host countries with particular care, given the specific constraints linked in particular to the seasonality of their activity, the global dimension of their industry and the flexibility often required of them by the nature of their work;

2. Salaried and self-employed workers in the tourism industry and related activities have the right and the duty to acquire appropriate initial and continuous training; they should be given adequate social protection; job insecurity should be limited so far as possible; and a specific status, with particular regard to their social welfare, should be offered to seasonal workers in the sector;

Article 9

3. Any natural or legal person, provided he, she or it has the necessary abilities and skills, should be entitled to develop a professional activity in the field of tourism under existing national laws; entrepreneurs and investors - especially in the area of small and medium-sized enterprises - should be entitled to free access to the tourism sector with a minimum of legal or administrative restrictions;

4. Exchanges of experience offered to executives and workers, whether salaried or not, from different countries, contributes to foster the development of the world tourism industry; these movements should be facilitated so far as possible in compliance with the applicable national laws and international conventions;

5. As an irreplaceable factor of solidarity in the development and dynamic growth of international exchanges, multinational enterprises of the tourism industry should not exploit the dominant positions they sometimes occupy; they should avoid becoming the vehicles of cultural and social models artificially imposed on the

host communities; in exchange for their freedom to invest and trade which should be fully recognised, they should involve themselves in local development, avoiding, by the excessive repatriation of their profits or their induced imports, a reduction of their contribution to the economies in which they are established;

6. Partnership and the establishment of balanced relations between enterprises of generating and receiving countries contribute to the sustainable development of tourism and an equitable distribution of the benefits of its growth;

Article 10

1. The public and private stakeholders in tourism development should cooperate in the implementation of these principles and monitor their effective application;
2. The stakeholders in tourism development should recognise the role of international institutions, among which the World Tourism Organisation ranks first, and non-governmental organisations with competence in the field of tourism promotion and development, the protection of human rights, the environment or health, with due respect for the general principles of international law;
3. The same stakeholders should demonstrate their intention to refer any disputes concerning the application or interpretation of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism for conciliation to an impartial third body known as the World Committee on Tourism Ethics.

The Global Code of Ethics for Tourism

The United Nations General Assembly on 19 November 2001 considered with support the Code in its resolution A/RES/56/212 of 28 February 2002.

The highlights of GA resolution on Global Code of Ethics for Tourism are as follows;

In the preamble of its resolution GA;

- recalled its resolution 32/156 of 19 December 1977, by which it approved the
- Agreement on Cooperation and Relationships between the United Nations and the World Tourism Organisation, and the Manila Declaration on World Tourism of 10 October 1980 as well as took note of the Amman Declaration on Peace through Tourism adopted at the Global Summit on Peace through Tourism on 11 November 2000 and reaffirmed paragraph 5 of its resolution 36/41 of 19 November 1981, in which it decided that the WTO/OMT might participate, on a continuing basis, in the work of the General Assembly in areas of concern to that organisation,
- Considered that the CSD7 expressed interest in a global code of ethics for tourism and invited the WTO to consider the participation of informed major groups in the development, implementation and monitoring of its global code of ethics for tourism,
- Reaffirmed through GA resolution 53/200 the Economic and Social Council resolution 1998/40 of 30 July 1998, recognising the support of the World Tourism Organisation for the importance of ecotourism, in particular the designation of the year 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism, in fostering better understanding among peoples everywhere, in leading to greater awareness of the rich heritage of various civilizations and in bringing about a better appreciation of the inherent values of different cultures, thereby contributing to the strengthening of world peace,
- Recognised the important dimension and role of tourism as a positive instrument towards the alleviation of poverty and the improvement of the quality of life for all people, its potential to make a contribution to economic and social development, especially of the developing

countries, and its emergence as a vital force for the promotion of international understanding, peace and prosperity,

In the implementation part of its resolution the GA inter alia;

1. Takes note with interest of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism adopted at the thirteenth session of the General Assembly of the World Tourism Organisation, which outlines principles to guide tourism development and to serve as a frame of reference for the different stakeholders in the tourism sector, with the objective of minimising the negative impact of tourism on environment and on cultural heritage while maximising the benefits of tourism in promoting sustainable development and poverty alleviation as well as understanding among nations;
2. Emphasises the need for the promotion of a responsible and sustainable tourism that could be beneficial to all sectors of society.
3. Invites Governments and other stakeholders in the tourism sector to consider introducing, as appropriate, the contents of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism in relevant laws, regulations and professional practices.
4. Encourages the World Tourism Organisation to promote effective follow-up to the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism, with the involvement of relevant stakeholders in the tourism sector.
5. Requests the Secretary-General to follow up developments related to the implementation of the present resolution based on the reports of the World Tourism Organisation and to report thereon to the General Assembly at its fifty-ninth session.

The World Tourism Organisation General Assembly held in Seoul, Korea and Osaka, Japan, in September 2001, approved the creation of a World Committee on Tourism Ethics which is envisaged to act as a global observer to monitor adherence to the code; gather information on its implementation and any non-compliance; interpret the code's principles; and evaluate the principles proposing development and amendments as needed. The Committee also have the responsibility for setting up a system of conciliation to settle any disputes.

The United Nations General Assembly at its 56th session supported the code in the resolution A/RES/56/212 of November 2001.

National and regional tourism planning

WTO published a guideline to establish principal guidelines for tourism development plans at the national and regional levels, with emphasis on integrated approaches in 1994 (National and Regional Tourism Planning: Methodologies and Case Studies).

In 1992 a "Guide for local authorities in planning for sustainable tourism" was first published by WTO and then in 1999 enlarged and updated version was published with three supplementary volumes for Sub-Saharan Africa, Asia and the Pacific, and the Americas, to assisting tourism planning procedures at the local level.

the methodologies proposed in this guide, is used by WTO as an implementing agency for many tourism master plan projects financed by the UNDP in over 30 countries during the past decades,

according to the agreement signed by WTO and the United Nations Development Programme. Guideline for national and regional tourism planning lays the foundation for tourism development of a country and its regions. It establishes the principal guidelines for preparing tourism development plans at the national and regional levels with emphasis on the integrated approach, balancing economic, environmental, and socio-cultural factors achieving sustainable tourism. It contains introduction, tourism planning methodologies as first part and illustrated by 25 case studies in second part. Both Parts I and II of the guide reflect the WTO's basic approach to planning for the integrated and sustainable development of tourism in its global technical cooperation activities.

In the introduction part it is indicated that the guidelines introduces concepts of national and regional planning, and the basic approaches; techniques and principles applied to this level. It is designed to be complementary to the recent WTO publication, Sustainable Tourism Development Guide for Local Planners.

It is also complements two other recent WTO publications 'An Integrated Approach to Resort Development' and 'Six Case Studies and Guidelines: Development of National Parks and Protected Areas for Tourism'. As is emphasised in those documents, resorts and parks must be planned and developed within their national and regional contexts.

The first part briefly explains planning concepts and describes planning and marketing methodologies. Emphasis is placed on the integrated approach, balancing economic, environmental and socio-cultural factors, and achieving sustainable development. Importance is also given to techniques that need to be used in implementing plans. Without adopting and applying these techniques, tourism plans cannot be realised.

Tourism is a rather complicated activity that overlaps several different sectors of the society and economy. Without planning, it may create unexpected and unwanted impacts. Tourism is also still a relatively new type of activity in many countries. Some governments and often the private sector have little or no experience in how to develop tourism properly. Thus planning can provide the necessary guidance for tourism development and is often needed to revitalize this sector and maintain its future viability.

The first part of report pointed out that tourism should first be planned at the national and regional levels. At these levels, planning is concerned with tourism development policies, structure plans, facility standards, institutional factors and all the other elements necessary to develop and manage tourism. Then, within the framework of national and regional planning, more detailed plans for tourist attractions, resorts, urban, rural and other forms of tourism development can be prepared.

The advantages of such approach include;

- Establishing the overall tourism development objectives and policies
- Developing tourism so that its natural and cultural resources are indefinitely maintained and conserved for future, as well as present, use.

- Integrating tourism into the overall development policies and patterns of the country or region
- Providing a rational basis for decision-making by both the public and private sectors on tourism development.
- Making possible the coordinated development of all the many elements of the tourism sector
- Optimizing and balancing the economic, environmental and social benefits of tourism, with equitable distribution of these benefits to the society, while minimising possible problems of tourism.
- Providing a physical structure which guides the location, types and extent of tourism development of attractions, facilities, services and infrastructure.
- Establishing the guidelines and standards for preparing detailed plans of specific tourism development areas that are consistent with, and reinforce, one another, and for the appropriate design of tourist facilities.
- Laying the foundation for effective implementation of the tourism development policy and plan and continuous management of the tourism sector, by providing the necessary organisational and other institutional framework.
- Providing the framework for effective coordination of the public and private sector efforts and investment in developing tourism.
- Offering a baseline for the continuous monitoring of the progress of tourism development and keeping it on track.

There is considerable assurance that, if implemented, planning will bring substantial benefits to an area.

An underlying concept in planning tourism is that tourism should be viewed as an inter-related system of demand and supply factors.

As an inter-related system, it is important that tourism planning aim for integrated development of all these parts of the system, both the demand and supply factors and the physical and institutional elements.

Institutional elements include:

- Organisational structures, especially government tourism offices and private sector tourism associations such as hotel associations.
- Tourism-related legislation and regulations, such as standards and licensing requirements for hotels and tour and travel agencies.
- Education and training programmes, and training institutions to prepare persons to work effectively in tourism.
- Availability of financial capital to develop tourist attractions, facilities, services and infrastructure, and mechanisms to attract capital investment.

- Marketing strategies and promotion programmes to inform tourists about the country or region, and induce them to visit it, and tourist information facilities and services in the destination areas.
- Travel facilitation of immigration (including visa arrangements), customs and other facilities and services at the entry and exit points of tourists.
- Considering the enhancement and distribution of tourism economic benefits, environmental protection measures, reducing adverse social impacts, and conservation of the cultural heritage of people living in the tourism areas.

The planning of tourism should be recognised as a continuous and flexible process. Planning for tourism development should make recommendations that are imaginative and innovative, but they must also be feasible to implement. The various techniques of implementation should be considered throughout the planning process.

The sustainable development approach implies that the natural, cultural and other resources of tourism are conserved for continuous use in the future, while still bringing benefits to the present society. A basic technique in achieving sustainable development is the environmental planning approach. Environmental planning requires that all elements of the environment be carefully surveyed, analyzed and considered in determining the most appropriate type and location of development. This approach would not allow, for example, intensive development in flood plain and steep hillside areas.

An important aspect of sustainable development is emphasising community-based tourism. It applies techniques to ensure that most of the benefits of tourism development accrue to local residents and not to outsiders. The community-based tourism approach is applied at the local or more detailed levels of planning, but it can be set forth as a policy approach at the national and regional levels.

Quality tourism approach is being increasingly adopted for its ability to achieve successful tourism from the marketing standpoint and brings benefits to local residents and their environment. It refers to tourist attractions, facilities and services that offer 'good value for money', protect tourism resources, and attract the kinds of tourists who will respect the local environment and society. Achieving quality tourism is the responsibility of both the public and private sectors.

Long-range comprehensive planning is concerned with specifying goals and objectives and determining preferred future development patterns. Tourism development policies and plans should be prepared for relatively long-term periods - usually for 10 to 15 and sometimes 20 years depending on the predictability of future events in the country or region. A planning approach which is applicable to some tourism areas is strategic planning. It focuses more on identification and resolution of immediate issues with duration of 10 years. If it used within the framework of integrated long-range policy and planning, the strategic planning approach can be very appropriate. Public involvement is a must in tourism development planning. At the national and regional levels of preparing tourism plans; the common approach to obtaining public involvement is to appoint a

steering committee. This committee offers guidance to the planning team and reviews its work. Another common approach, when the plan is completed, is to organise a national or regional tourism seminar.

Other important topics in first part of guidelines are the tourism planning process, Forms of tourism development, Policy considerations and structure planning, Economic, environmental and socio-cultural considerations, Planning the institutional elements, Tourism market planning, Implementing and monitoring the plan, Tourism development funding

The second part presents case studies of tourism policies and plans which have actually been prepared and, for the most part, are being implemented.

The case studies have been selected to represent the several different elements of plans that must be considered in integrated development. Most of the case studies are ones that have been prepared by the WTO for several countries and regions during the past decade.

The "Guide for local authorities in planning for sustainable tourism" is prepared by WTO to assist in making better decisions on developing tourism. It presents concepts, principles and techniques for planning, developing and managing tourism at local level. The guide examines how to achieve integration of the local tourism sector. It is also useful for national and regional authorities to understand tourism development at local levels.

The guide structured around seven parts.

First part 'Tourism in today's world' provides essential backgrounds and presents an overview of the importance of tourism, tourism trends and the concepts of sustainable tourism as well as the levels of tourism planning and development.

Second part 'Tourism in the community' identifies tourism-local community relationship, advantages and disadvantages of tourism, the tourism system, socio-environmental relationship of tourism, and resources evaluation for developing tourism.

Third part 'Planning for local tourism development' contains tourism planning concepts, processes and standards. It focus on tourism planning approaches, the tourism planning process including carrying capacity analysis, process of developing tourism projects, environmental impact assessment, and tourism facility development, design and quality standard.

Fourth part 'Planning principles for tourism development' set forth principles to be applied in preparing development plan for tourism in local areas, resorts, urban or eco-tourism and other forms of tourism, and for various type of tourist attractions and activities.

Fifth part 'Implementing tourism development' examines how to implement tourism and achieves development objectives. It reviews the role of public private sectors, set forth implementation approaches and techniques and explore the main consideration of project programmeming, financing tourism, human resources development for tourism, local community involvements, and marketing and promotion of tourism approaches.

Sixth part 'Maintaining the sustainability of tourism' examines the three major aspects of achieving sustainable tourism development, managing environmental, socio-economic impacts of

tourism, and maintaining tourism products and tourism market. The concept of establishing and applying environmental indicator to measure sustainability is explained.

Seventh part 'Managing the tourism sector' reviews approaches to achieve effective management of tourism at the local level. Several important management function are examined including establishing a tourism information system, monitoring tourism development, carrying out public tourism awareness programme and informing tourism, tourist safety and security, maintaining the vitality of tourism sector, and coping with saturation and crisis management

Indicators of sustainable tourism

A Task Force of international experts was established by WTO in 1993 aiming at defining a set of useful sustainability indicators in tourism. In the following years these indicators were tested through pilot projects at various local destinations. The results were published in 'What Tourism Managers Need to Know -A practical guide for the development and application of indicators of sustainable tourism' in 1996.

Based on this guide regional workshops have been held in Hungary (1999), Mexico (1999), Sri Lanka (2000), Argentina (2000), and Croatia (March 2001)

According to WTO/OMT, the Organisation continues to work in this field with a view to improving existing know-how and methodologies for the definition, adaptation and application of indicators to monitor the social, economic and environmental impacts of tourism; extending the application of such methodologies to the largest possible number and types of tourism destinations within Member States; and making the use of sustainability indicators a standard practice in tourism destinations by 2005.

The guide for the development and application of indicators of sustainable tourism contains two sections.

First section explains purpose of the guide including context and structure of guide, definition of indicators and tourism indicators, indicators as a toll for managing sustainable tourism, and use of indicators.

Second section explores how to conduct indicators studies by setting boundaries of study site, identifying site attributes and current key issues, selecting indicators for use, determining data resources, data collections and analysis, evaluation of results, reviewing key issues, and site-specific indicator selection criteria.

Core Indicators of Sustainable Tourism

<i>Indicator</i>	<i>Specific Measures</i>
1. Site Protection	Category of site protection according to IUCN ⁴ index
2. Stress	Tourist numbers visiting site (per annum/peak month)
3. Use Intensity	Intensity of use in peak period (person/hectare)
4. Social Impact	Ratio of tourists to locals (peak period)
5. Development Control	Existence of environmental review procedure for formal controls over development of site and use density
6. Waste Management	Percentage of sewage from site receiving treatment (additional indicators may include structural limits of other infrastructural capacity on site, such as water supply)
7. Planning Process	Existence of organized regional plan for tourist destination region (including tourism component)
8. Critical Ecosystems	Number of rare/endangered species
9. Consumer Satisfaction	Level of satisfaction by visitors (questionnaire-based)
10. Local Satisfaction	Level of satisfaction by locals (questionnaire-based)
Composite Indices	
A. Carrying Capacity	Composite early warning measure of key factors affecting the ability of the site to support different levels of tourism
B. Site Stress	Composite measure of levels of impact on the site (its natural and cultural attributes due to tourism and other cumulative stresses)
C. Attractivity	Qualitative measure of those site attributes that make it attractive to tourism and can change over time

Core Indicators in Tourism

Extracted from "What Tourism Managers Need to Know: A Practical Guide to the Development and Use of Indicators of Sustainable Tourism", WTO 1996

Voluntary initiatives for sustainable tourism

Following a recommendation of the UN Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD-7), WTO conducted a world-wide evaluation study on voluntary initiatives. This study aims at identifying similarities and differences among voluntary initiatives, finding out the factors that make them effective and successful in terms of sustainable tourism development. The result is published by WTO 'Voluntary Initiatives for Sustainable Tourism Worldwide Inventory and Comparative Analysis of 104 Eco-labels, Awards and Self-Commitments' and contains the research findings with the detailed description.

WTO is supporting a feasibility study for creating an international accreditation body of sustainable tourism and ecotourism certifiers, Global Sustainable Tourism Stewardship Council

(STSC) determining the most appropriate organisational structure, the necessary steps for its implementation and provides recommendations for accreditation criteria. This accreditation body is envisaged to have the responsibility of establishing international criteria for accreditation, monitor compliance with such criteria, promote consumer awareness and increase credibility of certification schemes. In addition, an accreditation body for sustainable tourism could indirectly raise the environmental and social standards for all sectors of the tourism industry.

The Tour Operator Initiative was established jointly with UNEP and UNESCO and signed by 15 major tour operators during the ITB in Berlin, 1999. The Initiative's first Meeting took place in London, November 2000 and membership has now increased to over 30 operators. Tour operating companies' members of the Initiative commit themselves to operate their businesses with increasing degrees of sustainability, and to exercise environmentally selective criteria in choosing their suppliers, especially among transport companies and hotels. More details are available in Chapter II, UNEP section.

Compilation of good practices in sustainable development of tourism

The progress towards a more sustainable tourism industry is best demonstrated through success stories. WTO made public two publications which compiled good practices in the field of sustainability. Both publications contain examples submitted by the WTO member states and, in their opinion, could be considered sustainable. They may regard as good individual practices and experiences and will be considered in detail on Chapter V.

- Sustainable Development of Tourism - A Compilation of Good Practices (2000): This publication contains 49 examples of good practices in sustainable development and management of tourism, collected from 31 countries including 20 from 12 European countries, 9 submitted by 6 countries from the Americas, 6 from 4 African states, 4 from 3 Middle Eastern countries and 10 from 6 countries in Asia and Pacific. A great variety of projects are presented, ranging from local to regional and national levels, including activities of the public, private and NGO sectors, covering aspects of eco-, rural- and cultural tourism, accommodations, tour operations, transportation, protected area management, regulatory and voluntary frameworks, among others. Significantly 50% of cases refer to Ecotourism which is an indication that Ecotourism activities are more amenable to sustainability principles. Each case is described in a systematic order, including detailed background information, success factors for sustainability, problems aroused and their solutions, lessons learnt, and monitoring activities. The major factors that seem to have contributed to the success or sustainability of the projects presented in this publication are as follows:
 - Local community involvement in the planning, development and management of the projects (40% of projects).
 - Cooperation among different partners in the pursuit of the project's objectives (36%).
 - Environmental commitments of the project's promoters (36%).

- Continuous monitoring of the projects performance (36%).
 - The existence of relevant legislation or regulatory framework.
 - The support or subsidised granted by governments or aid agencies (only 4 cases are entirely private initiatives).
- Sustainable Development of Ecotourism - A Compilation of Good Practices: This publication has been prepared on the occasion of the International Year of Ecotourism 2002. It is the second volume within the series of Good Practices published in the area of Sustainable Development of Tourism. The 53 case studies taken from 39 countries present a wide range of successful ecotourism initiatives. Each of them contain the necessary considerations for ecotourism projects including; describing stakeholders involved, objectives and strategies, funding, sustainability and monitoring aspects, problems encountered and solutions found. Of 53 cases 11 were submitted by 9 African countries, 8 by 5 Asian countries, and 21 by 12 Americans countries, 12 by European countries and One by Middle Eastern country. Thirty projects target protected areas, 12 rural areas, 2 cross border areas and 9 focuses on other areas. In more than 70% of cases various stakeholders have been involved. In 28 cases national governments and in 19 cases national tourism administration have directly provided financial and technical support. 31 project were funded and supported by stakeholders from more than one sectors, 8 by public authorities, other 8 by private sector and 6 funded and supported by NGO's. In several cases, the developed countries provide technical and financial supports to developing countries through the intermediary of their international cooperation and development agencies. Through out almost all of projects the sustainability aspects are further detailed according to specific elements of ecotourism such as: conservation, community involvement, interpretation and education, as well as environmental management practices. Some examples of the 53 case studies included: Strategic and Participative Management Plan for the Protected Area of the Valdes Peninsula, Argentina, Ecotourism Poles: A National Framework for Local Ecotourism Development, Brazil, Redberry Pelican Project (RPP): Conservation through Research, Education and Tourism, Canada, Environmental Protection and Ecotourism Development in Emei Mountain Scenic Area, China , Agrotourism in Cyprus, Kapawi Ecolodge and Reserve: Community Ecotourism Project, Ecuador, European Charter for Sustainable Tourism in Protected Areas, Germany, The Josvafo Village Walk in the Aggtelek National Park, Hungary, Community-based Ecotourism Development and Conservation in the Togean Islands, Indonesia, Wetland Conservation Project in Muthurajawela, Sri Lanka, Community Participation in Ecotourism Development in the Bazaruto Archipelago, Mozambique, Forest Resource Management in North-West Russia: The Karelia Project, Russia, Island Restoration Programme, Seychelles, Cultural Tourism Programme, Tanzania, The Kasanka National Park, Zambia.

Handbook on natural disaster reduction in tourist areas

Quite often tourism developments are located, in areas exposed to, or likely to be exposed to, sudden onset natural disasters, in particular beach and coastal areas, river valleys and mountain regions. If these developments are hit by natural disasters, the image of tourist destination will suffer. The handbook, jointly produced by WTO and WMO experts, demonstrates how to combat natural disasters in tourist areas and mitigate their impacts. It guides the reader through disaster onset to post-disaster reconstruction and re-launching of a tourist destination. (1998). the "Handbook on Natural Disaster Reduction in Tourist Areas" includes following parts; Introduction, Tropical cyclones and associated storm surges, flooding: coastal flooding, estuarine, and river flooding, earthquakes and tourism, avalanches and tourism, emergency preparations and post-disaster launching, guide for resort managers, guide for tourists, family guide, guidance on marketing and press relations associated with launching tourism after a disaster, sample damage assessment report

An explanatory bibliography on sustainable tourism

Sustainable Development of Tourism is relatively a new concept. It has increasingly been the subject of study over the last decade. To enhance the understanding of sustainable tourism and its practical applications, the World Tourism Organisation has compiled a list of the most recent books and articles on the subject and publicized "Sustainable Development of Tourism: An Annotated Bibliography". For the second edition nearly 100 books together with more than 250 articles were reviewed (1999).

the content of the publication includes Reviewed articles and documents such as; Presentations and reports of international conferences on sustainable tourism, case Studies of sustainable tourism development in different geographical locations and natural, traditional or cultural settings, practical guidelines for the achievement of sustainability which can be applied to other areas.

Sustainable tourism development at specific destinations: coastal areas and islands, cultural heritage sites, natural and rural areas

The main involvements of WTO on supporting sustainable tourism development in Small Island Developing States and other islands include the following technical meetings.

- Providing technical support at Barbados Conference in 1995 and encouraging delegates to focus on tourism. Sustainable tourism in the context of The Global Conference on the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States was explored in Chapter III.
- The Lanzarote Charter for Sustainable Tourism was prepared jointly by WTO with close cooperation of UNEP, UNESCO and the European Union and adapted by World Conference on Sustainable Tourism (Lanzarote, Canary Islands, Spain, 1995). The charter is reviewed in chronological part of Chapter I.

- The International Conference on Sustainable Tourism in Small Island Developing States (SIDS) and other Islands was convened jointly by WTO with UNEP in Lanzarote, Spain, 1998. Based on its resolutions, regional meetings were organised in collaboration with UNEP, in Capri, Italy (2000) for the Mediterranean islands and in Hainan, China (2000) for the islands of the Asia-Pacific region. The conference and its follow up are examined in chronological part of Chapter I.

WTO/OMT main guidelines on world heritage sites jointly prepared and published with the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) in 1999. The guidelines "Tourism at World Heritage Cultural Sites" targets site managers to accomplish a dual purpose: to conserve the site and give meaningful and considerate access to as many visitors as the site can allow. It contains eleven chapters in three parts named, preparing and foundations, building and structure, and welcoming visitors, as well as some appendix such as the World Heritage Convention and the maps of cultural/natural sites.

Chapters of handbook include; an overview on World Heritage Convention, establishing a management philosophy, the site management planning process, staffing and budgeting, policies on visitors-related income, image and marketing, recording and analysing visitors data, visitors and the local populations, moving travellers to and from sites, visitors amenities and services, sites interpretation and visitor educations.

In other development, a Seminar on the Contribution of Tourism to the Preservation of Cultural and Natural Sites for the countries of the Asia and Pacific regions was held in Wakayama, Japan, in 2000. A Conference on Tourism and Cultural Heritage was held in Siem Reap, Cambodia in 2000, also for the benefit of Asian and Pacific nations.

According to WTO, the organisation plans to undertake the following activities regarding cultural heritage sites:

- Conduct further research to advance knowledge on such aspects as visitor flow management, managing congestion at sites, use of electronic media to enhance sites' management and marketing, management co-ordination between tourism and cultural heritage administrations.
- Disseminate tourism management and marketing techniques suitable for cultural sites by means of seminars and publications;
- Field country missions to assist governments in improving tourism at their main cultural heritage sites; and
- Co-ordinate activities with other international organisations in this field, such as UNESCO, ICOMOS, the World Monuments Fund, etc.

On Tourism in protected areas, ecotourism, rural tourism and so on, WTO first publicized The "Guidelines for the Sustainable Development and Management of Tourism in National Parks and Protected Areas" which was produced jointly with UNEP and IUCN in 1992 in order to assist relevant authorities to achieve a sustainable use of their National Parks and protected areas, as prime destinations for ecotourism. A fully revised edition of this publication is recently published

(2001) with a comprehensive approach to manage tourism in sensitive area such as protected areas. "Sustainable tourism in protected areas; guidelines for planning and management" is summarised in Chapter II of this research.

WTO has held the following seminars to disseminate sustainable practices in the development and management of ecotourism:

- Seminar on Ecotourism Planning for the Middle East (Cairo, Egypt, 1998)
- Seminar on Sustainable Development and Marketing of Ecotourism (Kunming, China, 1999)
- Seminar on the Sustainable Development of Nature-based Tourism in Latin America (Cuba, 1999)

The World Tourism Organisation, jointly with the United Nations Environment Programme has joint forces for organising UN-designated International Year of Ecotourism, in 2002.

On rural tourism WTO managed a seminar on "Rural Tourism - A Solution for Employment, Local Development and Environment" which was held in Israel, and its proceedings were published in 1997. The purpose of this seminar was to promote an exchange of experience on rural tourism between member countries, including in particular those for whom tourism presents a new challenge. The publication includes a selection of presentations submitted to the seminar, covering subjects such as rural tourism: products, market, and marketing methods; rural tourism and local development, environmental protection, and government aid; rural tourism: professions, training, qualifications, and employment creation; prospects for rural tourism in the future: cooperation to ensure that this product promotes sustainable tourism at local level

The content of the handbook are Basic Document prepared by EUROTER, rural tourism; the products, the market, and the marketing methods, rural tourism and local development, environmental protection, and government aid (European, national and regional), rural tourism: professions, training, qualifications, and employment creation, prospects for rural tourism in future: cooperation to ensure that this product promotes sustainable tourism at local level

WTO and Tackling Social, Cultural, Environmental and Economical Impact of Tourism

Task force to protect children from sexual exploitation in tourism

The sexual exploitation of children in tourism (SECT) often referred to as "child sex tourism", is a global phenomenon that affects both tourism sending and destination countries. It has impact on millions of children each year and constitutes a violation of the human rights of the child. Because of large negative impacts of sexual exploitation of children on sustainable tourism, local communities and tourists, the main activities of WTO is summarised in this part.

In October 1995, the WTO Member States took a firm stand against child sex tourism by unanimously adopting the WTO Statement on the Prevention of Organised Sex Tourism at the General Assembly in Cairo, Egypt. (See Background and Chronology of WTO in this part).

In August 1996, the Stockholm Congress against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children introduced its Agenda for Action which urged all participants:

- to mobilise the business sector, including the tourism industry, against the use of its networks and establishments for the commercial sexual exploitation of children; and
- to promote better cooperation and encourage the establishment of national and international coalition to this effect,

At the Congress, as much as 122 countries agreed on taking measures to put a curb on the commercial sexual exploitation of children.

In March 1997 an open ended Task Force to Protect Children from Sexual Exploitation in Tourism established at the International Tourism Fair in Berlin by WTO

According to WTO the Task Force's main objectives are:

- to build awareness among the tourism sector, governments and tourists
- to encourage the tourism industry to engage in good and ethical practices, to adopt professional codes of conduct and other self-regulatory measures,
- to invite governments to take administrative and legal measures, such as designating focal points (contact persons) within their national tourism administration, establishing emergency hotlines, strengthening national legislation against sexual abuse of children in tourism and improving law enforcement,
- to encourage cooperation between the public and private sector, as well as between tourist generating and receiving countries, and
- to monitor the fight against the sexual exploitation of children in tourism networks at national and international level,

The Task Force holds two annual consultative meetings with governments' and tourism industry's officially designated focal points which usually take place at the International Tourism Fair in Berlin (ITB) and at the World Travel Market in London (WTM).

The activities of the Task Force to Protect Children from Sexual Exploitation in Tourism are co-ordinated by the WTO Secretariat and monitored by an Executive Committee established in November 2000.

Two months later the task force launched international campaign for the protection of children from sexual exploitation in tourism aimed at promoting a socially responsible and sustainable tourism that respects the rights of the child. Its main objective is to prevent sexual abuse of children occurring within the tourism channels and facilities by creating effective networks and sound partnerships among the private and public sectors, governments, the tourism industry, international organisations and NGOs.

At the end of 2000, WTO started to pool resources with the European Union (EU). The EU supported a number of interactive projects coordinated by WTO which have led to "awareness-raising and capacity building actions in the tourism sector to counter the sexual exploitation of children". These projects are jointly implemented with NGO partners, namely the ECPAT Group,

the Family and Child Care Centre, the International Federation of Journalists and Terre des Hommes/Germany. WTO is also due to implement "Awareness-raising campaign targeting host communities and national tourism administrations at destination countries" in the same queue.

WTO carried out the following activities within this project:

- Preparation of a study on the incidence of child sex tourism with a view to measuring the effectiveness of the international campaign against sexual exploitation of children in tourism.
- Development and implementation of guidelines and procedures for national tourism administrations and local tourist destination focal points.
- Development of training material for tourism curricula.
- Support of regional activities against sexual exploitation of children in tourism in Africa and the Americas.
- Contribution to the Second World Congress against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children
- Development of links of the WTO Internet service Child Prostitution and Tourism Watch with other relevant online sites.

WTO and ECPAT jointly, with the support of EU implemented "Code of Conduct of the Tourism Industry to protect children from sexual exploitation" (www.theCode.org) as a follow-up of WTO-EU projects. The project commits tour operators to raise awareness among the public, their employees, their suppliers (in the home country as well as at the destinations) and the travellers.

Each tour operator who has adopted this code must undertake the following:

- Establish an ethical policy regarding the protection of children against sexual exploitation;
- Train tourism personnel in the country of origin and travel destinations
- Include a specific clause in contracts with suppliers that proclaims a common repudiation of child sex
- Provide information to travellers by appropriate means
- Provide information to local "key persons" at the destinations.

The implementation of this code initiated by ECPAT Sweden in collaboration with Scandinavian tour operators, has been extended (2001) to Austria (Centre for Tourism & Development), Germany (ECPAT Germany), Italy (ECPAT Italy), the Netherlands (ECPAT Netherlands) and the United Kingdom (ECPAT United Kingdom).

WTO together with International Federation of Journalists (IFJ), implemented the project 'Child Sex Tourism: Awareness Raising in the Media' as a follow up of WTO-EU supported projects.

The project undertakes the following actions:

- To publish a handbook for journalists and NGOs which is designed to promote more effective and professional cooperation between the media and child rights campaigners. The handbook includes the IFJ Guidelines and Principles for Reporting on Issues Involving Children (<http://www.ifj.org/working/issues/children/guidelines.html>). The handbook further addresses the ethical dilemmas facing journalists who report on exploitation of children,

especially child sex tourism. The handbook will further contain training materials for journalists and child right campaigners built on existing experience.

- To publish and circulate the Pact for Children, a mission statement which highlights the need for ethical and professional performance in reporting child rights issues.
- To publish and circulate a joint strategy document for actions between journalists' groups and representative trade unions covering the workforce in the travel industry and outlining a joint strategy to combat child sex tourism. Unions representing workers in the tourism industry are key partners in combating child sex tourism. The IFJ promotes cooperation between the tourism industry and the unions as well as the media.

WTO and The international federation of Terre des hommes jointly implemented 'The Internet platform to prevent the sexual exploitation of children in tourism' as a project supported by EU.

The aim of the project is to contribute to awareness raising on the issue of sexual exploitation of children in tourism through the creation and the development of an Internet-Platform (www.child-hood.com) providing:

- Information facilities for tourists who are using the Internet for travel preparation, by means of a user-friendly system;
- A common platform for actors in the fight against child sex tourism, in the form of an information-pool with search and exchange of information facilities;
- Information facilities focusing on the practical needs of the travel and tourism industry, and facilitating its further involvement in this fight.

The website offers travellers online information on problems and laws, and explains the different ways tourists can respond to the situation in their destination countries. Tourists can also find tour operators who are engaged in the campaign against the sexual exploitation of children.

Second world congress against sexual exploitation of children was held in Yokohama on December 2001. The aim of the Congress was to review progress and developments made since the adoption of the Declaration and Agenda for Action of the First World Congress (Stockholm, 1996), and to enhance new political commitments from countries. One of the six panels at the Congress was dedicated to the private sector, and three other workshops dealt directly with the tourism sector. By adopting The Yokohama Global Commitment of 2001, over 3,000 participants representing 136 governments, inter-governmental organisations, NGOs, the private sector and members of the civil society, including numerous young people, reaffirmed their resolve to respect the rights of children by reinforcing their efforts to combat commercial sexual exploitation of minors. Special emphasis was put on promoting closer cooperation and networking among key actors at all levels. On the occasion of the Yokohama Congress, the International Air Transport Association (IATA) and the WTO had issued a Joint Statement on the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism by which the two organisations committed themselves to continue working "for closer public-private tourism-sector partnerships at national, regional and international levels to jointly combat sexual offences on minors in travel and tourism networks".

(Joint Statement by IATA and WTO on the protection of children from sexual exploitation in travel and tourism Yokohama on 17 December 2001)

The joint statement also included;

- Both sides urge those in positions of power and authority to take specific measures to counter sexual exploitation of children, by adapting their legislation to criminalize child sex abuse and introducing extraterritorial prosecution, in particular through the reinforcement of judicial cooperation between States and the designation of national focal points.
- Both sides encourage airlines and other international travel organisations, including airport authorities, to multiply their awareness-raising efforts towards passengers, especially by means of articles in in-flight magazines and by screening in-flight video clips or other spots in airport passenger lounges, departure gates and on airport buses.
- Both sides support in particular the adoption of self-regulatory measures, such as codes of conduct and good practices, to complement existing legislation, as well as the education and training of staff at home and at tourism destinations.

The global code of ethic for tourism

The global Code of Ethic for Tourism sets a frame of reference for the responsible and sustainable development of world tourism. It helps minimise the negative impacts of tourism on the environment and on cultural heritage while maximising the benefits for residents of tourism destinations.

The code is based on WTO General Assembly resolution in Istanbul; 1997. CSD7 endorsed the concept of the code in April, 1999 and finally the Code was approved unanimously by the WTO General Assembly meeting in Santiago in October 1999. (for more information please see codes and guidelines section of this part).

Silk Road as a link between the East and the West

One of the most attractive trade and tourism roads in middle centuries was Silk Road, connecting Japan and China via central Asia and Iran to Turkey, Caucas and Greece as well as Arabian peninsula and Egypt.

WTO General Assembly in Indonesia in 1993 decided to create a long-term tourism project to promote a special Silk Road tourism concept as a measure for exchanging cultures, crafts, ideas, technologies, beliefs and peoples between east and west. It may increase regional integration as well as global cultural understanding. As a historical landmark, the Samarqand Declaration on Silk Road Tourism was adopted in 1994 by 19 participating countries. A special logo of the WTO Silk Road Tourism Project was subsequently adopted to unite all countries, organisations and the private sector under a common visual banner. The Silk Road is a trans-continental concept which required cooperation and collaboration beyond individual country borders. This task was further compounded by the fact that in order to convert this potential resource into an integrated tourism

product, it required active participation of various sectors of the tourism industry including hoteliers, travel agencies and tour operators as well as national authorities. In 1996 WTO suggested a marketing plan to the first Silk Road forum in Xi'an, China. WTO organised the second Silk Road Travel Forum in Nara, Japan in January 1997. Based on the principles of the joint marketing and promotion strategy which was formulated at the Xi'an Forum, the meeting discussed various issues on how to unify the promotion of tourism along the Road. The Forum formed the basis for WTO to compile an exhaustive inventory of all tourism resources along the Silk Road, including attractions, facilities, accommodations, transport and information centres. A major output of the Nara Forum was the publication of a coloured brochure on the Silk Road's tourism product, which is being used by the Silk Road countries as an effective marketing tool.

The Second International Meeting on the Silk Road was held in Tehran in April 1997 supported by UNESCO. The meeting brought national tourism administrations, international organisations, tour operators and journalists representing 27 nations with the common goal of reviving the legendary Silk Road through tourism. The primary aims of the meeting were to broaden international understanding and expand cultural exchanges, both within the Silk Road region, and between individual Silk Road countries and the rest of the world. The meeting suggested a number of measures for the Silk Road countries to adopt with a view to achieving a high degree of sustainable tourism development as also conservation and preservation of the natural and cultural environment. In addition, the meeting also recommended the establishment of a Silk Road website on Internet, an annual Silk Road Tourism Day and Motor Rally, and adoption of a Silk Road official anthem.

WTO General Assembly session held in Istanbul, Turkey from 17-24 October 1997, provided two new initiatives: first, development of an action plan to link the Silk Road handicrafts centres drawing the experience of a UNDP project in Uzbekistan; and, second, to support a proposal by a New Zealand media group to prepare a 26-part television travel series on the Silk Road attractions. Another major marketing initiative was launched at the Silk Road Travel Forum in Kyoto, Japan in February 1998. Japan is a major source market for the Silk Road and the Forum was organised with the specific objective of familiarizing the Silk Road countries with the profile of the Japanese outbound market, its salient characteristics and, how the Silk Road inbound tour operators should approach the Japanese market.

The Third International Meeting on the Silk Road was held in Tbilisi, Georgia from 02-05 November 1998 with the aim of continuing the planning and marketing process which the project started four years ago and to take a stock of the current situation and, then decide how to proceed.

Sustainable Tourism and Poverty Alleviation

The World Tourism Organisation jointly with UNCTAD focused in a new initiative to develop sustainable tourism as a force for poverty elimination. In the end of July 2002 WTO and UNCTAD have agreed to take a new initiative "Sustainable Tourism as a tool for Eliminating

Poverty", under the acronym ST-EP, with the purpose of exploring a framework that could facilitate the involvement of the community of donors and secure multi-stakeholder support for the poverty reduction policies.

Called ST-EP (Sustainable Tourism - Eliminating Poverty) it focuses the longstanding work of both organisations to encourage sustainable tourism - social, economic and ecological - which specifically alleviates poverty, bringing development and jobs to people living on the world's poorest countries, particularly in Africa, LDCs and developing countries. The goal of the ST-EP initiative is to link these two macro trends, refocusing Sustainable Tourism as a primary tool for Eliminating Poverty in the world's poorest countries bringing development and jobs to people who are often living on less than a dollar a day. Its core will be a tri-partite institutional framework, which raises substantial funds: targets best practice research and creates an operating system, which specifically encourages Sustainable Tourism geared to the Elimination of Poverty.

ST-EP, according to WTO, has three components:

- An International Foundation to attract new dedicated financing from business, philanthropy and government sources.
- A Research Base which identifies linkages, principles and model applications.
- An Operating Framework which both increase incentive and promotes good practise among companies, consumers and communities.

Geoffrey H. Lipman Special Advisor to Secretary General WTO for Trade in Tourism Services in his presentation at the World Ecotourism Summit (Quebec) described above three components as a Virtuous Triangle and pointed out steps to be taken for implementation of ST-EP as follows;

- Attracting significant new Funds for this endeavour, via a Charitable Foundation. New funding, because we all know that existing resources are totally inadequate and that tourism cannot compete against financing the deep-rooted challenges such as health, education and child welfare. The Foundation will seek funding from private sector sources directly and indirectly linked to tourism, from individual and institutional philanthropy sources, as well as public sector funds for entrepreneurs: agricultural transformation, service capacity building and the like.
- Mobilizing the research community we envisage annual distribution of a significant sum for new research which reveals key linkages between sustainable tourism and elimination of poverty. And which identifies model approaches capable of replication. The focus will be on the practical not the theoretical – the grants will be promoted widely to secure maximum interest from the global research community.
- Sustainable operations, our model foresees another even more significant annual sum to be made available to seed small and medium sized projects in the world's poorest countries. Projects, which follow the ST-EP principles identified from the research programmes and eventually, certified in their sustainability performance. We will look to an Annual Global Awards Ceremony to promote the ST-EP vision and its champions

The programme is launched during the World Summit on Sustainable Development in Johannesburg, to be operational in 2003 and beyond.

In the end of the August 2002 WTO had launched a publication 'Tourism and Poverty Alleviation' to reflect the World Tourism Organisation's concern that the benefits of tourism should be widely spread in society and that the poor should benefit from tourism development. The report, which is prepared jointly with UNCTAD, reviews current experience of tourism and poverty reduction in order to identify what is known about the contribution, which the tourism industry can make to the elimination of poverty; and makes recommendations for action by government, the industry, development agencies and local communities.

The report reviews tourism possible contribution to poverty eradication and makes recommendations to major stakeholders. First of all it explored the significance of tourism and the role that it has played in development of developing countries, especially in 49 LDCs. Then the tourism approaches and shapes to maximise local economic impact are considered. The evidence of explicitly of pro-poor tourism is reviewed and finally report concludes with an agenda for action. Four case study from Gambia, South Africa, Nepal, and Ecuador have been selected as examples of tourism contribution to poverty alleviation.

International Year of Ecotourism

The International Year of Ecotourism reflects the important role of this tourism segment in promoting social development, economic growth, cultural and environmental preservation.

Following the designation of the year 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism by the United Nations General Assembly, the Commission on Sustainable Development requested international agencies, governments and the private sector to undertake supportive activities. The World Tourism Organisation, bearing in mind the rapid expansion of Ecotourism activities in recent years, joined in the preparation and co-ordination of some activities to be undertaken at the international level during nominated Year. WTO organised several regional consultations as well as web conferences to explore and identify as much as possible new and emerging trends on nature based tourism and provide the Ecotourism Summit in Quebec with substantial inputs.

The following preparatory Conferences for the International Year of Ecotourism have been convened by WTO:

- Africa: Mozambique, March 2001
- Americas: Brazil, August 2001
- Europe: Austria, September 2001
- CIS Countries, China and Mongolia: Kazakhstan, October 2001
- Mediterranean Europe, Middle East and North Africa: Greece, November 2001
- Islands: Seychelles, December 2001
- .. Desert Areas: Algeria, January 2002
- Asia: Maldives, February 2002

- The Russian Federation and neighbouring countries: Moscow, March 2002
- South Pacific: Fiji, April 2002
- Ecotourism Marketing Workshop with the collaboration of the German Technical Cooperation Agency, GTZ, in Hanover, Germany, in January 2002,

The WTO General Assembly By resolution 439 adopted at its Fourteenth session (Seoul, Republic of Korea/Osaka, Japan, 24-29 September 2001) decided to select "Ecotourism, the key to sustainable development" as theme for twenty-third edition of World Tourism Day (2002).

The resolution pointed out that "With this decision, it wanted to support the UN General Assembly's declaration of 2002 as International Year of Ecotourism, in itself an unprecedented designation which reflects the growing recognition by the international community of the potential of tourism, and ecotourism in particular, to contribute to the sustainable development process", stated Mr. Francesco Frangialli, WTO Secretary-General, in his annual message to mark the occasion. The official celebration of the twenty-third World Tourism Day took place in Costa Rica, on the 27 September 2002.

At national level WTO recommended its Member States In early 2001 to undertake different types of activities for the IYE at national and local levels. According to WTO more than 50 countries have reported on these initiatives, such as the creation of local and national multi-stakeholder ecotourism committees, organisation of national conferences and seminars, ecotourism development and conservation activities at protected and other natural areas, awareness raising and education programmes, marketing activities, etc.

WTO especially publications for IYE are as follows;

- Compilation of Good Practices in the Sustainable Development of Ecotourism; 55 case studies from 39 countries, presented in a systematic form, drawing lessons that may be applied at other destinations. Some of the case studies presented in this book are reviewed in Chapter V.
- Ecotourism Market Study Series: seven pioneer country reports on the main European and North American ecotourism generating markets including Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Spain, UK, USA.
- Guidelines for the Sustainable Development and Management of Tourism in National Parks and Protected Areas (revised edition, jointly with UNEP/WTO/IUCN).The summary and main points of the guideline are available in UNEP part of Chapter X.
- International Ecolodge Guidelines (WTO sponsored and contributed to this publication by The International Ecotourism Society).
- A new edition of the sustainable tourism good practice compilation series is published. This third volume will focus on successful examples of small ecotourism businesses, and it will be published early next year.

The World Tourism Organisation is also encouraging the Governments of its Member States to create national and local ecotourism committees, to enhance the potential of ecotourism to improve living standards in developing countries through Multistakeholder participatory processes. The full review of International Year of Ecotourism and WTO involvement are available in this Chapter.

WTO and the Implementation of Agenda 21

General activities during Rio and Rio+10 Summits

WTO categorised its general activities between two important sustainable development summits as following;

- Agenda 21 for the travel and tourism industry

In 1996 the World Tourism Organisation, the Earth Council and the World Travel & Tourism Council, representing large multinational tourism and travel companies, joined together to launch an action plan entitled "Agenda 21 for the Travel & Tourism Industry: Towards Environmentally Sustainable Development" - a sectoral sustainable development programme based on the Rio Earth Summit results.

Agenda 21 specifies actions that industry can take to bring about sustainable development and ways in which governments can facilitate this process. The Agenda 21 for travel & tourism industry, aims to help government departments with responsibility for the travel & tourism, national tourism administrations (NTA's), representative trade organisations and travel & tourism companies fulfil their potential to achieve sustainable development at local and national levels. It lays out the key objectives for achievement by the year 2005. Implementation of its recommendations will go some way towards harnessing the power of tourism to:

- create economic value for resources whose conservation would otherwise be seen as having no financial value; such resources include wildlife, natural areas, built heritage and cultural heritage;
- provide incentives and means for environmental enhancement of areas such as city centres and old industrial sites, including the creation of employment in these areas;
- establish essential infrastructure such as water treatment plants, for residents as well as visitors; this may in turn, stimulate other economic activities;
- use communication opportunities with customers and host communities to pass on the message and practices of sustainable development;
- provide environmentally sound growth alternatives for developing countries and island states, which can help them attain sustainable development patterns;
- lead other industries in the adoption of business practices that contribute toward sustainable development by asking suppliers to provide environmentally benign products and exchanging information and ideas on sound environmental management.

After the launch of this document, the three organisations conducted a five-year series of regional seminars designed to increase awareness of the conclusions and to adapt the programme for local implementation.

- WTO studies and publications on sustainable development of tourism

WTO's plays important functions to fulfil its mandate as a source of information for its Members on sustainable development of tourism based on agenda 21. The list of major publication of WTO in codes and policy making is available in section II of this part (codes and guidelines).

- Cooperation for development

The World Tourism Organisation created a Section on Sustainable Development of Tourism in its Secretariat in 1998 and set up a political committee of Member States representing all regions of the world. Cooperation for Development, thereof, is highlighted in the agenda of work of WTO. Technical cooperation activities of WTO, which account for a large share of cooperation for development, can be classified under two categories:

- Technical cooperation projects, and
- Sectoral Support/technical assistance missions.

According to WTO Technical cooperation projects, which are usually of a long duration (more than six months), are the tools through which WTO assists governments in acquiring technical know-how in the formulation of tourism policies and strategies in planning, development, marketing, promotion, education and training. They tend to focus on tourism master planning at all levels, establishment of training institutes, formulation of legislation and regulations, preparation of marketing programmes, and, national capacity building. They are also based on a policy of sustainability, ensuring that the economic benefits of tourism development are not offset by damage to the environment or to local cultures.

Sectoral support missions are carried out at the request of countries or group of countries to identify, evaluate and describe their specific technical assistance needs and provide policy advice on the problems they are faced with. These missions are usually fielded for a short duration and result in direct WTO recommendation reports to members or in formulating further project proposals for funding by UNDP or other sources. The list of technical cooperation projects and sectoral support missions in the field of sustainable development have carried out by WTO Since the Rio Summit may find in the report of WTO on 'Actions in Assisting Developing Countries to Implement Agenda 21 Undertaken by the World Tourism Organisation since 1992' prepared for WSSD.

WTO and CSD7

WTO contributed to CSD7 with, inter alia, a background documents for its session in April 1999, devoted to examine tourism. Working Group on Tourism (WGT) was established as a result of decision 7/3 of the CSD-7, which "Invites the United Nations Secretariat and the World Tourism Organisation, in consultation with major groups and other relevant international organisations, to

jointly facilitate the establishment of an ad hoc informal open-ended working group on tourism to assess financial leakages and determine how to maximise benefits for indigenous and local communities, and to prepare a joint initiative to improve information availability and capacity building for participation, and address other matters relevant to the implementation of the international work programme on sustainable tourism development."

Further to CSD-7, the Inter Agency Committee on Sustainable Development (IACSD) meeting in Vienna in September 1999 entrusted the World Tourism Organisation (WTO) with the task of convening WGT prior to its next meeting, scheduled for 24th of January 2000, and reporting to it on the results achieved. The agenda of the meeting was set up by WTO and it evolved around the constitution of the WGT, its membership, the way in which it would undertake its tasks, its internal communications procedures, its funding and other such operational and logistic aspects.

The actual work and study themes stipulated in the CSD-7 decisions' document were deliberately excluded from the first WGT meeting agenda, since it was thought important to sort out first the nature and composition of the working group.

The first meeting of the Ad-hoc open-ended informal working group on tourism (WGT), held in Heredia, Costa Rica, on January 2000, lead to the adoption of the following resolutions:

1. The composition of the Working Group will remain as established by CSD-7, namely governments, the four major groups (private sector, local authorities, NGOs and trade unions) and international organisations. Each stakeholder will have two representatives on the WGT; however, the NGOs will have four representatives that will include two from its North sector and two from its South sector.
2. The government representatives will be the members of the WTO's Committee for Sustainable Development of Tourism, i.e. ten Member States.
3. The Secretariat of the WGT will rotate between stakeholders for periods of six months each. The first period will be held by WTO, followed by UNEP. After the initial period, WTTC and NGOs will take turns.
4. There will be an Executive Steering Committee (ESC) consisting of one representative of each of the stakeholders. This ESC will be chaired by WTO with the UN Division for Sustainable Development as Deputy-Chair and it will provide continuity and direction to the efforts and activities of the WG.
5. The attached programme of activities has been agreed upon, within the four priority areas established by the resolutions of CSD-7:
 - a. Assessment of financial leakage,
 - b. Methods of maximising benefits for local people,
 - c. Information availability and dissemination, and
 - d. Capacity building for participation.

And utilising the following criteria for establishing priorities;

- a. Does the activity fit within the four priority areas?

- b. Is there a responsible stakeholder that could lead the work?
- c. Is there sufficient documentation, human and financial resources, to carry it out?
- d. Can it realistically be implemented before the Rio + 10 summit in 2002?

The programme of activities could be extended and priorities decided upon according to the above criteria and resources available.

6. Stakeholders will take responsibility (as lead agency) for activities in which they have expertise and can make a significant contribution to the work of the WGT. Each lead agency will prepare a budget for each activity and submit it to the ESC.

7. Organisations or institutions outside the membership of the WGT can be invited to participate in the work by taking responsibility for, or contribute to a programme in an area where they have particular expertise.

8. Consultations and communications between members will take place through e-mail and other technological means. Meetings will be reduced to a minimum.

9. All members will continue to search for additional sources of manpower and finance for the Secretariat and the various programmes of the WGT.

WGT noted that CSD-7 refer a long list of tasks to be undertaken by WGT but had made no funding provisions to undertake them. WGT recognised that several of the institutions present in its meeting as well as others had already carried out research or had ready-made information on the topics to be covered. Therefore, such information could be put at the WGT's disposal in order to avoid duplication, save time and resources, and show evidence of some progress being made. The WGT addressed 11 priority issues covering a wide variety of aspects of sustainable tourism development which is laid out below;

**Priority issues to be addressed by the WGT from
February 2000 through to the UN Rio + 10 Conference in 2002**

ISSUE	LEAD AGENCY	ASSISTING AGENCIES
1. Capacity building activities and multilateral and bilateral financial and technical assistance for the application of appropriate technologies on all aspects of sustainable tourism development (Decision 4-b)	UNEP	WTO
2. Development and application of indicators for sustainable tourism development (Decision 4-k)	WTO	WTTC, ITC
3. Preparation for the International Year of Ecotourism	WTO,	The Ecotourism

2002 (Decision 4-i)	UNEP	Society
4. Encourage more responsible behaviour among tourists (Decision 4-c)	NGOs	
5. Promote the implementation of Voluntary Initiatives and Guidelines for Sustainable Tourism (Decision 4-l)	ICT	WTO, UNEP
6. Encourage business and industry to take steps to implement eco-efficiency approaches (Decision 4-o)	WTTC	UNEP
7. Compile information on national strategies and master plans for sustainable tourism development (Decision 2-a)	The Earth Council	WTO
8. Collect and disseminate information on best practices and techniques for sustainable tourism development (Decision 4-e and 1)	WTO	UNEP, NGOs
9. Clarify the concepts of sustainable tourism and ecotourism (Decision 4-j)	WTO	WTTC, NGOs
10. Consider an exchange of experiences and best practice on sustainable tourism development and biological diversity (Decision 7)	CBD	
11. Assess financial leakage from tourism (Decision 9)	WTO	WTTC

WTTC - World Travel and Tourism Council,

Source: WTO

NGOs - Non-Governmental Organisations (Tourism Caucus),

ICT - Costa Rican Tourism Institute

According to WTO progress in the work of this Group has been very slow, due to a total lack of funding. The representative of the following countries had attended the WGT; Algeria, Bolivia, Costa Rica, Greece, Israel, Malawi, and Denmark.

WTO and WSSD

WTO based on three main overarching goals, set out by PrepCom of WSSD on social, economical and environmental sustainable development, provided WSSD with reports including The Report of the Secretary-General on Tourism to WSSD, dated 30 April-2 May 2001, and Policy Report on Sustainable Development of Tourism, prepared for the UN Division of Sustainable Development, on May 2001. (<http://www.world-tourism.org/sustainable/wssd/WTO-contributions-eng.pdf>)

The three overarching aims of WSSD in the social field is poverty eradication, in the economic field is changing unsustainable patterns of consumption and production, while in the environmental field, the overarching goal is sustainable management of natural resources for development.(WSSD, Plan of Implementation).

According to WTO the contribution that tourism can make to poverty alleviation, to conservation of the natural and cultural heritage, and to overall sustainable development can be substantial. This is especially so in developing countries, where natural resources and landscapes are still relatively untouched and where few other economic activities have a sustainable development potential, from an economic or environmental perspective. Furthermore, tourism has proved to be in many countries a much more sustainable development option than intensive agriculture, forestry, extractive mining or other primary activities.

The summary of the Report of the Secretary-General on Tourism to WSSD is available in Chapter IX.

The Policy Report on Sustainable Development of Tourism contains three parts. In the first part, 'General assessment of the effectiveness of policies developed by governments, international organisations and agencies, and major groups' is reviewed. At national level in general terms, the need for a systematic planning approach in tourism has become a standard and widely accepted procedure Since the Rio Earth Summit, sustainability has become the central issue in tourism development policies throughout the world. In a number of countries, policies for sustainable tourism recommended by international organisations, and formulated by national, regional and local government authorities have been integrated into a wider national environmental and sustainability policy or strategy.

From a survey of nearly 50 nations reporting to the United Nations on their policies and approaches towards promoting sustainable development, including in the tourism sector, the following conclusions can be drawn:

- The definition of a global environmental policy and associated strategy at the national level seems, for most countries, to be a key, basic element for ensuring a sustainable development of tourism.
- However, the national tourism administrations of many countries regret the fact that such environmental policies, laws and related regulations are often formulated without taking into account the needs of, and potential offered by the tourism sector.
- Thus, only in a few cases tourism is integrated in the national development planning process.

- Sustainable tourism development policies, strategies and guidelines, and/or long-term tourism master plans including sustainability principles have become quite common in most developing and newly independent nations. In some cases, such plans are being formulated at sub-national level (i.e. for provinces, counties or even smaller territorial units).
- Most countries report increased sustainability awareness among at least two main actors in the tourism process: public authorities and the private sector. Frequently, this new awareness has been the result of specific awareness-raising programmes which have reached also other segments of the population, such as students and local communities.
- An accelerated decentralisation process has taken place during the 1990s in the public decision-making, planning and regulating processes concerning tourism and its sustainability concerns. In a few cases, a tourism-inspired Local Agenda 21 has been successfully formulated and implemented.
- The above has, in many countries, facilitated the process of involving major groups in all stages of tourism development and management, and in some cases even in the monitoring of its impacts. If local communities are not directly represented (i.e. via elected officials), NGOs assume the role of representing community and environmental interests.
- The tourism industry, which is almost entirely in private hands, is regularly consulted by tourism public authorities on specific planning or regulatory issues when such plans and regulations exist; serious efforts have been made by some governments for the industry to get involved in, and committed to sustainability issues.
- Plans and sustainability guidelines appear to be more common in respect of the ecotourism segment of the industry, and in some cases it is wrongly thought that this is the only segment requiring such guidelines.
- Coastal areas, islands and natural parks have received special attention in some countries, given their vulnerability and the high concentration of tourism infrastructure in these areas. Spatial or physical planning is mentioned as a tool to facilitate the sustainability of tourism in very few cases only.
- The hotel industry in particular has generally accepted the need for introducing environmental management systems in their operations. In some cases, it has not been necessary to set up regulations to this purpose, since it is the industry itself which has introduced such systems voluntarily and by its own initiative (e.g. the case of large hotel chains, or independent hotels via a trade association).
- Only a few countries or regions within countries, mainly in the developed world, have established valid and effective indicators to measure progress towards sustainability in tourism.
- Tourism certification systems and ecolabels, among other voluntary initiatives have been officially adopted or supported by national or local governments in a number of countries.

The effectiveness of such systems or the level consumers recognition or respect has not been reported.

- There is an incipient effort to introduce sustainability issues in tourism education and training programmes in quite a number of countries.
- Only a small number of nations and individual destinations recognise the links between offering sustainable tourism products and market competitiveness.
- The more developed nations have made substantive progress in advancing knowledge in the field of sustainable development and management of tourism. A survey conducted by the World Tourism Organisation among its Member States showed that, in recent years, over 100 research projects had been undertaken in 47 countries on sustainable tourism development issues, mostly in Europe and the Americas. Another bibliographical survey by WTO recorded nearly 500 titles of books and journals written in the late 1990s on the specific subjects of sustainable tourism development, carrying capacities in tourism, environmental and socio-cultural impacts of tourism, sustainable planning guidelines for tourism, etc.
- The appearance of regional and sometimes inter-regional cooperation networks, either of a general nature or tourism-specific (e.g. in the Caribbean, Baltic Sea, Mediterranean, European Union, etc.), has favoured the dissemination of sustainable practices in tourism.

WTO concluded that substantive progress has been made in terms of:

- increased awareness on sustainability issues among all tourism stakeholders, especially among public administrations; and
- availability of hard and soft technological solutions to overcome the negative environmental and socio-cultural impacts of tourism,

There are many factors that prevent a more systematic application of declared policies and the implementation of tourism development plans, the most important of which seem to be:

- The generalised weakness of the national tourism administration in most countries, in terms of both, institutional and financial capability;
- The lack of integration of the tourism sector into global development plans;
- The absence of specific sustainable tourism development strategies;
- The horizontal nature of the tourism sector, depending on many inputs and touching on many activities that are under the responsibility of many government departments, and the associated lack of coordination;
- The fragmentation of the tourism industry, and the overwhelming presence of many micro, small- and medium-size companies;
- The lack of technical know how, particularly in developing countries and LDCs, or the insufficient transfer and application of existing technologies;
- A continued lack of awareness among the local stakeholders, particularly among the private operators, on the need to ensure sustainable practices in tourism;

- The shortage of finance for building the appropriate infrastructure needed to prevent negative environmental impacts (e.g. Waste and water treatment plants);
- The shortage of finance for effectively monitoring the tourism industry performance;
- The shortage or a total lack of human resources to plan, implement and manage the tourism industry and its monitoring by public authorities; Continued and sometimes growing pressure from hotel and estate developers on coastal areas for building additional accommodation infrastructure;
- The absence or insufficiency of data and data sources to allow a continuous application of indicators of sustainability in tourism;
- The proliferation of voluntary initiatives and ecolabels, and the lack of stringent procedures and standards of many of them, creating confusion and affecting their credibility among consumers;
- The lack of adequate, ad-hoc legislation, regulatory norms and compliance mechanisms and, as a consequence of it, a shortage of supervisory tools at the disposal of tourism public authorities, local authorities and other public administrations.

The conclusion of WTO is in spite of the two positive factors such as increased awareness and availability of technological solutions, the level of application of policies and of soft and hard technologies for ensuring a sustainable development and management of tourism is still limited, due to the factors indicated above.

At international level, WTO has produced a number of publications containing methodological procedures, planning and management guidelines, criteria for setting up standards and indicators, which are both of a general nature or specific for some type of destinations or for different regions of the world. According to WTO it is difficult for this organisation to really assess the level of application of the recommendations issued from its work. This is particularly difficult in tourism due to the fact that the responsibility of implementing plans, strategies and specific guidelines in tourism falls within the field of competence of many actors, from both the public and private sectors.

Other international and regional organisation such as UNEP, UNESCO, the Secretariat of the Convention of Biological Diversity, the World Bank, among others at the global level, as well as UN-ESCAP, UN-ECLAC, the European Union, OECD, the Association of Caribbean States, the Southern Africa Development Community, the Association of Baltic States, some regional financial institutions, and other international agencies at the regional level have embarked upon a variety of programmes to promote a more sustainable tourism sector.

WTO and UNEP jointly acting in several fields such as tourism in Small Island developing states, sustainable behaviour by tour operators, tourism in natural parks and protected areas. Similarly, joint actions and publications by WTO and UNESCO have promoted higher sustainability levels in the development and management of tourism at cultural heritage sites.

The most important achievements of international community on the field of tourism in last decade include;

- Growing understanding of the fundamental need for multi-stakeholder dialogues and decision-making processes.
- Growing involvement in, and concern for the sustainability of tourism demonstrated by many international agencies
- The imperative of assuring a more sustainable tourism industry and increasing the contribution of tourism to sustainable development.
- The risk of dispersed action and low effectiveness in the use of scarce public international resources is obvious.
- The need for a more concerted action by the entire international system of agencies, and ideally including the bilateral aid agencies too, is pressing.

In the second part 'Examples of policies that have made a tangible difference in the sustainable development of tourism' is reviewed. In this part two kinds of examples on the involvement of local communities or localizing tourism activity and establishment of some kind of certification scheme or ecolabels are dyed. Governmental and non-governmental approaches and activities as well as needed supports are explained.

In part three 'Options and opportunities to accelerate the implementation of sustainable development objectives in the tourism sector' are explained.

The achievement of sustainable development objectives in the tourism sector in the short and medium term does not seem to be an impossible challenge. A major is the creation of a now widespread awareness about the need for tourism to be more sustainable. It is to deepen and extend the commitment to sustainability, especially among the so-called mass tourism segment. Such awareness has already taken place in niche tourism such as ecotourism, cultural tourism and has to extent to mass tourism. For higher sustainability standards in tourism, the development of suitable hard and soft technologies is needed One way is by bridging the gap between the creation of knowledge and its practical application to concrete, varying situations. The support of research institutions advancing knowledge and generating know-how in respect of sustainable tourism practices is also recommended.

The main challenge ahead is the ways and means to encourage the application of the existing knowledge into the actual planning and development of tourism destinations.

The following steps are recommended by the report;

- Making a greater effort in adapting existing methodological and technological knowledge to the specific situations prevalent at every region, country and province, down to the very local level. A process of adaptation to local needs of existing planning, management and monitoring techniques in tourism is needed, and this has to be done with a prior condition: understanding the needs and desires of the local people.

- Providing the public authorities, especially at the local level, with stronger mechanisms to monitor the enforcement of existing legislation that has an effect on the sustainability of tourism. It is important to provide the tourism administration with sufficient authority and technical capabilities to be able to collect the relevant data and coordinate this monitoring process. Strengthening the public tourism administrations is a key element in sustainable tourism.
- In the lack of comprehensive legislation framework public administrations should at least be equipped with instruments to monitor the compliance with self-imposed standards, voluntary initiatives and other certificates or eco-labels adopted voluntarily by private companies. There is a need for capacity building at the local level to allow them to participate in an informed manner in the supervisory and monitoring processes of tourism.
- Financial support to the myriad of micro, small- and medium-sized tourism businesses that exist throughout the world is needed to encourage them to implement sustainable management methods or to introduce into their infrastructure the latest and most suitable environmentally friendly technologies. Making sustainable technologies and management techniques more easily accessible to tourism SMEs will also result in a higher degree of economic sustainability, since it is this type of locally-owned companies who ensure a fairer distribution of economic benefits derived from tourism and avoid international financial leakages.
- A better coordination is needed in the work carried out by the international system of agencies and bilateral sources of assistance. Coordination of technical and financial assistance in tourism is fundamental to ensure coherent results and a sustainable development of tourism. Integrated and unified action by the United Nations system of agencies under a clear leadership, but involving of course all the specialised agencies required to cover every aspect of tourism and all the sustainability implications, would result in faster, more efficient and more long-lasting effects.

International Year of Ecotourism (IYE) and Quebec World Summit

In July 1998 the ECOSOC in its resolution 1998/40 proposed the UN General Assembly to designate 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism (IYE).

The members of ECOSOC consider the designation of the IYE as an encouragement for intensified cooperative efforts by Governments and international and regional organisations, as well as non-governmental organisations, to achieve the aims of Agenda 21 in promoting development and the protection of the environment.

Recognising the growing importance of ecotourism, the UN General Assembly in December 1998 accepted the proposal and declared 2002 as the International Year of Ecotourism and advised The Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD) and to carry out the implementation of the Year. Within the UN system the CSD's Interagency Committee on Sustainable Development (IACSD)

mandated the WTO/OMT and UNEP to prepare and coordinate supportive activities for and during the year.

The following issues are addressed in this part of paper;

- WTO/UNEP concept paper for IYE
- WTO/UNEP supported preparatory conferences on IYE.
- Summary report of the regional preparatory process presented in the Quebec Summit
- The thematic working groups in the Ecotourism Summit
- Quebec Declaration

WTO/UNEP concept paper for IYE

WTO and UNEP jointly produced a concept paper for International Year of Ecotourism (<http://www.world-tourism.org/sustainable/IYE/WTO-UNEP-Concept-Paper.htm>). The concept paper first delineates the Ecotourism definition and its conceptual distinction with sustainable tourism.

It continues that the international year of ecotourism will offer an opportunity to review ecotourism experiences world-wide, in order to consolidate tools and institutional frameworks that ensure its sustainable development in the future. This means maximising the economic, environmental and social benefits from ecotourism, while avoiding its past shortcomings and negative impacts.

According to concept paper, WTO and UNEP aim at involving all the actors in the field of ecotourism during the International Year, with the following objectives in mind:

- (a) Generate greater awareness among public authorities, the private sector, the civil society and consumers regarding ecotourism's capacity to contribute to the conservation of the natural and cultural heritage in natural and rural areas, and the improvement of standards of living in those areas.
- (b) Disseminate methods and techniques for the planning, management, regulation and monitoring of ecotourism to guarantee its long-term sustainability.
- (c) Promote exchanges of successful experiences in the field of ecotourism.
- (d) Increase opportunities for the efficient marketing and promotion of ecotourism destinations and products on international markets.

In order to reach the above goals, the two organisations envisage jointly undertaking the following main activities:

1. To publish, jointly with the World Conservation Union (IUCN), a guide for the sustainable development and management of tourism in prime destinations for ecotourism such as national parks and protected areas.
2. To facilitate and participate at regional conferences and seminars on specific aspects of ecotourism to take place during 2001 and early 2002 world-wide.
3. To dedicate the World Tourism Day of 2002 to the subject of Ecotourism.

4. To create a Web-based venue to allow various organisations and stakeholder representatives to access information about activities and events, and exchange lessons learned on ecotourism projects.

5. The main event of the IYE is The World Ecotourism Summit. This Summit as a major landmark on IYE is held in Quebec, Canada, 19-22 May 2002. The Summit is expected to be the largest ever world-wide gathering of all types of stakeholders involved in ecotourism, including Ministers, public sector officials, tourism companies and their trade associations, local authorities, national park managers, NGOs relevant to the ecotourism sector, the academic community, and others.

With a view to spreading as much as possible the results expected from this International Year, WTO and UNEP recommend that:

1. Governments encourage the establishment of inter-ministerial working groups within the National Tourism and Environment Administrations to co-ordinate activities relating to the International Year at the country level with those to be undertaken by WTO and UNEP at the international level.
2. Governments define, strengthen and disseminate as appropriate, a National Strategy and specific programmes for the sustainable development and management of ecotourism.
3. National governments provide technical, financial and promotional support for, and facilitate the creation and operation of small and medium size firms in the field of ecotourism where appropriate.
4. Multi-stakeholder regulating and monitoring systems be set up regarding ecotourism activities, particularly in what refers to the environmental and socio-cultural sustainability.
5. National and/or local committees for the International Year of Ecotourism be set up involving all the stakeholders relevant to this activity (public tourism and environment authorities at the national and local levels, private sector, NGOs, host communities, etc.), as well as the local media.
6. Governments and other stakeholders are invited to inform the WTO Secretariat and UNEP of the activities planned for 2002 at the national level. These will be disseminated internationally.

In this part of survey, first the joint preparatory actions and conferences by WTO and UNEP will be reviewed. Then the outcome of preparatory conferences supported by of UNEP or WTO will be explained. Finally previous to study the final Declaration of Quebec summit, the World Ecotourism summit will be reviewed.

UNEP/WTO supporting conferences

The following Conferences were supported by UNEP/WTO;

- The European preparatory conference for IYE, St. Johann, Salzburg, Austria, 12-15 September 2001,
- Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism in SIDS Mahé, Seychelles, 8-10 December 2001,

- Web-Based Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism, April 2002,

St. Johann/Pongau and Werfenweg, Salzburg, Austria, 12-15 September 2001

The European preparatory conference for the International Year of Ecotourism and for the International Year of Mountains 2002 was organised by the Government of Austria in cooperation with the World Tourism Organisation (WTO), the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) and the Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO) and it took place in September, 2001 in St. Johann (Salzburg). The conference tried to point out strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats with regard to Ecotourism in Mountain Areas in Europe in general.

The outcome of conference developed in a report contains six parts and a separate conclusion.

In the first part of report 'Ecotourism in European Mountain Areas, The frame of Sustainable Development' contains following points;

- The special attraction of European ecotourism is the unique combination of nature and culture, supported by sustainable agriculture. The European natural landscape, to be found today inside and outside of national parks, nature reserves and protected areas, has been managed with human interference for ages, element that shows that ecotourism in Europe since its beginnings has been closely related to rural tourism. The small scale agricultural models and incomes in Europe paved the way to encourage rural tourism development such as Bed & Breakfast system.
- Europe has long time experience in participative land use planning and multi-stakeholder management systems.
- With the notion of economic and socially "fair" tourism in Europe and the highest share of potential outbound travellers close to rural/natural areas, Ecotourism is therefore a useful and important concept in the European context.
- For the European market, growing figures of ecotourists are not due to additional tourists but to the changes in their behaviour and interest. In the European context, ecotourism is regarded as a form of tourism not at all restricted to protected areas. It aims at minimising negative impacts of tourism on culture and environment and focus on the interest of the traveller in the nature and culture of the area visited.
- Ecotourism is both a chance for, and a challenge to, sustainable development in European mountain areas. Sustainable ecotourism can offer a genuine alternative for mountain areas to the continuous structural changes resulting from emerging centres and the rural exodus, but can also offer a remedy to problems experienced in agriculture in the mountains

In second part of the report 'Ecotourism planning and product development in Europe, the sustainability challenge' the following issues are pointed out as well as major demands to the stakeholders;

- The promotion of ecotourism should be integrated into sustainable development tools such as land-use, mobility planning, economic and social planning at regional and local levels.

- The management of added environmental stress due to increased transportation needs putting mountain ecosystems at risk.
- In the political sphere, successful implementation of sustainable ecotourism solutions depends on economic and environmental superstructures at national and inter-governmental level as pre-requisites. The implementation of the individual measures is best guaranteed by the local authorities in a bottom-up approach including democratic participation of the affected population.
- An important pre-condition for sustainable Ecotourism is the relationship between landscape and agriculture that could be found in the agro tourism (holidays at farmlands) as a key element of an environmentally sound and socially responsible tourism in rural areas. The cultural elements of the mountain landscapes are the main emotional motivation for tourists to come.
- Another important pre-condition for sustainable Ecotourism is sustainable mobility. Sustainable mobility in tourism is a considerable contribution for the implementation of strategies for sustainability. Without sustainable mobility there is no sustainable tourism. The challenge lies in networking eco-tourism and eco-mobility. Sustainable Mobility in tourism increases quality of life and the environment in tourism destinations by reducing the traffic-related environmental impact. Sustainable Mobility in tourism is feasible. The creation of principles for sustainable development in leisure and tourism traffic through transport, tourism and environment policies, and fair conditions in transport, among them the internalisation of external costs and application of the principles of precaution, traffic reduction and polluter-pays are a precondition for that. The basic rules exist in many countries: Kyoto-Protocol, Climate Alliance, EU-Environment Action Programme and Integration Strategy, Alpine Convention, National Environment Plans.
- Sustainable Mobility in tourism includes the implementation of measures for promoting walking and cycling, improving public transport in the holiday regions and for the journey, creating user-friendly travel information system based on new information technologies, using emission-free or low-emission vehicles, keeping vehicles with internal combustion engines off the city centres or important recreational areas, public relations and marketing for sustainable mobility.

The major demands to Ecotourism stakeholders in general area are; the need practical and effective systems of co-ordination between all stakeholders, establishing cooperation agreements and set up an “umbrella” organisation amongst stakeholders to plan, regulate and monitor ecotourism activities, the need for training on general and specific aspects of ecotourism and sustainability specially for local communities, and international cooperation of all actors for successful implementation of Sustainable Mobility in tourism.

The major demands to stakeholders in tourism policy are; the requirement of specific policies, strategies and programmes adapted to the particularities of each nation, region and area; planning

spatial and town in a way to support mixed-use structures and short distances to leisure facilities, Extension of networks and high quality for cycling, walking, horse-carriages, railway, bus and taxis, re-design of streets and limitations for car traffic enforcement of emission-free and low-emission transport technologies and mobility management, the integration of sustainable action plans of “sustainable mobility” and the needs of inhabitants and stakeholders of tourism, and the improvement of the train services.

The major demands to stakeholders in Destinations / Tourism Planning are; the need of contribution of Ecotourism to the conservation and improvement of natural areas and adjacent areas, sustainable Mobility should be expressed in the leitmotif of the holiday resorts, Planning should be holistic and strategic; integrate the priorities, values and knowledge of local communities as well as their participation; and be supported by monitoring and assessment, the planning should include criteria for territorial zoning, including reserves, low and medium-impact areas, facilitate tourist use by alternative circuits and facilities and regulate the level of usage of different zones to reducing pressure on most popular areas, combination of environmental education and interpretation centres with information and interpretation of the cultural landscape and cultural heritage subjects, transboundary projects to protect ecosystems that extend over two or more countries, implementation of sustainable mobility by the promotion and rental of emission-free vehicles and buses at the destination and the redesigning of streets to be more pedestrian- and cycle-friendly, and finally project time frames and commitments should be long enough to ensure that sustainable systems and organisational structures are firmly in place.

The major demands to stakeholders in tourism industry are; to place a comprehensive offer of sustainable-and-mobile transport means, to offer a wide range of information about transport and mobility and to market the offers actively, to communicate sustainable mobility intensively for the population and the decision-makers in the resorts, to establish strategic partnerships amongst stakeholders, to subsidise local actors to set up small and medium size businesses in areas close to parks and protected areas, guided programmes and interpretation to create activities and attractions for off-season periods, and the authenticity of ecotourism and rural tourism supply and creation new tourism products based on traditional cultures and the living heritage of mountain regions.

The major demands to the visitor are; to travel to the holiday resort with environmentally benign transport means such as sustainable-and-mobile transport chain from door to door, and to choose from a high-quality mobility offer with sustainable-and-mobile transport means at the resort.

The major demands to local population are; to use an attractive public transport system, to use sustainable-and-mobile transport means as a good example to encourage visitors, and to live, to carry and to develop the leitmotif of Sustainable Mobility.

In the third part of report ‘Monitoring and regulation of ecotourism in Europe, evaluating progress towards sustainability’ is reviewed. The main points are;

- Eco-labels and eco-related brands are important regulatory instruments and marketing tools for the ecologically sound development of eco-tourism and similar forms of tourism. There is a demand for action at European level in order to reduce uncontrolled launch of pseudo-eco-labels. Efforts have been initiated to form an “umbrella” eco-brand by joining tourism, environment and consumer associations.
- All tools used in achieving sustainability in eco-tourism (eco-labels, brands, indicators, carrying capacity assessment, even the legislation) can be successful only, if they are accepted and commonly used by all key stakeholders (tourism business, local population and tourists) creating a sort of corporate identity.

Demands in this area to the stakeholders in tourism policy are;

- Legally binding instruments for the implementation of sustainable ecotourism and avoidance of non-sustainable forms of tourism like the Alpine Convention is seen as a model for other sensitive, especially mountain regions, if the implementation is accompanied by specific regional strategies and measures.
- Regional legislative frameworks for sustainable tourism due to their top-down approach are difficult to implement efficiently. In spite of these difficulties and because of their positive influence on sustainability issues, regional actions should be supported..
- Consideration should be given to the prospects of establishing the obligatory introduction of certification systems for ecotourism facilities and operations, to guarantee that their quality provided is consistent with the principles of sustainability.
- Most of the existing concepts for eco-labels, brands and certification systems have to be enlarged by social and cultural aspects to reach the aims of sustainable eco tourism.
- Evaluation systems for sustainability of tourism have to choose indicators and criteria for an assessment scheme that balances between indicators for state of society and state of environment, socio-economic driving forces, socio-economic and environmental pressures and driving forces, and indicators for institutional frames.
- Such evaluations should be done and published on a regular basis, allowing for voluntary benchmarking of destinations.

Demands in area of ecolabelling to the stakeholders in destination/tourism planning are;

- Local governments need to strengthen their technical capabilities to be able to set up a broad sustainable development strategy including tourism by using a multi-stakeholder approach.
- They need to strengthen their technical capabilities to be able to monitor the performance of commercial tourism companies and of tourists within protected and non-protected mountain areas.
- Certification and ecolabelling schemes can be applied to local tourism destinations as a whole with a view to safeguarding the destination's natural, environmental, economic and cultural attributes; and to increase integration between the tourist trade, the local business community, local population and public administrations.

Demands in area of ecolabelling to the stakeholders in Tourism Industry are;

- Compliance with general tourism regulations and codes should be stricter in the case of ecotourism, combining supervision and monitoring, with awareness raising campaigns among business people and tourists, training of service suppliers and possibly sanctions against those, who do not comply. Self-regulation and voluntary initiatives related to the environmental and socio-cultural sustainability of ecotourism should be encouraged but duly checked.
- The tourism industry has to provide regular training measures for the employees to guarantee and improve the high quality of their products and guarantee social working standards given by national laws and international regulations like the ILO-standards.
- Self-commitment for sustainable tourism practices, as a voluntary instrument for tour operators, can be efficiently promoted by establishing an umbrella organisation for small-scaled specialists offering various forms of high quality ecotourism experiences.

In the forth part of report 'Marketing and promotion of ecotourism in Europe, reaching sustainable consumers' the main points are as follows;

- WTO research on 5 European countries shows that European nations are recognised as important destinations for ecotourism by European eco-tour operators and ecotourists. The high level of development, the decentralised governmental structures and the existence of well-preserved local village communities with networks of small and medium enterprises, are essential requisites for endogenous tourism growth in Europe.
- The cooperation of all stakeholders is needed to translate innovative models into market-ready products and create sustainable business. If nature-focused tourism is built exclusively on public subsidies, it will remain economically insignificant.
- The tourism industry should be aware of its responsibility for implementing principles of sustainable development in its business activities.
- It is therefore necessary to make the population aware of the importance of the conservation of nature and landscape and the aims and necessity of sustainable development in general.
- Implementing sustainable tourism is primarily based on networking among the different stakeholders and players such as local population, local, regional and national authorities, intergovernmental organisations, NGOs, tourism and transportation industry and its customers, visitors and tourists of a given region.

Demands in area of marketing to the stakeholders on Tourism Industry are;

- Ecotourists need detailed and specialised information, both before and during the trip. The provision of complete information is precisely one of the elements that distinguish the ecotourism experience from traditional tourism.
- Promotional material for ecotourism should contain substantial information on the experience to which potential tourists are invited, including details on flora, fauna, geology and the ecosystem to be visited as well as forms of modes of travelling, the accommodation and catering services, inhabitants and their social and cultural life, and recommendations on what may and may not be done at the destination.

- providing a transparent product information that allows a buy-or-not-buy decision according to ecological and social points of view.
- All marketing campaigns and activities need to be more strategic, equally focusing on and stressing the environmental, cultural and social components of ecotourism and the advantages for the individual. Both, the distribution and promotion channels for ecotourism products should be consistent with the type of tourism the consumer is being offered and with the typology of ecotourists.

Demands in the area of marketing to the stakeholders on Consumers are;

- The use of the term ‘ecotourism’ for marketing purposes only in order to obtain a better positioning of conventional offers is wide-spread and cannot be prevented legally, and therefore calls and relies upon the intelligence and the discerning, individual assessment of the consumers.
- Certification systems and ecolabels can have an important marketing role and help tourists to distinguish between sound ecotourism operations and the ones that use this term without adequate practices, only if consumers are properly informed on their content, meaning and implications.
- Ecolabels that specify on certain type of suppliers seem to have a better recognition among consumers and suppliers.
- The promotion of the public transport systems towards the potential clients has a large importance to stop the growth of individual motor traffic. One important tool is the provision of web-based information tools for Public Transport and further on broad information- and routing-system based on GIS-data.

In fifth part of the report ‘Costs and benefits of ecotourism in Europe, a sustainable distribution among all stakeholders’ is explored. The main points are as follows;

- (Eco) Tourism should generally be considered as a supplementary means of income, used together with other sustainable livelihood sources. But it enhances quality of life through the development of infrastructure and social services, heightened self-esteem, cultural pride and environmental responsibility.
- Economic leakages should be minimised and the economic welfare of the mountain community maximised through innovative initiatives that promote local reinvestment of revenue. Distribution of benefits should be equitable. Women and disadvantaged groups should participate equally with more powerful groups.

Demands in the area of sustainable distribution to the stakeholders on Tourism policy are;

- Appropriate legal and institutional mechanisms should be established to facilitate and make effective the orderly participation of the local communities in the entire ecotourism process, including policy definition, planning, management, and monitoring.
- Institutional, financial, fiscal or other mechanisms should also be established to ensure that a significant proportion of the income generated from ecotourism remains with the local community or serves conservation purposes.

- Private entrepreneurs' investment is based on prospects for profit. Ecotourism should be an economically sustainable business to generate profits for distribution to local communities or conservation purposes.

- The interests of the local population, often represented by NGOs, must be taken into account in the planning-, decision- and implementation- processes of tourism development and must be integrated on equal terms.

In sixth part 'Overall strategies for ecotourism' is explained. For Europe the report suggests;

- There is a substantial demand at European level for a common strategy and a common European action programme for more sustainability in tourism in general in order to safeguard the environment and living conditions in tourism destinations. Above all the European Sustainability Strategy and the topical strategy of the 6th Environment Action Programme will create new approaches towards an integrated European environment strategy directly influencing tourism.

- Both overall European and national policies on tourism have to take responsibility for the domestic, the incoming and the outgoing tourism.

- The European legal and financial pre-conditions have to prefer the broad implementation of innovative measures to increase the amount of Public Transport instead of individual traffic.

- It is necessary to build up a network linking the pilot projects of Sustainable Eco-tourism destinations. The exchange of know-how and the performances of the network will be a practical tool to implement the principles of sustainable development in tourism destinations. The contacts between the various actors should create effects of synergy between destinations, the experts, the institutes and the tourist economy in various dimensions.

At global level the report pointed out the poor sustainability condition of ecotourism management and activities in developing countries and suggests;

- It is an European challenge to support and promote sustainable eco-tourism in developing countries as a tool to combat poverty, to balance economic and social development and to protect the environment by transferring know-how, techniques and technologies, and by ensuring that outbound tour operators comply with sustainability criteria to minimise negative impacts and maximise benefits at destinations.

- Europe can add its comprehensive experience with sustainable ecotourism as valuable items to the international tourism-relevant processes and contribute to the global discussion and to the continuous improvement of ecotourism developments.

- The International Year of Ecotourism 2002 should be seen as a call to make ecotourism more sustainable and as a starting point for reviewing all forms of tourism with regard to their impacts on and contributions to a positive development of environment and mankind.

The European preparatory conference for IYE after a series of consultations produced the statements, principles and recommendations to contribute to the World Ecotourism Summit in May 2002. The main points of the statement are as follows;

1 There was a common understanding at the European preparatory conference that ecotourism has to be developed in an ecological, social and economically sustainable way. In the planning and implementation processes special attention has to be given to an effective and equal participation of all stakeholders, especially of local communities and people. Under these circumstances ecotourism can be a tool for promoting economic development of poorer countries which dispose of a great richness of natural capital and biodiversity.

2. Increasingly European visitors to long haul destinations expect that the tour operators and the providers of services in the different countries will offer socially responsible and sustainable ecotourism products. This needs transfer and exchange of knowledge. Europe can contribute to this, since the conceptual components of sustainable ecotourism are closely related to many forms of nature-focused, rural or soft tourism long practised in Europe.

3. The IYE is helping to heighten the awareness that Europe can also count on its fabulous natural landscapes, containing world famous natural monuments, and environments well preserved in spite of strong development pressure.

4. The special attraction of European ecotourism is the unique combination of nature and culture, managed through sustainably producing agriculture. This economy has produced an amazing diversity of relatively undisturbed natural environments. This natural and cultural diversity within a destination can be seen as the most important attraction of many European tourism destinations.

5. WTO studies in touristic European countries shows that there is an attractive ecotourism market, mainly among working population with high discretionary income. The studies will also attempt to determine what economic contribution can be expected from ecotourism for the sake of protecting endangered areas.

6. The high level of development, the decentralised governmental structures, and the existence of well preserved local village communities with networks of small and medium enterprises, are essential requisites for endogenous tourism growth.

Available human capital and know-how should, however, be better used especially within the concept of ecotourism. In order to accomplish this, entrepreneurial pioneering and the willingness of all stakeholders to cooperate is needed to translate innovative models into market-ready products and create sustainable business. If nature-focused tourism is built exclusively on public subsidies, it will remain economically insignificant.

7. The promotion of ecotourism should be integrated into sustainable development tools such as land-use, economic and social planning at regional and local levels. The growing expectations towards quality of life and consumption related to leisure, the liberalisation of agro-business and the competition of improving urban destinations are serious challenges for the development of sustainable rural ecotourism. As European tourism only grows at low rates compared to the tourism development world wide, due to local hard currencies, high cost and price levels and also several domestic weaknesses, strong competition seems to exist among the individual tourism forms in a given region.

8. The WTO's proposed guidelines for ecotourism and the recommendations resulting from successful and tested initiatives supported by UNEP in the fields of tour operation and hotel management are valid for Europe as well and can be used as reference. As for other areas, specific European input was also provided on networks for nature-based sustainable tourism developments and businesses supported by the framework of the Alpine Convention. National efforts to develop and implement and monitor ecotourism quality standards in Europe and its mountain regions such as eco-labels should also be mentioned.

9. A major European input consists in stressing that ecotourism needs sustainable forms of mobility. Leisure and tourism related traffic has increased dramatically over the last years. Sustainable tourism is only feasible with an environmentally sound transport system which satisfies its mobility needs without jeopardising health, safety and the environment.

10. Discussions have also shown that in case of market failures a role for public measures exists. An example is investment in public goods or assets such as the protection of endangered landscapes, by developing visitor facilities in protected areas as ecotourism attractions. Another important governmental role is the management of added environmental stress due to increased transportation needs, putting mountain ecosystems at risk, especially in valley regions where heavy traffic may make nature-based tourism unfeasible. Ecotourism is complementary to existing intensively used tourism destination. Additional investments in environmental infrastructure are necessary in those critical areas in order to reduce pressure on free landscape.

11. In the political sphere, successful implementation of sustainable ecotourism solutions depends on economic and environmental superstructures at national and inter-governmental level as pre-requisites. The implementation of the individual measures is best guaranteed by the local authorities in a bottom-up approach including democratic participation of the affected population. The tourism industry should be aware of its responsibility for implementing principles of sustainable development in its business activities. In politically decentralised market economies, only a critical mass of environmentally and socially conscious citizens and consumers can define the sustainability of future ecotourism developments in mountain areas. It is necessary to make the population aware of the importance of the conservation of nature and landscape. Only then service providers will be able to incorporate the fascinating resources of European nature into ecologically sound intelligent tourism products, and to develop marketable ecotourism products. Implementing sustainable tourism is primarily based on networking among the different stakeholders and players such as local population, local, regional and national authorities, intergovernmental organisations, NGOs, tourism and transportation industry and its customers, visitors and tourists of a given region. Source: <http://www.uneptie.org/pc/tourism/ecotourism/prepconfsummaries.htm>

Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism in SIDS and Other Small Islands,

The conference was held in Mahé, Seychelles in 8 to 10 December 2001 as part of Preparatory activities including Conferences for the International Year of Ecotourism. The preparatory regional seminars and conferences address region and destination specific issues related to

ecotourism. The experiences and results from these regional meetings add up to the World Ecotourism Summit that held in Quebec, Canada on the 19-22 May 2002.

The Seychelles Conference was organised by WTO/UNEP, aiming at offering a forum where stakeholders from all major groups concerned with sustainable development and management of ecotourism in Small Island Developing States and other islands could exchange experiences by presenting case studies and conducting in depth debates on this subject.

In total 25 case studies were presented together with three introductory presentations in four sessions. The thematic sessions addressed issues of ecotourism policies and planning, regulation, marketing and promotion, as well as monitoring of ecotourism activities.

The summary of conclusions and discussions of the Conference is presented according to the four themes of the World Ecotourism Summit. The main points in each thematic area are as follows;

Summit Theme A: Ecotourism Planning, the sustainability challenge

- The natural and economic particularities of tourism in SIDS and other small islands make it less useful to focus only on ecotourism (in a stricter sense). For these destinations, focusing on the broader concept of sustainable tourism is often a more effective policy position; though ecotourism can lead and set the benchmarks with regard to contribution to and protection of the natural and cultural environments in these places.

- In small islands ecotourism should be considered in the wider spectrum of tourism activities related to the natural and cultural environments, provided that these activities are fully compatible with nature conservation efforts. National tourism plans based entirely on ecotourism risk losing credibility within their own political system; failing to meet consumer expectations; and raising suspicion and criticism of conservation-based organisations when the majority of the basic stock of the local tourism infrastructure (accommodation, attractions, transport and services) was not designed for ecotourism and/or is not environmentally friendly and/or the management/owners are not environmentally aware/active.

- Formulating a common vision should be an initial step in strategic planning processes for sustainable tourism and ecotourism development. This needs to involve all stakeholders and to balance their interests.

- Small Islands destinations provide a unique venue for developing models for sustainable planning and management of ecotourism and other forms of tourism. Monitoring and evaluation of pilot projects in these destinations can lead to valid models applicable in a second stage in more complex economic systems.

- Ecotourism development can assist to tackle the problems that isolation causes to SIDS and other small islands. Ecotourism activities must also support the regional development of less-favoured areas on islands, and contribute to poverty alleviation through careful planning of resource use and development. Transparency and objectiveness must be ensured in any ecotourism planning decision. The fragility of island ecosystems must be the corner stone of any ecotourism

plan. The conservation of “flagship-species” that live in island habitats is a good starting point for the development of a sustainable ecotourism plan and creation of protected areas.

More effort and attention is required in the preparation of ecotourism plans integrated into the management of protected areas. Land ownership is an important factor. The trend towards privatisation of protected and other natural areas in SIDS and other small islands must be explored in depth.

Spatial planning of natural areas requires zoning. Zoning in destinations can enable bigger islands to control their ecotourism activities in particular places. Strict zoning in protected areas should be applied and it should be extended outside of protected areas. Peripheral zones of protected areas could be designated for the development of ecotourism facilities and infrastructure in order to reduce the pressure on fragile ecosystems. This development should be backed by strict environmental regulations and norms. The principles of Integrated Coastal Zone Management should be followed in infrastructure development and management

Site management requires operational management of tourism facilities. It can be regulated by standards with complex set of sustainability criteria reflecting environmental and socio-cultural aspects for development of accommodation and other ecotourism facilities. In the management of ecotourism facilities energy, scarce water resources, and waste management need special as well as appropriate sustainable use of biological resources, and reducing dependence on imported goods. The rehabilitation of original habitats by reintroducing native species and replacing introduced species is a lengthy and labour intensive, but essential process for preserving island ecosystems and endangered species, and it can trigger the sustainable development of ecotourism.

Summit Theme B: Regulation of ecotourism, Institutional responsibilities and frameworks

It is imperative that public, private and non-governmental organisations cooperate in regulating the industry and enforcing the institutional framework. The institutional leadership of the public sector to ensure a participatory process with the involvement of all stakeholder groups in policy making and planning was demonstrated in most cases. The role of development banks in promoting environmentally friendly infrastructures and establishments is important. Conservation NGOs managing protected areas can have important roles in basic tourism operational activities at the natural sites they manage. International conservation schemes are applicable to island destinations. These schemes can be a basis for national legislation, which is applied at site levels. Ecotourism needs enforcing control mechanisms and monitoring of eco-quality by all stakeholders. It is important to establish guidelines and transform a list of optional guidelines into obligatory regulations. An essential way, in which poaching and illegal hunting could be tackled, is if local communities are involved in management or benefit financially from eco-tourism or protected area management activities. Accommodation classification should include an ecolabel or eco-certification scheme in order to improve sustainability performance of accommodation facilities in ecotourism and provide consumers with reliable expectations and advice before booking.

Summit Theme C: Product development, marketing and promotion of ecotourism; fostering sustainable products and consumers

- The ecotourism product needs better definitions that can be better understood by the industry and consumers and to ensure that preservation of natural resources.
- Serious market segmentation is required in order to match the best ecotourism products to the desires of the different market groups. It needs to be recognised that not all tourists are suitable for ecotourism products and this fact should be considered in product formulation and development.
- There are different perceptions of ecotourism in different generating countries. However sustainable and responsible travel concerns the entire tourism industry, and ecotourism covers mainly travel to natural areas with a strong cultural component.
- Ecotourism contains education and interpretation elements. More serious ecotourists will seek to learn from nature, understand processes and developments and get involved in looking after endangered species or ecological activities. Others will vary from observing natural features to just having natural resources on the background of their destination/activities.
- Modern technology and Communications are critical for island destinations for their ability to interact with their remote partners and consumers and therefore investment is required to improve communication skills and technology applied.
- Destination management systems need to integrate and coordinate the entire supply at the destination.
- Tour operators can and should function with a high level of environmental analysis and monitoring combined with a range of initiatives and projects undertaken at each destination.
- There is a strong need to coordinate all providers specially tour operators towards fulfilling customer expectations.
- Inbound, as well as outbound tour operators need to work with destinations for developing appropriate actions recognising their social and ethical responsibilities.
- Visitors should not feel unwelcome to ecotourism areas but rather being encouraged to appreciate the delicacy of the regions of conservation and preservation.
- Image building and education of both consumers and intermediaries is critical for the marketplace to appreciate the uniqueness of resources as well as the fragility of ecosystem.
- Many island destinations need repositioning their tourism offer for ecotourism marketing. Environmental resources can play a critical part in this process and they can effectively differentiate tourism bundles.
- Innovative small-scale ecotourism activities could be used as a long-term financing mechanism to establish and manage protected areas in small islands and coral atolls.
- High environmental quality must go together with high quality of hotels and other services.

- The "catch-and-release" sport fishing and Yachting are amongst segments that could provide important financial means for conservation and income generation.
- Local communities should be effectively involved in ecotourism product development, especially in defining how to portray cultural traditions of islands. There is a need to create small-scale entrepreneurship that would ensure authentic local attractions
- Guides should be locals; they have a major role in interpretation of natural and cultural attractions. It is important to cooperate between individual guides and interpreters; a possibility can be the formation of networks and associations of guides.
- Work with local volunteer organisations and local institutions with knowledge about local cultural and natural history, to ensure content, is appropriate and accurate, as well as sensitively presented.
- Some specific ways of developing products based on cultural heritage are creation of cultural festivities and events, chartering on traditional island sailboats, Create cultural villages, Valorise and use in tourism local built patrimony, Create thematic projects and interpretation sites,
- Public relations activities and providing media coverage of environmental activities and achievements are important for awareness raising of both tourists and locals.

Summit Theme D: Monitoring costs and benefits of ecotourism, ensuring equitable distribution among all stakeholders

- The development of sustainability indicators should be based on scientifically sound and objective calculations, related to political, development and conservation objectives,
- A number of relatively simple and reliable indicators should support the monitoring and control of ecotourism planning and development programmes by an integrated approach
- Ecotourism indicators recognise that environmental, economic and social components have to be included in the measurement of ecotourism's costs and benefits in SIDS and other small islands.
- The following indicators, among others, were analysed in different presentations. Amount of budget per capita allocated by governments for conservation and environmental management purposes, Percentage of the protected areas' surface in the country/region or island, including marine and terrestrial areas, Ratio of the number of tourists to the number of local residents, Evolution of the number of tourism enterprises, Number of tourism enterprises that posses an eco-label, Number of tourists per surface of protected areas, and Number of rare species in ecosystems that are ecotourism destinations.
- Ecotourism can be used to reduce the health-related impacts of tourism development and to promote the health, safety and well-being of local communities, their environment and its visitors by adequate infrastructure and services.
- In a sustainable development process, the scale of the proposed ecotourism activities should be compatible with the economic environment of the local communities.

- Tourism enterprises must be encouraged to contribute to the sustainable use of natural resources. Payback mechanisms should be developed in ecotourism operations for nature conservation and environmental projects.
- Pricing is an issue, as consumers and tour operators are reluctant to pay higher prices. Without tangible economic benefit and payment for use and maintenance of public goods, tourism will continue to place economic burden on some island destinations rather than deliver economic benefits. As a result, in the case of eco-taxes or other payback mechanism, for them to be acceptable to the private sector.
- One common reason for uncontrolled development in SIDS and other islands is the lack of funds and qualified personnel for the elaboration of development plans. However, there exist methods that do not require big investment in financial and human resources and can be carried out in a relatively short term.
- The main constraints in achieving the objectives of sustainable management of marine and coastal areas in SIDS and other small islands are related to the lack of financial resources. Tourism may be a potential solution for funding marine and coastal protected areas. The involvement of tourism operators is very important. Participation may change attitudes and approaches to protected area management, but still participation should be viewed as one of the available management tools. Participation should strengthen monitoring, education and self-regulation.
- There is a strong need for fiscal and financial incentives, backed by policies and regulatory measures, for private sector to implement environmental measures, especially for small and medium enterprises.
- In many cases the total cost for the protection of the environment in ecotourism destinations may be higher than the expected financial benefits. In these cases, and provided that the fair distribution of the cost is ensured by the application of the "polluters pay principle", and "user pays principle", any remaining cost should be covered primarily by the governments.
- Ecotourism has a huge potential to contribute to poverty alleviation and sustainable development in SIDS and other small islands.
- Tourism activities in rural communities should be conceived as complementary to traditional economic activities. Local people should participate more as entrepreneurs and decision-makers in tourism. Small scale, locally owned tourism is considered the most appropriate means to achieve this, given that benefits could flow directly to the local populations.
- The effective integration of local communities and community-based organisations in the tourism chain can effectively contribute to an increase of the environmental and social sustainability of tourism. Communities, with a commitment to cultural and natural heritage protection through tourism, have a higher degree of dependency upon the local natural environment and thus a greater interest in preserving the natural resource.

- An operational procedure that is based on participatory appraisal monitoring and evaluation of ecotourism is the only way to a “win-win” case of ecotourism development in SIDS and other small islands

Source: http://www.world-tourism.org/sustainable/IYE/Regional_Activites/Seychelles/Menu.htm

Web-Based Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism, April 2002,

In the IYE framework the World Tourism Organisation (WTO) and the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) organised a pioneering forum that was conducted solely online the Internet on 1-26 April 2002. The Conference was developed and moderated by Planeta.com website through <http://groups.yahoo.com/group2002ecotourism> , which all information and discussion of the web conference is archived in.

The discussion was focused on four main themes defined for the World Ecotourism Summit, in four thematic sessions addressed in each of the four weeks of the event. The summary of the recommendations and conclusions on each theme is as follows;

THEME A: Ecotourism Policy and Planning, the Sustainability Challenge

- The conceptual and practical workings of ecotourism have been isolated from each other too long. Ecotourism development should focus on action plans and not become, as one participant complained, “bogged down” in definitions.
- Ecotourism promoted by single organisations with single objectives, without involving all stakeholder groups affected, lead to poorly balanced strategies. Governments, environmental and social groups, the private sector, academics and local communities need to work jointly towards the development of effective ecotourism policies.
- The governments’ role in ecotourism development is to provide the overall policy environment to permit development to proceed along an orderly path. This framework needs to clearly involve and welcome participation of other sectors. Ecotourism plans should be widely circulated among all stakeholders.
- There has been a lag in governmental response to development that threatens conservation of protected areas at many destinations. Obstacles include a lack of qualified personnel, lack of continuity and lack of interest in small scale ecotourism operations.
- Policy making lies often in the hands of people with limited field business experience. This leads to regulations that are not feasible at the ground level and consequently are not implemented. Policy makers should have the background and experience in this field, so that policies reflect social and environmental concerns as well as market realities.
- National directives are often unimplemented because of lack of cross sector commitment from various ministries or lack of continuity. High turn-over and poor communication between government offices were cited as chief causes of this problem.
- Local authorities play a key role, and in many localities a bottom-up approach to ecotourism planning is desirable. There is a great need for cooperation between authorities at different levels as well as integrated legal standards so that the structure supports the development of ecotourism.

- Development plans need to identify financial sources and financing mechanisms for local, regional and national programmes and cultivate these resources for long-term investment. Ecotourism projects rarely succeed as quickly or as profitably as other sectors, so ecotourism requires long-term financial commitment.
- Ecotourism operations may cause a negative impact on local populations such as; driving up local prices and force locals to move away or restrictive policies lead businesses to develop operations elsewhere. Ecotourism for protected areas must bring indirect conflict resolution with local people/stakeholders, education for visitors; financial income.
- the need to move towards adoption of the principles of ecotourism by nature based tourism operations, to ensure that sensitive natural areas are conserved and local community and cultural benefits are maximised.

THEME B: Regulation of Ecotourism: Institutional Responsibilities and Frameworks

- If regulation is too strict it can hamper competitiveness. On the other hand, if consumers place an economic value on healthy ecosystems, the market will drive all operators to achieve higher levels of environmental stewardship.
- Regulation effectiveness depends on the shared understanding of the same concept of ecotourism. The concepts must be relevant to all stakeholders. Successful ecotourism development requires agreements on definitions and consistent legislation.
- Effective certification programmes need to inform the travelling public about ecotourism products and services. Certification and accreditation should include as a priority a campaign and a coalition of media and communication professionals that effectively deliver the message.
- Well designed certification programmes can help achieve the objectives of ecotourism by providing incentives to certified ecotourism operators with a marketing advantage.
- National broad-based coalitions have the best records for developing certification.

THEME C: Product Development, Marketing and Promotion of Ecotourism, Fostering Sustainable Products and Consumers

- Educating consumers is a key to raising awareness and stimulating demand for socially- and environmentally-friendly products and services.
- The stimulation for ecologically sensitive products should be the key driver to improving ecotourism.
- Media coverage does not adequately address the substance of ecotourism.
- Information needs to be accurate. If the service does not meet expectations, the situation has the potential to harm the reputation of all regional operations.
- The principal aim of an ecotourism business should be achieving high levels of satisfaction among its clients by providing quality services and contributing to the conservation of the natural and cultural resources.
- Initiatives to develop and promote ecotourism are frequently divided among private sector and government programmes.

- The Internet is a highly efficient, cheap and ecological way for communities to reach and be reached by ecotourists directly. The challenge lies in bridging the digital divide and providing the training required by communities to master this medium. The Internet is a powerful tool for even the smallest operations. Government tourism offices, environmental groups and companies need to improve their use of the Web.
- The increasing use of Internet by ecotourists was demonstrated. There is an untapped potential in Internet cafes in tourist centres.
- The inherent need for ecotourism marketing in development projects and operations, as a basic component for economic sustainability is underlined.
- Because the definition of ecotourism is vague, ecotourism developers and consumers are challenged by what the marketing message should be. A good marketing plan should include a well-balanced, multi-media approach. Use of the Web should be complimented with traditional marketing.
- Ecotourism operations need educated, empowered and inspired travellers, bearing in mind that tourists don't want to be just "educated."
- The tourism market is complex and there is no static profile of the ecotourist. Developing a product requires understanding client needs and a level of education and marketing that promotes the products and services in the niche of ecotourism. Marketing, however, is never as simple as "build it and they will come."
- Air travel is the fastest growing source of greenhouse gas emissions in the world. If ecotourism is to be sustainable, it needs to address the aviation issue and give travellers the option of doing something to repair the damage they do.

THEME D: Monitoring Costs and Benefits of Ecotourism, Ensuring Equitable Distribution among all Stakeholders

- It is necessary to have widely accepted terms of a definition for ecotourism and some consistent standards for the proper evaluation of the costs and benefits of ecotourism.
- It's difficult to imagine effective cost/benefit analysis without developing adequate baseline data, research mechanisms, or improving basic information sharing as quickly as possible.
- The costs and benefits of ecotourism are often social, so these factors need to be included in a holistic monitoring programme.
- While talking about indicators, it is clear that they must be developed by all the project's stakeholders. In terms of the environment and local cultures, ecotourism destinations tend to be fragile areas. Consequently, contacts must bridge environmental and tourism interests.
- Governments need to implement a system of monitoring in potential development areas and have a comprehensive action plan to respond to a development boom in ecologically sensitive areas and the surrounding communities. Satellite accounting offers a number of benefits to measure the impacts of ecotourism.

- Many developing countries are particularly weak in providing access to timely information about current developments, investment opportunities, guidelines and best case examples. These resources need to be available for all stakeholders and written in a language directed toward their target audience.

- There are both positive and negative implications for local ecotourism businesses working with trans-nationals. The role of the trans-national tourism company or hotel chain can be one of partner, competitor or investor.

Final Comments and Conclusions

- Communities that obtain income from ecotourism develop environmental awareness about their own unique ecosystems.

- Community-based ecotourism requires political organisation

- Obstacles to community-based ecotourism often include the lack of a legal framework, promotion and marketing and interference from traditional industries that can destroy the local environment.

- Communities that live in the areas of high biodiversity where community-based ecotourism could be successful often do not have the financial resources to get the training and supplies, infrastructure and vehicles to be successful.

- Multinational development projects often exclude local peoples.

- Unregulated community tourism may pose environmental harm while providing social benefits.

- For aboriginal or indigenous communities, ecotourism represents a development opportunity that can bring many economic, environmental, cultural, social and political benefits.

- Active involvement and control of ecotourism products and services by Indigenous communities will not only benefit Indigenous peoples but also will greatly strengthen ecotourism as a global industry. The richness and diversity of Indigenous cultures and traditional knowledge is an incredible resource for the ecotourism industry.

Summary report of the regional preparatory process presented in the Quebec Summit

Eighteen regional preparatory conferences took place, either under the aegis of WTO or of UNEP in 2001-2002. These conferences provided an opportunity for all kinds of stakeholders in ecotourism to present their experiences and review ecotourism issues at local, regional or international levels and address four main themes of the Ecotourism summit. The main themes for discussion in Quebec summit are;

Theme A - Ecotourism policy and planning: the sustainability challenge

Sustainable ecotourism plans, policies and programmes at international, national and local levels; integration of ecotourism policies into sustainable development plans and frameworks; land use planning; use of natural parks and protected areas; balance between development and conservation objectives in policies; development agency programmes on ecotourism and their role in funding related pipeline investments; plans for human resource development in ecotourism.

Theme B - Regulation of ecotourism: institutional responsibilities and frameworks Legislation, norms and other regulations for ecotourism activities; voluntary schemes and self regulation; certification, accreditation and ecolabels; international and inter-governmental guidelines, principles and codes; roles of different stakeholders in ensuring compliance with regulations or voluntary schemes.

Theme C - Product development, marketing and promotion of ecotourism: fostering sustainable products and consumers

Building sustainable ecotourism products; Multistakeholder cooperation for product development especially in protected areas and biosphere reserves; market research, marketing techniques and promotional methods; information to tourists; ethical behaviour; environmental education for consumers; public-private sector relationships for marketing and promotion; co-operative marketing for small ecotourism operations.

Theme D - Monitoring costs and benefits of ecotourism: ensuring equitable distribution among all stakeholders

Measuring economic, ecological and social costs and benefits of ecotourism; contribution to conservation; assessing potential and actual environmental and socio-cultural impacts of ecotourism; taking precautionary measures at local, national, regional and international levels; integrating monitoring and evaluation procedures; research needs and adaptive management systems.

The combined results of the regional conferences were presented in the plenary session of the Summit in the form of four regional reports. The summarised of these reports, according to WTO/UNEP conference report, are as follows;

African preparatory meetings input;

The following preparatory meeting were held in Africa;

- Maputo, Mozambique, March 2001, for all African states with an emphasis on planning and management
- Nairobi, Kenya, March 2002 – for East Africa
- Mahé, Seychelles, December 2001, for SIDS and other Small Islands
- Algiers, Algeria, January 2002, for Desert Areas

General conclusions of the above African preparatory meeting presented in the Summit are as follows;

- Ecotourism is one of the main forms of tourism in which Africa has a comparative advantage.
- Africa features extensive protected areas hosting a variety of ecosystems and traditional cultures that are major attractions for nature-oriented tourism.
- Ecotourism seems the best way to prevent controversial effects and negative impacts on prevailing ecosystems, local communities and traditional cultures
- It is a viable source of economic benefits for African countries, if developed and managed in a sustainable manner.

The specific circumstances and needs for different areas were identified as follows;

- Africa's international comparative advantage, National parks and protected areas;
- Tourism development can be based on exploiting African natural assets on the condition that the rules of sustainable development are respected.
- Conservation of natural resources can become the mainstream to socio-economic development in Africa.
- Parks and reserves, backing by strong international recognition, can be turned to sort of brands, providing advantage in tourism marketing and promotion.
- African Small islands and coastal zones;
- Ecosystems of coastal zones in small islands are vulnerable. Appropriate liquid and solid waste treatment systems must be put in place for any ecotourism activity
- Ecolabels can be very useful for achieving landscaping and beautification objectives and for stimulating environmental management, such as energy conservation, waste treatment plants and recycling systems.
- The fragility of island ecosystems must be the cornerstone of any ecotourism plan and any action must respect the island's local, natural and cultural environments.
- In small islands it is not realistic to focus on ecotourism in the stricter sense. Rather, the broader concept of "sustainable tourism" is often a more effective policy position.
- In small islands ecotourism plays an important role in further setting the standards for the protection of the natural and cultural environment.
- African desert areas;
- Desert areas represent comparative and even absolute advantages for Africa, which has the largest desert in the world and is near to the large tourist generating markets of Europe.
- Desert areas represent complex ecotourism attractions, showcasing natural, geological, and archaeological features, nomad and other specific cultures and traditions.
- A special attention should be paid in ecotourism development and management in desert areas to the fragility of ecosystems, the extreme meteorological conditions, and the presence of unique archaeological and geological remains, the scarcity of water resources and the difficulties of access.
- Importance of trans-boundary cooperation;
- Trans-boundary cooperation, development, and management are fundamental for all types of ecotourism activities, which imply common policies between countries in the same region. This cooperation is particularly necessary in areas where wildlife crosses administrative and political borders.
- The need to maintain ecological integrity and free movement of wildlife in certain territories that are divided by country frontiers.
- The need to find commercial and financial solutions;

- Emphasised the importance of the strengthening small and medium enterprises and particularly micro enterprises to enable them to successfully engage with the tourism industry in Africa is a need.
- The importance of identifying and demonstrating to funding sources the value of conservation and of ecotourism to national economies in Africa has to be recognised.
- The need to reinforce capacity building;
- Capacity building is essential if local communities are to be real stakeholders in the development of ecotourism in Africa.
- It is important for governments to ensure that communities are trained to administer joint ventures, as without capacity building it is difficult to sustain an equitable approach to management.
- African necessity to focus on benefits for local people;
- The need to generate local community benefits from Africa's natural heritage tourism.
- Ecotourism should be linked to the rural economy to avoid leakages and maximise local economic benefit from tourism.
- Encouraging local economic development by sourcing food and other locally produced resources for ecotourists.

Asia and the Pacific preparatory meetings input;

The following preparatory meeting were held in this region;

- New Delhi, India, September 2001, International NGO Workshop Tourism Towards 2002
- Gangtok, India, January 2002, Conference for South Asia
- Maldives, February 2002, Asia-Pacific Ministerial Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism
- Chiang Mai, Thailand, March 2002, Conference for Southeast Asia
- Fiji, April 2002, Conference on Sustainable Development of Ecotourism in the South Pacific Islands

Main conclusions on Asia and the Pacific preparatory meeting, presented in the Summit, highlighted a number of issues and perspectives, as follows.

- Need for baseline studies; Innovative approaches included involving volunteer organisations or involving educational institutions on baseline studies should be examined, instead of reliance on government, particularly in under-resourced areas.
- Commoditisation in tourism; Commoditisation refers to the degradation of the intrinsic value of cultural items, beliefs, goods, and practices, and may even refer to treating a human being as a good for sale and need special attention in the region due to poverty. Ecotourism developers are urged to focus on the improvement of basic human conditions.
- Managing Impacts; there are a range of approaches for managing impacts, such as pricing and fees, to diversification of product offers. A serious impact with no regional solutions is global warming in the area.

- Improved stakeholders' communications are required. In particular, it is recommendable that:
 - Governments should establish an open dialogue with local communities, private companies and NGOs;
 - Governments should develop transparent communication, consultation and decision-making processes; and
 - Public-private partnerships should be seen as a key facilitating mechanism, particularly for informing and educating the travelling public about the consequences of their travels as well as their potential for beneficial action.
- Challenges of implementing community participation;
 - Bottom-up participatory processes were recommended
 - Top-down participatory mechanisms and multi-sectoral involvement were suggested. Communities should be consulted on a range of topics, from product development to elements of marketing.
 - Community control of local resources is a key need in the Asia-Pacific region.
 - Participatory management is a key tool in ensuring participation in planning, decision-making and management.
- Human resource development is required; there is a very great need to incorporate local indigenous peoples into any training programmes. The communities in general also need to have awareness training or information related to ecotourism.
- Regulation and monitoring is required; Regulations may facilitating movements of tourists and foreign exchange or can be restrictive in SE Asia. Very often poor planning has had adverse consequences and needs to be improved. The lack of enforcement of current regulations is a problem.

The Americas preparatory meetings input;

The following preparatory meeting were held in this region;

- Cuiabá, Brazil, August 2001, for all American states
- Belize City, Belize, November 2001, for Mesoamerica
- Lima, Peru, February 2002, for the Andean region
- Oaxaca, Mexico, March 2002, Oaxaca Declaration on Indigenous Tourism
- Buenos Aires, Argentina, April 2002, First National Conference on Ecotourism

The preparatory conference reports showed clearly three main concerns about the development of ecotourism: the involvement of local communities; the need for certification schemes easily accessible to everybody regardless of their economic capacity; and much needed training at all levels.

The specific circumstances and needs for different areas were identified as follows;

- Planning;
 - There is a need of international regulations for trans-boundary areas.

- Planning should be based on available scientific information.
- Over-dependence on ecotourism should be avoided by having a diverse range of activities besides ecotourism.
- Shifting from traditional sustainable use of resources to ecotourism is a high-risk strategy for local communities.
- Regulation and certification;
 - A suitable approach regarding regulation is to follow a process leading from optional guidelines to obligatory regulations. Codes of conduct need to be established as well as procedures and all stakeholders should adopt these.
 - Regulation of ecotourism needs stakeholders sharing a similar concept of ecotourism.
 - There is a need for more transparency in certification processes. International certification systems are too expensive, so local initiatives such as calcification of certification or establishing incentives for certified companies, should be recognised by international systems.
 - In some areas there is a risk of a proliferation of eco-labels.
- Participation of indigenous and local people; local communities need to be the main actors and that they must take part not only in the planning process but also in the management of ecotourism products.
- Capacity building and training; Capacity building and training were identified as key points in the proper development of ecotourism in the region. An important point is that training needs to be realistic and not creating too high expectations for local communities. Policy makers need to learn about ecotourism in the field. Very often policies are in the hands of people with very little practical experience in the subject. The media need to be educated to cover ecotourism but reflecting properly its real essence.
- Marketing; marketing in the Americas focuses in landscape, wildlife and cultural issues and does not put enough emphasis in social, environmental and sustainability aspects, which should be part of responsible marketing communications. The Internet can fulfil its potential only if capacity building and access to modern technology is provided in order to empower ecotourism stakeholders for the adequate use of this media.

The European Preparatory meetings input;

The following preparatory meeting were held in this region;

- St. Johann / Pongau and Werfenweng, Salzburg, Austria 12-15 September 2001, for mountain areas, with an emphasis on European ecotourism
- Almaty, Kazakhstan, 17-18 October 2001, for the transitional economies of the CIS countries, Mongolia and China
- Thessaloniki, Greece, 2-4 November 200, for European, Middle East and Mediterranean countries
- Hemavan, Sweden, April 2002, for the Arctic countries, including North America, Asia, and Europe

Europe has many wilderness areas, yet in much of the continent attractive rural landscapes and biodiversity are dependent on traditional land management practices. There is increasing recognition within Europe of the important and mutually supporting relationship between tourism, agriculture, viable rural communities and the conservation of nature. The preparatory conference reports demonstrated the contrasts to be found within Europe, in terms of landscapes, climate, and culture and management priorities.

The specific circumstances and needs of different areas were separately identified as follows;

- Mountains; There is a close relationship between the needs and opportunities of ecotourism and sustainable activity tourism in mountains. Mountainous areas as important locations for ecotourism, often display a particular cultural richness, economic fragility, a decline in traditional populations and activities, and sensitive biodiversity.
- The Mediterranean; this area receives some of the largest volumes of tourist arrivals in the world, concentrated on the coastal belt. The opportunity for ecotourism in the coastal hinterland and more remote inland areas, as a way of improving the image of Mediterranean destinations, diversifying the offer, reducing seasonality and bringing economic benefits to areas suffering depopulation.
- The CIS countries; Potential for ecotourism is considerable in CIS. Upgrading general services and infrastructure for tourism and clarifying national objectives for ecotourism, stimulating and catering for the domestic market, filling knowledge gaps, easing visa restrictions and promoting cross-border cooperation are needed.
- The Arctic; there is a need for certification programmes for ecotourism in the Arctic. Appropriate codes of conduct for visitors and operators need to be applied as well as restructuring of the cruise ship licensing system.
- Taking an integrated approach to destination planning;
 - The need for a holistic approach to the planning and development of destinations for sustainable tourism, both in terms of providing a quality experience for visitors and addressing all the impacts of tourism.
 - There should be concern about physical infrastructure, destination marketing and information services, linkages with other economic sectors, and relationships with other forms of tourism.
 - The important role of local authorities in supporting the development and management of sustainable tourism, including ecotourism, is well understood in Europe. This is helped by well-established local democratic structures, effective land use planning and development control processes.
 - The need to foster a participative approach at a local level, for example through engaging village communities, is recognised.
- Addressing transport and other access issues; the use of transport to, and within, the destination was a key concern of the Europe. This issue was developed properly in the summit.
- Being concerned about demand and equity amongst users;

- avoiding discrimination and increasing access to ecotourism experiences for people with disabilities and disadvantages;
- promoting opportunities to domestic visitors, ensuring that they are not put off by high prices;
- influencing larger tour operators as well as more specialist operators,
- Showing responsibility in promoting ecotourism in less developed countries; The responsibility of European governments and operators in encouraging more sustainable forms of ecotourism, and in providing technical advice and support in this field, is recognised.

The thematic working groups in the Quebec Summit

During the Ecotourism Summit in Quebec four working groups were devoted on the four main summit themes.

Each working group attended a report from a UNEP/WTO appointed expert, which contained WTO/UNEP Summary of Regional Preparatory Conferences to serve as discussion paper for the World Ecotourism Summit concerning the theme in question as well as other presentation.

The four reports which follow set out a summary of the issues discussed and the key points and recommendations arising from the working groups and presented in the WTO's final conference report.

Summary of Working group A: Ecotourism Policy and Planning; the sustainability challenge

This working group was concerned with the frameworks, structures and processes of ecotourism planning and policy-making to maximise sustainability and local benefit. The discussions in this working group are summarised on the specific issues, crosscutting issues and main issues.

The following specific issues arose throughout the debates:

- The relationship between ecotourism and sustainable tourism; the appropriate context for ecotourism planning is planning and policy development for sustainable tourism, but the particular characteristics of ecotourism is merit to highlight.
- Lack of appropriate infrastructure and services in many destinations with ecotourism potential
- Ecotourism brand; it is desired to prevent the use of the word ecotourism by those who do not adhere to its principles.
- Uncontrolled penetration of ecotourism activities into new and remote areas can create management and monitoring problems.

The following crosscutting issues and recommendation arose throughout the session;

- Major recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this theme are:
 - Integrate ecotourism policies and planning across national boundaries
 - Ensure national governments provide necessary leadership and guidance
 - Create a planning framework for protected areas

- Formulate ecotourism plans jointly with all major stakeholders, with a long term vision and clear goals

- Develop tools such as land use planning to assist in planning and management of ecotourism

- Provide adequate and appropriate funding for projects, protected areas and partnerships

- Involve all stakeholders on local capacity building to encourage participation and employment of local people

- Ensure careful consultation and participation of all stakeholders in planning and policy development processes.

- Major recommendations arose from the working group A and summit in this theme are:

- The need for trans-national policies and using transboundary management approaches. The establishing of world fund to enable appropriate ecotourism development particularly at the trans-national level and global planning and policy development in specific interrelated regions such as Caribbean were proposed.

- A collaborative approach to planning and policy development is needed. The relationship between ecotourism and biodiversity, the integrated work of involved agencies, the sectoral planning perspective, pursuing integrated planning on ecotourism and its location on the national development plan are highlighted. It was recommended that whatever the mechanisms, all decision-making be transparent, and also accountable.

- Developing appropriate tools for planning and management is suggested. For example, some destinations build in development controls ahead of time. While appropriate planning and policy development is one requirement, rigorous implementation is fundamental.

- Planning systematically for protected area is needed. For example adequate size of protected areas should be addressed in development and planning.

- Committing adequate financial and other resources such as multilateral aid in the form of various types of assistance is required. Creation of centres of development and dissemination of knowledge and cooperation or a fund for trans-national ecotourism development as well as setting aside some fund for education from ecotourism revenues were suggested.

- Training and capacity building is required for those professionals who are involved in planning and policy development.

- Building multi-stakeholder participation into policy and planning processes is emphasised.

The main issues discussed in the working group A were 'planning for environmental conservation', 'planning for economic development', 'gaining social and cultural benefits', and 'Multi-stakeholder participation'. The following recommendation arose in each topic.

Recommendations for Environmental Conservation;

- Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences on this issue are;

- Conserve energy, water, and other resources, reduce waste and favour materials that are not imported.

- Plan more sustainable transport options.

- Promote awareness of conservation and biodiversity amongst local people and visitors.
- Use appropriate tools to identify limits to use and to manage impacts.
- Seek to influence demand as well as managing visitors who do come.
- Use economic tools, information and interpretation in visitor management.
- Major recommendations arose from the working group A and summit in this theme are:
 - Educating communities about biodiversity and conservation,
 - Impact management by adopting minimum impact practices and guidelines or exclude certain activities.
 - Visitor management by applying integrated approach for the management of many variables, including supply and demand.

Recommendations for Economic Development

- Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences are:
 - Provide training, micro-credit and other assistance to small, medium and micro-enterprises.
 - Provide incentives for enterprises to pursue sustainability
 - Provide infrastructure, such as access and telecommunications, to assist communities in ecotourism development.
 - Emphasise the role of governments as facilitators rather than operators.
 - Place an emphasis on increasing retained economic value per visitor rather than expanding visitor volumes.
- Major recommendations arose from the working group A and summit in this theme are:
 - Providing government and other support for community level ecotourism as a partner and not as a developer. International assistance in the form of finance, technology, training, information, mentorship should be targeted more towards ecotourism projects.
 - Recognising mutual benefits and mutual contribute of valuable knowledge and information, practices, traditions between hosts and guests. It was recommended that such contributions and sharing should be valued through financial or similar means. Traditional and indigenous knowledge should be acknowledged.

Recommendations for Social and Cultural Benefits

- Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences are:
 - Use historic buildings and other heritage resources, thereby contributing to their protection.
 - Involve communities in social and cultural programmes, to ensure local control, ownership and authenticity.
 - Mount community awareness campaigns.
 - Ensure that tour operators and other external companies are aware of their responsibilities towards communities.
- Major recommendations arose from the working group A and summit in this theme are:
 - Involving communities and ensuring local ownership by alleviating pressures on the coast, while attracting visitors and development to rural areas. Governments may provide communities

with land or resources which can enable them to act as partners in ecotourism operations. Communities should have input to planning processes through, for example, local narratives and guides.

Recommendations for multi-stakeholder participation

- Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences are:
 - Build support for joint ventures into planning and policy initiatives
 - Facilitate community-level joint ventures, such as co-management of protected areas
 - Encourage strategic alliances between private businesses and local communities.
- Major recommendations arose from the working group A and summit in this theme are:
 - Origin-destination joint ventures were suggested.

Summary of Working group B: The Regulation of Ecotourism, Institutional responsibilities and frameworks.

The theme addressed by this working group was about providing the right regulatory frameworks and systems to ensure that products that are developed and marketed as ecotourism are beneficial and not harmful to environments and communities.

The following were the main issues discussed by the working group.

- Institutional frameworks; Legal frameworks and regulations are not always established for ecotourism only and very often are common to other kinds of tourism. There is a need to have specific legal frameworks and policies for ecotourism.

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Ensure coordination between government ministries in the planning and regulation of ecotourism.
- Develop a framework of cooperation between public, private and non-governmental organisations.
- Ensure institutions understand the different dimensions of sustainable tourism and ecotourism.

Key points arising from the working group B and Summit in this regard are:

- There is a need to reach agreements between protected area management bodies, tourism departments or ministries as well as the tourism industry in general.
- The development of legislative frameworks at the regional level should be supported,
- Incentives should be set up, such as lower taxes or public land concessions at lower rates, for ecotourism operators that promote environmentally-sensitive land use
- Regulation of ecotourism; the role of the private sector in the establishment of regulations and in the certification process was a controversial issue.

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Move gradually from optional guidelines and simple codes of conduct towards obligatory regulations.
- Establish suitable legal frameworks underpinned by effective tools for regulating ecotourism.
- Develop guidelines and best practice information at all levels.

- Ensure protected areas are consulted and involved in regulatory procedures.

Key points arising from the working group B and Summit in this regard are:

- Tourism operators, local government, and conservation departments should establish regulations.

They should guarantee the protection of sensitive natural resources and cultural integrity.

- Legislation and regulations should be specific for ecotourism.

- Certain laws and regulations within protected areas should be extended beyond their frontiers.

- In some areas regulations need to be compulsory since in many countries voluntary regulations do not work

- Legally binding instruments for the implementation of sustainable ecotourism and avoidance of non-sustainable forms of tourism for sensitive areas should be established.

- Strict regulations for ecotourism at an international level should be avoided, while guidelines are acceptable.

- The potential negative impact of visitors can be addressed through some measures such as reservation systems, routing in sensitive points, zoning within the site according to carrying capacity.

- Certification and labelling; the scale of certification met with a great deal of interest. How can certification schemes work at the local level and at the same time have international recognition? Too many labels are confusing and there was agreement that something should be done in this respect. A possible solution is the example of VISIT, a joint European initiative for the promotion of ecolabels and sustainable tourism development. VISIT has cooperated with 10 leading ecolabels in Europe and developed common basic standards for their criteria and verification procedures. These standards allow the identification of those ecolabels which guarantee a high environmental quality of their certified hotels, campsites, beaches or marinas. In 2004, VISIT will be established as a European accreditation body for ecolabels in tourism.

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Provide guidelines on certification schemes for ecotourism.

- Avoid penalise very small scale enterprises and facilitate their access to certification schemes.

- Involve all stakeholders in developing and implementing certification processes.

- Ensure certification processes are transparent, understandable and updated.

Key points arising from the working group B and Summit in this regard are:

- Certification processes need to be global in concept, following international guidelines and recommendations, but local in application.

- Auditing teams must be independent and ideally should have representatives from different countries and cultural background and proper training.

- Certification should take into account social, economic and cultural aspects, besides the environmental ones.

- NGOs should take part in the process of identifying certification schemes.

- International certification schemes must be Multistakeholder. It was suggested that organisations such as WTO and UNEP could play a role in establishing an international framework for tourism certification systems and all existing certification schemes should be considered in this process.

- Certification and accreditation should be industry driven and paid for by the operators.

- There was agreement that environmental certification very often leads to economic benefits since energy, water and other resources are saved.

- Easily accessible funding formulae to cover the cost of international certification schemes should be explored,

- Certification should provide powerful incentives and guidelines for responsible business practices.

- A Multistakeholder Sustainable Tourism Stewardship Council could help local certification programmes exchange information in a forum that allows for accreditation of certifiers, marketing and credibility.

- The obligatory introduction of certification systems for ecotourism facilities and operations should be considered at least at regional and national levels.

- Ecotourism certifiers must be guided by social criteria geared to facilitating the integration of small businesses at preferential rates and through technical contributions or the promotion of collective certification alternatives.

▪ Capacity building, training and education; without adequate training and education of all stakeholders, from government to the private sector and consumers, in matters relating to regulation, certification and monitoring, it is impossible to progress towards sustainability in ecotourism.

Key points arising from the working group B and Summit in this regard are:

- In the certification process, there is a need to train and educate all stakeholders, including the industry, operators and customers or consumers.

- Certification programmes should be promoted and explained to the public by both the tourism and the environmental authorities.

- Education, transfer of know-how, exchange and respect for local people must drive the development of ecotourism in all destinations.

- Tourists must be informed of certification schemes

▪ Sustainability indicators and monitoring; There is a need to monitor sustainability of ecotourism products. The difficulty of identifying indicators for social and cultural aspects should be pointed out.

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Include the economic, social and environmental impact of tourism in monitoring.

- Define targets to be achieved in a certain period of time.

- Establish continuous data collection, involving businesses and tourists.

- Ensure monitoring is a prerequisite of providing assistance to projects.

Key points arising from the working group B and Summit in this regard are:

- The definition of sustainability indicators should not be left only to the private sector and should be the result of consensus among all stakeholders
- Sustainability indicators should be integrated with local planning.
- Indicators must be identified at the local level and should take into account environmental, social and cultural factors.
- New methods of evaluation of progress towards sustainability in ecotourism need to be identified.

Summary of Working group C: Product development, Marketing and Promotion of Ecotourism; Fostering sustainable products and consumers

This working group was concerned with developing the right support structures, market knowledge, and attention to detail in product development, to enable this to happen.

The following were the main issues discussed by the working group.

- Structures and relationships for product development and marketing;

Main recommendations resulting from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Address local community needs and opportunities.
- Recognise the key role of private sector businesses and strengthen their links with local communities.
- Strengthen networking between small enterprises and projects, so assisting market outreach and promoting common standards.
- Recognise protected areas as focal points for ecotourism products and marketing.
- Increase support from national and local government.

Key points arising from the working group C and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Presentations at the working group emphasised that the principles of ecotourism are often enshrined in traditional values at national or local level. Such values should be recognised and respected.
- The importance of establishing multi-stakeholder partnerships was underlined. Indigenous people partnerships with organisations which can support and fund community projects, individual enterprises and joint ventures as well as establishing partnerships for ecotourism between states is encouraged.
- Linking conservation of biodiversity with direct economic benefits to local people
- Strengthening the role of protected areas in ecotourism development
- Seeking a greater role for provincial and local authorities
- Understanding markets

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Use more market research.
- Take a broad view of the market, recognising different segments.

- Study current visitor flows and local market conditions before product development takes place.

Key points arising from the working group C and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Understanding visitor motivations and disseminating research results.

- Recognising ecotourism as more than a niche market with a set of principles, especially concerning benefits to conservation and local communities. It is important not to isolate ecotourism from the mainstream of tourism. There is a need for more, well informed, market segmentation, enabling products and promotional strategies to be adapted to different requirements.

- it was called for better market assessment and business planning for individual projects, taking account of location, resource constraints, current visitor flows and performance of comparable products. This should help to avoid false expectations and the development of ecotourism in areas

- Key components of ecotourism products;

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in above issue are:

- Address quality, authenticity and security.

- Give top priority to effective interpretation of nature and culture.

- Design and manage service facilities, such as accommodation and catering, to maximise sustainability.

- Address destination issues, such as infrastructure and transport, as well as individual product issues.

- Relate ecotourism to sustainable activity tourism.

Key points arising from the working group C and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- The need for authenticity in ecotourism projects was strongly endorsed. The advantages of creative interpretation and the use of local guides were emphasised.

- Ecotourism should give a lead towards more sustainable tourism generally and its projects should embrace all aspects of sustainability. Priority should be given to disseminating good practice in this field. The importance of personal security is recognised.

- Addressing the issue of access to ecotourism destinations and experiences in three aspects; firstly there is a need to work more closely with transport operators in ecotourism development. Secondly, ecotourism policies and products should promote the use of environmentally friendly transport options, both to and within the destination. Thirdly, there is a need to avoid discrimination against people with disabilities or other disadvantages in terms of access to ecotourism experiences.

- Technical support for communities and enterprises

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences in this regard are:

- Provide relevant local training, devised with local people and enterprises to encourage participation.

- Encourage people to look together at the local resource and at ecotourism projects elsewhere.

- Provide well-targeted, accessible financial assistance.

Key points arising from the working group C and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Giving priority to capacity building within local communities.
- Helping ecotourism projects to learn from each other by exchanging experiences.
- Raising the profile and knowledge of tourism within donor agencies, and the quality of applications to them
- Structuring financial and technical assistance to the requirements of small businesses and local communities. Specific recommendations were that donor agencies should provide more schemes which channel assistance directly to enterprises and communities rather than through national governments; and funding should be available in small packets, with a low minimum level, relevant to the size of small enterprises; and also there is a need for micro-credit schemes. The establishment of a network of ecotourism advisors or mentors as a readily available source of help for small ecotourism businesses was suggested.

- Promoting ecotourism messages and products

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences regarding above issue are:

- Promote ecotourism as a concept, with an international awareness campaign.
- Grasp the significant opportunity presented by the Internet.
- Use a range of marketing techniques and partners.
- Provide comprehensive and educative information at all stages, before, during and after the visit.
- Create loyal ambassadors among tourists.

Key points arising from the working group C and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Raising public awareness of tourism impacts, ecotourism principles and actions to take. It is importance to promote the actual concept of ecotourism, its ideals and values, rather than simply ecotourism products.
- Promoting mutual understanding of cultural differences and sensitivities
- Working effectively with tour operators and the media. The priority should be given to involving and educating local incoming tour operators and agents within destinations. The travel writers should be introduced to genuine, interesting stories about real people and experiences, rather than bland details of product.
- Using the Internet as a communication medium at all points in the tourism chain.
- Raising confidence through branded products.
- Gaining support for ecotourism amongst future visitors such as children and young people, as a receptive audience and as the travellers of the future.

Summary of Working group D: Monitoring of costs and benefits of Ecotourism, Ensuring equitable distribution among all stakeholders

This working group was concerned with effective processes for checking on impacts and improving the distribution of benefits.

The following were the main issues discussed by the working group.

- Monitoring costs of ecotourism;

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences:

- Determine the economic costs of providing suitable infrastructure, including energy and transport, resources such as water, and waste treatment.
- Use indicators such as site stress to monitor environmental costs.
- Consider factors such as the disturbance of traditional lifestyles in determining social costs.
- Take an integrated approach to determining costs, such as effect on employment in other sectors, like agriculture.
- Research specific management and monitoring procedures for different types of ecotourism sites, e.g. deserts and islands.
- Research methods to ensure the permanent control of impacts, including damage warning indicators for protected sites and other natural areas.

Key points arising from the working group D and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Recognising costs relating to environmental management. The conflict between protecting nature and ecotourism development induces extra costs which ecotourism operators must bear. The specific planning guidelines must be drawn up, which include protection barriers, requiring very heavy investment. The need for large financial resources impedes the development of ecotourism and can rupture the sustainable development process in these destinations.
- Taking all development and operational costs into account, including training. Ecotourism often implies heavier equipment expenditure and more skilled personnel than are required in traditional tourism.
- Considering the full costs of transition to ecotourism; the cost of protecting nature generally implies very high expenditure and can be the cause of usage conflict in economic terms but also in social terms.

▪ Monitoring benefits of ecotourism

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences on the above issue are:

- Take account of local income benefits and tax receipts.
- Consider improvement in local employment, living conditions and social services.
- Measure the local population's satisfaction through surveys.
- Use tourism satellite accounting to show impacts on different sectors.
- Develop new evaluation methods to take account of wider benefits and costs

Key points arising from the working group D and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- Being realistic about financial benefits; the financial benefits must be considered as particularly important for local populations.
- Using ecotourism benefits to alleviate poverty; the benefits of ecotourism should be orientated principally towards the poorest local populations. The assertion that developing ecotourism is a good method of solving the problems of poverty in developing countries should be expressed with caution, spelling out the conditions for this to occur.
- Emphasising the merits of ecotourism in benefiting small enterprises

- Taking full account of associated benefits because of unbalance between costs and benefits in some ecotourism projects. It can't justify ecotourism development in economic and social development policies. The benefits of ecotourism are much more numerous and important if some major elements which are often forgotten or ignored are considered. Ecotourism benefits tourists by giving them the choice to enjoy a different type of tourism than traditional tourism. Ecotourism favours the initiatives of non-profit organisations and cooperatives, which generally have important direct and indirect impacts, benefiting local and indigenous communities.

▪ The equitable distribution of benefits amongst stakeholders;

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences on this issue are:

- Establish financial and fiscal mechanisms to ensure that a significant proportion of income generated from ecotourism remains in the local community or serves conservation.

- Put in place distribution mechanisms which reinvest a proportion of the revenues generated in the protected areas.

- Consider the impact of price levels on the distribution of benefits.

Key points arising from the working group D and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- The principles of ecotourism are more of an aspiration than a reality for many countries, regions and local and indigenous populations, despite significant progress.

- Equitable distribution is an aspiration for many stakeholders. The equitable distribution between all stakeholders is strengthened because of the prevalence of small and medium sized enterprises in the development of ecotourism.

- The equitable distribution between all stakeholders will only become a significant reality when the benefits to be distributed are great enough.

▪ Global recommendations;

Main recommendations from the preparatory conferences regarding this issue are:

- Ensure a constant monitoring of ecotourism activities to ensure they are meeting the required objectives.

- Determine distinct quantitative evaluation criteria or a range of standards, in cooperation with national and local authorities.

- Establish an evolutionary management system, including monitoring, based on public-private partnership.

Key points arising from the working group D and Summit in this regarding the above issue are:

- The existing ecotourism cost, benefit and impact evaluation methods, should be reviewed and new methods should be devised which would highlight the social and economic benefits for local populations and compare these with the costs, benefits and impacts of other forms of tourism and other economic alternatives.

- Appropriate legal, political, institutional and funding mechanisms should be established in order to facilitate and make effective the participation of local communities in the overall ecotourism process, including definition, planning, management, monitoring, and conflict resolution.

- Indigenous communities and groups should be involved from the very beginning in the decision process about ecotourism including the assessment and monitoring of costs, benefits and impacts in particular with respect to their culture and traditions.
- Financial and fiscal mechanisms should be implemented to ensure that a significant proportion of the income generated from ecotourism remains with the local community and is reinvested for environmental and cultural conservation purposes.
- A permanent and consistent monitoring of ecotourism impacts should be implemented as an integral part of the overall management for protected sites and other natural areas, and the existing approaches such as carrying capacity methodologies, damage warning indicators and other monitoring instruments should be adapted.

The Quebec Declaration on Ecotourism

In the framework of the UN International Year of Ecotourism, 2002, under the aegis of the UNEP and the WTO/OMT, participants from 132 countries, from the public, private and non-governmental sectors met at the World Ecotourism Summit in Québec City, Canada between 19 and 22 May 2002.

The Quebec Declaration is the result of a Multistakeholder dialogue, although it is not a negotiated document. This document takes into account the preparatory process including 18 regional preparatory meetings in 2001 and 2002, as well as the discussions held during the Summit. According to the final report of meeting, the main purpose of the document is the setting of a preliminary agenda and a set of recommendations for the development of ecotourism activities in the context of sustainable development.

The document has preamble part as well as implementing part.

In the preamble definition, facts and general commitments of the participants are recalled such as principle of ecotourism, its relationship with sustainable tourism as well as its impacts, the role of conservation of natural and cultural heritage, indigenous communities, and maintaining their traditional knowledge, the conservation and management of biodiversity and culturally rich protected areas and their needs, the role and effects of proper planning and participative planning mechanisms or improper planning, the role of small and micro businesses and measures to be taken for improve their chances of survival, and the visitors responsibility.

The specific principles which distinguish ecotourism from the wider concept of sustainable tourism were described as follows:

- Contributes actively to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage,
- Includes local and indigenous communities in its planning, development and operation, and contributing to their well-being,
- Interprets the natural and cultural heritage of the destination to visitors,
- Lends itself better to independent travellers, as well as to organised tours for small size groups.

The implementing part of the Declaration produced a series of recommendations, which participants propose to governments, the private sector, non-governmental organisations, community-based associations, academic and research institutions, inter-governmental organisations, international financial institutions, development assistance agencies, and indigenous and local communities, as follows:

A. To national, regional and local governments.

1. Formulate national, regional and local ecotourism policies and development strategies that are consistent with the overall objectives of sustainable development, and to do so through a wide consultation process with those who are likely to become involved in, affect, or be affected by ecotourism activities;
2. Guarantee, in conjunction with all ecotourism stakeholders, the protection of nature, local and indigenous cultures and specially traditional knowledge, genetic resources, rights to land, water, and property;
3. Ensure the involvement, appropriate participation and necessary coordination of all the relevant public institutions at the national, provincial and local level, including the establishment of inter-ministerial working groups as appropriate, at different stages in the ecotourism process, while at the same time opening and facilitating the participation of other stakeholders in ecotourism-related decisions. Furthermore, adequate budgetary mechanisms and appropriate legislative frameworks need to be set up to allow implementation of the objectives and goals set up by these Multistakeholder bodies;
4. Include in the above framework the necessary regulatory and monitoring mechanisms at the national, regional and local levels, including objective sustainability indicators jointly agreed with all stakeholders and environmental impact assessment studies to be used as feedback mechanism. Results of monitoring should be made available to the general public;
5. Develop regulatory mechanisms for internalisation of environmental costs in all aspects of the tourism product, including international transport;
6. Develop the local and municipal capacity to implement growth management tools such as zoning, and participatory land-use planning not only in protected areas but in buffer zones and other ecotourism development zones;
7. Use internationally approved and reviewed guidelines to develop certification schemes, ecolabels and other voluntary initiatives geared towards sustainability in ecotourism, encouraging private operators to join such schemes and promoting their recognition by consumers. However, certification systems should reflect regional and local criteria. Build capacity and provide financial support to make these schemes accessible to small and medium enterprises (SMEs). In addition, monitoring and a regulatory framework are necessary to support effective implementation of these schemes;

8. Ensure the provision of technical, financial and human resources development support to micro, small and medium-sized firms, which are the core of ecotourism, with a view to enable them to start, grow and develop their businesses in a sustainable manner;
9. Define appropriate policies, management plans, and interpretation programmes for visitors, and earmark adequate sources of funding for natural areas to manage visitor numbers, protect vulnerable ecosystems, and the sustainable use of sensitive habitats. Such plans should include clear norms, direct and indirect management strategies, and regulations with the funds to ensure monitoring of social and environmental impacts for all ecotourism businesses operating in the area, as well as for tourists wishing to visit them;
10. Include micro, small and medium-sized ecotourism companies, as well as community-based and NGO-based ecotourism operations in the overall promotional strategies and programmes carried out by the National Tourism Administration, both in the international and domestic markets;
11. Encourage and support the creation of regional networks and cooperation for promotion and marketing of ecotourism products at the international and national levels;
12. Provide incentives to tourism operators and other service providers such as marketing and promotion advantages for them to adopt ecotourism principles and make their operations more environmentally, socially and culturally responsible;
13. Ensure that basic environmental and health standards are identified and met by all ecotourism development even in the most rural areas. This should include aspects such as site selection, planning, design, the treatment of solid waste, sewage, and the protection of watersheds, etc., and ensure also that ecotourism development strategies are not undertaken by governments without investment in sustainable infrastructure and the reinforcement of local/municipal capabilities to regulate and monitor such aspects;
14. Institute baseline environmental impact assessment (EIA) studies and surveys that record the social environmental state of destinations, with special attention to endangered species, and invest, or support institutions that invest in research programmes on ecotourism and sustainable tourism;
15. Support the further implementation of the international principles, guidelines and codes of ethics for sustainable tourism (e.g. such as those proposed by UNEP, WTO, CBD, CSD, and ILO) for the enhancement of international and national legal frameworks, policies and master plans to implement the concept of sustainable development into tourism;
16. Consider as one option the reallocation of tenure and management of public lands, from extractive or intensive productive sectors to tourism combined with conservation, wherever this is likely to improve the net social, economic and environmental benefit for the community concerned;
17. Promote and develop educational programmes addressed to children and young people to enhance awareness about nature conservation and sustainable use, local and indigenous cultures and their relationship with ecotourism;

18. Promote collaboration between outbound tour operators and incoming operators and other service providers and NGOs at the destination to further educate tourists and influence their behaviour at destinations, especially those in developing countries;

19. Incorporate sustainable transportation principles in the planning and design of access and transportation systems, and encourage tour operators and the travelling public to make soft mobility choices.

B. To the private sector

20. Bear in mind that for ecotourism businesses to be sustainable, they need to be profitable for all stakeholders involved, including the projects' owners, investors, managers and employees, as well as the communities and the conservation organisations of natural areas where it takes place;

21. Conceive, develop and conduct their businesses minimising negative effects on, and positively contributing to, the conservation of sensitive ecosystems and the environment in general, and directly benefiting and including local and indigenous communities;

22. Ensure that the design, planning, development and operation of ecotourism facilities incorporates sustainability principles, such as sensitive site design and community sense of place, as well as conservation of water, energy and materials, and accessibility to all categories of population without discrimination;

23. Adopt as appropriate a reliable certification or other systems of voluntary regulation, such as ecolabels, in order to demonstrate to their potential clients their adherence to sustainability principles and the soundness of the products and services they offer;

24. Cooperate with governmental and non-governmental organisations in charge of protected natural areas and conservation of biodiversity, ensuring that ecotourism operations are practised according to the management plans and other regulations prevailing in those areas, so as to minimise any negative impacts upon them while enhancing the quality of the tourism experience and contribute financially to the conservation of natural resources;

25. Make increasing use of local materials and products, as well as local logistical and human resource inputs in their operations, in order to maintain the overall authenticity of the ecotourism product and increase the proportion of financial and other benefits that remain at the destination. To achieve this, private operators should invest in the training of the local workforce;

26. Ensure that the supply chain used in building up an ecotourism operation is thoroughly sustainable and consistent with the level of sustainability aimed at in the final product or service to be offered to the customer;

27. Work actively with indigenous leadership and local communities to ensure that indigenous cultures and communities are depicted accurately and with respect, and that their staff and guests are well and accurately informed regarding local and indigenous sites, customs and history;

28. Promote among their clients an ethical and environmentally conscious behaviour vis-à-vis the ecotourism destinations visited, such as by environmental education or by encouraging voluntary contributions to support local community or conservation initiatives;

29. Generate awareness among all management and staff of local, national and global environmental and cultural issues through ongoing environmental education, and support the contribution that they and their families can make to conservation, community economic development and poverty alleviation;
30. Diversify their offer by developing a wide range of tourist activities at a given destination and by extending their operations to different destinations in order to spread the potential benefits of ecotourism and to avoid overcrowding some selected ecotourism sites, thus threatening their long-term sustainability. In this regard, private operators are urged to respect, and contribute to, established visitor impact management systems of ecotourism destinations;
31. Create and develop funding mechanisms for the operation of business associations or cooperatives that can assist with ecotourism training, marketing, product development, research and financing;
32. Ensure an equitable distribution of financial benefits from ecotourism revenues between international, outbound and incoming tour operators, local service providers and local communities through appropriate instruments and strategic alliances;
33. Formulate and implement company policies for sustainability with a view to applying them in each part of their operations.

C. To NGO's, community-based associations, academic and research institutions.

34. Provide technical, financial, educational, capacity building and other support to ecotourism destinations, host community organisations, small businesses and the corresponding local authorities in order to ensure that appropriate policies, development and management guidelines, and monitoring mechanisms are being applied towards sustainability;
35. Monitor and conduct research on the actual impacts of ecotourism activities upon ecosystems, biodiversity, local and indigenous cultures and the socio-economic fabric of the ecotourism destinations;
36. Cooperate with public and private organisations ensuring that the data and information generated through research is channelled to support decision-making processes in ecotourism development and management;
37. Cooperate with research institutions to develop the most adequate and practical solutions to ecotourism development issues.

D. To IGO's, international financial institutions and development assistance agencies

38. Develop and assist in the implementation of national and local policy and planning guidelines and evaluation frameworks for ecotourism and its relationships with biodiversity conservation, socio-economic development, respect of human rights, poverty alleviation, nature conservation and other objectives of sustainable development, and to intensify the transfer of such know-how to all countries. Special attention should be paid to countries in a developing stage or least developed status, to SIDS and to countries with mountain areas, considering that 2002 is also designated as the International Year of Mountains by the UN;

39. Build capacity for regional, national and local organisations for the formulation and application of ecotourism policies and plans, based on international guidelines;
40. Develop or adopt, as appropriate, international standards and financial mechanisms for ecotourism certification systems that take into account the needs of small and medium enterprises and facilitates their access to those procedures, and support their implementation;
41. Incorporate multistakeholder dialogue processes into policies, guidelines and projects at the global, regional and national levels for the exchange of experiences between countries and sectors involved in ecotourism;
42. Strengthen efforts in identifying the factors that determine the success or failure of ecotourism ventures throughout the world, in order to transfer such experiences and best practices to other nations, by means of publications, field missions, training seminars and technical assistance projects; UNEP, WTO and other international organisations should continue and expand the international dialogue after the Summit on sustainable tourism and ecotourism issues, for example by conducting periodical reviews of ecotourism development through international and regional forums;
43. Adapt as necessary their financial facilities and lending conditions and procedures to suit the needs of micro-, small- and medium-sized ecotourism firms that are the core of this industry, as a condition to ensure its long term economic sustainability;
44. Develop the internal human resource capacity to support sustainable tourism and ecotourism as a development sub-sector in itself and to ensure that internal expertise, research, and documentation are in place to oversee the use of ecotourism as a sustainable development tool;
45. Develop financial mechanisms for training and capacity building that takes into account the time and resources required to successfully enable local communities and indigenous peoples to participate equitably in ecotourism development.

E. To local and indigenous communities

In addition to all the references to local and indigenous communities made in the preceding paragraphs of this Declaration, (in particular Para. 5, 8, 9 and 10 on page 2; Para. 1 on page 3; in A 2 and 17; B 21 and 27; C 35; D 45) the following recommendations is addressed to the local and indigenous communities themselves:

46. As part of a community vision for development, that may include ecotourism, define and implement a strategy for improving collective benefits for the community through ecotourism development including human, physical, financial, and social capital development, and improved access to technical information;
47. Strengthen, nurture and encourage the community's ability to maintain and use traditional skills, particularly home-based arts and crafts, agricultural produce, traditional housing and landscaping that use local natural resources in a sustainable manner.

F. To the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

48. Recognise the need to apply the principles of sustainable development to tourism, and the exemplary role of ecotourism in generating economic, social and environmental benefits;
49. Integrate the role of tourism, including ecotourism, in the outcomes expected at WSSD.

Appendix VIII

Part IV

Survey on the International specialised Organisations and Regional Agreements vis-à-vis Nature Based Tourism

This chapter will address the latest development in respect to Nature Based Tourism within the working programme of the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD), and the Council of Europe (CE).

Convention on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Nature Based Tourism

The Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) in its fourth session (COP4) in 1999 took note of the Programme for the further implementation of Agenda 21, adopted at the nineteenth special session of the United Nations General Assembly in June 1997, and decided to consider "Sustainable use of biological diversity including tourism" as one of the three themes for in-depth consideration at its fifth meeting (Annex II of decision IV/16). Paragraph 16 of decision IV/16 describe that the conference of the parties 'adopts the programme of work for the period from the fourth meeting of the Conference of the Parties, 1999, until the seventh meeting of the Conference, 2004, as contained in annex II to the mentioned decision.'

Annex II planed that the fifth conference of the parties of CBD consider the Sustainable use, including tourism together with Dry land, Mediterranean, arid, semi-arid, grassland and savannah ecosystems as well as Access to genetic resources as Items for in-depth consideration. Para 19 of the same decision requests the Executive Secretary of the Convention to prepare the provisional agenda of the fifth meeting of the Conference of the Parties (COP5) in agreement with the President of COP5 within the framework of the programme of work contained in annex II of decision IV/16. Para 20 Requests the Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice (SBSTTA) and other subsidiary bodies to prepare proposals for their programmes of work based on the priorities set out in IV/16 with a view to streamlining and focusing the agendas of their meetings and Para 21 requests SBSTTA, taking into account its proposals for the programme of work developed under paragraph 16 of decision IV/16, to advise COP5 of the terms of reference for the ad hoc technical expert groups on thematic areas. The terms of reference should take into account the need, inter alia, to provide a peer reviewed scientific and technical assessment of the status and trends of, and impacts on, biological diversity, including the effectiveness of the types of measures for conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. COP4 in paragraph 14 of its decision IV/15, requested Parties to submit information on current threats to biological diversity from tourism activities; basic approaches, strategies and instruments; the involvement of the private sector, local and indigenous communities; regional and sub regional level collaboration; infrastructure planning; and relevant policies and activities. The aim was

initiating a process of exchange of experiences, knowledge and best practices, on sustainable tourism and biological diversity within the framework of the CBD.

Para 14 of decision IV/15 reads as follows;

“Takes note of the Programme for the further implementation of Agenda 21 and requests Parties to submit information to the Executive Secretary on, inter alia:

- (a) Current threats to biological diversity from tourism activities;
- (b) Basic approaches, strategies and instruments that demonstrate where tourism and the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity are mutually supportive;
- (c) The involvement of the private sector, local and indigenous communities in establishing sustainable tourism practices;
- (d) Collaborative efforts at the regional and the sub regional levels, including case studies of particular relevance;
- (e) Infrastructure planning and regional and land-use planning for tourism that have incorporated consideration of the Convention on Biological Diversity; or
- (f) Consideration of policies and activities which are supportive of its aims, in order to initiate a process of exchange of experiences, knowledge and best practices, under the Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice, in particular at the national and regional levels on sustainable tourism and biological diversity within the framework of the Convention on Biological Diversity, including regarding protected areas”

Accordingly, a note was prepared by the Executive Secretary considered the information gathered based on Para 14 of decision IV/15 for the fourth meeting of the SBSTTA to assist it in its consideration of the development of approaches and practices for the sustainable use of biological resources, including tourism.

In the Introduction part of note (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/4/11), the secretariat recall the recent action take place by CSD at its seventh session (CSD7) to address sustainable tourism and hopes that the biodiversity consideration regarding tourism, will be fully taken into account under the process of CSD and equally, invited SBSTTA to take into account the outcome of CSD7 in its own consideration of the subject and hope to promote cooperation between both secretariat. It is mentioned that the note was prepared based on relevant existing information and the utilisation of “The Berlin Declaration on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism” and “Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism -Preparation of Global Guidelines” (UNEP/CBD/COP/4/Inf.21) submitted by Germany as well as two case studies made by Australia and a report submitted by Netherlands to the secretariat based on the request of IV/15.

The second part of the note, the role of tourism in the sustainable use of biological resources, contains two sections. Section A on Economical importance and section B on the Environmental impact of tourism. It should be noted that the sustainable use of the components of biological diversity is one of the three objectives of the Convention on Biological Diversity. For the purposes of the Convention, sustainable use means the use of components of biological diversity in a way

and at a rate that does not lead to the long term decline of biological diversity, thereby maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of present and future generations” (Article 2). The note comments that “ This definition of sustainable use is consistent with the concept of sustainable development as elaborated in the Rio Principles and Agenda 21, whereby “sustainable development” meets the needs and aspirations of the current generations without compromising the ability to meet those of future generations. Sustainable development cannot be achieved without the sustainable use of the world’s biological resources. The concept of sustainable use is grounded in Article 10 on sustainable use of components of biological diversity and Article 6 on general measures for conservation and sustainable use of the Convention on Biodiversity”.

In the first section of part II of note ‘Economical importance of tourism’, the global economic importance of tourism, its place in global income generation and international economic growth, its contribution to the world GNP and employment was accounted. It concluded that “ tourism based on the natural environment is a vital and growing segment of the tourism industry, accounting for \$260 billion in 1995. In a number of developing countries, tourism has already overtaken cash crop agriculture or mineral extraction as their major source of national income”.

In the second section ‘tourism and environment’, the investment in the maintenance and sustainable use of biological diversity because of its potential for generating large amount of revenue is recommended. This section clear the fact that historical observation indicates the self - regulation of the tourism industry for sustainable use of biological resources has only rarely been successful. This is due to the number of factors;

- Individual operators are not interested to invest more than other competitors in maintaining the general environmental standards in the resort.
- When environmental conditions begin to deteriorate in a given location, international operators are likely to shift to alternative locations rather than to invest in improving those conditions
- Most of operators are operating on low profit margin, they are often extremely reluctant to absorb any additional costs associated with improving environmental conditions, and instead will often find it economically expedient to shift their area of operation rather than face such costs.

Part III, potential impacts on biological diversity of tourism, contains three sections. Section A addresses the potential adverse impacts on environment, while section B describes the potential socio-economic impacts. Section C addresses the potential benefits of tourism, both tangible and intangible.

In section A ‘Environmental impacts’, the main points are as follows;

- Direct use of natural resources by tourist facilities, both renewable and non-renewable, by (i) the use of land for accommodation and other infrastructure provision, including road networks; and (ii) the use of building materials. The result is raising land prices, which

increase the pressures on agricultural land. Building materials are often extracted in an unsustainable manner from ecosystems.

- Tourism industry generally preferred “attractive landscape sites”, such as, sandy beaches, lakes and riversides, and mountaintops and slopes, which normally characterised by species-rich ecosystems for tourism developments. The result is either destroying or severely impact the site.
- Deforestation and intensified or unsustainable use of land cause erosion and loss of biological diversity.
- Direct impact on the species composition of vegetation on the ground layer can be caused by trampling and off -road driving.
- Passage of tourism vehicles, has adverse effects on vegetation, resulting in a loss of vegetation cover and in some cases cause forest fires.
- Impacts on wildlife by (i) damage caused by tourism activities and equipment; (ii) increased risk of the spread of pathogens from humans or companion animals to wild species; (iii) increased risk of introduction of alien species; (iv) disturbance of wild species, thereby disrupting normal behaviour and conceivably affecting mortality and reproductive success; (v) alterations in habitats; and (vi) consumption of wildlife by tourists.
- Depletion of local populations of certain species caused by hunting, shooting and fishing and transportation.
- Impacts on mountain environments by construction of hiking trails, bridges in high mountains, camp sites, chalets and hotels as well as resulting erosion and pollution.
- Impacts on the marine and coastal environment by inaccurate planning and/or lack of education and awareness, decisions for tourism development based only on the potential economic benefit, costal and beach erosion smothering of superficial corals, inappropriate positioning of the resort sewage systems, shipping for tourism and degradation of costal resources may cause the impoverishment of their diversity, as in the case for mangrove ecosystems adjacent to tourist resorts.
- Impact on water resources; the abstraction of groundwater can cause desiccation, resulting in loss of biological diversity.
- Disposal of waste produced by the tourism industry such as sewage and waste-water; chemical wastes and pollutants; and solid waste may cause major environmental problems by eutrophication, oxygen deficit and algal blooms
- Air Travel to and from international tourist destinations causes significant environmental impacts through pollution and production of “greenhouse” gases.

In section B ‘Socio-economic impacts of tourism’ main points are;

- Influx of people and related social degradation such as local prostitution, drugs and so forth.
- Impacts on local communities by unequally distributed amongst members of local communities, transferred back of profit to the other country in the case of foreign direct

investment, higher prices for local people and impact of exclusive tourism areas on the aspiration of local community

- Tourism has a highly complex impact on cultural values by intergenerational conflicts through changing aspirations of younger members of communities, cultural erosion and disruption of traditional lifestyles and affecting gender relationships

In section C the 'Potential benefits of tourism for the conservation of biological diversity and the sustainable use of its components' are accounted in tangible and intangible benefits. Important tangible benefits are;

- Revenue creation for maintenance of natural areas by harnessing of some proportion of tourism revenues, generalized environmental tax on tourists, charging fees for access to biological resources, charging entrance fees to national parks and other protected areas, fees for activities, such as fishing, hunting and diving and voluntary participations by specialist tourism sectors.
- Tourism contribution to economic development

The main areas for intangible benefits are;

- Tourism can serve as a major educational opportunity, increasing knowledge of natural ecosystems and local communities amongst a broad range of people. Such education may be reciprocal.
- Political leverage. Where a country has come to depend heavily on international tourism, this may serve as an encouragement to good governance.

In part IV 'management option and international/regional strategies for sustainable tourism that address biological diversity' the note was divided to three sections. The main points of section A 'options for good practices' are as follows;

- Assessment and monitoring, it is fundamental that a thorough impact assessment be done before any tourism-related project is started. Decisions have to be made based on best available information and with a considerable element of judgment. In assessing the impact, tourism carrying capacity for a specific site should be defined. In order to effectively adjust the activities, a suitable monitoring mechanism should be installed.
- High-value, low-volume tourism is widely advocated as the best method of maximizing benefits from tourism with less negative impacts on the natural environment.
- Optimizing use of tourism revenues, in government-run protected areas, revenues often accrue to general treasury funds, so that there is no relationship between the income generated from a protected area and the budget available for its management.
- Protected-area systems can be managed as a whole, and are allowed to make direct use of the income they generate for the maintenance of biological diversity.
- Channelling the benefit to local people by establishment of mechanisms that allow local people to benefit from income generated by park fees to ensure the long-term viability of such areas. Mechanisms to mitigate leakage of tourist revenues include preferential allocation

of franchises to local people, for accommodation, guides and catering. Such systems require careful, transparent management and an enforceable regulatory regime in cases of abuse.

- Maximising revenues based on willingness-to-pay and user fees for entry to protected areas
- Private management of Reserves may avoid many of the constraints and difficulties of government -run areas.
- Tourism in a wider land -use context, tourism potential role is probably best viewed from the perspective of integrated natural resources and land-use management in its widest sense, an ecosystem approach should be applied in the planning for tourism development and the costs and benefits of its development should be weighed against other options.
- Regulatory regimes, in cases where tourism in some form is considered a viable activity, a regulatory regime will be necessary to minimise adverse environmental and social impacts, an environmental impact assessment, including full appraisal of impacts on biological diversity, should be undertaken for every major development. The report by UNEP on "Ecolabels in the tourism industry" offers some examples.

In section B 'International and regional strategies and instruments' the note summarised an information document submitted by Germany to COP4 (UNEP/CBD/COP/4/Inf.21). Some notable examples of "Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism - Preparation of Global Guidelines" mentioned document which is a chorography of tourism-biodiversity related activities, are as follows;

- The International Union of Alpine Associations (IUAA) adopted the Kathmandu Declaration on Mountain Activities at its 44th General Assembly in 1982 to respond to the increasing threats to their fragile ecosystems and the environment. Identifying the urgent need for effective protection of the mountain environment and landscape, the Declaration called for actions to reduce the negative impact of human activities on mountains and immediate attention for the flora, fauna and natural resources. In addition, it established the cultural heritage and the dignity of the local population as inviolable. It further called for better education and awareness regarding environment and identified the use of appropriate technology for energy needs and the proper disposal of waste as matters of immediate concern.

- The "Tourism Bill of Rights and Tourist Codes", adopted at the sixth session of the General Assembly of the World Tourism Organisation, in Sofia, Bulgaria, in 1985, offers a general framework regarding tourism and tourist conduct. The Tourism Bill of Rights established the right of everyone to rest and leisure, the role of states to promote harmonious development of domestic and international tourism as well as the role of tourism professionals in contributing positively to the development of tourism and the implementation of the Bill. The Tourist Code, for its part, spelled out the code of conduct for tourists.

- In 1992, guidelines on the development of national parks and protected areas for tourism were jointly published by WTO, UNEP and IUCN in order to encourage more appropriate tourism development in national parks and protected areas. The guideline addresses:

- 1) Ways and means of involving local people living in and around protected areas;
- 2) Determining the appropriate level of tourism in national parks,
- 3) Improving the management of the natural values of the area,
- 4) Designing appropriate tourism infrastructure in national parks,
- 5) Promoting greater appreciation by visitors of the values of national parks,
- 6) Determining how tourism activity in national parks can serve as a self-financing mechanism for the park and as a tool for conservation.

In the same year, UNEP, with the UNESCO World Heritage Centre organised an International Workshop on the management of tourism in natural world heritage sites. The Workshop's recommendations have been widely circulated and now the two organisations are jointly working on a manual for managers of natural world heritage sites.

- In 1994, the Council of Europe adopted recommendations for sustainable tourism that contain measures at the national, international, local and regional levels.

- The World Conference on Sustainable Tourism, which took place in Lanzarote in April 1995, adopted the Charter for Sustainable Tourism, listing 18 points that are essential for sustainable tourism. It established that tourism development would need to be conducted in the framework of sustainable development, addressing the natural, cultural and human environments. It called for special priority in the matter of technical cooperation and financial aid to be given to environmentally and culturally vulnerable spaces.

- In 1997, the International Conference of Environment Ministers on Biodiversity and Tourism, held in Berlin, Germany, adopted the Berlin Declaration on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism. The Declaration largely concentrates on five areas:

- Sustainable tourism is a sensible use of biological diversity. In order for sustainable tourism to contribute to the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity, environmentally sound forms of tourism are to be promoted,
- The development of tourism needs to be controlled in order to ensure sustainability,
- Particular attention needs to be paid to tourism in vulnerable areas, including protected areas, coastal and mountain areas, and regions, in which nature is particularly diverse,
- Not only countries, but all stakeholders are responsible for sustainable development, particularly the private sector, whose voluntary initiatives are encouraged,
- Local communities are not only responsible for the sustainable development of tourism, but they can also gain particular benefits from tourism.

- In the Ministerial Roundtable on Biological Diversity held COP4 (Bratislava, Slovakia, May 1998), the Ministers discussed the issue of tourism. It was acknowledged that a substantial share of tourism strongly depends upon and affects biological diversity, while on the other hand it was also recognised that sustainable tourism could play a role in poverty alleviation and conservation of biological diversity.

- Workshop on Marine Biodiversity in the Caribbean, held in Jamaica in October 1998, explored the relationship between tourism and marine biodiversity. A working group devoted to this issue concluded that the pressures on marine biological diversity from tourism require a series of measures, depending on the issue in question:

- From a science, technology and research viewpoint, there is a need to improve the scientific baseline information on which to base policy decisions, and communication should be improved and maintained between researchers and resource users, including tourism;
- There is a need for indicators able to assess the carrying capacity of the system;
- Tourism is not integrated enough in national planning, and stakeholder participation is limited. The opposite situation would encourage integration of conservation of marine biological diversity into the tourism industries long-term planning;
- Education and public awareness is a major issue, along with the need for appropriate legislative measures,
- An important aspect is the use of market forces and economic instruments to stimulate environmentally responsible behaviour.

- In October 1998, the International Conference on "Sustainable Tourism in SIDS and Other Islands" was held in Lanzarote, Canary Islands, Spain. It was jointly organised by UNEP and WTO. The Conference addressed the challenges of sustainable tourism in small islands and proposed recommendations include:

- (a) Integration of tourism in the overall plan for sustainable development;
- (b) Stakeholder involvement;
- (c) Involvement of local communities;
- (d) Adoption of alternative technologies;
- (e) Promotion of codes of conduct and ecolabels tailor-made SIDS
- (f) Establishment of environmental standards and regulations.

- UNEP has drafted a set of guiding draft principles on sustainable tourism. Following the mandate given by the Governing Council in February 1999, UNEP start a multi-stakeholder consultation process on these principles.

- In 1999 an initiative has been started in the Netherlands to develop an integrative approach for biodiversity-friendly tourism, focusing on tourists from the Netherlands with a destination abroad. It takes into account the whole chain of activities, such as information from travel agencies, decisions by public to book trips, effects of travelling, possible reductions of negative impacts of accommodation at the destination, and activities undertaken by tourists abroad. The initiative involves all relevant stakeholders from the public and private sectors, following an interactive approach.

In section C of the note, four 'cases studies' were reviewed. The first case study is drawn from the experience of a private Reserve, and describes involvement of the private sector (Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve, Costa Rica). The second presents an example of initiatives by local

communities, also highlighting some potential difficulties faced by these communities (Firefly watching in Peninsular Malaysia). The third presents an example of establishing a partnership between a government and a non-governmental organisation. It also highlights the way in which the involvement of a local community has been promoted (The Annapurna Conservation Area Project, Nepal). Lastly, the fourth case study presents the options for incentive measures to promote nature-based ecotourism (The Wet Tropics World Heritage Area (WHA), Australia).

Part V of the note 'the convention on biological diversity and sustainable tourism' explain that how the Convention on Biological Diversity offers a framework for the development of policy options for sustainable tourism, which would promote the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. CBD contributions, as note considered, are as follows;

- Objectives and guiding principles: The three objectives of the CBD, contained in Article 1, "the conservation of biological diversity, the sustainable use of its components and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits", provide the overall framework for the development of sustainable tourism. In this regard, it is useful to understand the scope of the third objective to include those benefits arising out of the utilisation of biological resources. In addition, the Convention operates with two guiding principles, precautionary approach and the ecosystem approach. The former encourages taking measures when there is a threat of significant reduction or loss of biological diversity without waiting full scientific certainty. The ecosystem approach, on the other hand, encourages addressing matters in a holistic and integrated manner. Formulation of policies for tourism development will also benefit from these guiding principles.
- Article 6: General measures for conservation and sustainable use: This article provides for the development of national strategies, plans or programmes for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity and for the integration of those objectives into relevant sectoral or cross-sectoral plans, programmes and policies. Nature and biological diversity represent a major resource of tourism activities. In its development, sustainable tourism should take all necessary measures to ensure the integrity of ecosystems and habitats.
- Article 7: Identification and monitoring: In order to make tourism activities sustainable and to prevent and minimise damage caused by tourism to biological diversity, there is a need to identify processes and activities related to tourism which have, or are likely to have, significant adverse impacts on the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity and to monitor their effects. These measures are provided for by Article.
- Article 8: In-situ conservation: Article 8 provides for various measures for the purpose of in-situ conservation. It contains provisions for the establishment of protected areas, including the development of guidelines for the selection, establishment and management of such areas. As mentioned above, protected areas can offer good opportunities for the development of sustainable tourism. It also contains a number of provisions for the management of biological

resources and ecosystems in-situ. An important aspect of Article 8 is that it contains the provision for the respect, preservation and maintenance of knowledge, innovations and practices of indigenous and local communities. This provision offers the basis for minimising the social impacts on local communities as well as increasing their involvement in the development of sustainable tourism.

- Article 10: Sustainable use of components of biological diversity: This article can be considered as the basis of sustainable tourism. In addition to the general provisions for the promotion of sustainable use of the components of biological diversity, this article specifically provides for cooperation between the governmental authorities and the private sector in developing methods for sustainable use of biological resources. Sustainable tourism can undoubtedly represent such means.
- Article 11: Incentive measures: Under this article, each Contracting Party is to adopt, as far as possible and as appropriate, economically and socially sound measures that act as incentives for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. As tourism is essentially an economic activity, economic instruments to direct activities towards more sustainable paths are useful and cost-effective tools. In addition, social and institutional incentives, such as capacity building and stakeholder participation, can be provided in order to minimise social impacts and strengthen conservation and sustainable use of resources. Improved public awareness can also act as an incentive for sustainable tourism.
- Article 13: Public education and awareness: The education of tour operators and guides on the importance of and the measures required for the conservation of biological diversity is an essential component of the development of sustainable tourism. The general public should also be encouraged to understand these concepts. Article 13 contains provisions to this effect. In addition, it provides for the development of educational and public awareness programmes.
- Article 14: Impact assessment and minimising adverse impacts: As discussed above, tourism accompanies various threats to the maintenance of biological diversity. The adverse impacts of tourism can only be minimised through thorough environmental and biodiversity impact assessments prior to any project execution. Article 14 provides for the introduction of appropriate procedures requiring environmental impact assessments of proposed projects that are likely to have significant adverse effects on biological diversity. Almost all tourism projects can be considered under this category, and thus require environmental impact assessments
- Article 16: Access to and transfer of technology: In the development of sustainable tourism, the use of environmentally sound technologies in various aspects of its operation should be encouraged. These technologies may include those for wastewater treatment, pollution prevention and water and energy saving technologies. Article 16 contains provisions to provide and/or facilitate access to and transfer of technologies that are relevant to the

conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity and do not cause significant damage to the environment.

- Article 20: Financial resources: Tourism development, as with any other economic activity, requires funding. In addition to huge infrastructure investment requirements, starting up peripheral businesses also requires financing. The levels of funding as well as the types of financing available are important factors for consideration. Probably one of the most significant barriers to community involvement in tourism is the lack of affordable financing. Article 20 provides both for improved national financial support and for the provision of new and additional financial resources by the developed country Party to the developing country Party.
- Programmes on thematic areas: In addition to these specific articles of the CBD, a programme of work has been developed for each thematic area so far considered under the CBD process, namely, marine and coastal biological diversity, agricultural biological diversity, forest biological diversity and inland water biological diversity. At the fourth meeting of SBSTTA, a new thematic area, consisting of dry land, Mediterranean, arid, semi - arid, grassland and savannah ecosystems, is considered (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/4/7). The relevant activities of these work programmes should be reflected in the consideration of sustainable tourism. For example, in the multi -year programme of work for the implementation of the Jakarta Mandate on Marine and Coastal Biological Diversity, the implementation of the integrated marine and coastal area management is included as a programme element. In addition, consideration of coral bleaching and special concerns of SIDS are also addressed. In the programme of work on agricultural biological diversity, sustainable farming in conformity with ecosystem or integrated land use approach is strongly emphasised. Moreover, the Conference of the Parties endorsed the conclusions of the CSD's 1995 review of the implementation of Agenda 21, which recognised the need for an integrated and multi-disciplinary approach to planning, development and management of land resources (decision III/11, paragraph 14). Agro -tourism could be considered in this regard. Furthermore, the consideration of the development of sustainable tourism should fully reflect the development of the work programme on the implementation of Article 8(j) and related provisions.

In part VI 'Recommendation' the following points made by secretariat through its note;

- In accordance with decision IV/15 of the Conference of the Parties, SBSTTA may wish to elaborate a scientific and technical analysis of the inter-linkages between tourism and biological diversity and to submit it to consideration by the Conference of the Parties at its fifth meeting.
- SBSTTA may wish to recommend to the Conference of the Parties, taking into account the outcome of CSD7, that it take initiative in the international programme on sustainable tourism under the CSD process with regard to biological diversity. Attention should be drawn

to the fact that by continuing the activities contained in decision IV/15, paragraph 14, SBSTTA can develop and take a lead in:

- Identification of tourism activities that may have adverse impacts on biological diversity and monitoring of such activities (subparagraph a);
- Development of inventories of measures, policies and strategies that integrate tourism development into the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity (subparagraphs b and f), taking into account the relevant work under way for incentive measures (Para 11, decision IV/10.A) and environmental impact assessment (Para 14, decision IV/10.C)
- Exchange of information on good practices, highlighting the involvement of the private sector, local and indigenous communities (subparagraph c); the regional and sub regional level collaborative efforts (paragraph d); and infrastructure planning and regional and land-use planning for tourism (paragraph 14e, decision IV/15).
- SBSTTA may also wish to recommend to the Conference of the Parties that it take an active role in the development of measures and activities towards the International Year of Ecotourism, proclaimed to be observed in the year 2002 (A/RES/53/200), in association with the CSD.

Fourth session of Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice

At its fourth meeting, in June 1999, SBSTTA focussed on sustainable tourism and developed and recommended for adoption by the Conference of the Parties an assessment of the inter-linkages between tourism and biological diversity (recommendation IV/7, annex and Final Report).

SBSTTA Working Group 2 took up 'Development of approaches and practices for the sustainable use of biological resources, including tourism' as its agenda item 4.8 on 22 June 1999 (UNEP/CDS/SBSTTA/4/14). In considering the item, the Working Group had before it a note by the Executive Secretary on the development of approaches and practices for the sustainable use of biological resources; including tourism (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/4/11). After a general discussion on the Item a drafting group was established. The working group considered the draft recommendation and its Annex proposed by the drafting group and decided to recommend it to the SBSTTA plenary for its approval (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/4/L.4 and Add.1).

Annexed to the draft recommendation was an assessment of the inter-linkages between biological diversity and tourism that the drafting group had prepared on the basis of the note by the Executive Secretary and in the light of the comments made during the Working Group's discussion of the document.

The draft and its Annex were approved by SBSTTA as its recommendation IV/7.

SBSTTA in its recommendation IV/7 on 'Development of approaches and practices for the sustainable use of biological resources, including tourism' recalled decisions IV/15 and IV/16 adapted by COP4 and GA resolution 53/200(IYE) and 53/24(IYM), welcomed the outcome of

CSD7 on tourism, considered the importance of tourism as an example of sustainable use of biodiversity, understood the Executive Secretary examined linkage between tourism and sustainable use of biological diversity, in order to elucidate any principles, approaches or methodologies in the fifth meeting of SBSTTA.

IV/7 thereafter recommended that the conference of the parties;

- Adopt the assessment of the inter-linkages between biological diversity and tourism, as contained in the annex of recommendation, which includes: The role of tourism in the sustainable use of biological resources and the potential impacts on biological diversity of tourism.
- Accept the invitation to participate in the international work programme on sustainable tourism development under the CSD process with regard to biological diversity, in particular, with a view to contributing to international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas, including fragile mountain ecosystems;
- Decide to transmit the assessment of the inter-linkages between tourism and biological diversity to the CSD.
- Recommend to Parties, Governments, the tourism industry and relevant international organisations to consider this assessment as a basis for their policies, programmes and activities in the field of sustainable tourism and encourages them to pay particular attention to:
 - (i) The unique role of ecotourism and to develop clear strategies to develop sustainable ecotourism sectors which provides viable income-generating opportunities for indigenous and local communities;
 - (ii) The need to develop, with all the potential stakeholders, strategies and planning, based on an ecosystem approach and aiming at the correct balance between economic, social and environmental concerns, maximising opportunities for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity and the equitable sharing of benefits, recognition of traditional knowledge, and minimising risks to biological diversity;
 - (iii) The need for long-term monitoring and assessment, including the development and use of indicators to measure impacts of tourism on biological diversity and consequently to improve strategies and plans for tourism activities;
 - (iv) Bringing to the local economies tangible benefits, such as job creation and sharing of benefits arising from the sustainable use of biological diversity for tourism purposes.
 - (v) The need to develop sustainable tourism which is essential for the conservation and management of biological diversity and to meet the expectations of all stakeholders, while encouraging responsible behaviour on the part of tourists, of people working in tourism enterprises and of the local population;

(vi) Awareness-raising, information-sharing, education and training of tourism operators and sensitisation of tourists on biological diversity issues, which enhance the goal of the respect and the conservation of biological diversity and its sustainable use;

(vii) There is a need to implement a flexible mix of instruments, such as integrated planning, multi-stakeholder dialogue processes, zoning in land-use planning, environmental impact assessment, including strategic environmental impact assessment, standards, industry performance-recognition programmes, ecolabelling, codes of good practices, environmental management and audit systems, economic instruments, indicators and limits for the carrying capacity of the natural areas;

(viii) The importance of the involvement and the need for participation of indigenous and local communities and their interface with other sectors in the development and management of tourism, as well as their monitoring and assessment, including of cultural and spiritual impacts;

(ix) The importance of the understanding of the values and knowledge of use of the biological diversity by the indigenous and local communities and their opportunities for sustainable tourism and the promotion of local tourism;

- Endorse the work of SBSTTA on tourism as an example of sustainable use of biological diversity by exchanging experiences, knowledge and best practices through the clearing-house mechanism and encourage Parties, Governments and relevant organisations to continue to submit to the Executive Secretary case-studies in this regard;
- In order to contribute further to the international work programme on sustainable tourism development under CSD process with regard to biological diversity, in particular, to the review of its implementation, which will be carried out in 2002, request SBSTTA, through the Executive Secretary, to transmit its findings to CSD10.
- Encourage Parties, Governments, the tourism industry and relevant organisations to undertake activities that would be supportive of the preparations for both the International Year of Ecotourism and the International Year of Mountains, as well as activities of the International Coral Reef Initiative.

The Annex to the SBSTTA recommendation IV/7 'Assessment of the inter-linkages between tourism and biological diversity' is based and summarised of part II and III of the note of the Executive Secretariat (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/4/11), which was discussed previously.

Fifth Session of the Conference of the Parties (COP5)

As provided for in its programme of work (decision IV/16, annex II), COP considered at its fifth meeting "sustainable use, including tourism" as one of the three themes for in-depth discussion. In preparation for this, SBSTTA at its fourth meeting, considered the development of approaches and practices for the sustainable use of biological resources in the context of tourism and adopted recommendation IV/7(UNEP/CBD/COP/5/2). At its fifth meeting, SBSTTA considered

sustainable use as a cross-cutting issue and adopted recommendation V/12(UNEP/CBD/COP/5/3).COP5 Considered SBSTTA recommendation IV/7 as well as recommendation V/12 on sustainable use of the components of biological diversity 'identification of sectoral activities that could adopt biodiversity-friendly practices and technologies'.

On 16 May 2000, Working Group I of COP5 took up the item concurrently with agenda item 18.3 and considered two recommendation IV/7 and V/12 as well as oral presentation of secretariat. The working group I decided to form a drafting group to prepare two draft decisions based on the SBSTTA recommendations and reports as well as delegates points of views. The working group I reviewed two draft decisions prepared by drafting group and transmitted them to the plenary. The plenary of the Conference of the Parties took up draft decisions 1 and 2 on 22 May 2000 (UNEP/CBD/COP/5/L.3), on sustainable use as a cross-cutting issue and on biological diversity and tourism and adopted them as decisions V/24 and V/25, respectively.

Decision V/25 'Biological diversity and tourism' as a key development

COP5 in its decision V/25 on 'Biological diversity and tourism' recognised the increasing importance of tourism for social and economic development and its relation to preserving a healthy environment and enhancement of public awareness on biodiversity issues, its dependence on community involvement and participation and the need that communities benefit from sustainable tourism.

Para one of decision V/25 Endorses the assessment of the inter-linkages between biological diversity and tourism contained in the annex which includes:

- (a) The economic importance of tourism and its interrelationship with the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity;
- (b) The potential impacts of tourism on biological diversity, including economic, social and environmental impacts.

Para two accepts the invitation to participate in the international work programme on sustainable tourism development under the Commission on Sustainable Development process with regard to biological diversity, in particular, with a view to contributing to international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas, including fragile riparian and mountain ecosystems, bearing in mind the need for such guidelines to apply to activities both within and outside protected areas, and taking into account existing guidelines, and requests the Executive Secretary to prepare a proposal for the contribution on guidelines, for example by convening an international workshop.

Para three decides to transmit the assessment of the inter-linkages between tourism and biological diversity to the CSD, with the recommendation to the CSD to incorporate the assessment in the international work programme on sustainable tourism development.

Para four of the decision is as follows;

“Recommends to Parties, Governments, the tourism industry and relevant international organisations, in particular the World Tourism Organisation, to consider this assessment as a basis for their policies, programmes and activities in the field of sustainable tourism, and encourages them to pay particular attention to:

- (a) The unique role of ecotourism – that is, tourism that relies on the existence and maintenance of biological diversity and habitats - and the need to develop clear strategies to develop sustainable ecotourism sectors which provides for full and effective participation and viable income-generating opportunities for indigenous and local communities;
- (b) The need to develop, with all the potential stakeholders, strategies and plans, based on the ecosystem approach and aiming at a balance between economic, social, cultural and environmental concerns, while maximising opportunities for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity, the equitable sharing of benefits and the recognition of traditional knowledge, in accordance with Article 8(j) of the Convention, and seeking to minimise risks to biological diversity;
- (c) The need for long-term monitoring and assessment, including the development and use of indicators to measure impacts of tourism on biological diversity and consequently to improve strategies and plans for tourism activities;
- (d) Tangible benefits to the local economies, such as job creation and the sharing of benefits arising from the sustainable use of biological diversity for tourism purposes. In this regard, small and medium-sized enterprises can play a major role;
- (e) The need to develop sustainable tourism which is an important mechanism for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity, and to meet the expectations of all stakeholders, while encouraging responsible behaviour on the part of tourists and the tourist industry, tourism enterprises and the local population;
- (f) Awareness-raising, information-sharing, education and training of tourism operators and their staff and sensitisation of tourists on biological diversity issues and technical and capacity building at the local level, which enhance the goal of the respect and the conservation of biological diversity and its sustainable use;
- (g) The fact that in order to contribute to the sustainable use of biological diversity through tourism, there is a need to implement a flexible mix of instruments, such as integrated planning, multi-stakeholder dialogue that includes indigenous peoples, zoning in land-use planning, environmental impact assessment, strategic environmental assessment, standards, industry performance-recognition programmes, recognised accreditation bodies, ecolabelling, codes of good practice, environmental management and audit systems, economic instruments, indicators and limits regarding the carrying capacity of the natural areas;
- (h) The importance of the involvement and the need for the participation of indigenous and local communities and their interface with other sectors in the development and management of tourism, as well as their monitoring and assessment, including of cultural and spiritual impacts;

(i) The importance of the understanding of the values and knowledge of use of biological diversity held by the indigenous and local communities and the opportunities these offer for sustainable tourism and the support of local tourism’.

Then in Para five, the decision endorses the work of the SBSTTA on tourism as an example of sustainable use of biological diversity by exchanging experiences, knowledge and best practices through the clearing-house mechanism, and encourages Parties, Governments and relevant organisations to continue to submit to the Executive Secretary case-studies in this regard.

And in Para six requested SBSTTA to transmit its findings, through the Executive Secretary, to the CDS10 to contribute to the CSD process and review of implementation of work programme on sustainable tourism in 2002.

Finally in Para seven Encourages Parties, Governments, the tourism industry and relevant organisations to undertake activities including local capacity building, that would be supportive of the preparations for both the International Year of Ecotourism and the International Year of Mountains, as well as activities of the International Coral Reef Initiative, and, in particular:

- (a) Urges the tourism industry to work in partnership with all stakeholders and to commit to work within principles and guidelines for sustainable tourism development;
- (b) Encourages Parties and Governments to complement voluntary efforts by establishing enabling policies and legal frameworks for the effective implementation of sustainable tourism.

The content of the Annex remained similar to the Annex of Recommendation IV/15.

Decision V/24

At the same time COP5 considered sustainable use as a cross cutting issue and adopted decision V/24.

In decision V/24 the conference of the parties recognised that conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity is essential to the survival of species and also benefits humankind, the importance of integrating, the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity into sectoral or cross sectoral plans, programmes and policies, and national biodiversity strategies and action plans. The conference of the parties also Requests the Executive Secretary to invite organisations involved in sustainable-use initiatives, and other relevant organisations, to gather, compile and disseminate through the clearing-house mechanism and other means, case-studies on best practices and lessons learned from the use of biological diversity under the thematic areas of the Convention, drawing on the experience of Parties, Governments, relevant organisations, the private sector and indigenous and local communities; commends to the Executive Secretary the process being used to develop the ecosystem approach and requests him, together with relevant organisations, to adapt and immediately initiate that process for relevant work on sustainable use, requests the Executive Secretary to assemble, in collaboration with relevant organisations, drawing from an assessment of the mentioned case-studies, and the above process practical principles, operational guidelines and associated instruments, and guidance specific to sectors and

biomes, which would assist Parties and Governments to develop ways to achieve the sustainable use of biological diversity, within the framework of the ecosystem approach, and to present a progress report for consideration by SBSTTA prior to the COP6.

Para 5 of V/24, Invites Parties, Governments and relevant organisations to undertake appropriate actions to assist other Parties, especially developing countries and countries with economies in transition, to increase their capacity to implement sustainable-use practices, programmes and policies at regional, national and local levels, especially in pursuit of poverty alleviation. Appropriate actions may include:

(a) Workshops; (b) Assistance to Parties in the identification of sectors where priority action is required; (c) Assistance to Parties in the development of appropriate action plans; (d) Information dissemination and appropriate technology transfer under mutually agreed terms.

At national level invites Governments to identify indicators and incentive measures develop or explore mechanisms to involve the private sector and indigenous and local communities in initiatives on the sustainable use of biological diversity and benefiting from it.

Finally Para 7 recognising that sustainable use can be an effective tool in imbuing value to biodiversity, and invites Parties to identify areas for conservation that would benefit through the sustainable use of biological diversity and to communicate this information to the Executive Secretary.

Santo Domingo Workshop on Biological Diversity and Tourism

The International Workshop on Biological Diversity and Sustainable Tourism that was held in Heidelberg in March 1998 made a proposal for global guidelines on sustainable tourism and biodiversity. This proposal was submitted to and discussed by the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity at its fourth meeting, in 1998, and was further considered by (SBSTTA) at its fourth meeting later the same year.

At its fifth meeting, in May 2000, the Conference of the Parties adopted decision V/25, on biological diversity and tourism, in which it recognised that the scale and expansion of tourism has major implications for the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity, and for attainment of the Convention's objectives. In paragraph 2 of its decision V/25, COP5 accepted the invitation to participate in the international work programme on sustainable tourism development under CSD process with regard to biological diversity and "requested the Executive Secretary to prepare a proposal for the contribution on guidelines, for example by convening an international workshop". In response to that request, the Workshop on Biological Diversity and Tourism was convened in Santo Domingo from 4 to 7 June 2001. The purpose of the Workshop was to develop the draft international guidelines contemplated in decision V/25, paragraph 2. At its opening meeting, the Workshop decided to establish four working groups that would work in parallel on the basis of the framework provided in the note by the Executive Secretary entitled "Framework for the

development of guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development and biological diversity in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and mountain ecosystems” (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/2). A plenary meeting held at the end of each day to review the work of the working groups and the last day devoted to a plenary meeting to review the final report.

The draft international guidelines as annex I to the report of the workshop (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/4) was adopted at the 6th session of the Workshop, on 7 June 2001, on the basis of the draft report prepared and presented by the Rapporteur of the workshop (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/L.1).

The objectives of International Guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development is to assist Parties to the CBD, public authorities and stakeholders at all levels, to apply the provisions of the Convention to the sustainable development and management of tourism activities. They provide technical guidance to policy makers, decision makers and managers with responsibilities covering tourism and/or biodiversity, whether in national or local government, the private sector, indigenous and local communities, non governmental organisations or other organisations, on ways of working together with key stakeholders involved in tourism and biodiversity in order to contribute, inter alia, sustainable tourism in functioning ecosystems; fair and equitable sharing of benefits; information and capacity building; restoration of past damage. While the guidelines were developed focusing on vulnerable terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas, they are appropriate for tourism and biological diversity in all areas. They assist Governments, international institutions and development agencies for their policies, programmes and activities, and support their implementation, especially in developing countries and should encourage the exchange of experiences and lessons learned concerning their implementation.

In the preamble of the draft, the workshop on biological diversity and tourism highlighted that; mindful of decision V/25, adopted at Nairobi in May 2000, in which the Conference of the Parties, inter alia, decided to contribute to the international work programme on sustainable tourism development under CSD process with regard to biological diversity, bearing in mind the need for such guidelines to apply to activities both within and outside protected areas, and taking into account existing guidelines, considered the need to ensure that tourism development is consistent with CBD, sustainable use, ecosystem approach and preservation of indigenous knowledge and practices and the need for the benefits of tourism to be shared in a fair and equitable manner with indigenous and local communities, mindful of the Programme of Action for SIDS, Conscious of existing codes, guidelines and principles concerning sustainable tourism, including the Principles for the Implementation of Sustainable Tourism of the United Nations Environment Programme and Global Code of Ethics for Tourism of the World Tourism Organisation, and of the need to provide an integrated technical and practical approach to the development and management of sustainable tourism and biological diversity based on these existing principles, wish to develop a set of guidelines to ensure compatibility with all other instruments already agreed internationally,

that will provide technical guidance to policy makers, decision makers and managers with responsibilities in the fields of tourism and biodiversity.

The workshop agreed on the following draft guidelines.

Draft International Guidelines on Sustainable Tourism Development in Vulnerable Areas

The draft international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas, including fragile riparian and mountain ecosystems contain five parts (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/4). Part A introduces the broad scope of the guidelines. Part B sets out management process steps. Part C covers notification process and information requirements part D discusses public education and awareness raising and part F explores measures to strengthen capacity building.

The scope of international guidelines defined as follows; “the guidelines cover all forms and activities of tourism, which should all come under the framework of sustainable development, in all geographic regions. These include, but are not limited to, conventional mass tourism, ecotourism, nature- and culture-based tourism, cruise tourism, leisure and sports tourism”.

The management process, part B, comprises ten steps for management of sustainable tourism and biodiversity:

- (1) Baseline information and review;
- (2) Vision and goals;
- (3) Objectives;
- (4) Review of legislation and control measures;
- (5) Impact assessment;
- (6) Impact management;
- (7) Decision-making;
- (8) Implementation;
- (9) Monitoring;
- (10) Adaptive management.

Prior to management process steps, draft raises some institutional points of view as follows;

- The management process needs to be undertaken through a multi-stakeholder process. Governments will normally coordinate this process at national level. This process may also be undertaken at more local levels and at community level.
- It is important for Governments to consult with and involve all relevant stakeholders ensuring strong involvement of indigenous and local communities throughout the management process, including decision-making on use of biodiversity resources.
- Interdepartmental and inter-organisational structures and processes should be established to ensure coordination to guide policy development and implementation.

- There is a need to improve awareness and exchange of knowledge between those responsible for tourism and for nature conservation at a national, sub national and local level.
- An agreed common approach to the relationship between tourism and biological diversity should be included in all plans for both sectors. A consultative process, based on multi-stakeholder participation including government departments, the tourism sector, non-governmental organisations, indigenous and local communities, should be established to ensure ongoing and effective dialogue and information sharing and the stakeholder engagement and participation in the whole process.
- The establishment of partnerships should be encouraged.
- The institutional arrangements should provide for the involvement of all stakeholders at all levels and in all phases of the management process.
- International agencies should take these guidelines into account in their policies, programmes and activities, and support their implementation.
- Establishment of a funding mechanism for maintaining biodiversity and promoting sustainable tourism might be necessary.
- National biodiversity strategies and action plans (NBSAP) should include consideration of tourism issues, and tourism plans should likewise include full consideration of biodiversity issues.

The summary of section 1 of part B 'baseline information and review' is as follows;

- A minimum of baseline information, compatible with ecosystem approach, is needed to enable impact assessment and decision-making. Baseline information for tourism and biodiversity included;
 - (a) Current economic, social and environmental conditions at national and local level, including current and planned tourism development and activities and their overall positive and negative impacts, as well as development and activities in other sectors;
 - (b) Structure and trends within the tourism sector, tourism policy and tourism markets and trends, at national, regional and international level, including information based on market research as necessary;
 - (c) Environmental and biodiversity resources, including any special features and sites of particular importance, and identifying those resources that may be off-bounds to development due to their particular fragility;
 - (d) Culturally sensitive areas;
 - (e) Benefits from, and costs of, tourism to local communities;
 - (f) Information on damage done to the environment in the past;
 - (g) National biodiversity strategies, action plans and reports;
 - (h) National, sub national and local sustainable -development plans,
 - (i) Information for consideration as part of baseline information includes traditional knowledge as well as scientific information.

- The adequacy of the baseline information available will need to be reviewed for undertaking further research to fill the gaps.
- The need for contribution of all stakeholders including biodiversity managers and indigenous and local communities to this process as well as capacity building and training to assist in accessing, analysing and interpreting baseline information in order to be able involved in review of collected baseline information and its credibility and reliability.
- The need of visualised baseline information by maps or GIS.
- Collation and synthesis of information provided, by qualified team in tourism and in biodiversity issues, and in traditional knowledge and innovation systems.
- The baseline information gathering and review process should make full use of the clearing-house mechanism under CBD, as well as the World Network of Biosphere Reserves, World Heritage sites and Ramsar sites.
- To enable impact assessment and decision-making, the minimum of information needed should include:

(a) Site-specific aspects:

- (i) The various laws and regulations that may be applicable to the specific site, including overviews of existing laws at local, sub-national and national levels as well as existing uses and customs and traditions and relevant regional and international conventions or agreements and their status, and cross-boundary agreements or memoranda of understanding (MoUs);
- (ii) Identification of various stakeholders involved in or potentially affected by the proposed project and their role during its design, planning, construction and operation by details.

(b) Ecological aspects:

- (i) Detailed indication of the protected areas;
- (ii) Specifications on the ecosystems, habitats, species;
- (iii) Quantitative and qualitative information on the loss of habitats and species: main reasons, trends;
- (iv) Indexing of species;

(c) Development aspects:

- (i) Summary of the proposed project, why and by whom it is proposed, estimated outcomes and possible impacts (including impacts on the surrounding areas and transboundary impacts), and quantitative and qualitative data on these aspects;
- (ii) Description of the stages of development and the various structures and stakeholders that may be involved at each stage.

The summary of section 2 of part B 'vision and goals' of draft guidelines is as follows;

- An overall vision and goals for sustainable tourism development is important for the effective management of tourism and biodiversity as well as poverty alleviation. The vision and goals take into account national and regional sustainable development plans for economic and social development and for land-use, as well as the baseline information and review. It is

important to involve and meaningfully consult with all relevant stakeholders, especially indigenous and local communities.

- The main vision and goals are established to seek to maximise the positive benefits of tourism on biodiversity, ecosystems, economic and social development, and of biodiversity to tourism, while minimising negative social and environmental impacts from tourism, and can cover, inter alia:
 - (a) Maintenance of the structure and functioning of ecosystems;
 - (b) Sustainable tourism compatible with biodiversity conservation and sustainable use;
 - (c) Fair and equitable sharing of benefits of tourism activities, with emphasis on the specific needs of the indigenous and local communities concerned;
 - (d) Integration and interrelation with other developments or activities in the same area;
 - (e) Information and capacity building;
 - (f) Poverty alleviation;
 - (g) Protection of indigenous resources and of access to those resources;
 - (h) Diversification of economic activities beyond tourism to reduce dependency on tourism;
 - (i) Prevention of any lasting damage to biological diversity, ecosystems, and natural resources, and of social and cultural damage, and restoration of past damage;
 - (j) Ensuring the effective participation and involvement of representatives of indigenous and local communities in all aspects of the development, operation and monitoring of tourism activities;
 - (k) Zoning and control of tourism developments and activities, including licensing and overall targets for and limits to the scale of tourism.
- Indigenous and local communities should be benefited from tourism various effects including job creation, participation in tourism enterprises and projects, direct investment opportunities, and economic linkages to related sectors.
- The vision and goals will form the basis of national strategies or master plans for sustainable development of tourism in relation to biodiversity. Such plans should also incorporate consideration of biodiversity strategies and plans. In addition, biodiversity strategies and plans should include consideration of tourism issues.
- Governments normally coordinate this process at national level as well as local governments and communities at local and community levels. The vision and goals set out at local and community level should be considered at national level by governments.

The summary of section 3 'objectives' is as follows;

- The objectives focus on actions to implement specific elements of the overall vision and goals, and may include clear targets and the timetable for their achievements. Targets may be performance-based and process-based. It is important to involve and consult with all relevant stakeholders in the process for setting objectives.
- The objectives include details of areas where tourism development and activities are potential development options, including details of the type and scale of such development and

activities that would be acceptable and impact management measures that would be appropriate.

- Governments should provide national planning frameworks and planning guidance to ensure that investments, developments or activities are not undertaken outside areas set out in the objectives. Previous to any developments, analysis of market conditions and trends should be carried out to check the viability of the market.
- Governments may also consider:
 - (a) Measures to ensure that sites designated at international level, such as Ramsar or World Heritage Sites or Biosphere Reserves, are accorded appropriate legal recognition at national level;
 - (b) Establishing reserves based on the biosphere reserve concept and incorporating sustainable - development objectives, generating income and employment opportunities for local communities, and promoting appropriate product development;
 - (c) Strengthening the protected area network and encouraging their role as key locations for good practice in the management of sustainable tourism and biodiversity, taking into account the full range of protected area categories;
 - (d) Use of economic policy tools to encourage channelling of part of total tourism revenues towards supporting biodiversity, such as conservation of protected areas, and education and research programmes;
 - (e) Encouraging private sector to actively support biodiversity conservation for example by tourism enterprises establishing and supporting conservation areas.
- Governments will normally coordinate this process at national level as well as local governments and communities at local and community levels. The objectives for tourism and biodiversity set out at local and community level should be considered at national level by governments

The summary of section 4 of part B 'review of legislation and control measures' is:

- Legislation and appropriate regulatory mechanisms and tools, such as land-use planning, environmental assessment and building regulations and environmental, and culturally sustainable, standards for tourism, are essential for the effective implementation of any overall vision, goals, and objectives. A review of available legislation and control measures could consider examine their effectiveness, including enforcement, and addressing the gaps.
- The review of legislation and control measures could include assessment of the effectiveness of any provisions for land management, access, and/or ownership by communities, especially indigenous and local communities

Legislation and control measures considered could include measures for:

- (a) Effective enforcement of existing laws, including promoting the participation of all stakeholders ;

- (b) Approval and licensing process for tourism development and activities including franchising provisions, and requirements for deposit of bonds against potential damage to biodiversity by tourism developers and/or operators;
 - (c) Controlling the planning and siting of tourism facilities and infrastructures establishment of sustainable tourism strategies and policies;
 - (d) Management of tourism in relation to biodiversity and ecosystems, including vulnerable areas;
 - (e) Application of environmental assessment, including assessment of cumulative impacts and effects on biodiversity, to all proposed tourism developments, and as a tool to develop policies and measure their impacts;
 - (f) Setting national standards and/or criteria for tourism that are integrated with overall national or regional plans for sustainable development and national biodiversity strategies and action plans by environmental and cultural sustainability guidelines for new and existing tourism development (design, construction and operation) and environmental quality and land use criteria in and around touristic sites as well as development of criteria to limit the density of tourism development within the limits of acceptable change,
 - (g) Integrated land use management;
 - (h) Ensuring inter-linkages between tourism and crosscutting issues including agriculture, coastal zone management and water resources,
 - (i) Mechanisms to resolve any inconsistencies between policy objectives and/or legislation in a manner that takes into account the interests of all stakeholders;
 - (j) Application of economic instruments, including tiered user fees, bonds, taxes or levies, for the management of tourism and biodiversity;
 - (k) Creating incentives for sustainable tourism development in line with the provisions of the Convention on Biological Diversity and Agenda 21 through taxes or other relevant economic mechanisms, taking into account equity issues;
 - (l) Supporting private sector voluntary initiatives, such as certification schemes, where these address biodiversity conservation.
- Governments will normally coordinate this process at national level as well as local governments and communities at local and community levels. It is important to involve and consult with all relevant stakeholders.

The summary of section 5 of part B 'impact assessment' of draft guidelines is as follows;

- Impact assessment includes assessment of the environmental, social, cultural, economic effects, both positive and negative, of proposed developments.
- Governments are encouraged to develop mechanisms for impact assessment with the participation of all stakeholders, including nature conservation bodies, and to ensure effective implementation of existing mechanisms for the approval of the approach, content and scope of impact assessment. Such as establishment of steering committees with representatives of

all stakeholders, including nature conservation bodies, for approval of the approach and content of impact assessment.

- Comprehensive impact assessments and cumulative effects from multiple development activities of all types are important for all tourism developments and activities,
- Impact assessments may also be prepared for national and regional tourism strategies.
- At national level, governments and at local and community levels local governments and communities undertake assessment of impacts associated with the overall vision, goals and objectives for tourism and biodiversity.
- Proposers of tourism developments or activities are normally required to address the potential impacts of their proposals and to provide information on this through a notification process.
- Governments undertake evaluations of the adequacy of impact assessments submitted by proposers of tourism developments or activities. These evaluations will need to be undertaken by an appropriately qualified team in tourism and in biodiversity management and affected indigenous and local communities
- If the information provided is not sufficient, or the impact assessment inadequate, then further impact assessment studies may need to be undertaken by proposers or governments at the expenses of proposers for the consideration of decision-makers.
- Indigenous and local communities concerned should be fully involved in impact assessment, which should also recognise the contribution of traditional knowledge in the development, implementation and review of appropriate and effective methodologies and criteria to be used for impact assessment for tourism projects that affect their sacred sites or lands and waters occupied or used by indigenous and local communities
- Sufficient time should be allowed to ensure that all stakeholders are able to participate effectively in the decision-making process for any project using accessible and comprehensible information provided by the impact assessment.
- Impacts of tourism in relation to the environment and biological diversity may include:
 - (a) Use of land and resources for accommodation, tourism facilities and other infrastructure provision, including road networks, airports and seaports;
 - (b) Extraction and use of building materials including use of sand from beaches, reef limestone and wood;
 - (c) Damage to or destruction of ecosystems and habitats, including deforestation, draining of wetlands, and intensified or unsustainable use of land;
 - (d) Increased risk of erosion;
 - (e) Disturbance of wild species, disrupting normal behaviour and potentially affecting mortality and reproductive success;
 - (f) Alterations to habitats and ecosystems;
 - (g) Risk of fires;

- (h) Unsustainable consumption of vegetation and wildlife by tourists through picking of plants; or purchase of souvenirs manufactured from wildlife, in particular such endangered species as corals and turtle shells; or through unregulated hunting, shooting and fishing;
- (i) Increased risk of introduction of alien species
- (j) Intensive water demand from tourism;
- (k) Extraction of groundwater;
- (l) Deterioration in water quality (freshwater, coastal waters);
- (m) Eutrophication of habitats, especially aquatic habitats;
- (n) Introduction of pathogens;
- (o) Generation, handling and disposal of sewage and waste-water;
- (p) Chemical wastes, toxic substances and pollutants;
- (q) Solid waste (garbage or rubbish);
- (r) Contamination of land, freshwater and seawater resources;
- (s) Pollution and production of "greenhouse" gases, resulting from travel by air, road, rail, or sea, at local, national and global levels;
- (t) Noise.

- Socio-economic and cultural impacts related to tourism may include:

- (a) Influx of people and social degradation (e.g., local prostitution, drug abuse, etc.);
- (b) Impacts on children and youth;
- (c) Vulnerability to the changes in the flow of tourist arrivals, which may result in sudden loss of income, and jobs in times of downturn;
- (d) Impacts on local communities;
- (e) Impacts on cultural values;
- (f) Inter-generational conflicts and changed gender relationships;
- (g) Erosion of traditional practices lifestyles;
- (h) Loss of access by indigenous and local communities to their land and resources as well as sacred sites, which are integral to the maintenance of traditional knowledge systems and traditional lifestyles.

- The potential benefits of tourism may include:

- (a) Revenue creation for the maintenance of natural areas;
- (b) Contributions to economic development, for example, that may include:
 - (i) Funding the development of infrastructure and services,
 - (ii) Providing jobs,
 - (iii) Providing funds for development or maintenance of sustainable practices,
 - (iv) Providing alternative and supplementary ways for communities to receive revenue from biological diversity,
 - (v) Generating incomes.

- As a minimum, impact assessment should address the impacts, effects and information that are required to be covered in the notification process. It should be objective and transparent, and based on recognised standards. It should also include assessment of cultural sustainability.

The summary of section 6 of part B 'impact management' is as follows;

- Impact management is essential to avoid or minimise any potential damage to biodiversity conservation and sustainable use that tourism development or activities might cause. To be sustainable, tourism should be managed within the carrying capacity and limits of acceptable change for ecosystem and sites, and to ensure that tourism activities contribute to the conservation of biodiversity. Tourism should be restricted, and where necessary prevented, in ecologically sensitive areas.
- All stakeholders and especially governments need to consider the various impact management approaches that may be necessary in any given situation. Measures for the siting of tourism development and activities, including differentiation between the impacts of different types of tourism; and measures to control tourist flows in and around tourist destinations and key sites, to promote appropriate behaviour by tourists so as to minimise their impacts, and to establish limits to numbers of visitors and their impacts within carrying capacity / limits to acceptable change at any site.
- Qualitative as well as quantitative criteria can be used to assess limits of acceptable change and carrying capacity.
- Impact management in relation to transboundary ecosystems and migratory species, requires regional cooperation. Budget line and impact assessment implementing body should be determined.
- There is a need to identify those who will be responsible for implementing impact management and the resources that will be required for impact management.

Impact management for tourism development and activities can include the adoption of policies, good practices and lessons learned that cover, inter alia:

- (a) Controlling impacts of major tourist flows including excursions, cruise ships even for short visiting;
- (b) Reducing impacts of activities outside touristic areas on adjacent and other ecosystems of importance for tourism
- (c) Responsible use of natural resources
- (d) Reducing, minimising and preventing pollution and waste
- (e) Promoting eco-efficient facilities design and adopting the cleaner production approach;
- (f) Conserving plants, animals, ecosystems and protected areas;
- (g) Preventing the introduction of alien species as a result of tourism activities,
- (h) Conserving landscapes, cultural and natural heritage;
- (i) Respecting the integrity of local cultures and avoiding negative effects on social structures,
- (j) Involving, and cooperating with, local communities, including indigenous communities;

- (k) Using local products and skills, and providing local employment;
 - (l) Using environmentally sound technologies to reduce emissions of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases and ozone-depleting substances, as set out in international agreements;
 - (m) Promoting appropriate behaviour by tourists as an educational tool;
 - (n) Alignment of marketing strategies and messages with the principles of sustainable tourism;
 - (o) Contingency plans for handling accidents and emergencies imposed to the environment during construction or use of facilities
 - (p) Environmental and cultural sustainability audits and review of existing tourism and of the effectiveness with which impact management is being applied to existing tourism;
 - (q) Mitigation measures for existing impacts, and appropriate funding for these. Take into consideration the Polluter Pays Principle and compensation measures.
- Governments, in cooperation with all stakeholders assess the need for impact management in addition to any in process management measures.
 - The tourism industry by development of corporate policies on sustainable tourism and biodiversity could assist in promoting wide implementation of management measures for sustainable tourism and the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity

The summary of section 7 of part B 'decision-making' is as follows;

- Decisions will be made concerning approval or otherwise of;
- (a) National strategies and plans for tourism and biodiversity;
 - (b) Proposals for tourism development and activities at particular locations in relation to biodiversity;
 - (c) Adequacy of impact management measures in relation to anticipated impacts from tourism development and activities.
- Such decisions will be ultimately be taken by specific authorities designated by Governments. It is recognised that consultation and participation of all stakeholders is an important foundation of the decision-making process. Decision makers also should consider using multi-stakeholder processes as a tool.
 - The decision-making process should be transparent and accountable, and should apply the precautionary principle. Legal mechanisms should be put in place for notification and approval of tourism development proposals.
 - The proponent of proposals is required to provide the information set out in the notification process. This should apply equally to public-sector development and infrastructure projects as well as to private-sector development. Impact assessment should be a component of any decision-making process.
 - Measures should be taken to ensure full and timely disclosure of project information concerning tourism development proposals. Decision-making should include the prior informed consent of indigenous and affected local communities. A thorough consultation

process with the indigenous and local community, based on the availability of all relevant information, is needed as a basis for prior informed consent.

- Decisions may include a review of the adequacy of information available that could cover, baseline information, impact assessment, and information on the proposed tourism development or activity, its nature and size, the type(s) of tourism involved, and information on human settlements and communities that may be affected.
- In the absence of baseline information and overall vision decisions may be deferred pending sufficient information being obtained, and/or completion of overall plans / goals.
- In making a decision, conditions may be attached to any approvals that may be granted, Decision makers may also request further information from a proposer; defer a decision pending further baseline research by other agencies; or refuse a proposal.

The summary of section 8 of part B 'Implementation' is as follows;

- The full implementation of all conditions set out by decisions is needed. The developer is responsible for complying with these conditions; including conditions for decommissioning, and/or of any changes in circumstances and unforeseen environmental conditions and/or biodiversity issues
- Any revisions or changes to an approved project, including additions and/or variations of activities, must be approved by the designated authorities.
- Implementation plans should recognise that local communities and other relevant stakeholders may require assistance as actors in implementation of the plan,
- Local stakeholders should be given an ongoing opportunity to express their wishes and concerns to those managing tourism facilities and activities by providing them with accessible and comprehensible information regarding implementation.
- Governments and designated authorities will need to monitor compliance with, and enforce as necessary, conditions attached to any approval.
- To ensure availability of information on policies, programmes and projects, and their implementation, and to foster exchange of information.

The summary of section 9 'Monitoring' is as follows;

- The main areas of monitoring and surveillance in relation to management of tourism and biodiversity includes;

(a) Monitoring of implementation of approved tourism developments or activities, and compliance with any conditions attached when approval was granted, and taking appropriate actions in cases of non-compliance;

(b) Monitoring of the impacts of tourism activities on biodiversity and ecosystems, taking appropriate preventative actions as necessary;

(c) Monitoring the impacts of tourism on the surrounding population, especially indigenous and local communities;

(d) Monitoring of general tourism activities and trends such as tour operators, tourism facilities, and tourists flows in any area, including progress towards sustainable tourism.

- Developers may be required to report periodically to designated authorities and to the public, on compliance with conditions set out in approvals;
- Prior to commencement of any new tourism development or activities, an inclusive monitoring and reporting system should be put in place, providing for the involvement of indigenous and local communities at all stages including the resulting analysis and decision-making.
- Indicators to cover all aspects of management of biodiversity and sustainable tourism should be identified and selected all levels, and should include, but not be limited to, the following:

(a) Conservation of biodiversity;

(b) Generation of income from tourism (long-term and short-term);

(c) Proportion of tourism income retained in the local community;

(d) Effectiveness of multi-stakeholder processes for management of biodiversity and sustainable tourism;

(e) Effectiveness of impact management;

(f) Contribution of tourism to the well-being of the local population;

(g) Visitor impacts and visitor satisfaction.

- Monitoring and surveillance in relation to biodiversity impacts should include activities undertaken to ensure respect for endangered species under relevant international agreements, prevention of introduction of alien species as a result of tourism activities, compliance with national and international rules concerning access to genetic resources, and prevention of illegal and unauthorised removal of genetic resources.
- In relation to indigenous and local communities, monitoring and evaluation should include development and use of appropriate tools to monitor and evaluate tourism impacts on the economy of indigenous and local communities, particularly their food and health security, traditional knowledge, practices and customary livelihoods. They should be involved effectively in monitoring and evaluation.
- Certification schemes for tourism activities should include criteria regarding protection of traditional knowledge of indigenous and local communities, and should incorporate indicators of this.
- Long-term monitoring and assessment is necessary in relation to the impacts of tourism on biodiversity, and will need to take into account the timescale for ecosystem changes to become evident.
- Monitoring of general environmental and biodiversity conditions and trends, as well as tourism trends and impacts, can be undertaken by governments, including designated biodiversity managers. Management measures may need to be adjusted, where adverse

impacts on biodiversity and ecosystems are detected. The monitoring process needs to be multi-stakeholder and transparent.

The summary of section 10 of part B 'Adaptive management' is as follows;

- The ecosystem approach requires adaptive management to deal with the complex and dynamic nature of ecosystems and the absence of complete knowledge or understanding of their functioning. Ecosystem processes are often non-linear, and the outcome of such processes often shows time lags. The result is discontinuities, leading to surprise and uncertainty. Management must be adaptive in order to be able to respond to such uncertainties and contain elements of "learning-by-doing" or research feedback. Measures may need to be taken even when some cause-and-effect relationships are not yet fully established scientifically (decision V/6, annex, Para. 4).
- Ecosystem management must involve a learning process, which helps to adapt methodologies and practices. Adaptive management should also take the precautionary principle fully into account.
- Implementation programmes should be designed to adjust to the unexpected, rather than to act on the basis of a belief in certainties.
- Ecosystem management needs to recognise the diversity of social and cultural factors affecting natural-resource use and sustainability.
- There is a need for flexibility in policy-making and implementation. In this respect, it would be desirable to establish or strengthen capacities of Parties for monitoring
- Implementing adaptive management in relation to tourism and biodiversity will require the active cooperation of all stakeholders to rapid reaction on damaged or recovered sites. In all cases, maintenance of the balance between tourism and biodiversity will require close interaction between tourism managers and biodiversity managers, and appropriate frameworks for management and dialogue are likely to need to be established.
- There is a need to take action by all stakeholders to address any problems encountered and to keep on track towards agreed goals. This may include changes and additions to conditions set in the original approval,
- Where necessary, legal frameworks may need to be reviewed and amended to support adaptive management, taking into account experience gained.

Part C, Notification process and information requirements for notification, includes;

- Proposals for tourism development and activities at particular locations in relation to biodiversity, are to be submitted through the notification process.
- The notification process makes specific links to the management process steps for impact assessment and decision-making.
- Local, regional and national impacts should be taken into account in the notification and approval of projects.

- Proposers of tourism projects, including government agencies, should provide full and timely advance notice to all stakeholders who may be affected of proposed developments through a formal process of prior informed approval.
- Proposers of tourism development should notify relevant authorities of their plans.

Information to be provided as part of the notification could include:

- (a) Scale and types of tourism development or activities proposed, including a summary of the proposed project, why and by whom it is proposed, estimated outcomes and possible impacts, and a description of the stages of development and the various structures and stakeholders that may be involved at each stage;
- (b) Analysis of market for proposed tourism development or activities, based on market conditions and trends;
- (c) Geographical description and location of the site of tourism development or activities, the identity and any special features of the surrounding environments and biodiversity;
- (d) Nature and extent of human resource requirements and plans for their procurement;
- (e) Identification of various stakeholders involved in or potentially affected by the proposed project including stakeholders in governmental, non-governmental, and private sectors, and local communities along with details concerning their participation in and/or consultation on the proposed project during its design, planning, construction and operation;
- (f) The perceived roles of local stakeholders in the proposed development;
- (g) The various laws and regulations that may be applicable to the specific site, including overviews of existing laws at local, sub-national and national levels, of existing uses and customs, of relevant regional and international conventions or agreements and their status, and cross-boundary agreements or memoranda or understanding (MoUs);
- (h) The proximity of the site to human settlements and communities, sites used by people from those settlements and communities as part of their livelihoods and traditional activities, and heritage, cultural or sacred sites;
- (i) Any flora, fauna and ecosystems that could be affected by the tourism development or activities, including keystone, rare, endangered or endemic species;
- (j) Ecological aspects of the site and its surroundings, including indication of any protected areas; specifications on the ecosystems, habitats, and species; quantitative and qualitative information on the loss of habitats and species: main reasons, trends; and indexing of species;
- (k) Training and supervision of personnel carrying out the tourism development or activities;
- (l) Likelihood of impacts beyond the immediate area of the tourism development or activities, including transboundary impacts and effects on migratory species;
- (m) A description of current environmental and socio-economic conditions;
- (n) Expected changes to environmental and socio-economic conditions as a result of the tourism development or activities;

- (o) Proposed management measures to avoid or minimise adverse impacts from the tourism development or activities, including verification of their functioning;
- (p) Proposed measures for mitigation, decommissioning and compensation in the event of problems arising with the tourism development or activities;
- (q) Proposed measures to maximise the local benefits of the tourism development or activities on surrounding human settlements and communities, biodiversity and ecosystems, which may include, but are not limited to the using local products and skills; employment and restoration of biodiversity and ecosystems;
- (r) Relevant information from any previous tourism development or activities in the region, and on possible cumulative effects;
- (s) Relevant information from any previous tourism development or activities by the proposer.
 - Information provided through the notification process should be made public and public comment invited on all proposal for tourism developments and activities.
 - Categories of responses that Governments may wish to consider making in response to notification of proposals for, and requests for permission to undertake, tourism development, include, inter alia:
- (a) Approval without conditions;
- (b) Approval with conditions;
- (c) Request for further information from proposer;
- (d) Deferral pending further baseline research by other agencies;
- (e) Refusal of the proposal.
 - In the lack of information all decisions should be deferred pending the obtaining of sufficient information and/or completion of government plans/goals.

Part D 'Public education and awareness-raising' includes;

- Public education and awareness raising campaigns need to be addressed to both the professional sectors and the general public and informing them about the impacts of tourism on biological diversity, and good practices in this area. The role of private sector and operators are essential in this respect.
- Public awareness campaigns will need to be tailored for various audiences, including consumers of tourism, developers and tourism operators,
- Education and awareness-raising is required at all levels of government.
- Awareness should also be increased within and outside governments that vulnerable ecosystems and habitats are often located within lands and waters occupied or used by indigenous and local communities.
- Tourists should be encouraged to minimise any negative impacts and maximise positive impacts on biodiversity and local cultures associated with their consumption choices and behaviour, for example through codes of ethics.

- It is also important to raise awareness within the academic sector responsible for training and research on biological diversity and sustainable tourism
- Initiatives with regard to education and public awareness in the framework of the Convention on Biological Diversity, such as the Global Initiative on Biological Diversity Education and Public Awareness, should include references to the guidelines and to sustainable tourism.

Part E 'Capacity building' includes;

- Capacity building activities should aim to develop and strengthen the capacities of governments and all stakeholders,
- Capacity building activities can include strengthening human resources and institutional capacities; the transfer of know-how; the development of appropriate facilities; and training in relation to biological diversity and sustainable tourism issues, and in impact assessment and impact management techniques.
- Ensuring that local communities are equipped with the necessary decision-making abilities, skills and knowledge in advance of future tourist in-flows, as well as with relevant capacity and training regarding tourism services and environmental protection.
- Capacity building activities should include, but not be limited to, (a) assisting all stakeholders, including Governments, indigenous and local communities, in accessing, analysing and interpreting baseline information, undertaking impact assessments and evaluations, impact management, decision-making, monitoring and adaptive management; (b) development or strengthening of mechanisms for impact assessment with the participation of all stakeholders, including for the approval of the approach, content and scope of impact assessment; (c) establishment of multi-stakeholder processes involving government departments, tourism sector, non-governmental organisations, indigenous and local communities and other stakeholders; (d) training of tourism professions in conservation and biodiversity issues.
- The delivery of building and technical assistance at the local level could be linked to the development of plans for sustainable tourism and biodiversity management.
- Information exchange and collaboration regarding sustainable tourism implementation through networking and partnerships between all stakeholders affected by, or involved in tourism .the private sector should be encouraged.

Annex II to the report of Santo Domingo workshop (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/4) recommended that the draft guidelines should be submitted to the endorsement of the Subsidiary Body on Scientific,

Technical and Technological Advice of the Convention on Biological Diversity at its seventh session for onward submission to CDS10, consistent with decision V/25 of the Conference of the Parties and the document should also be transmitted to the Conference of the Parties to the Convention of Biological Diversity for consideration and formal endorsement at its sixth meeting, in April 2002.

In addition, the workshop formulated the following recommendations for future action.

- (a) Submission of the guidelines to the preparatory process for the World Summit on Ecotourism to be held in Quebec City, in May 2002;
- (b) Inclusion of reporting on sustainable use in national reports;
- (c) Demonstration of the guidelines through the implementation of pilot projects, including new and existing projects;
- (d) Availability of the guidelines in the form of a booklet in all UN languages;
- (e) The development of mechanisms for monitoring and assessing compliance;
- (f) Review and assessment of the guidelines periodically.

Participants in the workshop noted that, while the draft guidelines were developed in accordance with the mandate of decision V/25, which focuses on vulnerable ecosystems and habitats, they are appropriate for tourism and biological diversity in all areas. The workshop therefore recommended their application to all ecosystems, habitats and biodiversity, in general.

The workshop also in the same Annex claimed that; "The draft guidelines assist Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity, public authorities and stakeholders at all levels, to apply the provisions of the CBD to the sustainable development and management of tourism activities. They provide technical guidance to policymakers, decision makers and managers with responsibilities covering tourism and/or biodiversity, whether in national or local government, the private sector, indigenous and local communities, non-governmental organisations or other organisations, on ways of working together with key stakeholders involved in tourism and biodiversity in order to contribute to functioning ecosystems, sustainable tourism in functioning ecosystems, fair and equitable sharing of benefits, information and capacity building, restoration of past damage".

On 16 November 2001, the Subsidiary Body considered a draft recommendation on sustainable tourism submitted by the Chair (UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/7/L.6) and following an exchange of views and slide oral amendment, the Subsidiary Body adopted the draft recommendation, as recommendation VII/5.

The text of recommendation VII/5 is as follows;

"The Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice;

Recalling paragraph 6 of decision V/25 of the Conference of the Parties, which Requests the Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice to transmit its findings on sustainable tourism development through the Executive Secretary to the Commission on Sustainable Development at its tenth session,

Noting the results of the Workshop on Biological Diversity and Tourism held in Santo Domingo (UNEP/CBD/WS-Tourism/4 and UNEP/CBD/SBSTTA/7/5, annexes I and II) containing elements for guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and coastal ecosystems and habitats of major importance for biological diversity and protected areas, including fragile riparian and mountain ecosystems,

Requests the Executive Secretary:

- (a) To transmit the elements for guidelines on biological diversity and tourism contained in the annex to the report of the Workshop to the Commission on Sustainable Development serving as the Preparatory Committee for the World Summit on Sustainable Development for consideration at its second meeting, to be held in New York from 28 January to 8 February 2002;
- (b) To invite the Commission on Sustainable Development to report back to the Conference of the Parties at its sixth meeting on the results of its second meeting serving as the Preparatory Committee for the World Summit on Sustainable Development;
- (c) To submit the elements for guidelines to the preparatory process for the World Summit on Ecotourism to be held in Quebec City, in May 2002;
- (d) To present these elements for the consideration of The Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice at a meeting prior to the seventh meeting of the Conference of the Parties;
- (e) To organise an electronic consultation inviting further reactions to the text.”

COP6 in its Agenda item III ‘review of the implementation of the programme of work’ on cross-cutting issues-progress reports on implementation sub item 17.6 ‘ecosystem approaches, sustainable use and incentive measures’ took note, inter alia, the progress achieved on the implementation of its decision V/25. The secretariat informed working group I on its meeting 19, April 2002 that the draft international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development in vulnerable ecosystems is forwarded to the Commission on Sustainable Development at its first substantive session as preparatory committee for the World Summit on Sustainable Development, and submitted to the preparatory process for the World Summit on Ecotourism. The Secretariat also conducted an electronic consultation to gather further reactions to guideline elements from Parties. SBSTTA would consider the draft elements of the guidelines on sustainable tourism development, and the comments gathered through electronic consultation, at a meeting prior to the seventh Conference of the Parties (UNEP/CBD/COP/6/20).

On 16 April 2002, the Working Group I considered the draft’s chair, containing draft decisions on sustainable use, biological diversity and tourism and approved it for transmission to plenary. On 19 April 2002, the Conference of the Parties adopted draft decisions VI/14 on Biological diversity and Tourism.

The text of decision VI/14 is as follows;

“The Conference of the Parties,

Recognising that sustainable tourism, including tourism based on the natural environment (ecotourism), is a vital growing segment of the tourism industry and has a significant potential for realizing benefits in terms of the conservation of biological diversity and the sustainable use of its components,

Recognising the need to build public awareness and education on the benefits of sustainable tourism and to actively involve the private sector in the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity through sustainable tourism activities and developments;

Recognising the need to enhance the participation and involvement of indigenous and local communities in the planning and management of sustainable tourism activities and developments,

1. Welcomes the joint efforts of the Convention on Biological Diversity, the United Nations Environment Programme, the Commission on Sustainable Development and the World Tourism Organisation with regard to the international work programme on sustainable tourism development;

2. Takes note of the progress made in the development of the guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development and biological diversity in vulnerable terrestrial, marine and mountain ecosystems;

3. Requests the Executive Secretary:

(a) To transmit the draft guidelines on sustainable tourism development in vulnerable areas to the World Ecotourism Summit, which will take place in Quebec City from 19 to 22 May 2002;

(b) To review the current draft guidelines taking into account the results of the electronic consultation on the draft international guidelines for activities related to sustainable tourism development and the outcome of the World Ecotourism Summit, and to transmit the reviewed draft to the Subsidiary Body on Scientific Technical and Technological Advice for its consideration at a meeting prior to the seventh meeting of the Conference of the Parties for its consideration;

(c) To gather and compile existing case-studies on the implementation of the guidelines and make them available to the Subsidiary Body on Scientific, Technical and Technological Advice for its consideration at a meeting prior to the seventh meeting of the Conference of the Parties''.

Sustainable Tourism in UNCTAD

The United Nations' Conference on Trade and Development was established in 1964 as a permanent intergovernmental body. UNCTAD is the principal organ of the United Nations General Assembly dealing with trade, investment and development issues. In recent years, UNCTAD focused on developmental issues in developing countries as well as in countries in transition and Least Developed Countries (LDCs). UNCTAD also was invited by CSD to cooperate within its mandate, on a variety of issues related to sustainable development including sustainable tourism. UNCTAD was involved in three tracks with sustainable tourism in recent years.

Sustainable Tourism in the Context of LDCs

Since 1971, the Least Developed Countries (49 countries in 2000) have been officially designated by the UN as a category of countries suffering from structural handicaps in their socio-economic development and are regarded by the international community as deserving special treatment in support of their efforts to overcome these handicaps. The services sector plays an important role in the overall economy and particularly in income generation in LDCs. In 1998, services accounted

for 20 percent of the total exports of goods and services of the LDCs while only 0.5 percent of the world's exports of services originate from LDCs. The share of the LDCs in the world's exports of international tourism services was 0.6 percent in 1988 (with 2.4 million international tourist arrivals) and 0.8 percent in 1998 (5.1 million). Throughout the 1990s, tourist flows toward the LDCs increased more rapidly than tourist inflows to the rest of the world. The growth of international tourism receipts in LDCs was significant during the 1990s: total receipts more than doubled between 1992 and 1998 (from \$1 billion to \$2.2 billion). Tourism is the primary source of foreign exchange earnings in the 49 LDCs, outside of the petroleum industry, which is concentrated in only three LDCs (Angola, Yemen, and Equatorial Guinea). Some of the issues that LDCs facing in tourism development are their advantages and disadvantages with relation to geographical characteristics, tourism development and their vulnerabilities to external shocks, structural handicaps hindering tourism development in the LDCs and weaknesses related to the policy environment.(UNCTAD/LDC/Misc.64)

In the framework of the preparation of the third UN conference on the LDCs, UNCTAD arranged the High Level meeting on tourism and development in LDCs, held in Gran Canaria, Spain on 26-29 March 2001. The outcome of High level meeting included the Canary Island Declaration on Tourism in LDCs and Plan of Action for tourism development in LDCs (A/CONF.191/BP/4 of 5 April 2001).

Some of the main points of Canary Island Declaration are as follows; the delegations are;

- Aware of the valuable economic opportunities which international tourism has already brought to several LDCs; the catalytic impact tourism activities can have on the development process; and the contribution that tourism can make to the international dialogue between peoples and the promotion of peace;
- Convinced that, for a large majority of LDCs, tourism development can be an avenue to increase participation in the global economy, alleviate poverty, and achieve socio-economic progress for all the people of these countries;
- Noting the significant comparative advantages existing in most LDCs with regard to tourism development, and the insufficient appreciation of such advantages among decision makers in many LDCs and the international community;
- Noting the deficiencies in the necessary physical infrastructure, communications, and relevant skilled human resources and handicaps of LDCs to remove deficiencies and improve tourism development,
- Noting the absence of tourism, in the previous two Programmes of Action for the LDCs (1981, 1990), and the unique opportunity offered by the Third United Nations Conference on the LDCs to bring to the attention of the international community the benefits of tourism for the development of the LDCs,

The ministerial Declaration submit to the UNLDCs III a plan of action to support tourism development in LDCs, based on the following four areas;

- (a) Strengthening the capacities of LDCs Governments to develop sustainable and competitive tourism;
- (b) Developing entrepreneurial capacities and managerial skills to improve the competitiveness of tourism products and services;
- (c) Promoting synergies between transport and tourism policies, with particular reference to air transport;
- (d) Increasing national capacities to use relevant elements of the multilateral trade framework; and urged the international community to give favourable consideration to the four areas of cooperation.

Para 3 of Declaration ask the Intergovernmental Preparatory Committee of the Third United Nations

Conference on the Least Developed Countries at its third session (New-York, 2-6 April 2001) to insert in the draft Programme of Action for the Least Developed Countries for the 2001-2010 decade the following section as part of Commitment 4:

“Sustainable tourism

International tourism is one of the few economic sectors through which LDCs have managed to increase their participation in the global economy. It can be an engine of employment creation, poverty alleviation, reduction of gender inequality, and protection of the natural and cultural heritage. It contributes to reducing economic instability and vulnerability. These facts principally result from the existence, in most LDCs, of significant comparative advantages that are conducive to viable tourism specialization. Yet, tourism is not among priority sectors for socio-economic development in many LDCs.

Action by LDCs:

- (a) Promote a climate conducive to tourism, based on peace, stability and security;
- (b) Make tourism a priority sector in national development policies, and allow effective participation of national tourism authorities in the decision-making process;
- (c) Determine the most desirable tourism product specialization in order to guide potential investors in their decisions;
- (d) Promote domestic and foreign investment in the tourism industry and related sectors;
- (e) Take measures to facilitate local tourism operators' access to and participation in global information and distribution systems;
- (f) Formulate strategies to achieve the most beneficial air transport-tourism linkage;
- (g) Use the multilateral trade framework to translate tourism development objectives into trade policy measures under the General Agreement on Trade in Services of the World Trade Organisation.

Action by development partners:

- (a) Strengthen measures to encourage investment in the tourism industry and enterprise development in the wider tourism economy, in particular, through increased access to financial facilities and the development of human resources;
- (b) Provide assistance to enhance the economic efficiency, competitiveness and sustainability of tourism operations, in particular, through access to and participation in global distribution systems, and use of appropriate technology;
- (c) Assist in the formulation and implementation of policies and strategies to promote synergy between transport and tourism, with particular reference to air transport;
- (d) Provide financial and technical assistance to the strengthening of national capacities to effectively participate and negotiate in the relevant segments of the multilateral trade framework.”

Canary Island Plan of Action for tourism development in LDCs as other part of the outcome of High Level meeting contains four areas of action.

First area is strengthening of capacities of LDCs Governments to develop sustainable and competitive tourism. The main issues to be addressed and the activities under these issues are as follows;

A) Support to the implementation of master plans for the development of sustainable tourism in LDCs by;

1. Definition of national sustainable tourism strategies in the LDCs.
2. Mobilizing foreign investment funds.
3. Setting up investment fund warranties for investors.
4. Development and maintenance of tourism infrastructure.
5. Management of the territory, landscape, cultural heritage, environment and biodiversity.
6. Implementation of training programmes to upgrade skills at all levels and segments of the tourism sector.
7. Regulatory framework for tourism.
8. Policy framework for tourism, including incentives and other supporting mechanisms to promote national and foreign investment.
9. Integration of local communities.
10. Preservation of natural systems (land and marine) and sustainable management of natural resources and emissions (water, energy, food supply...).
11. Promotion of a proper national image of LDCs' tourism destinations among potential visitors and investors.
12. Managing the impact of crisis.
13. Development and implementation of the satellite account for tourism as a means of managing leakages.
14. Strengthening linkages of tourism with other sectors, including agriculture and manufacturing, to reduce the “leakages” gradually.
15. Establishment of information systems and an information network among LDCs.

16. Establishment of an observatory of tourism for LDCs to monitor the progress and the impact in the global sustainable development in each country.

B) Support to the tourism professional sector in LDCs in terms of competitiveness, profitability, technological advancement and qualification of skills by;

1. Plan of action to incorporate tourism professionals in the market in competitive conditions.
2. Reducing transaction costs.
3. Special programmes to support the micro, small and medium enterprises in the tourism sector of LDCs.
4. Creation of training centres for professionals of tourism.

C) Support to LDC tourism destinations and the professional sector in terms of quality tourism products, standards and assurance by;

1. Preparation of national guidelines and manuals to implement quality criteria in tourism development by destinations, activities, products and services.
2. Definition, design and establishment of quality levels for LDCs' tourism products.
3. Training programmes to build-up capacities of tourism officials and professionals to apply the quality approach to tourism development with a view to benchmarking capabilities and communication with quality assurance bodies.

In the second area, "Developing entrepreneurial capacities and managerial skills to improve the competitiveness of tourism products and services", the main issues to be addressed and the actions to be undertaken are as follows;

A) Insufficient definition of the most desirable product specialization, considering the evolving comparative advantages and competitive position of the LDCs in the global tourism market;

1. Research to identify the most desirable product specialization in the light of the countries' assets: analysis of evolving comparative advantages and competitiveness in a regional and international perspective.

B) Insufficient investment in the tourism industry by;

1. Support the formulation and implementation of national policies to encourage foreign investment in tourism in the light of findings on the most desirable product specialization (incentives, promotion abroad, etc.).
2. Support the formulation and implementation of national policies to encourage domestic investment in the tourism industry (training and assistance in project analysis and preparation).

C) Insufficient entrepreneurship in the sectors expected to supply vital goods and services to the tourism industry by;

1. Support to the formulation of policies to encourage enterprise development in the sectors most directly linked with the tourism industry (e.g.: food and land transport sectors).

D) Insufficient access to funds for local tourism projects by;

1. Develop a proposal to create an international (or several regional) venture capital fund(s) for tourism projects in the LDCs.

2. Formulate and implement options for special credit lines for tourism projects in commercial banks, development banks, or suppliers of micro-credit.

E) Insufficient awareness or understanding of the benefits expected from tourism development by;

1. Develop practical tools to increase awareness, among target groups, of the benefits of tourism for national development: - publications, - sensitisation events (including schools).

In the third area, "Promoting synergies between transport and tourism policies, with particular reference to air transports", the main issues to be addressed and the activities under mentioned issues are as follows;

A) Air access to LDCs by;

1. Strategy to achieve policy coherence of air transport and tourism.

B) Beneficial linkages between ATS and tourism by;

1. Regional and sub regional hubs in terms of air transport link with tourism in LDCs.

2. Support to open skies policies among LDCs and within regional agreements.

C) Safety and security requirements in air transport by;

1. Evaluation of equipment needs and mobilisation of finance.

2. Evaluation of training needs.

3. Creation of regional LDCs training centres for safety and security for air transport.

D) Access to CRS and GDS by;

1. Evaluation of problems and barriers facing LDCs in regard to CRS and GDS.

2. Better use of equipment of GDS and adequate training for tourism operators of LDCs.

In the fourth area, "Increasing national capacities to negotiate and use relevant elements of the multilateral trade framework and integration and cooperation schemes", the main issues to be addressed and activities to be undertaken are as follows;

A).Sensitise tourism stakeholders on the WTO and GATS, and other relevant international trade agreements and their treatment of tourism services by;

1. National and regional workshops.

2. Training of trainers in the tourism industry and support for them in providing in-country teaching programmes on GATS and tourism.

3. Develop and teach a curriculum on multilateral trade agreements within national and regional tourism training institutes.

4. Awareness building advice by UNCTAD, the World Trade Organisation and the World Tourism Organisation.

B) Exchange of experiences among tourism industry representatives on their use of the GATS and other international trade agreements affecting tourism services by;

1. Papers on country experiences.

2. Regional and interregional workshops.

C) Strengthen the analytical and technical preparedness of tourism stakeholders in identifying their interests and translating them into trade negotiation objectives by;

1. Technical papers on negotiation objectives.
 2. National workshops on trade negotiation objectives.
 3. National, regional and/or interregional workshops on state of play in the GATS negotiations.
- D) Strengthen the link between tourism stakeholders on the one hand, and trade negotiators and national government officials on the other hand regarding negotiations and use of GATS in respect of tourism by;
1. National and regional workshops involving tourism industry representatives and Geneva-based trade negotiators.
 2. Sensitisation tours of tourism representatives to Geneva to participate in GATS and tourism services negotiations.
- E) Assist LDCs in the process of acceding to the WTO/OMC in preparing commitments on tourism services which promote their development objectives by;
1. Analytical papers on tourism services.
 2. National workshops.
 3. Advice from UNCTAD, the World Trade Organisation and the World Tourism Organisation.
- F) Integrate tourism policies and plans into national development policies and plans, and into national trade negotiation objectives and machinery by;
1. Analytical studies on policies.
 2. National workshops.
 3. National tourism policies, plans and legislations.
- G) Facilitation of the movement of tourism professionals among LDCs by;
- 1 Study on the impact of the liberalisation of the Movement of professionals of tourism among LDCs.
 2. Formulation of regional agreements.
- H) Facilitation of the movements of tourists in the framework of regional agreements and cooperation schemes by;
1. Comparative study and recommendations on most suitable conditions to facilitate the movement of tourists including visas.
- I) Measures to promote ethical standards in tourism destinations of LDCs by;
1. Prepare an annex to implement the OMT/WTO Global Code of Ethics for Tourism in LDCs.
 2. Exchange of experiences among LDCs on the implementation of the Global Code of Ethics for Tourism.
- J) Tourism promotion taking advantage of regional agreements by;
1. Programme of action for joint promotion of tourism destinations of LDCs (international fairs, websites, and internet).
- The intergovernmental preparatory committee for the third UNLDCs in the report of its third session in Para 12 of its first part of report takes note of the outcome of the High-level Meeting on Tourism in the LDCs and reported;

“The representative of Spain, presenting the outcome of the High-level Meeting on Tourism in the Least Developed Countries, held in Gran Canaria from 26 to 29 March 2001, said that the meeting had been attended by more than 30 LDCs, as well as a number of other countries and international organisations. It had drawn attention to the strong operative advantages that LDCs had in the field of tourism and the potential they had to increase their share of world tourism. The tourism sector was growing strongly worldwide and could contribute significantly to the economic growth of LDCs. At the same time, it had been emphasised that peace, security and stability were essential preconditions for tourism development. The last two Programmes of Action had not referred to tourism in a substantive manner, and to remedy that the meeting had recommended that, in the new Programme of Action, commitment 4 should include a new section on tourism. It should stress the short, medium and long-term contribution that tourism could make to LDCs’ development, particularly to employment creation, poverty alleviation, reduction of gender inequality, protection of each country’s unique natural and cultural heritage, and reduction of economic instability and vulnerability”. (A/CONF.191/5)

Commitment four included sustainable tourism in the final text of programme of action for LDCs, The third United Nations Conference on the Least Developed Countries in Brussels on 20 May 2001 approved the text as reflected in part “ Building productive capacities to make globalisation work for LDCs” section H of A/CONF.191/11, Para 63-64 as follows;

“63. International tourism is one of the few economic sectors through which LDCs have managed to increase their participation in the global economy. It can be an engine of employment creation, poverty eradication, ensuring gender equality, and protection of the natural and cultural heritage. These facts principally result from the existence, in most LDCs, of significant comparative advantages that are conducive to viable tourism specialization. Yet, tourism is not among priority sectors for socio-economic development in many LDCs.

64. Actions by LDCs and the development partners will be along the following lines:

(i) Actions by LDCs

- (a) Promoting a climate conducive to tourism;
- (b) Recognising the potential of the tourism sector in national development strategies, and ensuring effective participation of domestic tourism authorities in the national decision-making process;
- (c) Determining the most desirable tourism product specialization in order to guide potential investors in their decisions;
- (d) Promoting domestic and foreign investment in the tourism industry and related sectors with full respect for natural and cultural heritage;
- (e) Taking measures to facilitate local tourism operators’ access to and participation in global information and distribution systems;
- (f) Formulating strategies to achieve the most beneficial linkages between tourism and land, sea and, particularly, air transport.

(ii) Action by development partners

- (a) Supporting LDCs' efforts to encourage investment in the tourism industry and enterprise development in the wider tourism economy, in particular through increased access to finance and the development of local human resources;
- (b) Assisting LDCs in their efforts to enhance their economic efficiency, competitiveness and the sustainability of tourism operations, in particular by assisting their efforts to access and participate in global distribution systems and use appropriate technology;
- (c) Assisting LDCs in their efforts to promote synergy between transport and tourism, with particular reference to air transport;
- (d) Considering providing financial, technical and/or other forms of assistance to support LDCs' efforts to strengthen their national capacities in the field of tourism."

E-tourism in the Commission on Enterprise, Business Facilitation and Development of UNCTAD

Tourism is an information-intensive industry in which electronic commerce is expected to play a significant role. It is a sector in which a significant number of developing countries enjoy a competitive advantage. The main actors in the tourism industry including governments, tour operators, hotels, airlines and other transport operators, and tourists or consumers have a stake in the development of the electronic market. They are expected to be affected in different ways by the changes brought about by electronic commerce.

In February 2000, the UNCTAD Conference, at its tenth session, adopted the UNCTAD Plan of Action (TD/386). In paragraph 148, the Plan calls upon UNCTAD "to continue to assist developing countries and countries in transition in building up a service infrastructure in the areas of customs, transport, banking, insurance and tourism, with a view to improving their competitiveness in the international marketplace." Also in paragraphs 156 and 157, relating to electronic commerce, it calls on UNCTAD to "contribute to informing international debates on the developmental impact of global information networks addressing, in particular, developing countries' specific problems, such as information technology, infrastructure constraints and build-up of human resources capacity". The Executive session of the Trade and Development Board decided to convene an expert meeting on "Electronic Commerce and Tourism" in September 2000. UNCTAD, in its background report (TD/B/COM.3/EM.9/2 of 25 July 2000) to the expert meeting on e-commerce and tourism, examines the major issues that will affect tourism as a result of the development of electronic commerce. It focuses in particular on the expected impact of e-commerce on tourism in developing countries. It looks at how business-to-business and business-to-consumer electronic commerce can improve customer service, reduce costs and promote market expansion. It identifies the constraints that are likely to be encountered and the opportunities available. It suggests strategies that may be adopted to enable developing countries to make maximum gains from the application of e-commerce in tourism. In the tourism development

aspect, the report concludes that the period 1992-1996 has been one in which those developing countries which were already well established tourist destinations have been quite successful in developing their export revenues from tourism. After 1996 the e-commerce affected major area of industry and services. Therefore, e-tourism presented an opportunity for developing countries to improve their relative position in the international market, provided they empowered themselves to approach their customers and business partners and technology of e-commerce. At the same time, the hard reality in the tourism industry today is "that if you are not on-line, you are not on sale." Destinations and businesses eager to have an impact on the marketplace must be on-line. Small or remote destinations and products with well-developed and innovative web sites can now have "equal access" to international markets.

In accordance with the decision of the Trade and Development Board at its twenty-fourth session, on 12 May 2000 (Report of the Trade and Development Board on its 24th session (TD/B/EX (24)/3), paragraph 46 and annex III), the Expert Meeting on Electronic Commerce and Tourism was held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, from 18 to 20 September 2000. The main points of the Chairperson's summary of the experts' informal discussion are as follows (TD/B/COM.3/EM.9/3 chapter II);

- The tourism industry is in a very dynamic phase of development as more people will travel more frequently to more destinations, and will want more diverse travel experiences. Projections for 2003 indicate a 2½-fold increase in on-line bookings compared with the year 2000.
- The main theme of the discussions at the Expert Meeting was the opportunities afforded to the tourism sector by the new information technologies, as well as the inherent difficulties facing business operators. The informal discussions focused mainly on three topics: the experience of tourism operators that use the Internet in developing countries; the role of destination marketing organisations; and information and communication technology. Under each topic, strategic options for developing countries were set out and discussed by the experts.
- On the first topic 'e-business strategy of companies' the summary main points are; The main obstacles encountered by companies were the very high cost of technology and the Internet connection, the limitation to have access the internet, hard to convince businesses of the usefulness of adopting the Internet and Intranet as a business medium at present costs, the costs of maintaining the websites were high to keep up with the fast-changing technology, to attain a high level of visual appeal through an attractive graphics environment and to manage replies to e-mail queries, difficulty in marketing the website, lack of means of on-line payment under local regulations in many developing countries. The key factors for success and lessons learned by enterprises were to choose scalable technology for publishing local content to the right audience through the most appropriate technological means, ownership of

the inventory for the pre-buying of hotel rooms and other tourism services, investing in human capital through out the capacity building in the wider sense.

- The second topic was the role of destination marketing organisations (DMOs).the main points are; DMOs' traditional area of competence was the promotion of their destination by developing public relations activities, building credibility and trust among consumers and serving as an on-line tourism information centre, DMOs and service providers in developing countries could use the Internet to increase their share of tourism revenues by cutting out intermediaries, increased revenue retention allow DMOs not only to act as an operational tool for information and reservation but also to "manage" their destinations, DMOs should act as catalysts in developing a partnership among all parties in the tourism supply chain with the common goal of increasing revenue retention and preserving the long-term quality of the destination, DMOs could develop consistency across e-commerce platforms used by tourism producers and establishing good links with key tourism portals, search engines and gateways, promote awareness of technical developments relevant for e-tourism service providers; provide training for their affiliates and negotiate with banks and financial operators in order to reduce banking costs for on-line payments, DMOs could also develop special-interest tourism, for example eco-tourism and cultural tourism, that could be particularly well suited for marketing on the Web, It would be crucial for developing countries to increase their presence on the Web and to develop physical tourist attractions and support services, such as banking, insurance, transport and customs, DMOs needed to be institutionally established and provided with the necessary human, financial and logistical resources, the assistance of international agencies such UNCTAD and WTO for capacity building and develop an international web portal for DMOs, so as to increase their visibility on the Internet.
- The third topic was information and communication technology, and how it can enable e-commerce in the tourism sector. Some ideas in this part are: adequate and up-to-date information and communication technology provides the basic infrastructure for electronic commerce in tourism, the possible consequences for the tourism industry of new technological developments such as the proposed new top-level domain name ".geo", creation of Internet kiosks and Multipurpose Community Telecentres (MCTs), to increase public access to the Internet in developing countries, removal of anti-competitive practices in the tourism industry including the selective presentation of seating and room availability in GDSs, high charges for access to computer reservation systems, entry barriers for new competitors on key routes, mergers of tour operators, predatory pricing and exclusivity clauses in contracts for hotel rooms.
- The summary suggested the following points to be undertaken by UNCTAD;
 - Developing analysis of concrete benefits for developing countries provided by e-tourism and promoting awareness of ICT in developing countries;

- Broadening the understanding of policy actions required in the context of the tourism industry and for the adoption of a general policy to foster e-commerce readiness in developing countries;
- Preparing a training package for travel operators from developing countries to enable them to migrate from traditional business to e-business, in cooperation with training institutions and other international organisations;
- Supporting DMOs from developing countries in becoming better able to manage their respective destinations on a long-term basis, by encouraging exchanges of experiences among DMOs from various regions;
- Promoting the visibility of tourism portals in developing countries, possibly by establishing a global, central tourism portal for the benefit of developing countries;
- Convening and Expert Meeting on e-payments and the security of transactions over the Internet, especially as these relate to electronic signatures;

Exploring ways and means for UNCTAD to act as an incubator for e-commerce and small and medium-sized e-tourism enterprises

The Latin American countries presented a suggestion paper to the meeting. Some of the main points of the paper are as follows (TD/B/COM.3/EM.9/3 Annex I);

- (a) We suggest that multilateral organisations such as UNCTAD and the WTO should stimulate technological, financial and academic transfers to developing countries so as to ensure that small- and medium-sized enterprises, which are the most numerous in our economies, may benefit from the opportunities offered by this new economic order;
- (b) We suggest that those multilateral organisations and others with similar aims should convince and invite our countries' Governments to recognise the importance of these developments and should give priority to, and set aside in their official policies, the budgetary and logistic means required to implement these solutions;
- (c) We request those organisations (UNCTAD, WTO and others) to provide the necessary technical, logistic and academic support to implement a South American Internet portal, such as to convey the wealth of natural resources with which we have been endowed, our culture, our historical and architectural heritage, and our natural attractions and modern achievements, as a basis for the development of alternative tourism, which is the subject of growing demand by countries with stronger economies;
- (d) In our turn we undertake to develop sustainable and sustained tourism based on the principles of quality, service, security and sound management.

Expert meeting at its closing session adopted the recommendation paper (TD/B/COM.3/30 part I). The experts expressed their views on policies and strategies to be adopted by developing countries in order to increase their participation in electronic commerce in tourism and on the possible role of UNCTAD and other international organisations in realizing the development benefits of those policies and strategies. The following is a summary of some of recommendations;

- Ensure that e-tourism is considered alongside an appropriate multisectoral strategy for improved Internet access and telecommunications infrastructure,
- Liberalize telecommunications and Internet services in order to attract new investment, reduce prices and improve the quality of service.
- Review available research on e-commerce in tourism
- Create and continually update local content on the Internet in local languages and languages of the most important tourism consumers
- Implement appropriate mechanisms in developing countries for the safer use of electronic payments in tourism transactions at the local, regional and global levels.
- Promote tourism through out partnership of all stakeholders in social, cultural, environmental and economical sustainable manners.
- Integrate new e-tourism channels into traditional and non-traditional distribution channels and foster the development of special-interest tourism websites, for example for eco-tourism and cultural tourism.
- Develop a national vision, plans and policy guidelines on e-tourism
- Establish appropriate laws and regulations and service standards
- Call upon Governments to make joint efforts to ascertain whether the international e-tourism market is working in a way that does not promote unfair or anti-competitive practices which constitute barriers to the tourist industry for developing countries.
- DMOs at all levels should be strengthened and play a broader role in decision-making process as well as e-tourism innovation
- Build and enhance destination brand image in order to improve consumer awareness and confidence, and reflect this in any web strategy.
- Develop capacity building through training and basic education in relevant fields,
- Governments and donor agencies should stimulate activities in e-commerce through grants, tax incentives, special credit lines and other seed funding arrangements, and empower DMOs with technology and financial resources.
- On-line transactions must be combined with the development of physical tourist attractions, satisfactory product fulfilment and supply of support services,
- Traditional travel agents and other intermediaries should transform themselves by adopting new information technologies and enhancing their expertise and creativity,

The meeting recommended UNCTAD, in cooperation with other appropriate bodies, to;

- Analyse the effect that tourism-related e-commerce has had or will have on development, and development policies. The objectives of this analysis should include identification of positive, negative or indifferent effects, as well as their causes, and formulation of recommendations for maximising the development benefits of e commerce.

- Disseminate information to developing countries on approaches and elements of government policies on e-tourism, taking into account successful experiences in the developing and developed countries.
- Give priority attention and support to the development of sustainable e-tourism in developing countries.
- Stimulate exchanges of experiences among Governments and tourism enterprises of developing countries
- Signpost and carry out case studies and analysis of e-commerce in tourism,
- Encourage the adoption of open data standards, e-signatures and new Internet developments
- Promote exchanges on how to increase the effectiveness of DMOs.
- Suggest possible arrangements for UNCTAD to act as an incubator for e-commerce and small and medium-sized e-tourism enterprises through appropriate United Nations programmes.
- Examine ways to promote the visibility of tourism portals in developing countries and possible arrangements for the establishment of a global, central tourism portal for the benefit of developing countries.
- Assist in the promotion of partnerships between DMOs in developing countries on the one hand, and intermediaries and origin country DMOs on the other hand, and encourage joint marketing within DMOs in developing countries.
- Develop capacity building through training and basic education in relevant fields, and conduct awareness campaigns about e-tourism.

Developing Countries' Tourism in the Commission on Trade in Goods and Services, and Commodities of UNCTAD

International trade in tourism services creates additional employment, generates added-value and tax revenue, and attracts investment and foreign currency. The dynamism of tourism is expected to continue outpacing economic growth in the future, driven by globalisation, economic expansion in developing countries and in countries in transition, structural and demographic change in developed countries. Traditionally, trade in tourism services has been concentrated in the developed countries, but the share of developing countries in total world tourism has risen slowly to almost one-third of the total. Several developing countries have succeeded in expanding their tourism services exports by adopting clear tourism development policies, investing heavily in the sector and cooperating at the regional and sub regional levels. Tourism is the only major sector in international trade in services in which developing countries have consistently had surpluses. Their positive balance in the travel account improved steadily from US\$ 6 billion in 1980 to US\$ 62.2 billion in 1996. It more than doubled during the second half of the 1980s, driven by the growth of inbound tourism to countries in Asia and the Pacific and in Africa. Such progress is due to many factors, including massive targeted investment, promotion policies and marketing efforts. The overall travel account balance of developed countries as a whole has been in decline since

1980, falling to US\$ 19.2 billion in 1996. However, despite the impressive overall expansion of their exports, developing countries account for less than 30 per cent of world tourism receipts. (The world tourism market trends, 1997, WTO and panorama 2020, 1998, WTO)

The Commission on Trade in Goods and Services, and Commodities, at its second session (17-21 November 1997), decided to convene an expert meeting on "Strengthening the capacity for expanding the tourism sector in developing countries, with particular focus on tour operators, travel agencies and other suppliers". UNCTAD secretariat in its background note (TD/B/COM.1/EM.6/2) to the expert meeting highlighted the following issues as crucial ingredients in future strategic planning to strengthen the capacity in tourism;

Many suppliers of tourism services in developing countries (hotels, tourist guides, land-transport providers) are hampered by their weak bargaining position and their lack of negotiating skills. A series of measures and policies can be adopted by the Governments of developing countries and private-sector with the aim of diversifying the supply of tourism services, encouraging alliances among private agents to reduce costs and increase efficiency and bargaining power, improving their quality/cost ratio by investing in human resource development, and upgrading suppliers' negotiating skills. The long distances separating many developing countries from the main tourist-generating centres and the high air-fares caused by low air traffic density hamper exports of tourism services of developing countries. They can adopt a combination of policies to increase the efficiency of airlines and lower the prices of domestic and international flights, and ensure that their national air transport policy is consistent with their tourism objectives. The Global distribution systems (GDSs) and electronic media (internet) are the main distribution and marketing tools in the international tourism trade and services available to suppliers. Uses of anti-competitive measures and ensure access for smaller service suppliers is essential. Developing countries can use the multilateral trade framework and free trade agreements to dismantle barriers and support the implementation of a new generation of trade policy devices and mechanisms, to help them face up to a more competitive trade environment and globalised markets such as coming GATS negotiations. International tourism receipts provide foreign exchange earnings and contribute to the diversification of total exports of goods and services partly negated by "leakage". This is due to the following factors: the import of materials and equipment for construction and consumable goods such as food and drink; the repatriation of income and profits earned by foreigners; the interest payable on foreign loans; overseas promotional expenditure; and the limited capacity of tourism service suppliers from developing countries to negotiate profitable prices for their services. Revenue leakage is a particularly acute problem for developing countries, especially small islands, which are strongly dependent on imported inputs to cater for the needs of tourists. (TD/B/COM.1/EM.6/2 on 8th April 1998)

In accordance with the recommendation made by the Commission on Trade in Goods and Services, and Commodities at the closing meeting of its second session on 21 November 1997(TD/B/45/2-TD/B/COM.1/15 paragraph 33), the Expert Meeting on Strengthening the Capacity for Expanding



the Tourism Sector in Developing Countries, with Particular Focus on Tour Operators, Travel Agencies and Other Suppliers was held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, from 8 to 10 June 1998. The Chairperson's Summary of the meeting is enclosed as part II to the TD/B/COM.1/17 and contains nine sections.

In section A 'Formulation of tourism development policies and strategies' the main points are as follows;

- The importance of tourism can be measured by its share in employment, foreign exchange earnings, investment and fiscal revenues, and by its overall contribution to development.
- The main reasons for tourism not receiving attention commensurate with its economic importance, including in some international organisations, are:
 - (a) It is a relatively recent industry, as compared to manufacturing and more traditional services;
 - (b) The lack of internationally accepted standards for measuring the economic impact of the sector to assess the overall economic importance of the tourism industry.
- The formulation and implementation of national tourism development plans and programmes should be undertaken by national Governments in close collaboration with all stakeholders.
- The differences in the nature of international tourism demand and tourism flows between different destinations as well as considering environmental and economical sustainability.
- access to information technology
- The most important barriers for developing countries in this sector are: (i) restrictions on the movement of tourists; (ii) restrictions on the work of professionals in the tourism sector; (iii) limitations to real-estate property rights; (iv) restrictions on the right to manage tourism companies; (v) sectoral regulatory restrictions; (vi) anti-competitive practices stemming from the abuse of dominance by tour operators (including vertical integration, exclusive dealing and refusal to deal); (vii) difficulties associated with the delivery of visas; (viii) limitations in access to and the use of global distribution systems; and (ix) insufficient availability or inadequacy of air transport services to and from tourist-receiving countries. These should take into account for designing tourism national plans.
- Major leakage caused by income and royalty remittances; payments for the import of equipment, materials, and capital and consumer goods to cater for the needs of international tourists; the payment of foreign loans; various mechanisms for tax evasion; and overseas promotional expenditures
- Tourism service suppliers should adopt marketing strategies which we aimed at:
 - a. Being pro-active, by identifying target markets and actions to capture them;
 - b. Improving the marketing mix and diversifying the tourism product supply - as the total free time increases in developed countries (as a result of demographic and legislative changes) and as developing countries and countries in transition become larger tourist-generators, the demand for differentiated tourism products increases;

- c. Increasing the attractiveness of the product;
- d. Capturing niche markets - in order to do so, a careful analysis of specific customer groups (e.g. by age or ethnic origin) in tourism-generating countries needs to be done. The latter can then develop products which cater for the specific needs, demands and lifestyles of these niche customers.
- taking into account tourists religious and cultural traditions for increasing average expenditure
- Regional cooperation and trade agreements enhance two types of tourism:
 - a. Intra-regional tourism. Worldwide, the bulk of international tourism flows take place within the same region
 - b. Extra-regional tourism. This type of tourist flow is enhanced by mechanisms adopted jointly by regional partner countries,

In section B 'Ways to increase the bargaining power of developing-country tourism service suppliers' the main issues are;

The negotiating capacity of tourism service suppliers from developing countries is largely determined by the following factors:

- (a) Attractiveness of the country. The attractiveness of the country depends on relative prices, quality of tourism services, economic proximity vis-à-vis the main generating markets, image of the country and resources and infrastructure.
- (b) Degree of dependence on the main tourist-generating markets. Tourism development only becomes sustainable when domestic tourism accompanies international tourist flows.
- (c) Availability of information. Tourism service suppliers in developing countries should cooperate in order to compete and access to information on the international market and the latest developments in it.
- (d) Domestic regulation.
- (e) Operating and negotiating capacity of local suppliers.

In section C 'infrastructure' the summary indicated;

The availability of an infrastructure for tourism is an essential element of successful tourism development strategies especially in the case of the transport, hotel and telecommunications infrastructure. The main reason for deficiencies in infrastructure is the scarcity of public funds to finance projects. The ways to overcome the financing constraints facing States are:

- Financing by regional banks and by multilateral financial institutions. Such financing can be used in a number of ways, including: (i) financing of public-sector projects, as has traditionally been the practice; (ii) provision of funds for private companies which operate public concessions; (iii) direct financing of projects developed by the private sector (though usually Governments are still required to provide guaranties).
- Concession of services to private-sector operators, both domestic and international. This option mobilises private capital and therefore bypasses the issue of mobilisation of public

funds; however, the assistance of the international community may be required in establishing the appropriate legal framework.

- Build-operate-transfer policies. Not only do these operations place no burden on public budgets, but they may also foster the participation of local communities in tourism flows and their benefits.
- Foreign direct investment. This can also be combined with some of the options mentioned above (e.g. concessions, build-operate-transfer operations).

In section D, 'Human resource development', the chairperson proposed;

- Given the importance of the quality aspect of the tourism product and its labour intensity, the pool of human resources available for tourism is a fundamental factor in the successful development of this industry. It requires, *inter alia*, managerial, technical and language skills as well as the establishment of technical, middle and higher-level schools of hotels, tourism operations and tourism management.
- Financing and technical assistance for capacity building from the relevant international organisations is a need for tourism development.

In section E 'International standards in the tourism sector' the main points are;

- Given the growing importance of the quality aspect of tourism, standards will be increasingly needed and applied by the industry. Standards may cover services in general and tourism in particular. Stakeholders may offer a means of ensuring and assessing the quality of tourism services.
- The International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) is in the process of developing international standards for tourism for their voluntary adoption by the international community. This process needs to be approached with caution, so as to avoid setting standards which could become barriers to trade in the tourism sector and impair the position of developing-country suppliers. To this end, article VI of the General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS) on domestic regulation is being fully taken into account.

In section F, 'Competition issues', the summary was discussed;

- Anti-competitive practices appear to have a major impact on trade in tourism services and on the ability of developing countries. It should be addressed by the international community and by national Governments.
- Privatization policies should give attention to competition aspects.
- Drawing attention to potential anti-competitive practices of private anti-competitive such as:
 - (i) exclusive dealing clauses incorporated in contracts between tour operators and hotels in developing countries;
 - (ii) clauses on import and supply requirements in franchising contracts;
 - (iii) abuse of dominance resulting in significant entry barriers, such as the allocation of airport slots.
- Competition issues have to be looked into when analysing access to global distribution systems and to air transport

In section G 'The tourism sectors in GATS' main issues are;

- The tourism sector is subject to a high degree of liberalisation, the coming round of multilateral negotiations will provide an opportunity for the refinement of the offers, the expansion of market access under other modes of supply and the incorporation of the necessary regulatory commitments.
- The GATS schedules on tourism services contain many commitments on commercial presence, but less on the other modes of supply. The next round of multilateral negotiations on trade in services under GATS should aim at a comprehensive liberalisation of all aspects of tourism services.
- Consultation among GATS negotiators of developing countries and tourism authorities and private sector in these countries are essential to have a clear vision of tourism priorities and ensure the follow-up to the negotiating process.
- International organisation such as UNCTAD, ICAO and the World Tourism Organisation and other relevant organisations have a crucial role to play in carrying out studies on the above-mentioned issues and in helping developing countries to prepare their negotiating position and participate effectively in the international negotiations on trade in tourism services.

In section H 'Air transport' main points included;

- Air transport plays a crucial role in the development of tourism in developing countries. The lack of coherence between air transport and tourism policies can seriously erode the potential of those countries' tourism sectors.
- The air transport industry is undergoing structural changes due to the processes of liberalisation, privatization, internationalization, consolidation and concentration of air carriers. Many developing-country airlines are striving to adapt to this trend.
- Liberalisation is taking place at the bilateral and regional levels. The possibility of a multilateral liberalisation of air transport has been studied, but no initiative has been taken to carry it through. There appears to be little chance of progress in this direction in the near future.
- With regard to the eventual liberalisation of international air traffic, there is a divergent trend to restrict market access in domestic services, which creates an unfair competitive advantage for carriers from countries with large domestic markets.
- Developing countries could choose policy options to ensure an adequate density of air traffic as an alternative to protecting national carriers. These options include regional alliances, associations with major airline alliances, code-sharing, leasing, franchising, and contractual arrangements with other airlines.
- The relationship between air transport and competition policy requires that developed countries should eliminate sectoral exemptions to air transport and that adequate multilateral mechanisms should be in place to deal with the effects of abuse of dominance beyond the borders of the country in which airlines have their major place of business.

- In the GATS Annex on Air Transport Services in 2000, developing countries have to consider carefully all possible options and bear in mind that the revision may deal with issues such as subsidies and anti-competitive practices. In this round of negotiation, developing countries with assistance of private sector, UNCTAD and WTO has to develop a harmonised position.
- Safety and security are a key issue. All efforts should be made to ensure that the new trends towards privatization and liberalisation do not compromise safety and security.
- Developing countries should address the need to upgrade their infrastructure; develop their human resources in the field of air transport; initiate the deregulation and pro-competitive re-regulation of air transport.
- In section I 'Global distribution systems / Computer reservation systems (CRS)' the summary reported; Global distribution systems/computer reservation systems (GDS/CRS) have become crucial in international tourism because of their increasing use as a distribution channel and marketing tool for tourism products. They have become increasingly important and are extensively used by all suppliers of tourism services, such as tour operators, travel agencies, restaurants, hotel chains and car rentals, small and medium-sized enterprises, and independent consumers of tourism products.
- Access to GDS is a critical variable in the business operations of developing-country tourism service suppliers.
- Web sites are increasingly used to provide a virtual market place allowing independent travellers and suppliers to interact on-line to complete their transactions and payments for services, in many cases without intermediaries.
- In the light of the increasing importance of GDS/CRS as a tool for marketing and trade efficiency, its development is a crucial element in the implementation of policies and strategies for tourism development. Efforts should be made to provide developing countries with effective and lower-cost access to them and to infrastructure, equipment and on-line services.
- Human resources are extremely important in the operation of GDS and other electronic media. If full use is to be made of modern technology, people must be trained to master them and their application to marketing.
- Some GDS owners and integrated suppliers still pursue some unfair practices
- There have been examples of GDS/CRS being used to improve efficiency in the administrative procedures of immigration authorities. (i.e. in Australia)

The Expert Meeting examined ways and means of strengthening the capacity for expanding the tourism sector in developing countries, with particular focus on tour operators, travel agencies and other suppliers; it also considered the relation of air transport and global distribution systems to the tourism sector. The experts reached agreed conclusions and recommendations, on 10th June 2000. (TD/B/COM.1/EM.6/3 part I)

The document has three sections.

Section A 'Addressed to the international community' read as follows;

"1. An internationally agreed definition of the tourism sector should be universally applied; this would facilitate the acceptance and implementation of a uniform system of tourism accounting measures ("satellite accounts") which would provide a clear measurement of the role of the tourism sector in economic development and trade. Such a system could then be used in international negotiations on services, for which adequate statistics and policy analysis are a necessary prerequisite.

2. (a) Further liberalisation commitments on trade in tourism should be negotiated under the General Agreement on Trade and Services (GATS). An annex on tourism services may be required, comprising, inter alia, regulatory issues such as definitions, competitive safeguards, access to information, fair and transparent use of global distribution systems, linkages between tourism and air transport, and security conditions for service contracts.

(b) The relevant provisions of GATS should be fully implemented, or, if necessary, new provisions should be developed, to prevent unfair competition arising from discriminatory practices in the issuance of visas to tourists which favour certain tour operators and travel agents.

(c) Articles IV and XIX of GATS should be effectively applied to the tourism sector, by adopting measures which effectively foster greater participation by developing countries in international trade in tourism services.

3. Effective mechanisms, including mechanisms for joint implementation, to deal with anti-competitive practices in the tourism sector and related sectors should be identified, in order to deal with the effects on trade of contractual practices relating to exclusive dealing, vertical integration and the abuse of dominance, particularly as regards new entrants to the industry.

4. Multilateral and regional financing institutions should give priority to appropriate strategies for the environmentally and financially sustainable development of tourism and related sectors, in particular for financing infrastructure projects, the provision of modern telecommunications services under pro-competitive regulatory regimes, and human resource development activities.

5. International organisations and donor countries should also increase their efforts in training and capacity building in the field of tourism in developing countries, including the effective use of computer reservation systems, global distribution systems and the Internet to maximise their earnings from tourism and to meet international standards.

6. The problems of air access of developing countries, particularly the least developed countries, should be addressed with a view to preventing the marginalization of those countries."

In section B 'Addressed to national Governments' the developing countries are invited to; foster cooperation and collaboration efforts with the private sector and local communities in the development and management of the tourism sector, to adopt comprehensive policies to ensure environmental and economic sustainability and to increase the attractiveness and quality of tourism services, to consider the various options available for financing tourism infrastructure projects, to review the fiscal treatment of the tourism sector and take the necessary fiscal measures

to foster its growth and development, to avoid taxing exports, to ensure that immigration regulations facilitate the movement of tourists, to develop effectively apply competition policy in the tourism and related sectors by prohibiting anti-competitive clauses, to foster the development of regional tourism within the context of regional and sub regional agreements, to consider the adoption of mechanisms to encourage the export of tourism services by developing countries, to seek the collaboration of tourism authorities and of private-sector experts in formulating their negotiating objectives in the tourism sector, to be prepare for effective participation in the future multilateral negotiations under GATS and the possible revision of the GATS Annex on Air Transport Services, to lead efforts to develop new model contracts to use in negotiations with tour operators and other suppliers.

In section C 'Addressed to UNCTAD', the UNCTAD and WTO (Tourism) are requested to collaborate on all aspects of tourism trade and development, to provide technical assistance to developing countries, particularly in preparing for negotiations in several forums relating to trade and development in tourism and related services, conduct studies on specific issues of interest to developing countries, conduct a study on the feasibility of alternative modalities for including air transport services in plurilateral or multilateral negotiations on services, to organise conference in Tunisia to discuss concrete ways and measures to improve the relationship between developing-country tourism-service suppliers and agents operating in the main tourist originating markets, and finally pointed out the importance of air transport services for tourism, and the provisions of Article V of the GATS Annex on Air Transport Services and request the Commission to consider convening an expert meeting on air transport services.

Council of Europe Recommendation for Sustainable nature based tourism

The Treaty of Rome in 1957 contained no reference to the concept of environmental protection and did not confer any competence on the EEC to develop an environmental policy. First EC environmental policy can be dated to the Paris Declaration, issued in 1972 by EC heads of state and government, which stated; "Economic expansion is not an end in itself. Its first aim should be to enable disparities in living conditions to be reduced. It must take place with the participation of all the social partners. It should result in an improvement in the quality of life as well as in standards of living. As befits the genius of Europe, particular attention will be given to intangible values and to protecting the environment, so that progress may really be put at the service of mankind". (Bulletin EU- 1972)

In 1992, Maastricht Treaty amended European Treaty and in its Article 130r (1) and 130r (2) strengthened environmental approach of EU.

Article 130r (1) stated; community policy on the environment shall contribute to pursuit of the following objectives;

- preserving, protecting and improving the quality of environment;
- protecting human health;

- prudent and rational utilisation of natural resources;
- Promoting measures at international level to deal with regional or worldwide environmental problems.

Article 130r (2) underlined the key principles of environmental policy of EU as follows;

Community policy on the environment shall aim at a high level of protection taking into account the diversity of situation in the various regions of the community. It shall be based on the precautionary principle and on the principles that preventative action should be taken, that environmental damage should as a priority be rectified at source and that the polluter should pay.

From 1973 six European environmental action programmes were adopted. First environmental action 1973-76 set out the EC's basic aims in the context of environmental protection and the key principles that would inform action in this regard. It essentially focused on the control of pollution and on the adaptation of remedial measures. The second 1977-82 and third 1982-86 programmes adopted a more long term views in an overall improvement in environmental quality and reduction in pollution. The forth programme 1987-92 made greater emphasis on preventive action and therefore raised environmental policy as a central and essential component of formulation of EC policy in the economic, industrial and social context. The fifth programme attempted to set out a new approach to environmental protection which is designed to put the community on the path towards sustainable development and identified five target sectors that have a particular impact on the environmental and are central to achieving sustainable development namely, industry, energy, agriculture, tourism, and transport.

It is important to note that although the action programmes provide a framework for the development of environmental policy, they are not legally binding documents.

For many years the Council of Europe has been concerned to promote and support policies for sustainable, environment-friendly development.

In 1970s The Council of Europe drew attention to the fact that tourism could damage the environment, whether natural or cultural, and studies and meetings noted the danger and put forward solutions. In the considerable amount of work the Council of Europe has done on behalf of the European heritage, the question of tourism in relation to the environment gradually took on greater prominence before being dealt with in its own right, in the intergovernmental programmes and, from 1991 onwards, in special programmes for central and east Europe.

The Council of Europe's four international conventions on conservation of the natural and cultural heritage – the Bern, Granada, Valletta and Florence conventions have important implications for tourism.

The summery of Council of Europe's work on tourism is explained below.

A) Bern Convention; The Bern Convention on the Conservation of European Wildlife and Natural Habitats of 19 September 1979 has not generated any work specifically to do with tourism. However it does seek to reconcile human activity, including recreational activity, with preservation of the environment, and contracting parties are required to take requisite measures to

“maintain the population of wild flora and fauna at, or adapt it to, a level which corresponds in particular to ecological, scientific and cultural requirements, while taking account of “economic and recreational requirements”. There have been a number of mediation cases under the Bern Convention, in connection with tourism practices or installations at odds with preservation of habitats or natural species protected by the convention. In this context, Bad-wurzach seminar for managers of prize-winning in protected areas was held in 1991, on nature conservation and tourism in protected areas. The purpose of the seminar was to present models for "green" tourism, underline the economic interest in site protection and so encourage local communities to work for long-term conservation of the natural environment. The seminar identified principles and guidelines for all policy on tourism management in protected areas.

In 1995 the adoption of Recommendation R (95) 10 on policy for development of sustainable tourism in protected areas was other development in this regard.

B) Florence Convention; The European Landscape Convention is opened for signature in Florence on 20 October 2000 and more than 20 countries signed it by the end of 2002. previously In 1993 the Mediterranean Landscape Charter (Seville Charter), noted that Mediterranean landscapes were undergoing significant transformation as a result of massively increasing tourism and recreational activity that affected landscapes of great value to society. The charter takes the line that a landscape-conservation and -management policy in the Mediterranean area is needed

In 1995, Committee of Ministers Recommendation No R (95)9 on the integrated conservation of cultural landscape areas as part of landscape policies mentioned the need to involve the tourism profession in identifying landscapes, to ensure that tourism and leisure policies are consistent with landscape policies and to promote balanced visitor management by encouraging access to local sites away from the major tourist routes and restricting the number of visitors in places already receiving too many.

Florence convention treats landscape as an economic asset which quality of landscape can assist or encourage the setting up of economic activity, for example in the leisure and tourism sector. The convention noted that landscape and wildlife-oriented recreation activity is increasingly popular, particularly in rural, mountain and coastal areas and there is a growing demand for wilderness or countryside landscapes and in the other hand tourism has suffered a decline in areas where landscape has been spoiled by intensive development of large resorts.

C) Granada and Valletta Conventions; Both the Granada Convention of 3 October 1985 on protecting the architectural heritage of Europe and the Valletta Convention of 16 January 1992 on protecting the archaeological heritage contain a number of provisions on an “integrated-conservation” approach which treats cultural assets in their environmental context. Both conventions are concerned on protection of cultural sites with protection of their natural environments.

In the same context The Council of Europe’s Environment Protection and Management Division held a seminar in Strasbourg in 1996 on tourism, the environment and developing a new tourism

culture. The seminar sought to promote a new ethics in the various sectors and amongst the various partners involved in tourism, based on paying greater heed to environmental considerations in tourism policies and activities and in commercial practices.

In 1999 the adoption of Recommendation No R (99) 16 on the development of environmental management training for those involved in the tourism sector is other development in this area.

In additions, the council of Europe has been undertaken three main activities namely; Biological and landscape diversity strategy, Tourism activities in sensitive areas, Central and east Europe tourism activities

- Biological and landscape diversity strategy

Much of CE work has been conducted, since 1995, within the Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy.

In 1993, intergovernmental programme of the Council set up an intergovernmental group of specialists on tourism and environment to make recommendations on policies for sustainable tourism development and to look at the environmental requirements tourism projects. The result was four recommendations of Committee of Ministers as follows;

- Recommendation No R (94) 7 on a general policy for sustainable and environment-friendly tourism development;
- Recommendation No R (95) 10 on a sustainable tourist development policy in protected areas;
- Recommendation No R (97) 9 on a policy for the development of sustainable environment-friendly tourism in coastal areas;
- Recommendation No R (99) 16 on the development on environmental management training for those involved in the tourism sector, including future professionals.

In addition to these recommendations, work by the group of specialists included:

- Reports and studies on tourism and the environment including analysing the tourism-development situation in the various European countries and measures taken or advocated to ensure sustainable tourism development and on environment training for people working in the tourism sector;
- Colloquies and a conference (a colloquy in Strasbourg on 21-23 November 1996 on tourism and environment and developing a new tourist culture; a pan-European colloquy in Riga on 9-11 September 1999 on tourism and the environment and natural, cultural and socio-economic factors in sustainable tourism; and an international conference in Berlin on 11-13 October 2000 on sustainable tourism, the environment and employment);
- 3 pilot studies towards master plans for sustainable tourist development, in Latvia (coastal areas and wetlands), Romania (building protection of karst sites into tourism development) and Ukraine (sustainable tourism and protecting the natural environment, in particular natural forests) and development of a methodology, based on pilot studies, for design of environment-friendly tourist development projects.

- Drawing up a European code of conduct for environment-friendly open-air recreation and sport, which was included in a document presented to the Conference of European Ministers responsible for Sport, in Bratislava (Slovakia) in May 2000.

Recommendation No R (94) 7 is a key document on the sustainable tourism development policy in Europe.

It was adopted by the Committee of Ministers of CE on 5 September 1994 the main relevant points in the preamble of mentioned recommendation are as follows;

Bearing in mind the declaration of the ministerial conference held in Lucerne from 28 to 30 April 1993 on "Environment for Europe", which calls on the Council of Europe to pursue its activities to promote ecologically viable tourism; and stressing that tourism constitutes one of the mainstays of economic growth and is likely to become the foremost world industry; that tourism is a factor in bringing peoples together, forging a European identity and heightening awareness of the value of their natural and cultural heritage;

Noting a growing interest in all forms of tourism associated with the discovery and knowledge of the natural and cultural heritage;

Convinced that the environment has an intrinsic value that is greater than its value as a tourism asset; underlining that the relationship between tourism and the environment is a delicate one and aware of the threats posed to the natural and landscape environment and local populations and cultures by the excessive and uncontrolled development of tourism;

Observing that levels of tourism development and fragility of the areas concerned vary from one country to another and even from one region to another;

Convinced of the need to establish a general framework in order to safeguard and restore the quality of the environment, which is the prime resource of tourism,

The following recommended to the governments of member states

a. base their tourism development policy on the principles and measures set out by CE in the appendix to mentioned recommendation, tailoring them where necessary to the special features or fragility of certain regions;

b. ensure that the national, regional and local authorities, those institutions responsible for tourism and the environment, the tourist industry and all other sectors involved be duly informed of the recommendation and respect the principles contained on;

The appendix to the recommendation R (94) 7 contains important guidelines in two sections.

The first section, General Principles, highlighted the following points

The principles of prevention, precautions and remedial action allied with the need for sustainable development should underlie any tourism development policy

No permission for any project with significant environmental impact without evidence of its environmental, economic and financial viability and its contribution to socio-cultural development.

Tourism development should be geared to sustainable development environmental considerations should be integrated into the decision-making process from the start of every the project and should be totally or partially self-financing

Tourism development must be carried out within the limits of the local infrastructure and should be a gradual process. it should encourage local employment of the and use local materials and traditional skills and should be supportive of local community and economy.

Tourism activities and amenities should be located in carefully chosen areas so as to restrict development in sensitive regions. The reconstruction and renovation of existing buildings is prior to new infrastructures.

Tourism development must respect the scale, nature, character and capacity of the local physical and social environment, as well as local natural resources, landscape quality, historic and archaeological heritage and cultural identity.

Every project should be subjected to an environmental impact assessment (EIA) including the following criteria: the impact on environment, landscape, fauna, flora, water, land and energy resources; the impact on local infrastructure, economy, society and employment; the direct, indirect, immediate and long-term effects of the project; the effects of secondary developments (transport, new infrastructures etc); adequate consultation with the local public and local communities; possible remedial or compensating measures.

Every tourism project should avoid creating additional pressures on the environment, encourage the use of public and non-motorised transport, as well as the most suitable technology for saving water and energy, treating effluent and processing and recycling waste and enhance awareness programme. A monitoring programme should accompany it. Eco-audits should be carried out on large-scale developments.

The second section of the Appendix, implementation of general principles, contains international, national, regional and local subsections;

In the level of National authorities the should; develop national strategies for sustainable and environmentally-friendly development, ensure that the various policies and decision-making levels are coherent and consistent, draw up an inventory of the country's cultural and natural resources and set up a legislative framework to enhance and protect them, preserve areas designated as vulnerable, draw up a framework for integrated planning and resource management, draw up a national tourism policy which should be tied in with overall planning policy, close collaboration between bodies responsible for providing reliable statistics on the tourist industry and monitoring environment, provide environmental education and training for tourism professionals and running campaigns to build awareness of the environment among stakeholders, propose charters for the tourist industry establishing qualitative criteria for environment-friendly tourism, control tourist demand and flow, in particular by staggering the tourist season and easing pressure on certain sites by developing other centres of interest, restoration of harmed sites, encouraging new types of activities as alternatives to mass tourism, encourage the introduction of environmentally sound

products and activities by relevant measures, considering the tax incentive scheme to encourage environment-friendly tourism development projects as well as sanctions penalising and compensations for activities harmful to the environment.

National authorities, acting through international organisations, should propose that these organisations adopt an integrated planning approach to future development of the tourism industry, promote international awards for sustainable tourism and publish international guides of good tourism practice vis-à-vis the environment, support training and awareness-building programmes on tourism and the environment, support pilot projects for sustainable tourism and disseminate information about them.

National authorities, acting through international financial bodies should propose that these bodies request environmental impact statements for all projects they finance and run EIA, ascertain the environmental viability of the project on the same footing as economic and financial viability, make suitable supervision arrangements, make suitable supervision arrangements.

In subsection B of second section of Appendix, Local and regional authorities, the main recommendations are as follows; authorities should exercise control over tourist development with potentially significant environmental consequences through regional, local and urban planning policy and a policy of nature and landscape protection; and establish local tourism plans, based on inventories of sites and biotopes and on their carrying capacity and social accommodation capacity as well as land use plans, make the issue of building permits contingent on requirements such as a guarantee of quality development and respect for the environment and a work closely with all stakeholders to ensure co-ordination between different tourism development projects, and maintain regular, two-way flow of information

- Central and east Europe tourism activities

The Council of Europe launched from 1991 a programme contained technical assistance with drawing up and implementing general development plans for sustainable tourism as well as colloquies for relevant tourism and environment authorities in the central and east Europe countries. Technical assistance mainly dealt with sustainable tourism development master plans and the colloquies and seminars under this programme have endeavoured to develop interest, in balanced, environment-friendly tourism development and to bring about exchange of experiences between central and east Europe and Western Europe.

- Tourism activities in sensitive areas

The CE has various activities regarding rural, costal, mountain and generally sensitive and protected areas. The extensive discussion on tourism activities in rural and agricultural areas raised European Campaign for the Countryside in 1987-88. "Rural tourism in Europe", a study produced for the campaign, puts just as much emphasis on preserving rural communities as on promoting historic monuments and sites. The final declaration of the second colloquy on the future of the countryside, "The rural challenge" (Lisbon, 1987), deals both with protecting the cultural and natural rural heritage and with tourism in rural areas.

Recommendation 1009 (1985), "Tourism and Agriculture – Development in harmony or conflict?", recommended that the member governments to work towards replacing the present quantitative, and often careless, expansion of tourism in sensitive areas by more quantitative, ecology-orientated growth, in close partnership with agriculture and forestry with close involvements of tourism industry

Committee of Ministers Recommendation No R ENV (90) 1 to member states on the European Conservation Strategy adopted at the 6th European Ministerial Conference on the Environment notes that the natural environment involves complex and delicate balances. In this connection it deals in particular with the question of leisure and tourism. It advocates a number of general policy measures recognising the importance of natural and rural areas.

In June 2002 Council of Europe-UNEP international conference on agriculture and biodiversity discussed the programmes for sustainable development and various types of agritourism and agriculture-linked rural development.

On the Coastal areas and maritime regions, in 1973, the Resolution (73) 29 on the protection of coastal areas concerned itself with the critical condition of much of Europe's coast and the extremely serious biological degradation and aesthetic disfigurement caused by indiscriminate siting of buildings, industry and tourist facilities in coastal areas. It established the principle that coasts could only be protected effectively if multiple interests and problems were taken simultaneously into account (e.g. maintaining the ecological and biological balance, preserving the beauty of the landscapes, conserving natural resources, promoting economic and tourist development and safeguarding the hinterland).

In 1984, Recommendation R(84)2 on the European Regional/Spatial Planning Charter recommended that member governments base their national policies on the principles and objectives set out in the charter, an appendix to which states with regard to coastal areas and islands: "The development of mass tourism and transport in Europe and the industrialisation of coastal areas, islands and the sea demand specific policies for these regions in order to ensure their balanced development and co-ordinated urbanisation, bearing in mind the requirements of environmental conservation and regional characteristics".

In 1985, Recommendation No R (85)18 concerning planning policies in maritime regions emphasised that European maritime regions were simultaneously a sensitive part of the natural heritage and outstandingly attractive to mass tourism. It advocated rational organisation of tourism so that the development of recreation was prevented from causing irreversible deterioration of the precious natural environment in certain European coastal regions. Tourism, it said, should be controlled and, where necessary, restricted in specific areas to prevent destruction of the environment and the regional pattern of life and avert further ecological or aesthetic pressures on the coastline. The Committee of Ministers noted in September 1999 the model for legislation on integrated management of coastal areas and the European code of conduct for coastal areas and decided to forward to governments for implementation.

In 1976 the Committee of Ministers adopted Resolution (76)34 on The Ecological Charter for Mountain Regions in Europe. The charter urged that tourism development must be based on rational management of natural resources. It recognises that, in view of the vulnerability of ecosystems to human activities, there are incompatibilities between such activities and protection of our natural heritage and therefore effective measures are needed which take account of ecological criteria and which are in harmony with the principles of rational planning and development.

The declaration adopted at the Conference of Alpine Regions in Lugano in September 1978 recognised the role of tourism in the development of mountain regions but mentioned such development must be controlled in order to preserve the life setting of local communities.

In 1995 and 1997 the Recommendation No R (95) 10 and Recommendation No R (97) 9 on a sustainable tourist development policy in protected areas and on a policy for the development of sustainable environment-friendly tourism in coastal areas respectively, are among the recent measures taken by CE. (More information on <http://www.coe.int/portal/T.asp>

